Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286
Proteomics, Metabolomics, Interactomics and Systems Biology

Paul C. Guest *Editor*

Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders

Part II

Springer

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology

Proteomics, Metabolomics, Interactomics and Systems Biology

Sub-Series Editor

Daniel Martins-de-Souza
University of Campinas (UNICAMP)
Institute of Biology
Laboratory of Neuroproteomics
Campinas, Brazil

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology presents multidisciplinary and dynamic findings in the broad fields of experimental medicine and biology. The wide variety in topics it presents offers readers multiple perspectives on a variety of disciplines including neuroscience, microbiology, immunology, biochemistry, biomedical engineering and cancer research. Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology has been publishing exceptional works in the field for over 30 years and is indexed in Medline, Scopus, EMBASE, BIOSIS, Biological Abstracts, CSA, Biological Sciences and Living Resources (ASFA-1), and Biological Sciences. The series also provides scientists with up-to-date information on emerging topics and techniques. 2018 Impact Factor: 2.126.

Content of this series is reviewed.

This series of volumes focuses on concepts, techniques and recent advances in the field of proteomics, interactomics, metabolomics and systems biology. Recent advances in various 'omics' technologies enable quantitative monitoring of myriad various biological molecules in a high-throughput manner, and allow determination of their variation between different biological states on a genomic scale. Now that the sequencing of various genomes, from prokaryotes to humans, has provided the list and linear sequence of proteins and RNA that build living organisms, defining the complete set of interactions that sustain life constitutes one of the key challenges of the postgenomic era. This series is intended to cover experimental approaches for defining protein-protein, protein-RNA, protein-DNA and protein-lipid interactions; as well as theoretical approaches dealing with data analysis, integration and modeling and ethical issues.

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/15040

Paul C. Guest
Editor

Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders

Part II

Springer

Editor
Paul C. Guest
Laboratory of Neuroproteomics
Department of Biochemistry and Tissue Biology
Institute of Biology
University of Campinas (UNICAMP)
Sao Paulo, Brazil

ISSN 0065-2598 ISSN 2214-8019 (electronic)
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology
ISSN 2730-6216 ISSN 2730-6224 (electronic)
Proteomics, Metabolomics, Interactomics and Systems Biology
ISBN 978-3-030-55034-9 ISBN 978-3-030-55035-6 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

Ageing is an inevitable part of life and may soon become a social, economic and health problem around the world. There is an ever-increasing proportion of individuals in the advanced age category, who have a higher risk of developing age-related disorders, such as type II diabetes mellitus, Alzheimer's disease, cancer, cardiovascular disorders and sarcopenia or frailty. New therapeutic approaches are needed to decrease or slow the effects of these diseases. The application of -omic technologies such as genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics and metabolomics has significantly advanced our understanding of disease in multiple medical areas as these allow the analysis of multiple molecular networks simultaneously to provide a more integrated view of health and disease pathways, and can even be used to monitor new therapeutic approaches. It is hoped that emerging data from these analyses will lead to the identification and development of novel drug targets to increase the human healthspan. In turn, this will lead to new therapeutic strategies and drug development projects by the pharmaceutical industry.

This book presents a series of reviews describing studies, which have resulted in identification of potential new drug targets for age-related disorders. Much of this information has come from -omic comparisons of healthy and disease states or from testing the effects of potential new therapeutic approaches. The authors in this series come from the six habitable continents from countries such as Australia, Brazil, Canada, France, Germany, India, Iran, Iraq, South Africa, South Korea, Thailand, United Kingdom, United States of America, Ukraine, Uruguay and Vietnam. This highlights the growing interest in this topic throughout the world.

Chapter 1 presents an overview of new therapeutics and biomarkers directed towards increasing the human healthspan. Chapter 2 describes new methods targeting metabolism in the treatment of cancer. Chapter 3 reviews monoclonal antibody-based treatments in non-small cell lung cancer. Chapter 4 describes the pathogenic metabolic signature in mitochondria that occurs in mitochondria. Chapter 5 covers the targeted treatment of fibromyalgia using coenzyme Q10 supplementation. Chapter 6 reviews the role of gut microbiota in the prevention and progression of multiple sclerosis. Chapter 7 summarizes the therapeutic applications of long non-coding RNAs in head and neck cancer. Chapter 8 describes studies which have found genotoxic effects of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors in the treatment of depression. Chapter 9 covers the methods of circulating tumour cell isolation and detection, and the therapeutic strategies targeting these cells in different cancer types.

Chapter 10 describes the telomerase inhibitory effects of the natural compound curcumin in relation to its anti-cancer activity. Chapter 11 summarizes numerous experimental and analytical data that support the health and longevity benefits of aspirin treatment by affecting pro-longevity pathways. Chapter 12 describes methods involved in the targeting of stem cells as a treatment in diseases marked by chronic inflammation. Chapter 13 talks about new therapeutic approaches in Alzheimer's disease using nano-drug delivery systems. Chapter 14 describes the effects of age on stress outcomes in a large study of critical care nurses. Chapter 15 describes the use of viral vectors for delivery of gene-based therapeutics in neurodegenerative disorders. Chapter 16 presents the targeting of adipose stem cells to increase longevity and the healthspan. Finally, Chapter 17 describes the use of proteomic methodologies in the identification of new drug targets in psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders.

The book will be of high interest to researchers in the areas of ageing and chronic disease, as well as to clinical scientists, physicians and the major drug companies since it gives insights into the latest ideas and technologies enabling progress in the area of healthy ageing. It will provide important information on disease mechanisms related to the ageing process, as each chapter will be presented in the context of specific chronic diseases or different therapeutic strategies.

Sao Paulo, Brazil Paul C. Guest

Contents

1 New Therapeutic Approaches and Biomarkers for Increased Healthspan

Paul C. Guest

Abstract

Healthcare costs have increased in developing countries over the last few decades, mostly due to the escalation in average life expectancy and the concomitant increase in age-related disorders. To address this issue, widespread research is now being undertaken across the globe with the aim of finding a way of increasing healthy aging. A number of potential interventions have already shown promise, including lifestyle changes and the use of natural products or pharmaceuticals that may delay the onset of diseases associated with the aging process. In parallel, a number of potential biomarkers have already been identified that can be used for assessing risk of developing age-associated disorders and for monitoring response to therapeutic interventions. This review describes the most recent advances towards the goal of achieving healthier aging with fewer disabilities that may lead to enhanced quality of life and reduced healthcare costs around the world.

Keywords

Life expectancy · Age-related diseases · Diabetes · Cancer · Frailty · Neurodegenerative conditions · Intervention · Lifestyle · Pharmaceuticals · Biomarkers

1.1 Introduction

After maturity is reached, a progressive decline in physiological functions occurs of all higher organisms over time. This aging process is a major risk factor for both healthspan and lifespan as it contributes to increased susceptibility to diseases, such as cardiovascular disorders, diabetes, cancer, frailty, and neurodegenerative conditions. It follows that delaying the aging process would lead to longer healthier lives. The first stage towards this goal is the identification of the main environmental and genetic factors associated with aging and morbidity [1, 2]. The next phase would be the identification of biomarkers associated with aging and disease processes which, in turn, would lead to identification of drug targets, leading to novel therapeutic avenues of intervention [3].

Currently, many countries of the world are now experiencing a change towards an increasing proportion of aged individuals, due to increased life

P. C. Guest (✉)
Laboratory of Neuroproteomics, Department of Biochemistry and Tissue Biology, Institute of Biology, University of Campinas (UNICAMP), Campinas, Brazil

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_1

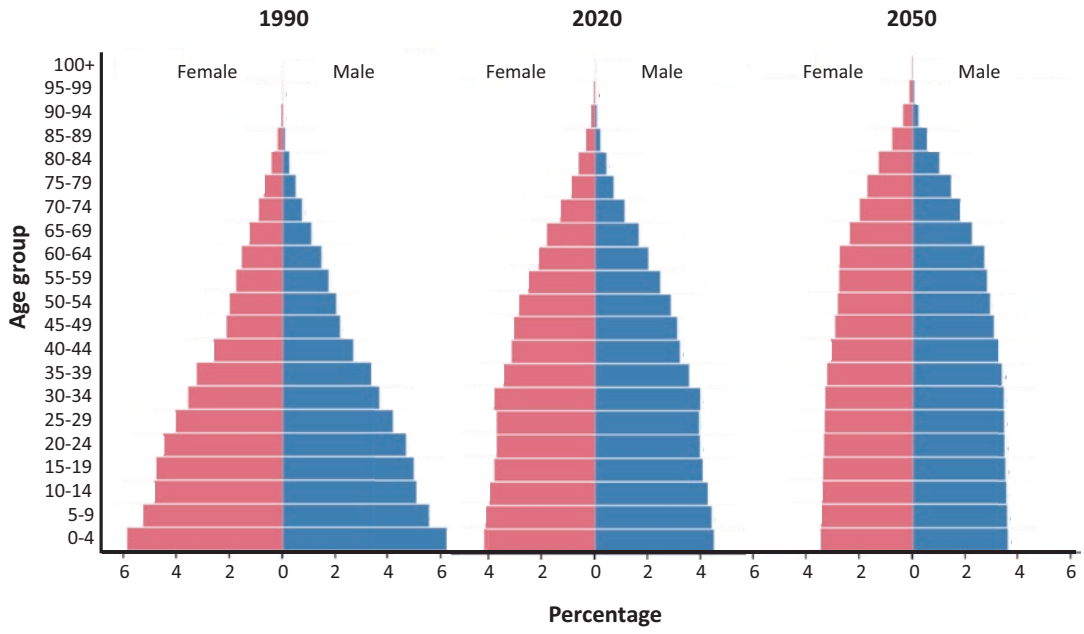


Fig. 1.1 Pyramid plots of various age groups from 0 to 100+ years-olds in the World from 1990 to 2020, with projections to the year 2050

expectancies from lifestyle adoptions and constant advancements in medicine. This can be seen easily by the change in shape of pyramid plots of various age groups from 0 to 100+ year-olds throughout the world from the years 1990 to 2020 and in projections to the year 2050 (Fig. 1.1) [4]. This shows a decreased proportion of individuals in the lower age groups to increased levels near the top of the pyramid. The highest proportions of centenarians (100+ year-olds), on a per capita basis, are localized to the continents of North America and Europe, with Africa being startlingly low in comparison (Fig. 1.2a). On a country basis, the highest proportion of centenarians appears in Japan (Fig. 1.2b), which appears to be the fastest growing country in the world with respect to this population group. In fact, from 1990 to 2020, the population of Japanese centenarians increased by an incredible 32-fold from 2397 to 78,636 individuals [4]. In all cases, the proportion of centenarians who are female exceeded that for males, consistent with the observation that females have an increased average lifespan compared to males [5–8].

At the time of writing (February 08, 2020), the longest-lived human was a French woman called Jeanne Calment who died on August 4, 1997, at the grand old age of 122 years and 164 days [9]. From the age of 109, Jeanne Calment was known to follow a strict daily routine, consisting of an early rise (6:45 am), a long prayer, seated gymnastics (hand and leg flexions and extensions while wearing a stereo headset), followed by a breakfast of coffee with milk and rusks. Besides having a robust appetite, she also consumed approximately 2 kg of chocolate per week with daily cigarettes and Port wine. The oldest person alive today is Kane Tanaka, who is 118 years and 42 days old as of February 18, 2021 [10]. Kane Tanaka still has a strong appetite, consumes sweets, three cans of coffee each day, along with sodas and various nutritional drinks, and attributes her very long life to faith in God.

Despite this information, the mystery of how these two women and other supercentenarians (110+ years-old) managed to live such long lives is not precisely known. Nevertheless, a number of studies have now been performed at the clinical and preclinical levels which have begun to shed new light on this subject. This review describes some of the latest breakthroughs in this exciting field.

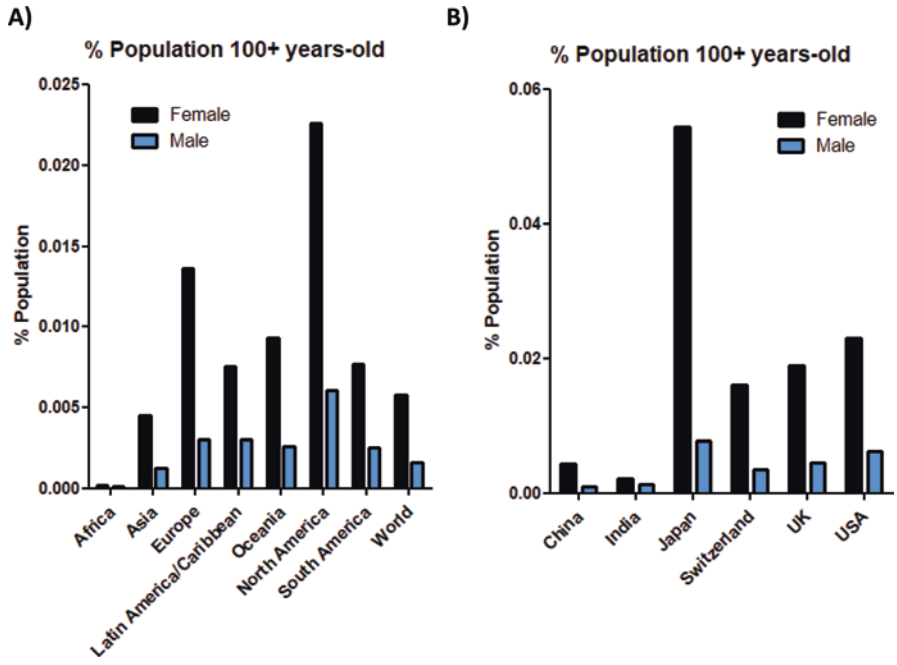


Fig. 1.2 Proportions of centenarians (100+ years-olds) per capita in (**a**) continents and (**b**) selected countries of the world

1.2 Body Composition

1.2.1 Adiposity

Overweight and obesity are risk factors for early mortality, and the prevalence of these conditions is on the rise [11]. In 2016, the World Health Organization (WHO) estimated that more than 1.9 billion adults were overweight [body mass index (BMI) = 25–30 kg/m^2] and 650 million were classified as obese (BMI > 30 kg/m^2) [11]. A meta-analysis of 239 prospective studies of 10,625,411 participants in Asia, Australia and New Zealand, Europe and North America found that all-cause mortality was lowest at normal body mass indices (18.5–25 kg/m^2), slightly higher below this range, and increased progressively in the overweight (25–30 kg/m^2) and obesity (>30 kg/m^2) classes [12]. However, these findings appear to conflict with those of another study which examined the association between BMI as a continuous variable and all-cause mortality in 4565 Geisinger Rural Aging Study participants aged 74.0 ± 4.7 years over an average 11-year follow-up period [13]. This study found a U-shaped association between mortality and BMI with a lower risk found for individuals who were either under-weight, overweight, or obese, compared to those with a normal-range BMI of 18.5–25 kg/m^2. Possible explanations for the findings of the second study include the possibility that excess fat could provide metabolic reserves during illness [14], lower fracture risk during falls [15], or surgeons may be more diligent or take more care with overweight or obese individuals during surgery [16]. However, in the case of both studies, body composition measurements, such as abdominal adiposity, waist:hip ratio, and muscle mass may be more appropriate measures than BMI [17, 18]. Another possible explanation is that the second study excluded deaths that occurred during the first two to five years of follow-up, and this could have removed data which might have affected the overall results.

The proposed U- or J-shaped survival curve in relation to BMI has been termed the obesity paradox. However, most of the studies which have

supported the existence of this paradox only took BMI into account as the measure of obesity. BMI does not consider other potentially useful parameters such as body composition and cardiovascular fitness. Although BMI has been used widely as a predictor of health risk, waist circumference might be a better indicator given its closer link with harmful visceral fat [19]. Aging is associated with changes in body composition including an increase in adiposity and reduced muscle mass. Higher fat in the abdominal region is associated with higher risk of age-related diseases [20–23]. A 5-year follow-up study of 58,609 individuals in the age range of 65–74 years at baseline found that a large waist circumference was associated with increased mortality across all BMI categories, compared to those with a small waist in the 'healthy' (20–25 kg/m^2) BMI category [24]. Thus, BMI may incorrectly classify individuals in terms of healthy or unhealthy bodyweights as it does not allow an assessment of adiposity. A study of 13,601 subjects aged 20–79.9 years from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey used bioelectrical impedance analysis to estimate percentage of body fat compared to BMI readings [25]. The bioelectrical impedance analysis showed that excess body fat was present in 50% of males and 62% of females using the WHO reference standard for obesity (>25%, males; >35%, females). However, 21% of the males and 31% of the females were classified as obese when BMI was used as the measurement. Thus, more than half of males and females with excess body fat were misclassified using the BMI system.

1.2.2 Muscle Mass

The composition of the body inevitably changes with aging, with a gradual loss of lean mass and a shift to increased fat mass [26]. A young person of 22-years-old consists of an average of 48% muscle and 19% fat, whereas the muscle mass is reduced to 25% and the fat increased to 35% in a 78-year-old person (Fig. 1.3) [27]. A review from 2012 found that the median loss in muscle mass over the entire lifespan was 0.37%/year in females and 0.47%/year for males [28]. The same study showed that this was increased to 0.64–0.70%/year and 0.80–0.98%/year in 75+ year-old females and males, respectively. Furthermore, this atrophy can be worsened during periods of inactivity, as can occur with extended hospital bed rest [29–31]. This leads to a decline in strength and an increase in the risk for disabilities and age-related disease [32].

There is also a loss of weight in older adults which is most often due to a reduction of lean mass and this is associated with increased risk of mortality [33–35]. A computed tomography and dual x-ray absorptiometry analysis of 1803 men and women initially aged 70–79 years found that greater loss of thigh muscle relative to overall

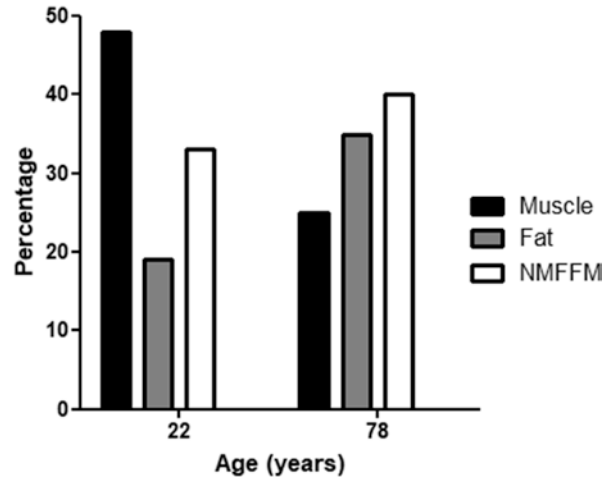


Fig. 1.3 Change in body composition with aging. *NMFFM* *non-muscle fat-free mass*

weight change had a higher mortality risk compared to persons with preservation of this muscle [36]. Another follow-up study analysed muscle quality of 511 people aged 50 years or older, using the ratio between knee-extension isokinetic strength and thigh muscle cross-sectional area [37]. The results showed that body composition, but not BMI, was associated with muscle quality decline. Therefore, the authors suggested that efforts to alter body composition in favour of decreased adiposity and increased lean mass would be sensible therapeutic approach. A more recent study published in 2019 employed magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DXA) to measure changes in thigh muscle in men and women aged an average of 71 years at baseline over a 5-year follow-up study [38]. The results showed an average 5% loss of muscle tissue in both males and females, and this was associated with higher baseline body fat in males only.

1.2.3 Therapeutic Approaches Targeting Body Composition

1.2.3.1 Resistance Exercise

Resistance exercise training has been used as an intervention tool to improve skeletal muscle cross-sectional area, strength and function, and thereby improve functional capacity and reduce disease risk in aged individuals [39, 40]. A 10-week trial published in 1994 found that progressive resistance exercise training of 100 frail nursing home residents led to an increase in muscle strength of approximately 113%, an increase in gait velocity of 12%, and increased cross-sectional thigh area of 28% [41]. Two Brazilian studies on the effects of resistance training three times per week of females aged 60 and over found that both short (30 min) and long (50 min) training sessions led to increased skeletal muscle mass compared to non-exercising controls [42, 43]. However, only the 50-min session resulted in significantly increased strength and decreased fat mass. There have been many other studies conducted with mixed outcomes and cross-comparisons that have proven difficult due to study group heterogeneities, the different exercise regimes used, and the varying outcome measures reported. In line with this, the International Sarcopenia Initiative has indicated that well-defined populations, standardized training methods, and common outcome measures are needed to allow more accurate comparisons across studies [44]. In addition, the duration of the exercise period should be for at least 3 months and supervised programmes should be initiated for elderly people residing in community care. A recent study of 25 people with a mean age of 57 years found that 1 year of heavy resistance training resulted in increased muscle strength and mass but had no effect on visceral fat mass [45]. It is possible that reductions in visceral fat require other approaches for people in this age group. Another recent study of aged males with sarcopenia found that a 28-week resistance training programme, in combination with protein, vitamin D, and calcium supplementation, led to an improved sarcopenia Z-score, with increased skeletal muscle mass and hand grip strength, compared to the inactive control group [46].

1.2.3.2 Dietary Methods

In the elderly, sarcopenia may result from increased muscle protein breakdown and/or decreased basal muscle protein synthesis [47]. A few studies have suggested that older adults on diets containing 0.8 g protein/kg/day or less may not be receiving sufficient amounts of this nutrient [48, 49]. In support of this idea, a study of 70–79 year-old community-dwelling older adults found that those individuals receiving 1.2 ± 0.4 g protein/kg per day lost or maintained a higher proportion of lean mass compared to those on 0.8 ± 0.3 g protein/kg per day [50]. This finding was supported in a more recent systematic review [51]. Other investigations have found that distribution of the protein intake throughout the day in approximately equal portions may also be important factor in maintaining a favourable anabolic rate [52, 53]. In addition to protein, studies have found that diets enriched in n-3 long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (LCPUFAs) may improve muscle function, as shown by positive effects of these fats on measures of grip strength, knee-

extension strength, and muscle size [54]. Another study found that resistance training combined with an LCPUFA-rich diet favoured skeletal muscle hypertrophy in older females [55].

A systematic review of randomized control trials in elderly subjects found that vitamin D supplementation had a beneficial effect on lower leg muscle strength, body sway, and/or physical performance, although other studies reported no benefit [56]. However, a more recent meta-study found some evidence for additive effect of resistance training and vitamin D supplementation on the improvement of muscle strength in older adults, compared to vitamin D supplementation alone [57]. In addition, another review found that vitamin D supplementation (800–1000 IU/day) can improve muscle function, particularly in cases where vitamin D levels are low [58].

1.2.3.3 Pharmaceuticals and Natural Compounds

Coffee drinking has become a contender for healthy aging with known benefits against disorders such as cognitive impairment [59] and cardiovascular disease [60]. In addition, coffee drinking has been shown to be associated with lowering all-cause mortality in population studies [61, 62]. A recent meta-study identified 40 investigations of over 3.8 million subjects and found an inverse association between coffee consumption and all-cause mortality, cardiovascular disease, and cancer, with consumption of 3.5, 2.5, and 2 cups/day, respectively [63]. Any additional intake of coffee had no further effect on mortality and the effects were not modified by age, body weight, alcohol, smoking, or caffeine content. The active ingredients in coffee that appear to be associated with the protective effects are caffeine and certain polyphenol compounds which inhibit the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) and reduce fat accumulation, respectively [64].

Metformin is an anti-diabetic drug with anti-hyperglycemic effects that are produced by reduction of hepatic glucose production and increased insulin sensitivity in peripheral tissues such as liver, skeletal muscle, and adipose tissue [65]. A clinical study found an anti-aging effect in diabetic patients on metformin with 7% lower all-cause mortality compared to non-diabetic controls [66]. Previous studies have suggested that metformin may have positive effects on a number of targets implicated in the aging process such as inhibition of inflammation, promotion of autophagy, and reduction of reactive oxygen species [67]. Furthermore, a 2-year double-blind clinical study of overweight patients with impaired glucose tolerance found that those individuals who received metformin had significant reductions in body weight and waist circumference in comparison to a reduced progression to diabetes [68]. However, it should be stressed that the potential anti-aging and anti-obesity benefits of metformin still requires further scrutiny.

1.2.3.4 Combination Approaches

A meta-analysis of studies which investigated body composition, metabolic health, and physical performance in individuals with sarcopenic obesity found that aerobic exercise decreased body weight and fat mass, whereas resistance exercise decreased fat mass and increased grip strength [69]. The same study found that a combination of aerobic and resistance exercise decreased fat mass and improved walking speed, although a low calorie diet provided no extra benefits in the case of either exercise regime. Another recent review found that a high protein diet can increase weight loss and preserve lean body mass by decreasing the rate of muscle protein breakdown [70]. Furthermore, consumption of dairy-specific protein increases insulin sensitivity by stimulating insulin release, fat oxidation, and the rate of muscle protein synthesis in aged adults and such effects are enhanced when a resistance exercise program is incorporated into the regime. A meta-analysis on frailty indices in older adults revealed that the combination of protein supplementation with multi-component exercise had significant positive effects on frailty status, and the resistance exercise led to an increase in lean mass, muscle strength, and physical mobility [71]. In contrast, another study found that a 2 day/week resistance exercise programme combined with a low-dose protein and micronutrient diet led to significant improvements in muscle

mass [72]. However the effects on physical performance in the combined exercise/diet programme were not significantly different compared to resistance training alone. Thus, further work on the types of exercise and protein/micronutrient supplementation is required to establish which programmes will have the most benefit on body composition and on reducing the risk of age-related disorders.

1.3 Biomarkers

Since aging is a major risk factor for most age-related diseases, there arises a need for valid biomarkers to aid in early identification and potentially guide therapeutic options. However, this is complicated by the heterogeneity found both within and across different human populations. Furthermore, no single biomarker has yet to be described that can be used to monitor the aging process. Therefore, it is expected that a biomarker algorithm will be required that represents the main physiological aspects of aging such as physical characteristics, body composition, and nutritional status, along with molecules and/or genetic polymorphisms representing metabolic, hormonal, and immune functions.

1.3.1 Physical Function and Body Composition

Physical performance assessments, such as handgrip strength, gait speed, timed up and go, and 6-min walk tests have been used in a number of studies as biomarkers of frailty and the aging process. Poor performance in some or all of these is associated with increased functional decline [73] or higher mortality rates [74, 75]. Poorer performance in some of these parameters has also been associated with higher risk of cardiovascular disease, dementia cognitive impairment, or disabilities [76]. As detailed above, decreased performance in such physical tests has been associated with changes in body composition due to decreased muscle mass and increased body fat. Furthermore, studies which have analysed muscle mass have reported that lower muscle mass is associated with increased occurrence of disabilities and functional impairment [76–78]. Therefore, it is important to include techniques, such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and computer tomography, for assessment of various aspects of body composition.

1.3.2 Circulating Molecular Biomarkers

A number of systematic reviews have provided strong support for the use of blood lipids as predictors of mortality and age-related diseases [76, 79, 80]. Furthermore, high plasma levels of inflammation-related factors, such as interleukin (IL)-6 and tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α, have been linked with lower handgrip strength and walking speed in aged adults [81], and C-reactive protein (CRP) and IL-6 have been linked with all-cause mortality [76]. Interestingly, studies of centenarians have shown lower levels of such inflammatory biomarkers compared with younger cohorts [82], with a concomitant increase in the levels of anti-inflammatory biomarkers like IL-10 [76, 83].

A number of hormones and hormonal signalling pathways are known to be perturbed in aging and age-related diseases. For example, impaired muscle strength and performance in aging has been linked to the perturbations of insulin signalling in regulating muscle protein metabolism. For these reasons, measurements of insulin resistance in clinical settings could provide an additional biomarker related to increased risk of morbidities and mortality [84]. Other age-related changes in hormones include decreased circulating levels of growth hormone and insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) as well as thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) and free thyroxine [85]. This also includes the sex hormones testosterone and estrogen in males and females, respectively [86, 87]. In addition, decreased levels of adiponectin occur with aging, and this has been linked with several adverse health outcomes [88]. This is consistent with the finding of another study which found higher levels of adiponectin in serum from long-

lived Greek (90+ years-old) individuals compared with younger controls [89].

A number of vitamins are known to be altered with aging and the strongest evidence for this is a decrease in the levels of vitamin D, which has been linked with age-related disorders such as mild cognitive impairment and sarcopenia [90, 91]. Finally, increased levels of cardiac troponin have been associated with myocardial damage, skeletal muscle aging, and may even have a role in cancer [92].

1.3.3 Genes

Recent studies have identified five genes with polymorphisms linked to longevity. These genes encode the forkhead box protein (*FOXO*), apolipoprotein E (*APOE*), the Klotho β-glucuronidase (*KL*), angiotensin-converting enzyme (*ACE*), and IL-6 (*IL6*). A meta-analysis identified five polymorphisms associated with cardiovascular health and exceptional longevity (85+ years), consisting of *ACE* rs4340, *APOE* ε2/3/4, *FOXO3A* rs2802292, *KLOTHO* KL-VS, and *IL6* rs1800795 [93].

1.3.3.1 FOXO

A recent study from Brazil found an association of *FOXO3* (rs2802292) polymorphisms with longevity in 220 participants aged 85+ years, compared to a control group of 234 individuals 70–75 years-old [94]. The *FOXO3* gene encodes a transcription factor which regulates the stress response, and the link to lifespan has been found in a number of studies [95, 96]. The *FOXO* pathway has therefore been suggested as a potential target for age-related diseases [97].

1.3.3.2 APOE

A genome-wide association study (GWAS) of nonagenarians compared to younger individuals identified significant associations for *APOE* variants [98, 99]. This was seen by an absence of *APOE4* and enrichment of the *APOE2* allele in the nonagenarians. *APOE* isoforms have been implicated as risk factors for cardiovascular disorders and Alzheimer disease, which have been attributed to effects on inflammation, oxidative stress, and lipid regulation [100].

1.3.3.3 KL

A recent study found that the *KL* rs9536314 polymorphism played a protective role in cancers and in determining human longevity [101]. The Klotho name comes from Clotho, one of three Fates of Greek mythology, who was associated with spinning the web of human life. Disruption of the *KL* gene in mice leads to a shorter lifespan and morbidities associated with age-related disorders [102]. The Klotho protein appears to act as a hormone in regulation of oxidative stress and inflammation, via inhibition of IGF1/PI3K and TGF-β signalling pathways, and has been shown to be a potential novel cardiovascular protective factor [103].

1.3.3.4 ACE

ACE is a component of the renin-angiotensin system, involved in regulation of blood pressure and sodium homeostasis [104]. A genetic evaluation study found that the DD genotype for *ACE* was significantly associated with Alzheimer's disease, as determined using Mini-mental State Examination (MMSE) scores [105]. This association was significantly stronger when the DD ACE allele was combined with the GG allele of *TNF* gene. Another study showed that the DD ACE genotype was associated with low muscle mass in elderly people in Jakarta [106]. Thus, ACE inhibitors are being tested in a number of disease areas [107]. The mechanism may involve the prevention of mitochondrial decline, as well as improvements in endothelial function and muscle metabolism [108].

1.3.3.5 IL-6

A recent study of a long-lived Chinese population showed a significantly lower frequency of the C-allele of the *IL6* rs1800796 locus compared to the control group, suggesting that this may be an unfavourable factor for longevity [109]. Furthermore, a meta-analysis of the PubMed, Embase, China National Knowledge Infrastructure, and Wanfang databases found that an IL6 polymorphism was associated with bone

mineral density and development of osteoporosis [110]. As IL-6 is known to stimulate inflammation and auto-immunity in diseases, such as type 2 diabetes, atherosclerosis, cardiovascular disorders, depression, Alzheimer's disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, prostate cancer, and rheumatoid arthritis, there is considerable interest in development of anti-IL-6 therapeutics for many of these conditions [111, 112].

1.3.3.6 Genetic Networks

A recent study constructed a functional interaction network leading to identification of 215 polymorphisms related to longevity of long-lived smokers compared to younger smokers [113]. The long-lived smokers were chosen on the possibility that their long survival was due to an innate resistance to the effects of cigarette smoking. The resulting network was used to generate a risk score that was significantly associated with a 22% increase in probability of being aged 90–99 years-old and a threefold increased probability of being over 100 years-old, as compared to being 52–79 years-old. This score was also linked with an 11% reduction in cancer prevalence. Pathways enriched in the network included PI3/AKT, insulin/IGF, and FOXO signalling, which have already been associated with aging and age-related diseases.

1.4 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

Research into increasing the healthspan is more critical than that of aiming to extend the lifespan. It is clear that healthy aging depends on a complex interaction between genetic predisposition and lifestyle factors. The combination of genetic and other molecular biomarkers may be used to assess risk of developing age-related disorders, which may allow interventions to delay or slow the aging process. Maintaining a healthy body composition consisting of higher muscular mass and lower adiposity appears to be important. A number of lifestyle interventions may also be helpful in this regard with the most promising approaches being the incorporation of a diet consisting of fewer calories and higher protein content and undertaking a combined resistance and aerobic exercise programme. There are also a number of natural products and pharmaceuticals undergoing testing which are mostly aimed at improving metabolism. Finally, several promising physiometric and molecular biomarkers have been identified which can be used to assess risk and pave the way for personalized approaches to maximize the chances of people achieving longer, healthier lives.

References

1. Schork NJ, Raghavachari N, Workshop Speakers and Participants (2018) Report: NIA workshop on translating genetic variants associated with longevity into drug targets. Geroscience 40(5–6):523–538
2. Guest PC (2019) Metabolic biomarkers in aging and anti-aging research. Adv Exp Med Biol 1178:247–264
3. Guest PC (2019) Of mice, whales, jellyfish and men: in pursuit of increased longevity. Adv Exp Med Biol 1178:1–24
4. Population Pyramids of the World from 1950 to 2100. https://www.populationpyramid.net/
5. Hazzard WR (1989) Why do women live longer than men? Biologic differences that influence longevity. Postgrad Med 85(5):271–278. 281–283
6. Austad SN, Bartke A (2015) Sex differences in longevity and in responses to anti-aging interventions: a mini-review. Gerontology 62(1):40–46
7. Brooks RC, Garratt MG (2017) Life history evolution, reproduction, and the origins of sex-dependent aging and longevity. N Y Acad Sci 1389(1):92–107
8. Sampathkumar NK, Bravo JI, Chen Y, Danthi PS, Donahue EK, Lai RW et al (2020) Widespread sex dimorphism in aging and age-related diseases. Hum Genet 139(3):333–356. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00439-019-02082-w
9. Allard M, Lebre V, Robine J-M (1998) The longest life: 122 extraordinary years of Jeanne Calment - From Van Gogh's time to ours. W.H.Freeman & Co., Ltd., New York, NY
10. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kane_Tanaka
11. https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/obesity-and-overweight
12. Global BMI Mortality Collaboration, Di Angelantonio E, Bhupathiraju ShN, Wormser D, Gao P, Kaptoge S et al (2016) Body-mass index and all-cause mortality: individual-participant-data meta-analysis of 239 prospective studies in four continents. Lancet 388(10046):776–786
13. Di Angelantonio E, Bhupathiraju ShN, Wormser D, Gao P, Kaptoge S; Global BMI Mortality

Collaboration et al (2016) Body-mass index and all-cause mortality: individual-participant-data meta-analysis of 239 prospective studies in four continents. Lancet 388(10046):776–786
14. Oreopoulos A, Kalantar-Zadeh K, Sharma AM, Fonarow GC (2009) The obesity paradox in the elderly: potential mechanisms and clinical implications. Clin Geriatr Med 25(4):643–659
15. Bales CW, Buhr GT (2009) Body mass trajectory, energy balance, and weight loss as determinants of health and mortality in older adults. Obes Facts 2(3):171–178
16. Sharma A, Vallakati A, Einstein AJ, Lavie CJ, Arbab-Zadeh A, Lopez-Jimenez F et al (2014) Relationship of body mass index with total mortality, cardiovascular mortality, and myocardial infarction after coronary revascularization: evidence from a meta-analysis. Mayo Clin Proc 89(8):1080–1100
17. Rankinen T, Kim SY, Pérusse L, Després JP, Bouchard C (1999) The prediction of abdominal visceral fat level from body composition and anthropometry: ROC analysis. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord 23(8):801–809
18. Romero-Corral A, Somers VK, Sierra-Johnson J, Jensen MD, Thomas RJ, Squires RW et al (2007) Diagnostic performance of body mass index to detect obesity in patients with coronary artery disease. Eur Heart J 28(17):2087–2093
19. Lemieux S, Prud'homme D, Bouchard C, Tremblay A, Despres JP (1996) A single threshold value of waist girth identifies normal-weight and overweight subjects with excess visceral adipose tissue. Am J Clin Nutr 64(5):685–693
20. Goodpaster BH, Krishnaswami S, Resnick H, Kelley DE, Haggerty C, Harris TB et al (2003) Association between regional adipose tissue distribution and both type 2 diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance in elderly men and women. Diabetes Care 26(2):372–379
21. Goodpaster BH, Krishnaswami S, Harris TB, Katsiaras A, Kritchevsky SB, Simonsick EM et al (2005) Obesity, regional body fat distribution, and the metabolic syndrome in older men and women. Arch Intern Med 165(7):777–783
22. Tchernof A, Després JP (2013) Pathophysiology of human visceral obesity: an update. Physiol Rev 93(1):359–404
23. Beavers KM, Beavers DP, Houston DK, Harris TB, Hue TF, Koster A et al (2013) Associations between body composition and gait-speed decline: results from the health, aging, and body composition study. Am J Clin Nutr 97(3):552–560
24. de Hollander EL, Bemelmans WJ, Boshuizen HC, Friedrich N, Wallaschofski H, Guallar-Castillón P (2012) The association between waist circumference and risk of mortality considering body mass index in 65- to 74-year-olds: a meta-analysis of 29 cohorts involving more than 58 000 elderly persons. Int J Epidemiol 41(3):805–817
25. Romero-Corral A, Somers VK, Sierra-Johnson J, Thomas RJ, Bailey KR, Collazo-Clavell ML et al (2008) Accuracy of body mass index to diagnose obesity in the US adult population. Int J Obes 32(6):959–966
26. Vlassopoulos A, Combet E, Lean ME (2014) Changing distributions of body size and adiposity with age. Int J Obes 38(6):857–864
27. Nowson C, O'Connell S (2015) Protein requirements and recommendations for older people: a review. Nutrients 7(8):6874–6899
28. Mitchell WK, Williams J, Atherton P, Larvin M, Lund J, Narici M (2012) Sarcopenia, dynapenia, and the impact of advancing age on human skeletal muscle size and strength; a quantitative review. Front Physiol 3:260. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphys.2012.00260
29. Kortebein P, Ferrando A, Lombeida J, Wolfe R, Evans WJ (2007) Effect of 10 days of bed rest on skeletal muscle in healthy older adults. JAMA 297:1772–1774
30. Wall BT, Dirks ML, Snijders T, Senden JM, Dolmans J, van Loon LJ (2014) Substantial skeletal muscle loss occurs during only 5 days of disuse. Acta Physiol (Oxf) 210:600–611
31. Wall BT, Dirks ML, van Loon LJ (2013) Skeletal muscle atrophy during short-term disuse: implications for age-related sarcopenia. Ageing Res Rev 12:898–906
32. Tieland M, Trouwborst I, Clark BC (2018) Skeletal muscle performance and ageing. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle 9(1):3–19
33. Newman AB, Yanez D, Harris T, Duxbury A, Enright PL, Cardiovascular Study Research Group et al (2001) Cardiovascular study research group weight change in old age and its association with mortality. J Am Geriatr Soc 49(10):1309–1318
34. Delmonico MJ, Harris TB, Visser M, Park SW, Conroy MB, Health, Aging and Body et al (2009) Health, aging, and body longitudinal study of muscle strength, quality, and adipose tissue infiltration. Am J Clin Nutr 90(6):1579–1585
35. Miller SL, Wolfe RR (2008) The danger of weight loss in the elderly. J Nutr Health Aging 12(7):487–491
36. Santanasto AJ, Goodpaster BH, Kritchevsky SB, Miljkovic I, Satterfield S, Schwartz AV et al (2017) Body composition remodeling and mortality: the health aging and body composition study. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 72(4):513–519
37. Fabbri E, Chiles Shaffer N, Gonzalez-Freire M, Shardell MD, Zoli M, Studenski SA et al (2017) Early body composition, but not body mass, is associated with future accelerated decline in muscle quality. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle 8(3):490–499
38. Cameron J, McPhee JS, Jones DA, Degens H (2019) Five-year longitudinal changes in thigh muscle mass of septuagenarian men and women assessed with DXA and MRI. Aging Clin Exp Res 32(4):617–624. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40520-019-01248-w

39. Fragala MS, Cadore EL, Dorgo S, Izquierdo M, Kraemer WJ, Peterson MD et al (2019) Resistance training for older adults: position statement from the National Strength and conditioning association. J Strength Cond Res 33(8):2019–2052
40. Binder EF, Yarasheski KE, Steger-May K, Sinacore DR, Brown M, Schechtman KB et al (2011) Effects of progressive resistance training on body composition in frail older adults: results of a randomized, controlled trial. J Gerontol Ser A Biol Sci Med Sci 60(11):1425–1431
41. Fiatarone MA, O'Neill EF, Ryan ND, Clements KM, Solares GR, Nelson ME et al (1994) Exercise training and nutritional supplementation for physical frailty in very elderly people. N Engl J Med 330(25):1769–1775
42. Cunha PM, Ribeiro AS, Tomeleri CM, Schoenfeld BJ, Silva AM, Souza MF et al (2018) The effects of resistance training volume on osteosarcopenic obesity in older women. J Sports Sci 36:1564–1571
43. de Oliveira SA, Dutra MT, de Moraes WMAM, Funghetto SS, Lopes de Farias D, Dos Santos PHF et al (2018) Resistance training-induced gains in muscle strength, body composition, and functional capacity are attenuated in elderly women with sarcopenic obesity. Clin Interv Aging 13:411–417
44. Cruz-Jentoft AJ, Landi F, Schneider SM, Zúñiga C, Arai H, Boirie Y et al (2014) Prevalence of and interventions for sarcopenia in ageing adults: a systematic review. Report of the international sarcopenia initiative (EWGSOP and IWGS). Age Ageing 43(6):748–759
45. Ziegler AK, Jensen SM, Schjerling P, Mackey AL, Andersen JL, Kjaer M (2019) The effect of resistance exercise upon age-related systemic and local skeletal muscle inflammation. Exp Gerontol 121:19–32
46. Lichtenberg T, von Stengel S, Sieber C, Kemmler W (2019) The favorable effects of a high-intensity resistance training on sarcopenia in older community-dwelling men with osteosarcopenia: the randomized controlled FrOST study. Clin Interv Aging 14:2173–2186
47. Breen L, Phillips SM (2011) Skeletal muscle protein metabolism in the elderly: interventions to counteract the "anabolic resistance" of ageing. Nutr Metab (Lond) 8:68. https://doi.org/10.1186/1743-7075-8-68
48. Gersovitz M, Motil K, Munro HN, Scrimshaw NS, Young VR (1982) Human protein requirements: assessment of the adequacy of the current recommended dietary allowance for dietary protein in elderly men and women. Am J Clin Nutr 35(1):6–14
49. Millward DJ, Fereday A, Gibson N, Pacy PJ (1997) Aging, protein requirements, and protein turnover. Am J Clin Nutr 66(4):774–786
50. Houston DK, Nicklas BJ, Ding J, Harris TB, Tylavsky FA, Newman AB et al (2008) Dietary protein intake is associated with lean mass change in older, community-dwelling adults: the health, aging, and body composition (health ABC) study. Am J Clin Nutr 87(6):150–155
51. Franzke B, Neubauer O, Cameron-Smith D, Wagner KH (2018) Dietary protein, muscle and physical function in the very old. Nutrients 10(7):E935. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu10070935
52. Paddon-Jones D, Rasmussen BB (2009) Dietary protein recommendations and the prevention of sarcopenia. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 12(1):86–90
53. Tieland M, Borgonjen-Van den Berg KJ, van Loon LJ, de Groot LC (2012) Dietary protein intake in community-dwelling, frail, and institutionalized elderly people: scope for improvement. Eur J Nutr 51(2):173–179
54. Dupont J, Dedeyne L, Dalle S, Koppo K, Gielen E (2019) The role of omega-3 in the prevention and treatment of sarcopenia. Aging Clin Exp Res 31(6):825–836
55. Strandberg E, Ponsot E, Piehl-Aulin K, Falk G, Kadi F (2019) Resistance training alone or combined with N-3 PUFA-rich diet in older women: effects on muscle fiber hypertrophy. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 74(4):489–494
56. Rejnmark L (2011) Effects of vitamin d on muscle function and performance: a review of evidence from randomized controlled trials. Ther Adv Chronic Dis 2(1):25–37
57. Antoniak AE, Greig CA (2017) The effect of combined resistance exercise training and vitamin D3 supplementation on musculoskeletal health and function in older adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Open 7(7):e014619. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2016-014619
58. Tessier AJ, Chevalier S (2018) An update on protein, Leucine, Omega-3 fatty acids, and vitamin D in the prevention and treatment of sarcopenia and functional decline. Nutrients 10(8):E1099. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu10081099
59. Solfrizzi V, Panza F, Imbimbo BP, D'Introno A, Galluzzo L, Gandin C et al (2015) Coffee consumption habits and the risk of mild cognitive impairment: the Italian longitudinal study on aging. J Alzheimers Dis 47(4):889–899
60. Ding M, Bhupathiraju SN, Satija A, van Dam RM, Hu FB (2016) Long-term coffee consumption and risk of cardiovascular disease: a systematic review and a dose-response meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies. Circulation 129(6):643–659
61. Saito E, Inoue M, Sawada N, Shimazu T, Yamaji T, Iwasaki M et al (2015) Association of coffee intake with total and cause-specific mortality in a Japanese population: the Japan public health center-based prospective study. Am J Clin Nutr 101(5):1029–1037
62. Guallar E, Blasco-Colmenares E, Arking DE, Zhao D (2017) Moderate coffee intake can be part of a healthy diet. Ann Intern Med 167(4):283–284
63. Kim Y, Je Y, Giovannucci E (2019) Coffee consumption and all-cause and cause-specific mortality: a meta-analysis by potential modifiers. Eur J Epidemiol 34(8):731–752

64. Takahashi K, Ishigami A (2017) Anti-aging effects of coffee. Aging (Albany NY) 9(8):1863–1864
65. Rena G, Hardie DG, Pearson ER (2017) The mechanisms of action of metformin. Diabetologia 60(9):1577–1585
66. Campbell JM, Bellman SM, Stephenson MD, Lisy K (2017) Metformin reduces all-cause mortality and diseases of ageing independent of its effect on diabetes control: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ageing Res Rev 40:31–44
67. Salvatore T, Clara Pafundi P, Morgillo F, Di Liello R, Galiero R, Nevola R et al (2020) Metformin: an old drug against old age and associated morbidities. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 16:108025. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabres.2020.108025
68. Knowler WC, Barrett-Connor E, Fowler SE, Hamman RF, Lachin JM, Walker EA et al (2002) Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. N Engl J Med 346(6):393–403
69. Hsu KJ, Liao CD, Tsai MW, Chen CN (2019) Effects of exercise and nutritional intervention on body composition, metabolic health, and physical performance in adults with Sarcopenic obesity: a meta-analysis. Nutrients 11(9):E2163. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu11092163
70. Beaudry KM, Devries MC (2019) Nutritional strategies to combat type 2 diabetes in aging adults: the importance of protein. Front Nutr 6:138. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnut.2019.00138
71. Liao CD, Lee PH, Hsiao DJ, Huang SW, Tsauo JY, Chen HC et al (2018) Effects of protein supplementation combined with exercise intervention on frailty indices, body composition, and physical function in frail older adults. Nutrients 10(12):E1916. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu10121916
72. Seino S, Sumi K, Narita M, Yokoyama Y, Ashida K, Kitamura A et al (2018) Effects of low-dose dairy protein plus micronutrient supplementation during resistance exercise on muscle mass and physical performance in older adults: a randomized, controlled trial. J Nutr Health Aging 22(1):59–67
73. Wennie Huang WN, Perera S, VanSwearingen J, Studenski S (2010) Performance measures predict onset of activity of daily living difficulty in community-dwelling older adults. J Am Geriatr Soc 58(5):844–852
74. Ruff RM, Parker SB (1993) Gender- and age-specific changes in motor speed and eye-hand coordination in adults: normative values for the finger tapping and grooved pegboard tests. Percept Mot Skills 76(3 Pt 2):1219–1230
75. Ahmad R, Sayer AA, Al Snih S, Bath PA, Mortality Review Group; FALCon and HALCyon Study Teams et al (2010) Objectively measured physical capability levels and mortality: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 341:c4467. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.c4467
76. Wagner KH, Cameron-Smith D, Wessner B, Franzke B (2016) Biomarkers of aging: from function to molecular biology. Nutrients 8(6):338. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu8060338
77. Janssen I, Heymsfield SB, Ross R (2002) Low relative skeletal muscle mass (sarcopenia) in older persons is associated with functional impairment and physical disability. J Am Geriatr Soc 50(5):889–896
78. Koster A, Ding J, Stenholm S, Caserotti P, Houston DK, Nicklas BJ et al (2011) Does the amount of fat mass predict age-related loss of lean mass, muscle strength, and muscle quality in older adults? J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 66(8):888–895
79. Lewington S, Whitlock G, Clarke R, Sherliker P, Emberson J, Prospective Studies Collaboration et al (2007) Blood cholesterol and vascular mortality by age, sex, and blood pressure: a meta-analysis of individual data from 61 prospective studies with 55,000 vascular deaths. Lancet 370(9602):1829–1839
80. Briel M, Ferreira-Gonzalez I, You JJ, Karanicolas PJ, Akl EA, Wu P et al (2009) Association between change in high density lipoprotein cholesterol and cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality: systematic review and meta-regression analysis. BMJ 338:b92. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.b92
81. Visser M, Pahor M, Taaffe DR, Goodpaster BH, Simonsick EM, Newman AB et al (2002) Relationship of interleukin-6 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha with muscle mass and muscle strength in elderly men and women: the health ABC study. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 57(5):M326–M332
82. Arai Y, Martin-Ruiz CM, Takayama M, Abe Y, Takebayashi T, Koyasu S et al (2015) Inflammation, but not telomere length, predicts successful ageing at extreme old age: a longitudinal study of semi-supercentenarians. EBioMedicine 2(10):1549–1558
83. Salvioli S, Capri M, Bucci L, Lanni C, Racchi M, Uberti D et al (2009) Why do centenarians escape or postpone cancer? The role of igf-1, inflammation and p53. Cancer Immunol Immunother 58(12):1909–1917
84. Guillet C, Boirie Y (2005) Insulin resistance: a contributing factor to age-related muscle mass loss? Diabetes Metab 31(Spec No 2):5S20–5S26
85. Bartke A, Darcy J (2017) GH and ageing: pitfalls and new insights. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 31(1):113–125
86. Jasim S, Gharib H (2018) Thyroid and aging. Endocr Pract 24(4):369–374
87. Rodgers JL, Jones J, Bolleddu SI, Vanthenapalli S, Rodgers LE, Shah K et al (2019) Cardiovascular risks associated with gender and aging. J Cardiovasc Dev Dis 6(2):E19. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcdd6020019
88. Poehls J, Wassel CL, Harris TB, Havel PJ, Swarbrick MM, Health ABC Study (2009) Association of adiponectin with mortality in older adults: the health, aging, and body composition study. Diabetologia 52(4):591–595
89. Kolovou V, Diakoumakou O, Papazafiropoulou AK, Katsiki N, Fragopoulou E, Vasiliadis I et al (2018) Biomarkers and gene polymorphisms in members

of long- and short-lived families: a longevity study. Open Cardiovasc Med J 12:59–70
90. Remelli F, Vitali A, Zurlo A, Volpato S (2019) Vitamin D deficiency and sarcopenia in older persons. Nutrients 11(12):E2861. https://doi.org/10.3390/nu11122861
91. Carvalho AC, Santos NC, Portugal-Nunes C, Castanho TC, Moreira P, Costa PS et al (2019) 25-OH vitamin D levels and cognitive performance: longitudinal assessment in a healthy aging cohort. Front Aging Neurosci 11:330. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnagi.2019.00330
92. Johnston JR, Chase PB, Pinto JR (2017) Troponin through the looking-glass: emerging roles beyond regulation of striated muscle contraction. Oncotarget 9(1):1461–1482
93. Revelas M, Thalamuthu A, Oldmeadow C, Evans TJ, Armstrong NJ, Kwok JB et al (2018) Review and meta-analysis of genetic polymorphisms associated with exceptional human longevity. Mech Ageing Dev 175:24–34
94. Silva-Sena GG, Camporez D, Santos LRD, Silva ASD, Sagrillo Pimassoni LH, Tieppo A et al (2018) An association study of FOXO3 variant and longevity. Genet Mol Biol 41(2):386–396
95. Soerensen M, Nygaard M, Dato S, Stevnsner T, Bohr VA, Christensen K et al (2015) Association study of FOXO3A SNPs and aging phenotypes in Danish oldest-old individuals. Aging Cell 14(1):60–66
96. Sanese P, Forte G, Disciglio V, Grossi V, Simone C (2019) FOXO3 on the road to longevity: lessons from SNPs and chromatin hubs. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 17:737–745
97. Piskovatska V, Strilbytska O, Koliada A, Vaiserman A, Lushchak O (2019) Health benefits of anti-aging drugs. Subcell Biochem 91:339–392
98. Beekman M, Blanché H, Perola M, Hervonen A, Bezrukov V, Sikora E et al (2013) Genome-wide linkage analysis for human longevity: genetics of healthy aging study. Aging Cell 12(2):184–193
99. Brooks-Wilson AR (2013) Genetics of healthy aging and longevity. Hum Genet 132(12):1323–1338
100. Huebbe P, Nebel A, Siegert S, Moehring J, Boesch-Saadatmandi C, Most E et al (2011) APOE ε4 is associated with higher vitamin D levels in targeted replacement mice and humans. FASEB J 25(9):3262–3270
101. Zhu Z, Xia W, Cui Y, Zeng F, Li Y, Yang Z et al (2019) Klotho gene polymorphisms are associated with healthy aging and longevity: evidence from a meta-analysis. Mech Ageing Dev 178:33–40
102. Kuro-o M, Matsumura Y, Aizawa H, Kawaguchi H, Suga T, Utsugi T et al (1997) Mutation of the mouse klotho gene leads to a syndrome resembling ageing. Nature 390(6655):45–51
103. Olejnik A, Franczak A, Krzywonos-Zawadzka A, Kałużna-Oleksy M, Bil-Lula I (2018) The biological role of Klotho protein in the development of cardiovascular diseases. Biomed Res Int 2018:5171945. https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/5171945
104. Thatcher SE (2018) The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system: methods and protocols (methods in molecular biology), Softcover reprint of the original, 1st edn. Humana, Totowa, NJ. 2017 edition (8 Aug. 2018). ISBN-10: 1493983733
105. Georgiopoulos G, Chrysohoou C, Errigo A, Pes G, Metaxa V, Zaromytidou M et al (2017) Arterial aging mediates the effect of TNF-α and ACE polymorphisms on mental health in elderly individuals: insights from IKARIA study. QJM 110(9):551–557
106. Handayani MDN, Sadewa AH, Farmawati A, Rochmah W (2018) Deletion polymorphism of angiotensin-converting enzyme gene is associated with low muscle mass in elderly people in Jakarta, Indonesia. Kobe J Med Sci 64(3):E119–E125
107. Swales JD (1985) ACE inhibitors and the quality of life. J Cardiovasc Pharmacol 9(Suppl 3):S22–S25
108. Sumukadas D, Struthers AD, McMurdo ME (2006) Sarcopenia—A potential target for angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition? Gerontology 52(4):237–242
109. Gulizibaer M, Hu Y, Chen F, Li H, Cheng Z, Mayila W (2015) Association of single nucleotide polymorphisms of IL-6 gene with longevity in Uyghurs in Xinjiang. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi 95(42):3428–3431
110. Yan L, Hu R, Tu S, Cheng WJ, Zheng Q, Wang JW et al (2015) Meta-analysis of association between IL-6 -634C/G polymorphism and osteoporosis. Genet Mol Res 14(4):19225–19232
111. Bennermo M, Held C, Stemme S, Ericsson CG, Silveira A, Green F et al (2004) Genetic predisposition of the interleukin-6 response to inflammation: implications for a variety of major diseases? Clin Chem 50(11):2136–2140
112. Uciechowski P, Dempke WCM (2020) Interleukin-6: a masterplayer in the cytokine network. Oncology 20:1–7
113. Levine ME, Crimmins EM (2016) A genetic network associated with stress resistance, longevity, and cancer in humans. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 71(6):703–712

Targeting Cancer Metabolism and Current Anti-Cancer Drugs

2

Witchuda Sukjoi, Jarunya Ngamkham, Paul V. Attwood, and Sarawut Jitrapakdee

Abstract

Several studies have exploited the metabolic hallmarks that distinguish between normal and cancer cells, aiming at identifying specific targets of anti-cancer drugs. It has become apparent that metabolic flexibility allows cancer cells to survive during high anabolic demand or the depletion of nutrients and oxygen. Cancers can reprogram their metabolism to the microenvironments by increasing aerobic glycolysis to maximize ATP production, increasing glutaminolysis and anabolic pathways to support bioenergetic and biosynthetic demand during rapid proliferation. The increased key regulatory enzymes that support the relevant pathways allow us to design small molecules which can specifically block activities of these enzymes, preventing growth and metastasis of tumors. In this review, we discuss metabolic adaptation in cancers and highlight the crucial metabolic enzymes involved, specifically those involved in aerobic glycolysis, glutaminolysis, de novo fatty acid synthesis, and bioenergetic pathways. Furthermore, we also review the success and the pitfalls of the current anti-cancer drugs which have been applied in pre-clinical and clinical studies.

Keywords

Cancer · Metabolism · Drug target · Enzymes · Bioenergetic

2.1 Introduction

Cancer is an abnormality of cells which lose the ability to regulate their growth. Due to the unlimited proliferation and acquired motility, cancer cells can further invade the surrounding or distant tissues, in a process known as metastasis, which is a major cause of death. Cancer cells are different from normal cells in several aspects. For example, they have the ability to sustain proliferative signaling, evade growth suppression, resist apoptosis, induce angiogenesis, enable replicative immortality, invade other tissues and suppress immune recognition. Recently, metabolic reprogramming has been added as another important cancer hallmark [1, 2].

W. Sukjoi · S. Jitrapakdee (✉)
Faculty of Science, Department of Biochemistry, Mahidol University, Bangkok, Thailand
e-mail: sarawut.jit@mahidol.ac.th

J. Ngamkham
Graduate Program in Molecular Medicine, Multidisciplinary Unit, Faculty of Science, Mahidol University, Bangkok, Thailand

P. V. Attwood
School of Molecular Sciences, The University of Western Australia, Perth, WA, USA

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_2

The metabolic reprograming in cancers has recently attracted attention over the last decade since the discovery of Warburg's effect, or aerobic glycolysis, which describes the phenomenon that cancers metabolize glucose to lactate, regardless of the presence of oxygen, because of a defect of mitochondria [3]. As a result of this phenomenon, pyruvate, the end product of glycolysis, is converted to lactate with little ATP production. Subsequent studies have shown that aerobic glycolysis provides several advantages for cancer cells [4, 5]. For example, glycolysis allows cancer cells to grow under conditions where the oxygen concentration fluctuates or during hypoxia [6, 7]. Glycolysis also provides ATP at a faster rate than oxidative phosphorylation [8]. Although glycolysis generates relatively little ATP per molecule of glucose, cancer cells can markedly increase glucose uptake and glycolysis such that ATP yield can meet their demands [9]. Regarding the increase of biomass, glycolysis provides several important biosynthetic precursors required during rapid proliferation, such as nucleotides, amino acids, and lipids [10, 11]. Lastly, glycolysis minimizes the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) which are deleterious to cancer cells [12].

In addition to aerobic glycolysis, cancer cells also alter other metabolic pathways such as repurposing the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle to support biosynthesis, increasing biosynthesis of lipids, amino acids and nucleotides to meet the high anabolic demand during rapid cell growth. Thus, targeting these metabolic pathways might be effective in the treatment of many cancers. Although several inhibitors targeting various metabolic pathways have been developed for decades, some have failed during the clinical trials because of their side effects and low efficacy. In recent years, novel anti-cancer drugs with excellent efficacy that target both glycolytic and bioenergetics pathways have been reported. Here we highlight and discuss some key metabolic enzymes which receive much attention as attractive anti-cancer targets (Table 2.1). We also review the recent anti-cancer drugs which have been developed to target those key enzymes, including their inhibitory mechanisms and anti-neoplasia action on cancer cells. The metabolic pathways and enzymes comprising these anti-cancer drug targets are shown in Fig. 2.1.

2.2 Glycolysis

Glucose is the easiest nutrient for most living cells to use because of its structure. Cancer cells also prefer to use glucose to support their growth. Increased glycolytic rate and expression of glycolytic enzymes clearly indicates that cancer cells rely on this pathway to support their growth and survival. Because glycolysis is an earliest catabolic pathway of glucose, inhibition of this pathway can effectively inhibit downstream pathways, thus providing an effective therapeutic means to block cancer growth.

2.2.1 Hexokinase

Hexokinase (HK) is the first regulatory step of glycolysis. HK catalyzes the phosphorylation of glucose to form glucose-6-phosphate. Four tissue-specific isozymes of HK, HK1, HK2, HK3, and HK4, are found in mammals. Although these HK isozymes catalyze the same reaction, they have some different kinetic properties [13]. HK1, HK2, and HK3 have a relatively low K_m (the substrate concentration at which the reaction rate is half maximal) for glucose, while HK4, also known as glucokinase, has a high K_m for glucose and is exclusively expressed in liver and pancreas [13]. HK1 is ubiquitously expressed in brain and kidney, while HK2 is expressed in skeletal and cardiac muscles. Since HK2 is aberrantly increased in several cancers such as hepatocellular carcinoma, pancreatic cancer, ovarian cancer, lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, breast cancer, and renal cancer [14–19], HK2 is regarded as a potential target for cancer therapy.

2-deoxyglucose (2-DG) is the substrate analog of glucose in which the hydroxyl group of carbon 2 (C2) is replaced with a hydrogen. After entering into cancer cells, 2-DG can still be phosphorylated by HK2 to generate 2-deoxyglucose-6-phosphate (2-DG6P) but cannot be further

Table 2.1 Target metabolic enzymes for anti-cancer drug development

Target	Drug	Effect	Development phase	Reference
Glycolysis				
Hexokinase	2-Deoxyglucose	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer	[25]
			In vivo: Osteosarcoma, NSCLC	[30]
			Phase I/II trial: Glioblastoma	[32]
	3-Bromopyruvate	Inhibition	In vitro: Liver cancer, leukemia, nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC)	[34, 35, 39]
			In vivo: Liver cancer	[38]
	Benserazide	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: Colon cancer	[42]
	Xanthohumol	Inhibition	In vitro: Colon cancer, NSCLC, breast cancer, cervical cancer, colorectal cancer	[44–50]
			In vivo: Colorectal cancer	[44]
Pyruvate kinase	Shikonin	Inhibition	In vitro: Fibrosarcoma, leukemia, lung cancer, drug-sensitive and resistant cell lines, liver cancer, prostate cancer, Lewis lung carcinoma, melanoma, esophageal cancer, bladder cancer	[62, 64–68, 70–72]
			In vivo: Sarcoma, liver cancer, prostate cancer, leukemia, melanoma, esophageal	[64, 68, 70, 71]
			Clinical trial: Lung cancer	[69]
	DASA-58	Activation	In vitro: NSCLC	[75]
	TEPP-46	Activation	In vivo: NSCLC	[75]
	Micheliolide	Activation	In vitro: Leukemia, pancreatic adenocarcinoma, neuroblastoma	[76]
			In vivo: Leukemia xenograft zebrafish	[76]
Lactate dehydrogenase-A	Oxamate	Inhibition	In vitro: Nasopharyngeal cancer, gastric cancer, pituitary adenoma, Burkitt lymphoma	[79, 90–92]
			In vivo:Nasopharyngeal cancer,pituitary adenoma	[90, 92]
	FX11	Inhibition	In vitro: Lymphoma, pancreatic cancer, prostate cancer, osteosarcoma, gallbladder cancer	[88, 93–95]
			In vitro/in vivo: Lymphoma, osteosarcoma, gallbladder cancer	[88, 94, 95]
	Galloflavin	Inhibition	In vitro:Liver cancer, breast cancer, Burkitt lymphoma, endometrial cancer	[98–101]

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Target	Drug	Effect	Development phase	Reference
MCT-1 and MCT-4	AR-C155858	Inhibition	In vitro: Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, Ras-transformed fibroblasts, multiple myeloma, breast cancer	[113, 119–123]
			In vivo: Ras-transformed fibroblasts, breast cancer	[119–123]
	AZD3965	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer, small cell lung cancer, B-cell lymphoma and Burkitt lymphoma	[116, 124–126]
			In vivo:Breast cancer, small cell lung cancer, B-cell lymphoma and Burkitt lymphoma	[116, 124–126]
			Phase I trial: Several solid tumors	[128]
	α-Cyano-4-hydroxy cinnamate	Inhibition	In vitro: Multiple myeloma, glioma, breast cancer	[120, 129, 130]
			In vivo: Glioma, breast cancer, lung cancer, colorectal cancer	[129–131]
	Syrosingopine	Inhibition	In vitro: Cervical cancer, breast cancer, leukemia	[133]
	N,N dialkylcyanocinnamic acid	Inhibition	In vitro: Colorectal adenocarcinoma, breast cancer	[134]
	Lonidamine	Inhibition	In vitro: Melanoma	[135]
			In vivo: Melanoma	[136]
Mitochondrial metabolism				
Pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase	Dichloroacetate	Inhibition	In vitro:Prostate cancer, breast cancer, colorectal cancer, NSCLC, glioblastoma	[149–154]
			In vivo:Breast cancer, colorectal cancer, NSCLC, glioblastoma	[150, 152–154]
			Phase I trial: Glioblastoma	[155]
	CP-613	Inhibition	In vitro:NSCLC, breast cancer, kidney cancer	[156]
			In vivo: Pancreatic cancer, NSCLC	[156]
			Phase I trial: Relapsed or refractory AML, metastatic pancreatic cancer	[158–160]
			Phase II trial: Relapsed or refractory small cell lung cancer	[159]
			Phase III trial: Metastatic pancreatic cancer	[161]
TCA cycle				

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Target	Drug	Effect	Development phase	Reference
Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 (IDH1)	BAY-1436032	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: Glioblastoma, AML	[179, 180]
			Phase I trial: AML, solid tumors	(NCT03127735, NCT02746081)
	IDH305	Inhibition	In vivo: Melanoma	[181]
			Phase I trial: Advanced malignancies that harbor IDHR132 mutations	[182, 359]
	Ivosidenib	Inhibition	In vitro: Chondrosarcoma	[185]
			Ex vivo: Primary human AML myeloblast	[184]
			In vivo: Glioma	[186]
			Phase I trial: Relapsed or refractory AML	[360]
	LY3410738	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: AML	[188]
Isocitrate dehydrogenase 2 (IDH2)	AGI-6780	Inhibition	In vitro: Human glioblastoma, erythroleukemia	[189–191]
	Enasidenib	Inhibition	Ex vivo: AML	[192, 193]
			In vivo: AML	[192]
			Phase I/II trial: Hematologic neoplasms	[361]
Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 and 2 (IDH1 and IDH2)	AG-881	Inhibition	Ex vivo/in vivo: Primary humanAML	[196]
			Phase I trial: Gliomas	[197]
Oxidative phosphorylation				
Mitochondrial respiratory complex I	Metformin	Inhibition	In vitro: Osteosarcoma, liver cancer, breast cancer, AML, colon cancer, prostate cancer	[204, 206–212]
			Ex vivo: AML	[207]
			In vivo: AML, colon cancer, prostate cancer	[207, 208, 211]
			Clinical study: Colorectal cancer	[215]
	Phenformin	Inhibition	In vitro: Rectal cancer	[218]
			In vivo: Breast cancer	[217]
Glutaminolysis				

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Target	Drug	Effect	Development phase	Reference
Glutaminase	DON	Inhibition	In vitro: Human lymphoblast, neuroblastomas, sarcoma	[240, 245]
			In vivo: Leukemia, murine mammary cancer, colon carcinoma, lung cancer, neuroblastomas, sarcoma	[243, 245]
			Clinical trials: Metastatic breast cancer, bronchogenic carcinoma, gastrointestinal adenocarcinoma, lung cancer, colorectal cancer, sarcoma, advanced refractory tumors	[243–245]
	Acivicin	Inhibition	In vitro: Leukemia, ovarian cancer	[241, 243]
			In vivo: Breast cancer, lung cancer	[241, 243]
			Phase II trial: Glioma	[243]
			Phase I trial: Several solid tumors	[362]
	BPTES	Inhibition	In vitro: Glioblastoma, human lung fibroblast and immortalized human kidney epithelial cell expressing conditional version of MYC, lymphoma	[250–252, 363]
			In vivo: Lymphoma	[251, 252]
	CB-839	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer, NSCLC, leukemia, ovarian cancer, myeloma	[254–258]
			In vivo: Breast cancer, myeloma	[254, 258]
			Phase I/II trial: Several solid tumors	[259]
	Brachyanthera A8	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer	[260]
	Physapubescink	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: Pancreatic cancer	[261]
De novo fatty acid synthesis				
ATP citrate lyase	SB-204990	Inhibition	In vitro: Liver cancer, NSCLC, prostate cancer, ovarian cancer	[276, 277]
			In vivo: Prostate cancer, lung cancer, pancreatic ductal carcinoma	[277]
	Cucurbitacin B (CuB)	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer, pancreatic cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, NSCLC, prostate cancer, HUVEC	[270, 280–282, 284–287]
			In vivo: Breast cancer, pancreatic cancer, chick chorioallantoic membrane	[282, 284, 287]
	NDI-091143	Inhibition	–	[289]

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Target	Drug	Effect	Development phase	Reference
Acetyl-CoA carboxylase	TOFA	Inhibition	In vitro: Colon cancer, lung cancer, prostate cancer, ovarian cancer, renal cell carcinoma, breast cancer	[301–305]
			In vivo: Ovarian cancer	[302]
	Soraphen A	Inhibition	In vitro:Breast cancer, prostate cancer, liver cancer	[295, 310, 311]
			In vivo: Breast cancer	[295]
	ND-630	Inhibition	In vitro: Liver cancer	[312]
	ND-646	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: NSCLC	[294]
	ND-654	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: Liver cancer	[317]
Fatty acid synthase	Cerulenin	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer	[330]
			In vivo: Ovarian cancer	[331]
	C75	Inhibition	In vitro: Breast cancer	[336–339]
			In vivo: Breast cancer	[340]
	Orlistat	Inhibition	In vitro: Prostate cancer, breast cancer, ovarian cancer, stomach cancer	[343, 345–348]
	Fasnall	Inhibition	In vitro/in vivo: Breast cancer	[350]
	TVB-2604	Inhibition	In vivo: Colon cancer	[356]
			Phase I trial: Solid tumors	[357, 358, 364]

metabolized by the downstream steps in glycolytic pathway [20, 21]. Accumulation of 2-DG6P in the cells increases in organic phosphate trapping, resulting in depletion of cellular energy and causes cell death [22–26]. In vitro studies have shown that 2-DG treatment inhibits cell growth, cell cycle progression and lactic acid production in osteosarcoma cell line 143b, especially under hypoxic conditions [27–29]. Similarly, 2-DG restrains growth and clonogenicity of breast cancer cells through induction of apoptosis [25]. Although 2-DG possesses inhibitory effects on tumor growth in vitro, this compound alone does not show a significant anti-neoplastic effect in animal models [30]. However, 2-DG in combination with adriamycin or paclitaxel shows a significant inhibitory effect on growth of osteosarcoma or non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) in xenograft mouse models [30]. Further studies showed that long-term treatment with 2-DG can cause chemoresistance through the upregulation of the multidrug resistance P-glycoprotein (P-gp), which functions by outward transport of 2-DG [31]. A clinical study showed that the combination of oral administration of 2-DG with radiotherapy is safe and could be used in glioblastoma patients [32]. Nevertheless, chronic administration of 2-DG has adverse side effects including reduced food intake and reduced weight gain, increased cardiac vacuolization, and increased mortality in rats [33].

3-bromopyruvate (3-BrPA) is an alkylating agent and a potent HK2 inhibitor. 3-BrPA can inhibit HK2 activity and glycolysis in liver tumors and induce rat hepatoma cell death [34]. 3-BrPA treatment depletes ATP production and kills human leukemia HL-60 cells through apoptosis [35]. Mechanistically, HK2 is physically associated with the voltage-dependent anion channel (VDAC) on the outer membrane of mitochondria. This interaction blocks the access of two pro-apoptotic proteins, BAD and BAX, to the mitochondria. However, under glucose deprivation conditions, HK2 dissociates from the outer membrane of mitochondria, enabling BAD and BAX to access the mitochondria resulting in disruption of mitochondrial membrane integrity and initiation of apoptosis [36]. 3-BrPA triggers cancer cell death by modifying a cysteine residue in

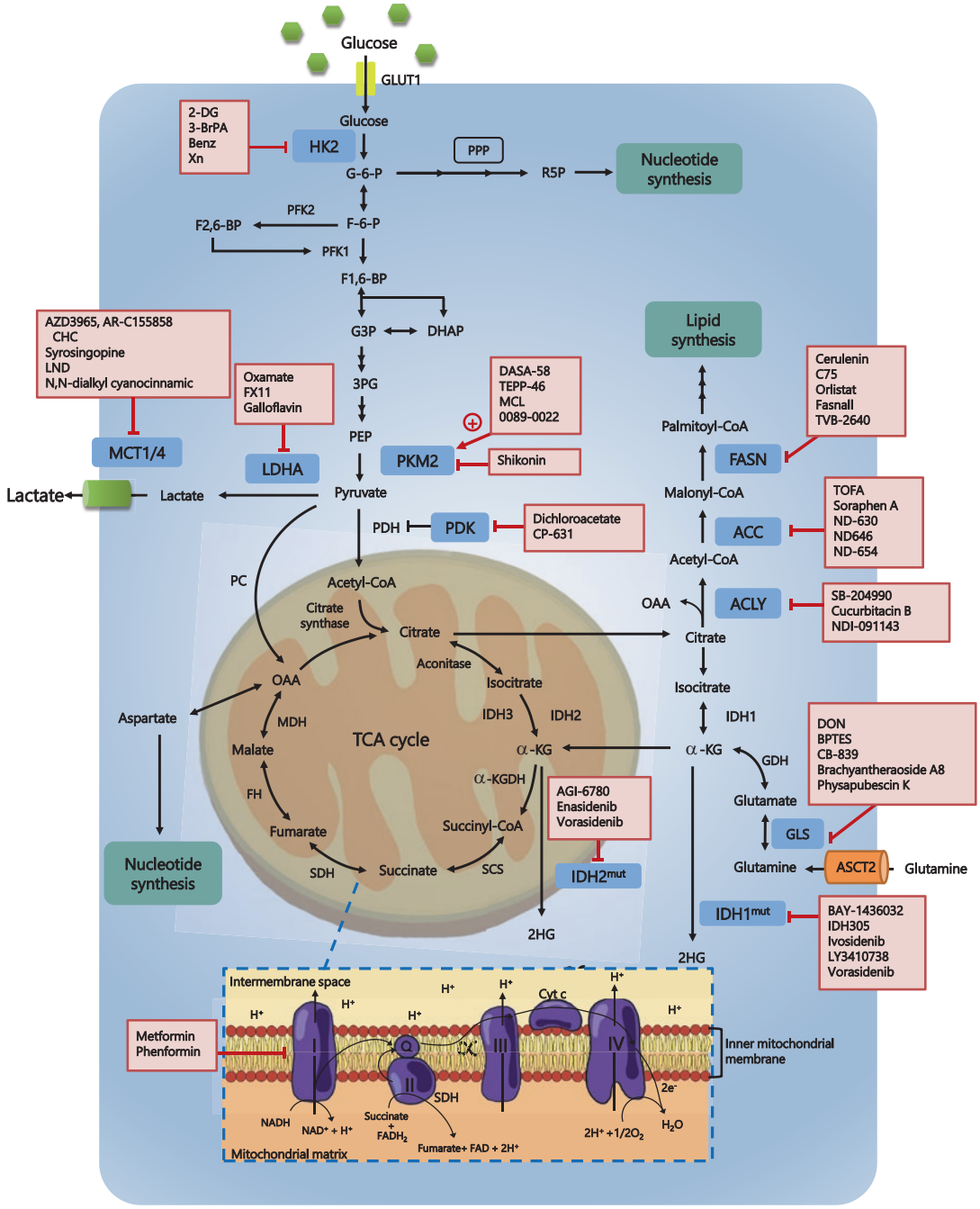


Fig. 2.1 A schematic diagram showing metabolic pathways, including glycolysis, oxidative phosphorylation, pentose phosphate pathway, and glutaminolysis in proliferating cells. The metabolic enzymes that are dysregulated in cancer cells to support their biosynthetic and bioenergetic demand can be exploited as potential therapeutic targets are shown in blue. The current anti-cancer agents are shown in red boxes. *GLUT1* glucose transporter 1, *G-6-P* glucose-6-phosphate, *PPP* pentose phosphate pathway, *R5P* ribose-5-phosphate, *F-6-P* fructose-6-phosphate, *F1,6-BP* fructose-1, 6-bisphosphate, *F2,6-BP* fructose-2, 6-bisphosphate, *PFK1* phosphofructokinase 1, *PFK2* phosphofructokinase 2, *G3P* glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate, *DHAP* dihydroxyacetone phosphate, *3PG* 3-phosphoglycerate, *PEP* phosphoenolpyruvate, *PDH* pyruvate dehydrogenase, *α-KG* α-ketoglutarate, *α-KGDH* α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase, *SCS* succinyl-CoA synthetase, *SDH* succinate dehydrogenase, *FH* fumarase, *MDH* malate dehydrogenase, *OAA* oxaloacetate, *PC* pyruvate carboxylase, *GDH* glutamate dehydrogenase, *Cyt c* cytochrome c, *ASCT2* alanine, serine, cysteine transporter 2, *HK2* hexokinase 2, *PKM2* pyruvate kinase M2, *LDHA* lactate dehydrogenase A, *MCT1/4* monocarboxylate transporter 1 or 4, *PDK* pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase, *IDH* isocitrate dehydrogenase, *GLS* glutaminase, *ACLY* ATP citrate lyase, *ACC* acetyl-CoA carboxylase, *FASN* fatty acid synthase

the active site of HK2, resulting in the dissociation of HK2 from mitochondria, in a similar manner to that of glucose depletion, and thus induces apoptosis [37]. Intra-arterial injection of 3-BrPA into the rabbit VX2 model of liver cancer selectively inhibits tumor growth without any effect on the surrounding normal liver tissue and also suppresses the development of secondary metastatic lung tumors [38]. Recently, 3-BrPA was shown to reduce ATP production and increase intracellular ROS levels, accompanied by inhibition of proliferation and induction of apoptosis in the nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) cell lines, HNE1 and CNE-2Z. In addition, 3-BrPA also exhibits an anti-tumor activity in mice bearing the CNE-2Z tumor [39]. Although 3-BrPA exhibits a potent cytotoxic effect against cancers both in vitro and in vivo, the clinical applications of 3-BrPA in cancer treatment are still problematic. For example, 3-BrPA-can induce a burning sensation in veins during intravenous infusion, a low diffusion rate to the tumor as well as inability to stay in the tumor mass due to enhanced permeability and a retention effect caused by abnormal vascular structure surrounding tumors. 3-BrPA can also rapidly attach to the thiol groups of glutathione and other proteins, reducing its efficacy to target cancer cells. However, formulating 3-BrPA with liposomes may help to overcome these obstacles in clinical oncology [40].

Benserazide (Benz) has recently been reported as a potent HK2 inhibitor and was approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Benz has long been used as an adjuvant for the treatment of Parkinson's disease [41] but has recently been used as an anti-cancer drug. This drug is predicted to partially occupy the binding site for glucose but selectively inhibits HK2 activity with a mixed mechanism of action [42]. Benz exhibits the strongest binding affinity to HK2 compared to 2-DG and 3-BrPA, [42]. In vitro studies showed that Benz reduces glucose uptake, lactate production, and ATP concentrations, leading to the loss of mitochondrial membrane potential and subsequent apoptosis. Benz also inhibits tumor growth and induces apoptosis in colorectal cancer xenograft mice [42]. Although Benz shows a good inhibitory effect on growth of tumors in in vitro and in animal models, there have been no reports of clinical trials of Benz in cancer patients.

Xanthohumol (2′,4′,4-trihydroxy-6′-methoxy-3′-prenylchalcone) (Xn), a prenylated flavonoid compound derived from hop plant (*Humulus lupulus*) has been reported as an HK2 inhibitor [43, 44]. Xn shows anti-proliferative, pro-apoptotic, and cytotoxic activities against colon cancer [45], NSCLC [46], breast cancer [47, 48], and cervical cancer [49, 50].

2.2.2 Pyruvate Kinase

Pyruvate kinase (PK) catalyzes the final step of glycolysis by conversion of phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) to pyruvate, concomitant with the production of ATP. Four isoenzymes of PK, PKL, PKR, PKM1, and PKM2 are found in humans [51]. These four different isozymes exhibit different tissue distributions and kinetic properties. PKL and PKR are produced by alternative splicing of RNA from the same gene and are expressed in liver and erythrocytes, respectively. Similarly, PKM1 and PKM2 are produced by the same gene through an alternative splicing mechanism [52]. The tetramer form of PKM1 is the catalytically active form of the enzyme. PKM1 is expressed in muscle where it supports ATP production by coupling glycolysis with oxidative phosphorylation. Unlike other isoforms of PK, the PKM2 isoform tends to form a monomer or dimer which has a low enzymatic activity. Therefore, the expression of monomeric or dimeric form of PKM2 reduces the overall glycolytic rate, which causes the accumulation of glycolytic intermediates. The increased levels of these intermediates serve as biosynthetic precursors for nucleotides, lipids, and amino acids [52–56]. PKM2 is expressed in early embryonic tissues, proliferating cells and many cancers [53–55]. In addition, the monomeric/dimeric PKM2 has a non-enzymatic function by serving as a transcriptional co-activator and as a protein kinase that can modify the expression of oncogenes or tumor-suppressor genes [57–60]. Moreover, monomeric/dimeric PKM2 stimulates expression of cyclinD1 and

c-Myc, promoting cell cycle progression and metabolic reprogramming, respectively [58, 60]. Replacement of PKM2 with PKM1 can delay growth of human lung cancer xenografts in nude mice, confirming the role of PKM2 as a tumor-promoting isoform [53]. The overexpression and the roles of PKM2 in supporting biosynthesis in cancers suggest the exploitation of PKM2 as a therapeutic target for cancer treatment.

Shikonin, a naphthoquinone derived from the root of plant *Lithospermum erythrorhizon,* is one of the well-known PKM2 inhibitors [61]. Shikonin selectively inhibits PKM2 activity, but not that of other isoforms of PK, and can effectively inhibit glycolysis in both drug-sensitive and resistant cancer cell lines [62]. Clinical studies have shown that Shikonin is a potential anti-cancer agent in various malignancies [63–69]. Shikonin has been shown to be safe and effective in treating late-stage lung cancer patients who fail to respond to operation, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy [69]. Recent studies have shown that shikonin suppresses glycolysis, concomitant with inhibition of proliferation, and induction of apoptosis in Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC) and B16 melanoma cell lines. Moreover, shikonin inhibits B16 tumor cell growth in vivo [70]. This compound also decreases the expression of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K), protein kinase B (AKT), hypoxia inducible factor (HIF)-1α and PKM2, and induces cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in esophageal cancer both in vitro and in vivo. On the other hand, overexpression of PKM2 enhances the resistance of esophageal cancer cells to shikonin [71]. A recent study showed that shikonin treatment overcomes cisplatin resistance and induces necroptosis in bladder cancer [72]. Because the monomeric or dimeric form of PKM2 can enter the nucleus and activate transcription of some oncogenes, several attempts have been made to convert dimeric PKM2 to tetrameric PKM2 which cannot activate oncogenes. N′,N′-diarylsulfonamides (DASA-58) and thieno [3, 2-b] pyrrole [3, 2-d] pyridazinone (TEPP-46), the first two compounds that were reported to selectively enhance the formation of PKM2 tetramer, reduce lactate production and inhibit growth of tumor xenografts in mice [73–75]. Other PKM2 activators including micheliolide (MCL) and 0089–0022 have also recently been reported to have anti-cancer activities [76, 77].

Although PKM2 has been an attractive therapeutic target for cancer treatment, inhibition of PKM2 activity may be a problem, because PKM2 is also expressed in other normal tissues [78].

2.2.3 Lactate Dehydrogenase-A

Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) catalyzes the reversible conversion of pyruvate to lactate, concomitant with NAD^+ production [79]. LDH consists of two isozymes, LDH-A and LDH-B. The native forms of both isozymes are tetramers, which are capable of catalyzing the same reaction. However, LDH-A favors the conversion of pyruvate to lactate, while LDH-B favors the reverse direction of the reaction. Lactate is further secreted from cells via monocarboxylic acid transporters (MCTs) to maintain intracellular pH of cancer cells. The secreted lactate creates a slightly acidic microenvironment which promotes metastasis and suppresses immune cell function [80]. LDH-A is overexpressed in many cancers and supports aerobic glycolysis [81]. Overexpression of LDH-A is also associated with chemoresistance in many cancers [82–84], indicating that it is essential for survival of these cancers under this condition. Inhibition of LDH-A expression reduces proliferation of many cancers such as esophageal squamous cell carcinoma [85], neuroblastoma [86], and KRAS-induced NSCLC in a mouse model [83]. Mechanistically, inhibition of LDH-A increases the level of cytosolic pyruvate, which subsequently enters mitochondria to drive the TCA cycle and oxidative phosphorylation. However, because of restricted amounts of oxygen supply in solid tumors, the oxidative phosphorylation is not completed, resulting in overproduction of ROS which has a toxic effect on cancer cells [87–89].

Oxamate is an isoelectronic inhibitory analog of pyruvate and a first-generation LDH-A inhibitor. Oxamate inhibits LDH-A activity by competing with its substrate, resulting in an increased

concentration of pyruvate in mitochondria. Oxamate suppresses proliferation in association with cell cycle arrest, ROS production, and apoptosis in nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells [90], gastric cancer [91], and pituitary adenoma cell lines [92]. The inhibition of LDH-A expression also diminishes c-Myc-induced clonal transformation of human lymphoblastoid cells, and Burkitt lymphoma cells [79]. In addition to oxamate, 3-hydroxyl-6-methyl-7-(phenylmethyl)-4-propylnaphthalene-1-carboxylic acid (FX11) is another LDH-A inhibitor which competes with the binding of reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH). FX11 has been shown to inhibit proliferation, invasion, and migration of PC-3 and DU145 prostate cancer cell lines [93], as well as osteosarcoma [94] and gallbladder carcinoma [95] cell lines. FX11 also induces oxidative stress and inhibits growth of human lymphoma and pancreatic cancer xenografts in mice [88]. Although, FX11 is an effective therapeutic, the highly reactive catechol portion of its molecule could produce off-target effects on non-tumor cells [96, 97].

Galloflavin, (CAS 568-80-9), a small molecule, inhibits LDH-A by direct binding without competing with substrate or cofactor binding [98]. This compound induces apoptosis and oxidative stress, inhibiting the growth of many cancers [98–101].

Although LDHA inhibitors have been extensively studied in several cancer cell lines and animal models, limited information regarding their efficacy and side effects in preclinical and clinical studies is available [102].

2.2.4 Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs)

Monocarboxylic acid transporters (MCTs) are proton-linked membrane proteins which function in the transport of monocarboxylic acids mainly, lactate and pyruvate, but not limited to ketone bodies. MCT-1, -2 and -4 are the main isoforms that carry lactate across the plasma membrane thereby maintaining intracellular pH [103]. There seems to be a functional redundancy between MCT-1 and MCT-4, by which both can transport lactate out of the cell. However, MCT-1 can also transport lactate into the cell for the subsequent conversion to pyruvate before entering mitochondria for oxidative phosphorylation. This difference between the two isoforms is further exemplified by the differential expression of these two MCTs in cancers with different metabolic phenotypes. MCT-4 is highly expressed in glycolytic or aerobic cancer cells which metabolize glucose to lactate. Under these circumstances, MCT-4 supports aerobic glycolysis by transporting lactate out of the cell so that the glycolytic pathway is not inhibited [102]. In contrast, oxidative tumors tend to produce ATP through oxidative phosphorylation using lactate as a nutrient source. Under these circumstances, the oxidative tumors express MCT-1, which can also transport extracellular lactate into the cell. Once inside the cell, lactate can be converted to pyruvate by LDH-B and used as a source of ATP production through oxidative phosphorylation [102]. Overexpression of MCT-1 and/or MCT-4 is associated with poor prognosis in many cancers [104–109], with metastasis in renal cancer and adenocarcinoma [110, 111]. Genetic suppression of MCT-1 or MCT-4 expression results in lactate accumulation accompanied by reduced proliferation, invasion, and migration in lung cancer [112]; pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma [113]; oral squamous cell carcinoma [114]; and breast cancer [115, 116]. In a mouse model, suppression of MCT-1 and MCT-4 expression also inhibits the growth of human breast cancer xenografts [116, 117].

Because both MCT-1 and MCT-4 support bioenergetics of both glycolytic and hypoxic tumors, pharmacological inhibition of these two MCTs is a potential target of anti-cancer drugs. AR-C155858, a pyrrole pyrimidine derivative, specifically blocks MCT-1 activity and inhibits lactate export from the cells [118]. AR-C155858 has been shown to inhibit the growth of KRAS-transformed fibroblasts [119], myelomas [120], pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas [113], and breast cancer cell lines [121, 122]. However, a recent preclinical study showed that AR-C155858 failed to reduce the growth of a murine breast cancer xenograft in nude mice [123].

AZD3965 is a selective and potent inhibitor of MCT-1, with well-studied pharmacokinetics [103]. In xenograft mouse models, AZD3965 treatment increases the intracellular concentration of lactate and inhibits growth of several tumors including small cell lung cancer [124], breast cancer [116], diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and Burkitt lymphoma [125]. The combination of AZD3965 with other anti-cancer drugs increases its efficacy against several cancers [126, 127]. AZD3965 is currently under phase I clinical trial in patients with advanced solid tumors such as prostate cancer, gastric cancer, and diffuse B-cell lymphoma [128]. While AZD3965 can effectively inhibit growth of MCT-1 over-expressing cancers, this drug does not work well with the cancers that overexpress both MCT-1 and MCT-4, because MCT-4 can counteract MCT-1 inhibition [124].

α-cyano-4-hydroxy cinnamate (αCHC) is another MCT-1 inhibitor which has been shown to inhibit growth and induce apoptosis in glioma cells [129], breast cancer [130], and myeloma cell lines [120]. αCHC can also inhibit the growth of lung carcinoma and human colorectal adenocarcinoma xenografts in mice [131]. There have been no further studies of this inhibitor in clinical studies.

As mentioned, the inhibition of MCT-1 alone is not sufficient to inhibit the growth of tumors that express both MCT-1 and MCT-4. For this reason, several efforts have been made to produce dual inhibitors for MCT-1 and MCT-4 such as Syrosingopine, Lonidamine (LND), and N, N-dialkylcyanocinnamic acid. Syrosingopine, an anti-hypertension drug, has recently been used to inhibit both MCT-1 and MCT-4 activities in several pre-clinical studies [131–133]. Combined treatment of Syrosingopine with metformin improves its efficacy for inhibiting growth of cervical, breast, and leukemic cancer cell lines [133]. N,N-dialkylcyanocinnamic acid has recently been reported as a dual MCT-1 and MCT-4 inhibitor. Inhibition of lactate export by this drug results in inhibition of glycolysis and oxidative phosphorylation in colorectal adenocarcinoma and triple negative breast cancer cell lines. It was also found to inhibit growth of colorectal and breast cancers in xenograft mouse models [134]. LND, a novel chemotherapy drug, has recently been reported to block MCT-1, -2, -4, and the mitochondrial pyruvate carrier, resulting in simultaneous inhibition of lactate efflux from the cell and pyruvate uptake into mitochondria [110]. This drug can inhibit growth of DB-1 melanoma in vitro and in xenograft mice [135, 136].

2.3 Mitochondrial Metabolism

Although aerobic glycolysis is a metabolic hallmark of many cancers, accumulating evidence has shown that some cancers such as breast cancer, Hodgkin lymphoma, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, use oxidative phosphorylation to support ATP production. This metabolic phenotype is known as the oxidative cancer cell [137]. Recent studies also showed that cancer stem cells with high tumorigenic and metastatic potentials use oxidative phosphorylation to support their growth [138, 139]. The bioenergetic switch from glycolysis to oxidative phosphorylation in this group of cancer makes mitochondrial metabolism an attractive target. Because mitochondria metabolism starts from oxidation of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA followed by the TCA cycle and oxidative phosphorylation, all key enzymes along these pathways are potential targets of anti-neoplastic agents.

2.3.1 Pyruvate Dehydrogenase Kinase

Pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (PDH) catalyzes the irreversible conversion of pyruvate to acetyl-CoA in the mitochondria. Since this reaction connects glycolysis and the TCA cycle, inhibition of this regulatory step results in the redirection of pyruvate to lactate or leads to alanine production [140]. PDH activity is regulated by reversible phosphorylation catalyzed by the pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase (PDK). Phosphorylation of PDH by PDK inactivates

PDH activity while dephosphorylation by phosphatases reactivates it. In mammals, PDK1, PDK2, PDK3, and PDK4 can phosphorylate PDH [141]. In most cancers, glycolysis is partly driven through the inactivation of PDH by PDKs [142, 143], enabling them to maintain the glycolytic phenotype. On the other hand, inactivation of PDK reverses the metabolic phenotype from glycolysis to oxidative phosphorylation. Increased entry of pyruvate into the TCA cycle caused by PDH activation can overwhelm TCA cycle activity and oxidative phosphorylation, resulting in an incomplete oxidation of reducing equivalents, leading to the overproduction of reactive oxygen species (ROS). In turn, increased ROS can create oxidative stress which can damage cancer cells [144–146]. Therefore, inhibition of PDK activity can be used to induce oxidative stress in cancers. Dichloroacetate (DCA) is a first generation PDK inhibitor [147, 148] first reported to induce oxidative stress, leading to cell death in many cancers, including prostate cancer [149], breast cancer [150], and colorectal cancer [151, 152]. DCA treatment can inhibit growth and angiogenesis of NSCLC and breast cancer xenografts [153]. Studies in glioblastoma patients showed that DCA treatment can switch metabolism of tumor cells from glycolysis to oxidative phosphorylation, accompanied by mild induction of apoptosis and reduction of angiogenesis surrounding the glioblastoma [154]. DCA is currently undergoing phase I clinical testing in patients with recurrent glioblastoma [155].

CPI-613 (devimistat) is an inhibitor of PDK. Because CPI-613 has a structure similar to lipoic acid, a co-factor of PDH, CPI-631 is thought to interfere with phosphorylation inhibition by PDKs and disrupt mitochondrial metabolism, leading to cell death [156]. Later studies also showed that CP-613 may also have an inhibitory effect on cancer growth by inhibiting the activity of α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase which converts α-ketoglutarate to succinate [157]. CPI-613 is currently undergoing a phase I trial in patients with relapsed or refractory acute myeloid leukemia [158], as well as a phase II trial in patients with relapsed or refractory small cell lung carcinoma [159], and phase I and phase III trials in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer [160, 161].

2.3.2 TCA Cycle

The TCA cycle is not only a central hub for oxidation of glucose, fatty acids, and amino acids it also functions as a biosynthetic hub in which its intermediates are used as biosynthetic precursors of non-essential amino acids, fatty acids, and nucleotides. In cancers, glutaminolysis is an important biochemical reaction that provides carbon skeletons into the TCA cycle, sustaining the levels of TCA cycle intermediates upon their removal for biosynthesis. Isocitrate dehydrogenase (IDH) catalyzes the oxidative decarboxylation of isocitrate to α-ketoglutarate (α-KG). IDH1 is located in the cytoplasm while IDH2 is located in mitochondria [162]. Mutation of arginine 132 to histidine in IDH1 (R132H) [163, 164] or mutations of arginine 140 or arginine 172 to histidine in IDH2 (R140H or R172H) [165, 166] alters their activity such that the mutant enzymes further convert α-KG to 2-hydroxyglutarate (2-HG) [167, 168]. The abnormal accumulation of 2-HG competitively inhibits α-KG-dependent dioxygenase, contributing to malignant transformation [169, 170]. Many tumors such as glioblastoma [163, 171], chondrosarcoma [172], osteosarcoma [173], myeloid leukemia [174], intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma [175], breast cancer [176], and prostate cancer [177] appear to carry IDH1/IDH2 mutations [178]. Due to the strong effect of IDH1 and IDH2 mutations on tumorigenesis, IDH1 and IDH2 inhibitors have been developed to block the production of 2-HG by the mutant enzymes.

BAY-1436032 is an allosteric inhibitor of IDH1, which binds to the IDH1 mutant enzyme and interrupts dimer formation, inhibiting its activity [179]. BAY-1436032 lowers 2-HG production and reduces proliferation in glioma bearing an IDH1 mutation [179]. A similar result was also observed in acute myeloid leukemia (AML) bearing an IDH1 mutation, in which treatment of AML with this drug improved differentiation of myeloid progenitors to normal leukocytes both in

cell culture and in xenografted models [180]. BAY-1436032 is currently undergoing phase I clinical trials for AML, glioma, and intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma (ClinicalTrials.gov NCT03127735, NCT02746081).

IDH305, a pyrimidin-5-yl-oxazolidine-2-one compound, is an allosteric inhibitor of mutant IDH1, with excellent capability of passing through the blood–brain barrier [181]. Pre-clinical studies showed that IDH305 lowers 2-HG levels in a patient-derived IDH1 mutant xenograft tumor model [181]. IDH305 is currently under phase I clinical trials, and the preliminary clinical data have already shown that IDH305 has a favorable safety profile and promising anti-tumor activity in AML harboring IDH1 mutations [182]. Further studies regarding the safety, tolerability, and anti-tumor activity as a single agent and in combination with others are on-going [182].

Ivosidenib (AG-120) (Tibsovo) is a highly selective inhibitor for mutant IDH1s without an inhibitory effect on IDH2. This drug inhibits the activity of the mutant enzyme by competing with cofactor binding [183]. In vivo pharmacokinetic studies have shown that this drug is rapidly absorbed, with low plasma clearance and a modest level of brain penetration [184]. Ivosidenib was found to markedly reduce the level of 2-HG and inhibit growth of primary human AML myeloblasts, human chondrosarcoma cell lines, and IDH1-R132H glioma xenografts [184–186]. Currently, Ivosidenib has been approved by the FDA for the treatment of adults with relapsed or refractory AML with IDH1 mutations in phase I clinical trials [187].

LY3410738, a new potent inhibitor of mutant IDH1 forms, was developed using a structure-based drug design approach. LY3410738 reacts with cysteine 269 in the allosteric binding pocket and rapidly inactivates the mutant IDH1 enzyme. LY3410738 can pass through the blood–brain barrier and exhibits prolonged pharmacokinetics. This drug can inhibit 2-HG production in glioma both in vitro and in vivo. Moreover, LY3410738 is more potent than AG-120 or Ivosidenib for inducing differentiation of myeloid progenitors to produce normal hematopoietic cells in patient-derived primary AML cells harboring IDH1 mutations [188].

AGI-6780, a urea sulfonamide compound, is the first small molecule selective inhibitor of IDH2 mutants [188]. It binds at the IDH2 dimer interface of the enzyme and also competes with binding of NADPH, resulting in inactivation of the enzyme [188–190]. AGI-6780 can suppress the production of 2-HG in human glioblastoma U87 and TF-1 cells harboring the IDH2-R140Q mutation, concomitant with restoration of normal differentiation of hematopoietic cells [189, 191]. Furthermore, 2-HG-induces DNA and histone hypermethylation in TF-1 erythroleukemia cells with the IDH2-R140Q mutation can be reversed by treatment with AGI-6780 [191]. Although AGI-6780 possesses an excellent inhibitory effect on normal differentiation of the hematopoietic cell lineage, further investigation of AGI-6780 on AML has been restrained due to the emergence of Enasidenib which is more potent than this drug.

Enasidenib is a selective inhibitor of IDH2. This drug preferentially binds to the IDH2 R172H mutant enzyme and lowers 2-HG production [184]. Both pre-clinical and clinical studies have shown that this drug lowers the levels of 2-HG in acute amyloid leukemia, in parallel with a high rate of differentiation of myeloid progenitors to normal leukocytes [192, 193]. Similar to Ivosidenib, Enasidenib was approved by the FDA for patients with relapsed or refractory AML bearing mutations of the IDH2 gene [194]. Enasidenib is currently undergoing phase II clinical testing.

AG-881 (Vorasidenib) is a triazine class compound, which is the first pan-inhibitor of both IDH1 and IDH2 mutant enzymes. AG-881 allosterically inhibits the activities of both mutant forms of IDH1 and IDH2 by binding to the allosteric pocket at the dimer interface. However, binding of this compound to mutant IDH-1 is much faster than to mutant IDH2 [195]. AG-881 also lowers the production of 2-HG in tumors bearing either IDH1 or IDH2 mutations, concomitant with improved differentiation of myeloid progenitors to normal hematopoietic cells [196]. A pharmacokinetic study showed that AG-881

exhibits the rapid oral absorption, low total body plasma clearance properties, and excellent brain penetration, supporting the clinical development of this compound [196]. AG-881 is currently being investigated in phase I clinical trial for safety, pharmacokinetics, and pharmacodynamics in glioma patients carrying mutations of IDH1 and/or IDH2 [197].

2.3.3 Oxidative Phosphorylation

As an anti-diabetic drug with glucose lowering effects, metformin has recently attracted attention as an anti-cancer drug. Metformin inhibits complex I of the respiratory chain, resulting in inhibition of ATP synthesis [198, 199]. This inhibition results in an increased ratio of AMP:ATP which, in turn, activates AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) [200, 201]. AMPK then activates phosphorylation of the transcription co-activator of gluconeogenic enzyme genes [201–203]. In cancers, metformin also depletes ATP synthesis through the same mechanism as reported in diabetic patients, resulting in cancer cell death [204, 205]. Further studies also showed that AMPK activation not only decreases protein synthesis through the inhibition of the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) signaling pathway [206, 207] but it also activates the p53 tumor-suppressor gene [208, 209] and induces cell cycle arrest [210]. In addition, metformin diminishes TCA cycle activity, affecting cataplerosis and nucleotide synthesis [211, 212]. Metformin also reduces the risk of cancer in diabetic patients [213–215]. Owing to the uptake of metformin requiring the organic cation transporter 1 (OCT1) which is highly abundant on plasma membrane of hepatocytes, the transport of metformin into other cell types, such as cancer cells, is limited [216]. This has resulted in the use of another biguanide drug, phenformin, as a potential alternative anti-cancer drug. Phenformin, a more hydrophobic drug, can therefore penetrate through the plasma membrane of cancer cells better than metformin. Although this drug can cause lactic acidosis in diabetic patients, phenformin has been reported to have excellent anti-neoplastic effects in both cell culture and xenograft mouse models [217, 218]. The use of metformin as an anti-tumor drug in breast, prostate, esophageal, and uterus cancers is currently undergoing clinical trials [219].

2.4 Glutaminolysis

For decades, several studies have shown that glutamine, the most abundant amino acid in blood and muscle, is highly consumed in most cancers [220–224]. Glutaminolysis is the oxidative deamination of glutamine to glutamate by glutaminase (GLS) before subsequent conversion to α-ketoglutarate by glutamate dehydrogenase, enabling carbon skeletons of glutamine to enter the TCA cycle to support cataplerosis [11, 223, 225]. Moreover, glutamine is used to synthesize glutathione for maintaining cellular redox homeostasis [226] and is also an important modulator of mTOR [227, 228] and endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress signaling pathways [229]. Most cancers are highly addicted to glutamine because the removal of glutamine dramatically reduces cell growth or induces cell death [230–234]. This information indicates that glutaminolysis is one of attractive targets for anti-cancer drugs.

2.4.1 Glutaminase (GLS)

Multiple lines of evidence show that GLS is overexpressed in many cancers, indicating that this pathway is essential for their growth and survival. In humans, there are two different isoforms of GLS, namely GLS1 and GLS2. GLS1 is mainly expressed in proliferating cells, while GLS2 is expressed in quiescent cells. During oncogenic transformation, there is a genetic switch from GLS2 to GLS1 expression in many cancers [235, 236]. Overexpression of GLS1 in cancer is also associated with poor prognosis and inhibition of GLS1 activity can inhibit cancer growth [237–239]. 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine (DON) and acivicin, the first generation of GLS inhibitors have been reported [240, 241]. These two compounds are L-glutamine analogs were isolated

from *Streptomyces* bacteria. They inhibit glutamine metabolism by irreversibly interacting with serine 286 in the GLS active site [242]. Although they are potent GLS inhibitors and can inhibit growth of several cancers [243–245], they produce severe off-target side effects by inhibition of enzymes such as NAD synthase [243, 246].

Bis-2-(5-phenylacetamido-1, 2, 4-thiadiazol-2-yl) ethyl sulfide (BPTES) is a more selective inhibitor of GLS1 [247]. BPTES has been identified as a non-competitive allosteric inhibitor of GLS1. Binding of this compound at the allosteric pocket results in a dramatic conformational change that blocks the activation by phosphate [248] without off-target effects [249]. As a result of inhibition of TCA cycle input from glutamine, BPTES treatment lowers the levels of glutamate, fumarate, and malate, while increasing the level of glycolytic intermediates. Similarly, BPTES treatment was also found to diminish glutamate and other TCA cycle intermediates, concomitant with increased apoptosis in MYC-overexpressing cancers [250]. BPTES was reported to inhibit growth of P493 lymphoma xenograft in mice [251]. In addition, BPTES treatment prolongs the survival of mice bearing MYC-overexpressing cancer without toxic side effects [252]. However, BPTES is not used as anti-cancer drug because of its poor solubility and low bioavailability [253].

CB-839 is a BPTES derivative with an improved solubility [249, 254]. Inhibition of GLS by CB-839 diminishes glutaminolysis, concomitant with growth inhibition of triple negative breast cancer [254], NSCLC [255], leukemia [256], and ovarian cancer [257]. Inhibition of GLS1 by CB839 in ovarian cancer reduces phosphorylation of signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3), making this cancer more sensitive to PI3K/Akt/mTOR inhibition [257]. CB-839 has also been used in combination with paclitaxel or pomalidomide to increase its efficacy in the tumor xenograft model [254, 258]. At present, CB-839 is the most effective small-molecule GLS1 inhibitor in phase I of clinical trials [259]. In addition to CB-839, the nor-oleanane triterpenoid compound, brachyantheraoside A8, has been reported as another GLS1 inhibitor [260]. Brachyantheraoside A8 has been shown to decrease migration and invasion and induced apoptosis in breast cancer [260]. Physapubescin K, a natural product from *Physalis pubescens*, has recently been reported to inhibit GLS1. This compound can inhibit growth of pancreatic cancer cell growth in vitro and in vivo [261]. Furthermore, physapubescin K also exhibits the synergistic inhibition of tumor growth with benserazide and erlotinib [261]. Although these new natural GLS1 inhibitors display potent anti-cancer activity, the molecular mechanism of inhibition of these small molecules and their side effects have not been elucidated. The long-term paradigm of glutaminase being a target of anti-cancer has recently been challenged by the study in the KRAS-driven NSCLC in which the rate of glutaminolysis was negligible when transplanted in nude mice [262, 263]. Furthermore, CB-839 also fails to block growth of NSCLC transplanted in nude mice [263] while it inhibits growth of this cancer in vitro, indicating that glutamine may not be required for in vivo growth.

2.5 De Novo Fatty Acid Synthesis

De novo lipogenesis (DNL) is the biosynthesis of fatty acids from glucose. This pathway combines glycolysis and long chain acyl-CoA synthesis [264] and is an important pathway for cancers because fatty acids are essential structural components of the plasma membrane. Numerous studies showed that rate of DNL is very high in many cancers [265–267]. Increased DNL in cancers is accompanied by increased activity or expression of several key lipogenic enzymes such as ATP-citrate lyase (ACLY), acetyl-CoA carboxylase (ACC), and fatty acid synthase (FASN).

2.5.1 ATP-Citrate Lyase

ACLY is the first key enzyme that links glycolysis and long chain acyl-CoA synthesis. The cytosolic ACLY catalyzes the cleavage of citrate to oxaloacetate and acetyl-CoA. Oxaloacetate is reconverted to malate before re-entry into mitochondria, while acetyl-CoA is used as a precursor

for long chain fatty acids and cholesterol synthesis (See Fig. 2.1) [268]. ACLY expression is elevated in stomach, prostate, liver, breast, kidney, and NSCLCs [269–274]. Recent studies showed that ACLY supports colon cancer metastasis by promoting the activity of CTNNB1, a key regulator of epithelial-mesenchymal transition [275]. Suppression of ACLY expression in breast, kidney, and NSCLCs markedly inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis [272–274]. It also inhibits metastasis of colorectal cancer both in vitro and in vivo [275]. Among the ACLY inhibitors, SB-204990, cucurbitacin B (CuB), and NDI-091143 are the most potent inhibitors of DNL. SB-204990, a cell-penetrant γ-lactone prodrug of SB-201076, can inhibit both cholesterol and fatty acid synthesis in HepG2 cells [276]. Furthermore, this compound also inhibits proliferation and survival of highly glycolytic tumors [277]. Although SB-204990 shows an excellent anti-neoplastic activity in pancreatic ductal xenografts in a mouse model [277], there has been no clinical study of this compound in patients.

Cucurbitacins (CUs) are natural products isolated from cucumber, melon, squash, and pumpkins. These compounds contain a tetracyclic cucurbitane nucleus skeleton, namely, 9β-methyl-19-norlanosta-5-enea, which is traditionally divided arbitrarily into 12 categories, incorporating CUs A-T [278, 279]. Among several groups of CUs, CuB exerts anti-cancer activity by inhibiting proliferation and apoptosis in several human cancers including breast cancer [280–282], pancreatic cancer [283, 284], hepatocellular carcinoma [285], lung cancer [286], and prostate cancer [270]. CuB inhibits ACLY activity by reducing its expression and inhibits its phosphorylation [270]. In vivo studies showed that treatment with CuB can suppress growth in Panc-1 pancreatic [283], PC3 prostate [270], and H1299 NSCLC xenografts in nude mice [286]. The combination of CuB and gemcitabine improves the anti-proliferative effect in human breast cancer [282] and pancreatic cancer [284] xenografts in nude mice. Furthermore, CuB can inhibit tumor angiogenesis by suppressing human umbilical vascular endothelial cell proliferation, migration, and capillary-like structure formation, and induce apoptosis in vitro [287]. CuB has low oral bioavailability, but it could be distributed broadly into several organs such as lung, spleen, and kidney, with a high volume of distribution and tissue to plasma ratio [288]. Nevertheless, further clinical study of CuB is necessary to confirm their therapeutic effect in cancer patients.

NDI-091143 is the most recently identified ACLY inhibitor [289]. This compound shows an excellent potency and selectivity toward ACLY. NDI-091143 allosterically binds to ACLY and disrupts binding of citrate [289]. Although, there has been no report on the efficacy of NDI-091143 on cancer treatment, this compound or its analogs might have potential uses as anti-cancer agents due to their appealing allosteric inhibition mechanism to human ACLY activity [289].

2.5.2 Acetyl-CoA Carboxylase

ACC catalyzes the carboxylation of acetyl-CoA to produce malonyl-CoA, an acetyl-group donor for de novo fatty acid biosynthesis [290]. In humans, ACC1 and ACC2 are encoded by two separate genes. Although, these two isoforms catalyze the same chemical reaction, their metabolic roles are distinct. ACC1 is a cytosolic enzyme that is expressed exclusively in lipogenic tissues such as liver and adipose tissue where it catalyzes the first committed step in the biosynthesis of long chain fatty acids [291]. On the other hand, ACC2 is expressed in oxidative tissues, that is, heart and skeletal where it controls oxidation of fatty acids through carnitine palmitoyltransferase I activity [292]. ACC1 is overexpressed in multiple human cancers, such as breast, liver, and NSCLC to support DNL [271, 293, 294]. Suppression of ACC1 expression or inhibition of ACC1 activity decreases phospholipid composition in the plasma membrane, reducing its integrity and receptor dimerization [295]. This combined effect in turn inhibits growth and progression of many cancers [294–296]. Several ACC1 inhibitors have been identified and studied. The most well-characterized ACC1 inhibitors are TOFA (5-(tetradecyloxy)-2-furoic acid), soraphenA, ND-646 and ND-654.

TOFA is a representative of fatty acyl-CoA mimetics that were first used for treatment of hyperlipidemia [297]. TOFA is further metabolized to 5-tetradecyloxy-2-foryl-CoA (TOFyl-CoA) which allosterically inhibits ACC1 by binding to the carboxyltransferase domain of the enzyme, preventing binding of acetyl-CoA [298]. This inhibitor can reduce fatty acid synthesis, triglyceride secretion and apolipoprotein B secretion in cultured hepatocytes [298, 299]. It reduces fatty acid, cholesterol, and triglyceride synthesis, increases fatty acid oxidation and decreases very low density lipoprotein (VLDL) production in rat livers perfused with TOFA ex vivo [300]. In cancers, TOFA blocks fatty acid synthesis, concomitant with inhibition of proliferation and induces apoptosis in several cancer cell lines such as HCT-8 and HCT-15 colon cancer [301], LNCaP prostate cancer [302], COC1 and COC1/DDP ovarian cancer [303], NCI-H460 lung cancer [301] and ACHN, and 786-O renal cell carcinoma [304]. TOFA also induces cell cycle arrest in ovarian cancer [303] and renal carcinoma [304]. In addition, it can inhibit growth of human ovarian tumors in xenograft mice [303]. TOFA treatment also reduces lipid droplet content and proliferation in breast cancer BT474, MCF-7, and T47D cell lines. However, the efficacy of TOFA in reducing lipid droplets and inhibiting proliferation were not observed in MDA-MB-231 cells [305].

Soraphen A is a macrocyclic polyketide natural product isolated from the myxobacterium strain *Sorangium cellulosum* [306]. This compound contains an unsaturated 18-membered lactone ring, an extracyclic phenyl ring, two hydroxyl groups, three methyl groups, and three methoxy groups [307, 308]. It was originally used as an anti-fungal agent in agriculture [307, 308]. Soraphen A inhibits ACC1 activity by binding at the dimer interface of biotin carboxylase domain which, in turn, perturbs oligomerization of the biotin carboxylase domain and inactivates ACC1 activity [309]. Soraphen A treatment reduces fatty acid synthesis, inhibits proliferation, and induces cell death in LNCaP and PC-3 M prostate cancer [310] and HepG2 [311] cell lines. Soraphen A affects composition, turnover, and activation of phospholipid membranes of SKBR3 breast cancer and Huh7 hepatocellular carcinoma cell lines, resulting in inhibition of their proliferation [295]. Soraphen A also inhibits the dissemination of breast cancer and hepatocellular carcinoma xenografts in a mouse model [295].

ND-630 was identified as an isozyme-nonselective, allosteric ACC inhibitor by structure-based drug design [312]. ND-630 binds to ACC1 in close vicinity to the AMPK phosphorylation site [313]. Binding of ND-630 at this position disrupts dimerization of ACC1 and inhibits enzymatic activity. Treatment with ND-630 diminishes fatty acid synthesis while stimulating fatty acid oxidation in human hepatocellular carcinoma HepG2 cells [312]. Presently, ND-630 is undergoing phase II clinical trials as a drug for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, although the efficacy of ND-630 as anti-cancer agent has not been examined [314–316].

ND-646, another ACC1 inhibitor, inactivates ACC1 by interacting with several residues in the dimer interface of the BC domain, in a similar manner as that of ND-630. ND-646 inhibits fatty acid synthesis, proliferation, and induces apoptosis in a NSCLC cell line and inhibits growth of NSCLC xenografts in nude mice [294]. Recently, ND-654 has been reported as a new ACC1 inhibitor. Similar to ND-630 and ND-646, ND-654 binds to ACC1, interferes with dimer formation and inactivates enzymatic activity. However, unlike ND-646 which shows broad tissue absorption, ND-654 has been modified to increase hepatic uptake absorption for effective treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. ND-630 inhibits human ACC1 with an IC_{50} of 3 nM and inhibits human ACC2 with an IC_{50} of 8 nM [317]. Treatment with ND-654 also inhibits fatty acid synthesis and proliferation in HepG2 cells. Finally, ND-654 treatment alone or in combination with sorafenib was found to reduce fatty acid synthesis, inhibit proliferation, and increase survival in a diethymitrosamine-induced hepatocellular carcinoma model in rats [317].

2.5.3 Fatty Acid Synthase

FASN catalyzes the condensation of two carbon units from malonyl-CoA to the growing chain of acyl-CoA. Similar to other lipogenic enzymes, FASN is overexpressed in most human carcinomas [318–322]. Elevated FASN expression has also been found to be correlated with poor prognosis in breast cancer [323], prostate cancer [324, 325], and NSCLC [326, 327], clearly demonstrating its importance in supporting the growth and survival of these cancers. Several first-generation FASN inhibitors such as cerulenin, C75, and orlistat compounds have been reported to inhibit growth of several cancers.

Cerulenin, an antibiotic derived from the fungus *Cephalosporum caerulens*, is a non-competitive inhibitor of FASN [328]. Cerulenin inhibits FASN activity by forming a covalent bond with a cysteine residue in the active site of the β-ketoacyl-synthase domain of the enzyme [328, 329]. Cerulenin inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis in breast cancer cells in vitro [330]. Moreover, cerulenin delays tumor progression in a xenograft model [331]. However, the use of cerulenin still has some limitations, because the reactive epoxy group in its structure can react with other proteins and may affect cholesterol synthesis or proteolysis [332, 333].

C75 is the first synthetic FASN inhibitor that was developed to resolve the chemical instability of the reactive epoxide present in cerulenin [334]. C75 inhibits FASN activity by targeting the β-ketoacyl-synthase domain, in the same manner as cerulenin, and also inactivates the enoyl reductase and the thioesterase domains of the enzyme [335]. C75 treatment selectively inhibits tumor growth by inducing apoptosis in both cultured cancer cells and in xenograft mouse models [336–339]. Furthermore, long-term administration of C75 significantly delays breast cancer development in mouse models [340]. However, the use of cerulenin and C75 as anti-cancer drugs still has some problems due to side effects of weight loss and anorexia [341, 342].

Orlistat, an FDA-approved pancreatic and gastric lipase inhibitor, was originally developed as an anti-obesity drug. Orlistat inhibits FASN activity by forming a covalent adduct with the active site serine residue in the thioesterase domain of this enzyme [343, 344]. Orlistat inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis in PC3-prostate cancer [343], breast cancer [345, 346], ovarian cancer [347], and stomach cancer [348] in vitro. Although orlitstat shows an excellent effect on the inhibition of cancer growth, it has poor solubility and low oral bioavailability [349].

Fasnall, a thiophenopyrimidine scaffold, has recently been discovered through a chemoproteomic platform fluorescence-linked enzyme chemoproteomic strategy. It has been reported as a potent and selective inhibitor with an IC_{50} of 3.71 μM [350]. Interestingly, Fasnall has potent anti-proliferative and pro-apoptotic activity against various breast cancer cell lines without any effect on normal cells [350]. Because malonyl-CoA produced by FASN is an inhibitor of fatty acid oxidation, inhibition of FASN by Fasnall reduces the level of malonyl-CoA, raising the concentration of palmitate. Increased cellular palmitate then reacts with serine to form ceramides, which potentially disrupts the integrity of the plasma membrane of cancer cells [351] and induces apoptosis [352–354]. An in vivo study showed that Fasnall reduces growth of virally induced and triple negative-breast cancer xenografts in mice with prolonged survival times [350]. Taken together, the potent anti-neoplastic activity of Fasnall suggests its further use in clinical studies.

TVB-2640 is an orally active, reversible FASN inhibitor. It inhibits the β-ketoacyl reductase (KR) activity of FASN [355]. TVB-2640 inhibits growth of human colon adenocarcinoma COLO-205 xenografts in rat, accompanied by reduction of Akt phosphorylation [356]. TVB-2640 is currently being investigated in phase I clinical trials with patients with NSCLC, ovarian cancer and breast cancer. This drug shows a good efficacy when combined with paclitaxel [357, 358].

2.6 Conclusion and Future Perspectives

Metabolic reprograming allows cancer cells to selectively alter their cellular metabolism to suit their needs during rapid proliferation. This allows us to design small molecules that inhibit the distinct metabolic pathways in cancer but do not affect normal cells. Even though specific targets have been identified, several drugs still possess limitations such as specificity, solubility, bioavailability, and adverse side effect while some fail during clinical trials. Currently, only a few anti-cancer drugs such as those that target glutaminase, MCTs, IDH1/2 and FAS are in clinical trials. The search for more inhibitors with exceptional specificity and more potency is challenging. However, with the application of high throughput technologies including transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics, it should become feasible to investigate the specificity and efficacy of anti-cancer drugs at the cellular and organismal levels. Using the same systems biology tools, identification of specific responses to the drugs in individual patients is currently shifting the paradigm of future health care from cancer treatment to preventive and personalized medicine.

Acknowledgments This work was supported by the International Research Network Program Grant (IRN590003) from the Thailand Research Fund to S.J.

References

1. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2000) The hallmarks of cancer. Cell 100(1):57–70
2. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144(5):646–674
3. Warburg O (1956) On the origin of cancer cells. Science 123(3191):309–314
4. Warburg O (1956) On respiratory impairment in cancer cells. Science 124(3215):269–270
5. Newsholme EA, Crabtree B, Ardawi MS (1985) The role of high rates of glycolysis and glutamine utilization in rapidly dividing cells. Biosci Rep 5(5):393–400
6. Postovit LM, Adams MA, Lash GE, Heaton JP, Graham CH (2002) Oxygen-mediated regulation of tumor cell invasiveness. Involvement of a nitric oxide signaling pathway. J Biol Chem 277(38):35730–35737
7. Pouyssegur J, Dayan F, Mazure NM (2006) Hypoxia signalling in cancer and approaches to enforce tumour regression. Nature 441(7092):437–443
8. Pfeiffer T, Schuster S, Bonhoeffer S (2001) Cooperation and competition in the evolution of ATP-producing pathways. Science 292(5516):504–507
9. DeBerardinis RJ, Lum JJ, Hatzivassiliou G, Thompson CB (2008) The biology of cancer: metabolic reprogramming fuels cell growth and proliferation. Cell Metab 7(1):11–20
10. Hume DA, Weidemann MJ (1979) Role and regulation of glucose metabolism in proliferating cells. J Natl Cancer Inst 62(1):3–8
11. Vander Heiden MG, Cantley LC, Thompson CB (2009) Understanding the Warburg effect: the metabolic requirements of cell proliferation. Science 324(5930):1029–1033
12. Cadenas E, Davies KJ (2000) Mitochondrial free radical generation, oxidative stress, and aging. Free Radic Biol Med 29(3–4):222–230
13. Wilson JE (2003) Isozymes of mammalian hexokinase: structure, subcellular localization and metabolic function. J Exp Biol 206(Pt 12):2049–2057
14. Mathupala SP, Rempel A, Pedersen PL (2001) Glucose catabolism in cancer cells: identification and characterization of a marked activation response of the type II hexokinase gene to hypoxic conditions. J Biol Chem 276(46):43407–43412
15. Shinohara Y, Yamamoto K, Kogure K, Ichihara J, Terada H (1994) Steady state transcript levels of the type II hexokinase and type 1 glucose transporter in human tumor cell lines. Cancer Lett 82(1):27–32
16. DeWaal D, Nogueira V, Terry AR, Patra KC, Jeon SM, Guzman G et al (2018) Hexokinase-2 depletion inhibits glycolysis and induces oxidative phosphorylation in hepatocellular carcinoma and sensitizes to metformin. Nat Commun 9(1):446. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-02733-4
17. Anderson M, Marayati R, Moffitt R, Yeh JJ (2017) Hexokinase 2 promotes tumor growth and metastasis by regulating lactate production in pancreatic cancer. Oncotarget 8(34):56081–56094
18. Suh DH, Kim MA, Kim H, Kim MK, Kim HS, Chung HH, Kim YB, Song YS (2014) Association of overexpression of hexokinase II with chemoresistance in epithelial ovarian cancer. Clin Exp Med 14(3):345–353
19. Smith TA (2000) Mammalian hexokinases and their abnormal expression in cancer. Br J Biomed Sci 57(2):170–178
20. Wick AN, Drury DR, Nakada HI, Wolfe JB (1957) Localization of the primary metabolic block produced by 2-deoxyglucose. J Biol Chem 224(2):963–969
21. Kurtoglu M, Maher JC, Lampidis TJ (2007) Differential toxic mechanisms of 2-deoxy-D-glucose versus 2-fluorodeoxy-D-glucose in hypoxic

and normoxic tumor cells. Antioxid Redox Signal 9(9):1383–1390
22. Zagorodna O, Martin SM, Rutkowski DT, Kuwana T, Spitz DR, Knudson CM (2012) 2-deoxyglucose-induced toxicity is regulated by Bcl-2 family members and is enhanced by antagonizing Bcl-2 in lymphoma cell lines. Oncogene 31(22):2738–2749
23. Golding JP, Wardhaugh T, Patrick L, Turner M, Phillips JB, Bruce JI et al (2013) Targeting tumour energy metabolism potentiates the cytotoxicity of 5-aminolevulinic acid photodynamic therapy. Br J Cancer 109(4):976–982
24. Giammarioli AM, Gambardella L, Barbati C, Pietraforte D, Tinari A, Alberton M, Gnessi L, Griffin RJ, Minetti M, Malorni W (2012) Differential effects of the glycolysis inhibitor 2-deoxy-D-glucose on the activity of pro-apoptotic agents in metastatic melanoma cells, and induction of a cytoprotective autophagic response. Int J Cancer 131(4):E337–E347
25. Aft RL, Zhang FW, Gius D (2002) Evaluation of 2-deoxy-D-glucose as a chemotherapeutic agent: mechanism of cell death. Br J Cancer 87(7):805–812
26. Zhang D, Fei Q, Li J, Zhang C, Sun Y, Zhu C, Wang F, Sun Y (2016) 2-Deoxyglucose reverses the promoting effect of insulin on colorectal cancer cells in vitro. PLoS One 11(3):e0151115
27. Liu H, Hu YP, Savaraj N, Priebe W, Lampidis TJ (2001) Hypersensitization of tumor cells toglycolytic inhibitors. Biochemistry 40(18):5542–5547
28. Liu H, Savaraj N, Priebe W, Lampidis TJ (2002) Hypoxia increases tumor cell sensitivity to glycolytic inhibitors: a strategy for solid tumor therapy (model C). Biochem Pharmacol 64(12):1745–1751
29. Maher JC, Krishan A, Lampidis TJ (2004) Greater cell cycle inhibition and cytotoxicity induced by 2-deoxy-D-glucose in tumor cells treated under hypoxic vs aerobic conditions. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 53(2):116–122
30. Maschek G, Savaraj N, Priebe W, Braunschweiger P, Hamilton K, Tidmarsh GF et al (2004) 2-deoxy-D-glucose increases the efficacy of adriamycin and paclitaxel in human osteosarcoma and non-small cell lung cancers in vivo. Cancer Res 64(1):31–34
31. Ledoux S, Yang R, Friedlander G, Laouari D (2003) Glucose depletion enhances P-glycoprotein expression in hepatoma cells: role of endoplasmic reticulum stress response. Cancer Res 63(21):7284–7290
32. Singh D, Banerji AK, Dwarakanath BS, Tripathi RP, Gupta JP, Mathew TL et al (2005) Optimizing cancer radiotherapy with 2-deoxy-d-glucose dose escalation studies in patients with glioblastoma multiforme. Strahlenther Onkol 181(8):507–514
33. Minor RK, Smith DL Jr, Sossong AM, Kaushik S, Poosala S, Spangler EL et al (2010) Chronic ingestion of 2-deoxy-D-glucose induces cardiac vacuolization and increases mortality in rats. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 243(3):332–339
34. Ko YH, Pedersen PL, Geschwind JF (2001) Glucose catabolism in the rabbit VX2 tumor model for liver cancer: characterization and targeting hexokinase. Cancer Lett 173(1):83–91
35. Xu RH, Pelicano H, Zhou Y, Carew JS, Feng L, Bhalla KN et al (2005) Inhibition of glycolysis in cancer cells: a novel strategy to overcome drug resistance associated with mitochondrial respiratory defect and hypoxia. Cancer Res 65(2):613–621
36. Mathupala SP, Ko YH, Pedersen PL (2006) Hexokinase II: cancer's double-edged sword acting as both facilitator and gatekeeper of malignancy when bound to mitochondria. Oncogene 25(34):4777–4786
37. Chen Z, Zhang H, Lu W, Huang P (2009) Role of mitochondria-associated hexokinase II in cancer cell death induced by 3-bromopyruvate. Biochim Biophys Acta 1787(5):553–560
38. Geschwind JF, Ko YH, Torbenson MS, Magee C, Pedersen PL (2002) Novel therapy for liver cancer: direct intraarterial injection of a potent inhibitor of ATP production. Cancer Res 62(14):3909–3913
39. Zou X, Zhang M, Sun Y, Zhao S, Wei Y, Zhang X et al (2015) Inhibitory effects of 3-bromopyruvate in human nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells. Oncol Rep 34(4):1895–1904
40. El Sayed SM (2018) Enhancing anticancer effects, decreasing risks and solving practical problems facing 3-bromopyruvate in clinical oncology: 10 years of research experience. Int J Nanomedicine 13:4699–4709
41. Kang UJ (2003) U.S. Patent No. 6,506,378. Washington, DC Patent. https://patentimages.storage.googleapis.com/79/07/7e/843cf8132913b3/US6506378.pdf
42. Li W, Zheng M, Wu S, Gao S, Yang M, Li Z et al (2017) Benserazide, a dopadecarboxylase inhibitor, suppresses tumor growth by targeting hexokinase 2. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 36(1):58. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-017-0530-4
43. Power FB, Tutin F, Rogerson H (1913) CXXXV.—The constituents of hops. J Chem Soc Trans 103:1267–1292
44. Pastorino JG, Shulga N, Hoek JB (2002) Mitochondrial binding of hexokinase II inhibits Bax-induced cytochrome c release and apoptosis. J Biol Chem 277(9):7610–7618
45. Logan IE, Miranda CL, Lowry MB, Maier CS, Stevens JF, Gombart AF (2019) Antiproliferative and cytotoxic activity of xanthohumol and its non-estrogenic derivatives in colon and hepatocellular carcinoma cell lines. Int J Mol Sci 20(5):E1203. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20051203
46. Slawinska-Brych A, Zdzisinska B, Dmoszynska-Graniczka M, Jeleniewicz W, Kurzepa J, Gagos M et al (2016) Xanthohumol inhibits the extracellular signal regulated kinase (ERK) signalling pathway and suppresses cell growth of lung adenocarcinoma cells. Toxicology 357-358:65–73
47. Roehrer S, Stork V, Ludwig C, Minceva M, Behr J (2019) Analyzing bioactive effects of the minor hop compound xanthohumol C on human breast can-

cer cells using quantitative proteomics. PLoS One 14(3):e0213469. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0213469
48. Monteiro R, Calhau C, Silva AO, Pinheiro-Silva S, Guerreiro S, Gartner F et al (2008) Xanthohumol inhibits inflammatory factor production and angiogenesis in breast cancer xenografts. J Cell Biochem 104(5):1699–1707
49. Yong WK, Abd Malek SN (2015) Xanthohumol induces growth inhibition and apoptosis in ca ski human cervical cancer cells. Evid. Based Complement Alternat Med 2015:921306. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/921306
50. Szliszka E, Jaworska D, Ksek M, Czuba ZP, Krol W (2012) Targeting death receptor TRAIL-R2 by chalcones for TRAIL-induced apoptosis in cancer cells. Int J Mol Sci 13(11):15343–15359
51. Harada K, Saheki S, Wada K, Tanaka T (1978) Purification of four pyruvate kinase isozymes of rats by affinity elution chromatography. Biochim Biophys Acta 524(2):327–339
52. Noguchi T, Inoue H, Tanaka T (1986) The M1- and M2-type isozymes of rat pyruvate kinase are produced from the same gene by alternative RNA splicing. J Biol Chem 261(29):13807–13812
53. Christofk HR, Vander Heiden MG, Harris MH, Ramanathan A, Gerszten RE, Wei R et al (2008) The M2 splice isoform of pyruvate kinase is important for cancer metabolism and tumour growth. Nature 452(7184):230–233
54. Christofk HR, Vander Heiden MG, Wu N, Asara JM, Cantley LC (2008) Pyruvate kinase M2 is a phosphotyrosine-binding protein. Nature 452(7184):181–186
55. Hitosugi T, Kang S, Vander Heiden MG, Chung TW, Elf S, Lythgoe K et al (2009) Tyrosine phosphorylation inhibits PKM2 to promote the Warburg effect and tumor growth. Sci Signal 2(97):ra73. https://doi.org/10.1126/scisignal.2000431
56. Macintyre AN, Rathmell JC (2011) PKM2 and the tricky balance of growth and energy in cancer. Mol Cell 42(6):713–714
57. Lu Z (2012) Nonmetabolic functions of pyruvate kinase isoform M2 in controlling cell cycle progression and tumorigenesis. Chin J Cancer 31(1):5–7
58. Yang W, Xia Y, Hawke D, Li X, Liang J, Xing D et al (2012) PKM2 phosphorylates histone H3 and promotes gene transcription and tumorigenesis. Cell 150(4):685–696
59. Lu Z (2012) PKM2 functions as a histone kinase. Cell Cycle 11(22):4101–4102
60. Yang W, Lu Z (2013) Nuclear PKM2 regulates the Warburg effect. Cell Cycle 12(19):3154–3158
61. Chen C, Shanmugasundaram K, Rigby AC, Kung AL (2013) Shikonin, a natural product from the root of Lithospermum erythrorhizon, is a cytotoxic DNA-binding agent. Eur J Pharm Sci 49(1):18–26
62. Chen J, Xie J, Jiang Z, Wang B, Wang Y, Hu X (2011) Shikonin and its analogs inhibit cancer cell glycolysis by targeting tumor pyruvate kinase-M2. Oncogene 30(42):4297–4306
63. Bailly C (2000) Topoisomerase I poisons and suppressors as anticancer drugs. Curr Med Chem 7(1):39–58
64. Kim SH, Kang IC, Yoon TJ, Park YM, Kang KS, Song GY et al (2001) Antitumor activities of a newly synthesized shikonin derivative, 2-hyim-DMNQ-S-33. Cancer Lett 172(2):171–175
65. Masuda Y, Nishida A, Hori K, Hirabayashi T, Kajimoto S, Nakajo S et al (2003) Beta-hydroxyisovalerylshikonin induces apoptosis in human leukemia cells by inhibiting the activity of a polo-like kinase 1 (PLK1). Oncogene 22(7):1012–1023
66. Masuda Y, Shima G, Aiuchi T, Horie M, Hori K, Nakajo S et al (2004) Involvement of tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated protein 1 (TRAP1) in apoptosis induced by beta-hydroxyisovalerylshikonin. J Biol Chem 279(41):42503–42515
67. Xuan Y, Hu X (2009) Naturally-occurring shikonin analogues–a class of necroptotic inducers that circumvent cancer drug resistance. Cancer Lett 274(2):233–242
68. Yang H, Zhou P, Huang H, Chen D, Ma N, Cui QC et al (2009) Shikonin exerts antitumor activity via proteasome inhibition and cell death induction in vitro and in vivo. Int J Cancer 124(10):2450–2459
69. Guo XP, Zhang XY, Zhang SD (1991) Clinical trial on the effects of shikonin mixture on later stage lung cancer. Zhong Xi Yi Jie He Za Zhi 11(10):598–599, 580
70. Zhao X, Zhu Y, Hu J, Jiang L, Li L, Jia S et al (2018) Shikonin inhibits tumor growth in mice by suppressing pyruvate kinase M2-mediated aerobic glycolysis. Sci Rep 8(1):14517
71. Tang JC, Zhao J, Long F, Chen JY, Mu B, Jiang Z et al (2018) Efficacy of Shikonin against esophageal cancer cells and its possible mechanisms in vitro and in vivo. J Cancer 9(1):32–40
72. Wang Y, Hao F, Nan Y, Qu L, Na W, Jia C et al (2018) PKM2 inhibitor shikonin overcomes the cisplatin resistance in bladder cancer by inducing necroptosis. Int J Biol Sci 14(13):1883–1891
73. Boxer MB, Jiang JK, Vander Heiden MG, Shen M, Skoumbourdis AP, Southall N et al (2010) Evaluation of substituted N,N'-diarylsulfonamides as activators of the tumor cell specific M2 isoform of pyruvate kinase. J Med Chem 53(3):1048–1055
74. Jiang JK, Boxer MB, Vander Heiden MG, Shen M, Skoumbourdis AP, Southall N et al (2010) Evaluation of thieno[3,2-b]pyrrole[3,2-d]pyridazinones as activators of the tumor cell specific M2 isoform of pyruvate kinase. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 20(11):3387–3393
75. Anastasiou D, Yu Y, Israelsen WJ, Jiang JK, Boxer MB, Hong BS et al (2012) Pyruvate kinase M2 activators promote tetramer formation and suppress tumorigenesis. Nat Chem Biol 8(10):839–847

76. Li J, Li S, Guo J, Li Q, Long J, Ma C et al (2018) Natural product micheliolide (MCL) irreversibly activates pyruvate kinase M2 and suppresses leukemia. J Med Chem 61(9):4155–4164
77. Li RZ, Fan XX, Shi DF, Zhu GY, Wang YW, Luo LX et al (2018) Identification of a new pyruvate kinase M2 isoform (PKM2) activator for the treatment of non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Chem Biol Drug Des 92(5):1851–1858
78. Mazurek S (2011) Pyruvate kinase type M2: a key regulator of the metabolic budget system in tumor cells. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 43(7):969–980
79. Shim H, Dolde C, Lewis BC, Wu CS, Dang G, Jungmann RA et al (1997) C-Myc transactivation of LDH-A: implications for tumor metabolism and growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94(13):6658–6663
80. Gouirand V, Guillaumond F, Vasseur S (2018) Influence of the tumor microenvironment on cancer cells metabolic reprogramming. Front Oncol 8:117. https://doi.org/10.3389/fonc.2018.00117
81. Rahman M, Hasan MR (2015) Cancer metabolism and drug resistance. Meta 5(4):571–600
82. Zhou Y, Tozzi F, Chen J, Fan F, Xia L, Wang J et al (2012) Intracellular ATP levels are a pivotal determinant of chemoresistance in colon cancer cells. Cancer Res 72(1):304–314
83. Mungo E, Bergandi L, Salaroglio IC, Doublier S (2018) Pyruvate treatment restores the effectiveness of chemotherapeutic agents in human colon adenocarcinoma and pleural mesothelioma cells. Int J Mol Sci 19(11):E3550. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19113550
84. Zhou M, Zhao Y, Ding Y, Liu H, Liu Z, Fodstad O, Riker AI, Kamarajugadda S, Lu J, Owen LB, Ledoux SP, Tan M (2010) Warburg effect in chemosensitivity: targeting lactate dehydrogenase-a re-sensitizes taxol-resistant cancer cells to taxol. Mol Cancer 9:33
85. Yao F, Zhao T, Zhong C, Zhu J, Zhao H (2013) LDHA is necessary for the tumorigenicity ofesophageal squamous cell carcinoma. Tumour Biol 34(1):25–31
86. Dorneburg C, Fischer M, Barth TFE, Mueller-Klieser W, Hero B, Gecht J et al (2018) LDHA in neuroblastoma is associated with poor outcome and its depletion decreases neuroblastoma growth independent of aerobic glycolysis. Clin Cancer Res 24(22):5772–5783
87. Xie H, Hanai J, Ren JG, Kats L, Burgess K, Bhargava P et al (2014) Targeting lactate dehydrogenase—A inhibits tumorigenesis and tumor progression in mouse models of lung cancer and impacts tumor-initiating cells. Cell Metab 19(5):795–809
88. Le A, Cooper CR, Gouw AM, Dinavahi R, Maitra A, Deck LM, Royer RE, Vander Jagt DL, Semenza GL, Dang CV (2010) Inhibition of lactate dehydrogenase A induces oxidative stress and inhibits tumor progression. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(5):2037–2042
89. Arseneault R, Chien A, Newington JT, Rappon T, Harris R, Cumming RC (2013) Attenuation of LDHA expression in cancer cells leads to redox-dependent alterations in cytoskeletal structure and cell migration. Cancer Lett 338(2):255–266
90. Zhai X, Yang Y, Wan J, Zhu R, Wu Y (2013) Inhibition of LDH-A by oxamate induces G2/M arrest, apoptosis and increases radiosensitivity in nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells. Oncol Rep 30(6):2983–2991
91. Zhao Z, Han F, Yang S, Wu J, Zhan W (2015) Oxamate-mediated inhibition of lactate dehydrogenase induces protective autophagy in gastric cancer cells: involvement of the Akt-mTOR signaling pathway. Cancer Lett 358(1):17–26
92. An J, Zhang Y, He J, Zang Z, Zhou Z, Pei X et al (2017) Lactate dehydrogenase A promotes the invasion and proliferation of pituitary adenoma. Sci Rep 7(1):4734. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-04366-5
93. Xian ZY, Liu JM, Chen QK, Chen HZ, Ye CJ, Xue J et al (2015) Inhibition of LDHA suppresses tumor progression in prostate cancer. Tumour Biol 36(10):8093–8100
94. Gao S, Tu DN, Li H, Jiang JX, Cao X, You JB et al (2016) Pharmacological or genetic inhibition of LDHA reverses tumor progression of pediatric osteosarcoma. Biomed Pharmacother 81:388–393
95. He Y, Chen X, Yu Y, Li J, Hu Q, Xue C et al (2018) LDHA is a direct target of miR-30d-5p and contributes to aggressive progression of gallbladder carcinoma. Mol Carcinog 57(6):772–783
96. Kohlmann A, Zech SG, Li F, Zhou T, Squillace RM, Commodore L et al (2013) Fragment growing and linking lead to novel nanomolar lactate dehydrogenase inhibitors. J Med Chem 56(3):1023–1040
97. Granchi C, Paterni I, Rani R, Minutolo F (2013) Small-molecule inhibitors of human LDH5. Future Med Chem 5(16):1967–1991
98. Manerba M, Vettraino M, Fiume L, Di Stefano G, Sartini A, Giacomini E et al (2012) Galloflavin (CAS 568-80-9): a novel inhibitor of lactate dehydrogenase. Chem Med Chem 7(2):311–317
99. Farabegoli F, Vettraino M, Manerba M, Fiume L, Roberti M, Di Stefano G (2012) Galloflavin, a new lactate dehydrogenase inhibitor, induces the death of human breast cancer cells with different glycolytic attitude by affecting distinct signaling pathways. Eur J Pharm Sci 47(4):729–738
100. Vettraino M, Manerba M, Govoni M, Di Stefano G (2013) Galloflavin suppresses lactate dehydrogenase activity and causes MYC downregulation in Burkitt lymphoma cells through NAD/NADH-dependent inhibition of sirtuin-1. Anti-Cancer Drugs 24(8):862–870
101. Han X, Sheng X, Jones HM, Jackson AL, Kilgore J, Stine JE et al (2015) Evaluation of the anti-tumor effects of lactate dehydrogenase inhibitor galloflavin in endometrial cancer cells. J Hematol Oncol 8:2. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13045-014-0097-x
102. de la Cruz-Lopez KG, Castro-Munoz LJ, Reyes-Hernandez DO, Garcia-Carranca A, Manzo-Merino J (2019) Lactate in the regulation of tumor microen-

vironment and therapeutic approaches. Front Oncol 9:1143. https://doi.org/10.3389/fonc.2019.01143
103. Halestrap AP, Wilson MC (2012) The monocarboxylate transporter family-role and regulation. IUBMB Life 64(2):109–119
104. Pertega-Gomes N, Vizcaino JR, Miranda-Goncalves V, Pinheiro C, Silva J, Pereira H et al (2011) Monocarboxylate transporter 4 (MCT4) and CD147 overexpression is associated with poor prognosis in prostate cancer. BMC Cancer 11:312. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2407-11-312
105. Curry JM, Tuluc M, Whitaker-Menezes D, Ames JA, Anantharaman A, Butera A et al (2013) Cancer metabolism, stemness and tumor recurrence: MCT1 and MCT4 are functional biomarkers of metabolic symbiosis in head and neck cancer. Cell Cycle 12(9):1371–1384
106. Eilertsen M, Andersen S, Al-Saad S, Kiselev Y, Donnem T, Stenvold H et al (2014) Monocarboxylate transporters 1-4 in NSCLC: MCT1 is an independent prognostic marker for survival. PLoS One 9(9):e105038. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0105038
107. Kim Y, Choi JW, Lee JH, Kim YS (2015) Expression of lactate/H(+) symporters MCT1 and MCT4 and their chaperone CD147 predicts tumor progression in clear cell renal cell carcinoma: immunohistochemical and the cancer genome atlas data analyses. Hum Pathol 46(1):104–112
108. Latif A, Chadwick AL, Kitson SJ, Gregson HJ, Sivalingam VN, Bolton J et al (2017) Monocarboxylate transporter 1 (MCT1) is an independent prognostic biomarker in endometrial cancer. BMC Clin Pathol 17:27. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12907-017-0067-7
109. Ambrosetti D, Dufies M, Dadone B, Durand M, Borchiellini D, Amiel J et al (2018) The two glycolytic markers GLUT1 and MCT1 correlate with tumor grade and survival in clear-cell renal cell carcinoma. PLoS One 13(2):e0193477. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0193477
110. Pinheiro C, Miranda-Goncalves V, Longatto-Filho A, Vicente AL, Berardinelli GN, Scapulatempo-Neto C et al (2016) The metabolic microenvironment of melanomas: prognostic value of MCT1 and MCT4. Cell Cycle 15(11):1462–1470
111. Payen VL, Hsu MY, Radecke KS, Wyart E, Vazeille T, Bouzin C et al (2017) Monocarboxylate transporter MCT1 promotes tumor metastasis independently of its activity as a lactate transporter. Cancer Res 77(20):5591–5601
112. Izumi H, Takahashi M, Uramoto H, Nakayama Y, Oyama T, Wang KY et al (2011) Monocarboxylate transporters 1 and 4 are involved in the invasion activity of human lung cancer cells. Cancer Sci 102(5):1007–1013
113. Kong SC, Nohr-Nielsen A, Zeeberg K, Reshkin SJ, Hoffmann EK, Novak I et al (2016) Monocarboxylate transporters MCT1 and MCT4 regulate migration and invasion of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma cells. Pancreas 45(7):1036–1047
114. Zhu J, Wu YN, Zhang W, Zhang XM, Ding X, Li HQ et al (2014) Monocarboxylate transporter 4 facilitates cell proliferation and migration and is associated with poor prognosis in oral squamous cell carcinoma patients. PLoS One 9(1):e87904. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0087904
115. Doherty JR, Yang C, Scott KE, Cameron MD, Fallahi M, Li W et al (2014) Blocking lactate export by inhibiting the Myc target MCT1 disables glycolysis and glutathione synthesis. Cancer Res 74(3):908–920
116. Hong CS, Graham NA, Gu W, Espindola Camacho C, Mah V, Maresh EL et al (2016) MCT1 modulates cancer cell pyruvate export and growth of tumors that co-express MCT1 and MCT4. Cell Rep 14(7):1590–1601
117. Morais-Santos F, Granja S, Miranda-Goncalves V, Moreira AH, Queiros S, Vilaca JL et al (2015) Targeting lactate transport suppresses in vivo breast tumour growth. Oncotarget 6(22):19177–19189
118. Nancolas B, Sessions RB, Halestrap AP (2015) Identification of key binding site residues of MCT1 for AR-C155858 reveals the molecular basis of its isoform selectivity. Biochem J 466(1):177–188
119. Le Floch R, Chiche J, Marchiq I, Naiken T, Ilc K, Murray CM et al (2011) CD147 subunit of lactate/H+ symporters MCT1 and hypoxia-inducible MCT4 is critical for energetics and growth of glycolytic tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(40):16663–16668
120. Hanson DJ, Nakamura S, Amachi R, Hiasa M, Oda A, Tsuji D et al (2015) Effective impairment of myeloma cells and their progenitors by blockade of monocarboxylate transportation. Oncotarget 6(32):33568–33586
121. Lamb R, Harrison H, Hulit J, Smith DL, Lisanti MP, Sotgia F (2014) Mitochondria as new therapeutic targets for eradicating cancer stem cells: quantitative proteomics and functional validation via MCT1/2 inhibition. Oncotarget 5(22):11029–11037
122. Andersen AP, Flinck M, Oernbo EK, Pedersen NB, Viuff BM, Pedersen SF (2016) Roles of acid-extruding ion transporters in regulation of breast cancer cell growth in a 3-dimensional microenvironment. Mol Cancer 15(1):45. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12943-016-0528-0
123. Guan X, Bryniarski MA, Morris ME (2018) In vitro and in vivo efficacy of the monocarboxylate transporter 1 inhibitor AR-C155858 in the murine 4T1 breast cancer tumor model. AAPS J 21(1):3. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12248-018-0261-2
124. Guan X, Morris ME (2019) Pharmacokinetics of the monocarboxylate transporter 1 inhibitor AZD3965 in mice: potential enterohepatic circulation and target-mediated disposition. Pharm Res 37(1):5. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11095-019-2735-z
125. Polanski R, Hodgkinson CL, Fusi A, Nonaka D, Priest L, Kelly P et al (2014) Activity of the monocar-

boxylate transporter 1 inhibitor AZD3965 in small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 20(4):926–937
126. Noble RA, Bell N, Blair H, Sikka A, Thomas H, Phillips N et al (2017) Inhibition of monocarboxyate transporter 1 by AZD3965 as a novel therapeutic approach for diffuse large B-cell lymphoma and Burkitt lymphoma. Haematologica 102(7):1247–1257
127. Curtis NJ, Mooney L, Hopcroft L, Michopoulos F, Whalley N, Zhong H et al (2017) Pre-clinical pharmacology of AZD3965, a selective inhibitor of MCT1: DLBCL, NHL and Burkitt's lymphoma antitumor activity. Oncotarget 8(41):69219–69236
128. Halford SE, Jones P, Wedge S, Hirschberg S, Katugampola S, Veal G (2017) A first-in-human first-in-class (FIC) trial of the monocarboxylate transporter 1 (MCT1) inhibitor AZD3965 in patients with advanced solid tumours. J Clin Oncol 35:2516–2516
129. Colen CB, Shen Y, Ghoddoussi F, Yu P, Francis TB, Koch BJ et al (2011) Metabolic targeting of lactate efflux by malignant glioma inhibits invasiveness and induces necrosis: an in vivo study. Neoplasia 13(7):620–632
130. Hamdan L, Arrar Z, Al Muataz Y, Suleiman L, Negrier C, Mulengi JK et al (2013) Alpha cyano-4-hydroxy-3-methoxycinnamic acid inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis in human breast cancer cells. PLoS One 8(9):e72953. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0072953
131. Sonveaux P, Vegran F, Schroeder T, Wergin MC, Verrax J, Rabbani ZN et al (2008) Targeting lactate-fueled respiration selectively kills hypoxic tumor cells in mice. J Clin Invest 118(12):3930–3942
132. Bosshart PD, Kalbermatter D, Bonetti S, Fotiadis D (2019) Structure and function of a monocarboxylate transporter homolog specific for L-lactate. Mol Cell Oncol 6(6):e1646605. https://doi.org/10.1080/23723556.2019.1646605
133. Benjamin D, Robay D, Hindupur SK, Pohlmann J, Colombi M, El-Shemerly MY et al (2018) Dual inhibition of the lactate transporters MCT1 and MCT4 is synthetic lethal with metformin due to NAD+ depletion in cancer cells. Cell Rep 25(11):3047–3058 e3044
134. Jonnalagadda S, Jonnalagadda SK, Ronayne CT, Nelson GL, Solano LN, Rumbley J et al (2019) Novel N,N-dialkyl cyanocinnamic acids as monocarboxylate transporter 1 and 4 inhibitors. Oncotarget 10(24):2355–2368
135. Nancolas B, Guo L, Zhou R, Nath K, Nelson DS, Leeper DB et al (2016) The anti-tumour agent lonidamine is a potent inhibitor of the mitochondrial pyruvate carrier and plasma membrane monocarboxylate transporters. Biochem J 473(7):929–936
136. Nath K, Nelson DS, Ho AM, Lee SC, Darpolor MM, Pickup S et al (2013) (31) P and (1) H MRS of DB-1 melanoma xenografts: lonidamine selectively decreases tumor intracellular pH and energy status and sensitizes tumors to melphalan. NMR Biomed 26(1):98–105
137. Ashton TM, McKenna WG, Kunz-Schughart LA, Higgins GS (2018) Oxidative phosphorylation as an emerging target in cancer therapy. Clin Cancer Res 24(11):2482–2490
138. Sancho P, Barneda D, Heeschen C (2016) Hallmarks of cancer stem cell metabolism. Br J Cancer 114(12):1305–1312
139. Viale A, Pettazzoni P, Lyssiotis CA, Ying H, Sanchez N, Marchesini M et al (2014) Oncogene ablation-resistant pancreatic cancer cells depend on mitochondrial function. Nature 514(7524):628–632
140. Harris RA, Bowker-Kinley MM, Huang B, Wu P (2002) Regulation of the activity of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex. Adv Enzym Regul 42:249–259
141. Roche TE, Hiromasa Y (2007) Pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase regulatory mechanisms and inhibition in treating diabetes, heart ischemia, and cancer. Cell Mol Life Sci 64(7–8):830–849
142. Grassian AR, Metallo CM, Coloff JL, Stephanopoulos G, Brugge JS (2011) Erk regulation of pyruvate dehydrogenase flux through PDK4 modulates cell proliferation. Genes Dev 25(16):1716–1733
143. Kaplon J, Zheng L, Meissl K, Chaneton B, Selivanov VA, Mackay G et al (2013) A key role for mitochondrial gatekeeper pyruvate dehydrogenase in oncogene-induced senescence. Nature 498(7452):109–112
144. Bonnet S, Archer SL, Allalunis-Turner J, Haromy A, Beaulieu C, Thompson R et al (2007) A mitochondria-K+ channel axis is suppressed in cancer and its normalization promotes apoptosis and inhibits cancer growth. Cancer Cell 11(1):37–51
145. Sutendra G, Kinnaird A, Dromparis P, Paulin R, Stenson TH, Haromy A et al (2014) A nuclear pyruvate dehydrogenase complex is important for the generation of acetyl-CoA and histone acetylation. Cell 158(1):84–97
146. Michelakis ED, Webster L, Mackey JR (2008) Dichloroacetate (DCA) as a potential metabolic-targeting therapy for cancer. Br J Cancer 99(7):989–994
147. Whitehouse S, Cooper RH, Randle PJ (1974) Mechanism of activation of pyruvate dehydrogenase by dichloroacetate and other halogenated carboxylic acids. Biochem J 141(3):761–774
148. Bowker-Kinley MM, Davis WI, Wu P, Harris RA, Popov KM (1998) Evidence for existence of tissue-specific regulation of the mammalian pyruvate dehydrogenase complex. Biochem J 329(Pt 1):191–196
149. Cao W, Yacoub S, Shiverick KT, Namiki K, Sakai Y, Porvasnik S et al (2008) Dichloroacetate (DCA) sensitizes both wild-type and over expressing Bcl-2 prostate cancer cells in vitro to radiation. Prostate 68(11):1223–1231
150. Sun RC, Fadia M, Dahlstrom JE, Parish CR, Board PG, Blackburn AC (2010) Reversal of the glycolytic phenotype by dichloroacetate inhibits metastatic

breast cancer cell growth in vitro and in vivo. Breast Cancer Res Treat 120(1):253–260
151. Madhok BM, Yeluri S, Perry SL, Hughes TA, Jayne DG (2010) Dichloroacetate induces apoptosis and cell-cycle arrest in colorectal cancer cells. Br J Cancer 102(12):1746–1752
152. Shahrzad S, Lacombe K, Adamcic U, Minhas K, Coomber BL (2010) Sodium dichloroacetate (DCA) reduces apoptosis in colorectal tumor hypoxia. Cancer Lett 297(1):75–83
153. Sutendra G, Dromparis P, Kinnaird A, Stenson TH, Haromy A, Parker JM et al (2013) Mitochondrial activation by inhibition of PDKII suppresses HIF1a signaling and angiogenesis in cancer. Oncogene 32(13):1638–1650
154. Michelakis ED, Sutendra G, Dromparis P, Webster L, Haromy A, Niven E et al (2010) Metabolic modulation of glioblastoma with dichloroacetate. Sci Transl Med 2(31):31ra34. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3000677
155. Dunbar EM, Coats BS, Shroads AL, Langaee T, Lew A, Forder JR et al (2014) Phase 1 trial of dichloroacetate (DCA) in adults with recurrent malignant brain tumors. Investig New Drugs 32(3):452–464
156. Zachar Z, Marecek J, Maturo C, Gupta S, Stuart SD, Howell K et al (2011) Non-redox-active lipoate derivates disrupt cancer cell mitochondrial metabolism and are potent anticancer agents in vivo. J Mol Med (Berl) 89(11):1137–1148
157. Stuart SD, Schauble A, Gupta S, Kennedy AD, Keppler BR, Bingham PM et al (2014) A strategically designed small molecule attacks alpha-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase in tumor cells through a redox process. Cancer Metab 2(1):4. https://doi.org/10.1186/2049-3002-2-4
158. Pardee TS, Anderson RG, Pladna KM, Isom S, Ghiraldeli LP, Miller LD et al (2018) A phase I study of CPI-613 in combination with high-dose cytarabine and mitoxantrone for relapsed or refractory acute myeloid leukemia. Clin Cancer Res 24(9):2060–2073
159. Lycan TW, Pardee TS, Petty WJ, Bonomi M, Alistar A, Lamar ZS et al (2016) A phase II clinical trial of CPI-613 in patients with relapsed or refractory small cell lung carcinoma. PLoS One 11(10):e0164244. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0164244
160. Alistar A, Morris BB, Desnoyer R, Klepin HD, Hosseinzadeh K, Clark C et al (2017) Safety and tolerability of the first-in-class agent CPI-613 in combination with modified FOLFIRINOX in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer: a single-Centre, open-label, dose-escalation, phase 1 trial. Lancet Oncol 18(6):770–778
161. Philip PA, Buyse ME, Alistar AT, Rocha Lima CM, Luther S, Pardee TS et al (2019) A phase III open-label trial to evaluate efficacy and safety of CPI-613 plus modified FOLFIRINOX (mFFX) versus FOLFIRINOX (FFX) in patients with metastatic adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. Future Oncol 15(28):3189–3196
162. Reitman ZJ, Yan H (2010) Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 and 2 mutations in cancer: alterations at a crossroads of cellular metabolism. J Natl Cancer Inst 102(13):932–941
163. Yan H, Parsons DW, Jin G, McLendon R, Rasheed BA, Yuan W et al (2009) IDH1 and IDH2 mutations in gliomas. N Engl J Med 360(8):765–773
164. Bleeker FE, Lamba S, Leenstra S, Troost D, Hulsebos T, Vandertop WP et al (2009) IDH1 mutations at residue p.R132 (IDH1(R132)) occur frequently in high-grade gliomas but not in other solid tumors. Hum Mutat 30(1):7–11
165. Hartmann C, Meyer J, Balss J, Capper D, Mueller W, Christians A et al (2009) Type and frequency of IDH1 and IDH2 mutations are related to astrocytic and oligodendroglial differentiation and age: a study of 1,010 diffuse gliomas. Acta Neuropathol 118(4):469–474
166. Koh J, Cho H, Kim H, Kim SI, Yun S, Park CK et al (2015) IDH2 mutation in gliomas including novel mutation. Neuropathology 35(3):236–244
167. Dang L, White DW, Gross S, Bennett BD, Bittinger MA, Driggers EM et al (2009) Cancer-associated IDH1 mutations produce 2-hydroxyglutarate. Nature 462(7274):739–744
168. Ward PS, Patel J, Wise DR, Abdel-Wahab O, Bennett BD, Coller HA et al (2010) The common feature of leukemia-associated IDH1 and IDH2 mutations is a neomorphic enzyme activity converting alpha-ketoglutarate to 2-hydroxyglutarate. Cancer Cell 17(3):225–234
169. Xu W, Yang H, Liu Y, Yang Y, Wang P, Kim SH et al (2011) Oncometabolite 2-hydroxyglutarate is a competitive inhibitor of alpha-ketoglutarate-dependent dioxygenases. Cancer Cell 19(1):17–30
170. Chowdhury R, Yeoh KK, Tian YM, Hillringhaus L, Bagg EA, Rose NR et al (2011) The oncometabolite 2-hydroxyglutarate inhibits histone lysine demethylases. EMBO Rep 12(5):463–469
171. Parsons DW, Jones S, Zhang X, Lin JC, Leary RJ, Angenendt P et al (2008) An integrated genomic analysis of human glioblastoma multiforme. Science 321(5897):1807–1812
172. Amary MF, Bacsi K, Maggiani F, Damato S, Halai D, Berisha F et al (2011) IDH1 and IDH2 mutations are frequent events in central chondrosarcoma and central and periosteal chondromas but not in other mesenchymal tumours. J Pathol 224(3):334–343
173. Iannaci G, Luise R, Sapere P, Costanzo RM, Rossiello R (2013) Extraskeletal osteosarcoma: a very rare case report of primary tumor of the colon-rectum and review of the literature. Pathol Res Pract 209(6):393–396
174. Mardis ER, Ding L, Dooling DJ, Larson DE, McLellan MD, Chen K et al (2009) Recurring mutations found by sequencing an acute myeloid leukemia genome. N Engl J Med 361(11):1058–1066

175. Borger DR, Tanabe KK, Fan KC, Lopez HU, Fantin VR, Straley KS et al (2012) Frequent mutation of isocitrate dehydrogenase (IDH)1 and IDH2 in cholangiocarcinoma identified through broad-based tumor genotyping. Oncologist 17(1):72–79
176. Fathi AT, Sadrzadeh H, Comander AH, Higgins MJ, Bardia A, Perry A et al (2014) Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 (IDH1) mutation in breast adenocarcinoma is associated with elevated levels of serum and urine 2-hydroxyglutarate. Oncologist 19(6):602–607
177. Hinsch A, Brolund M, Hube-Magg C, Kluth M, Simon R, Moller-Koop C et al (2018) Immunohistochemically detected IDH1(R132H) mutation is rare and mostly heterogeneous in prostate cancer. World J Urol 36(6):877–882
178. Yen KE, Bittinger MA, Su SM, Fantin VR (2010) Cancer-associated IDH mutations: biomarker and therapeutic opportunities. Oncogene 29(49):6409–6417
179. Pusch S, Krausert S, Fischer V, Balss J, Ott M, Schrimpf D et al (2017) Pan-mutant IDH1 inhibitor BAY 1436032 for effective treatment of IDH1 mutant astrocytoma in vivo. Acta Neuropathol 133(4):629–644
180. Chaturvedi A, Herbst L, Pusch S, Klett L, Goparaju R, Stichel D et al (2017) Pan-mutant-IDH1 inhibitor BAY1436032 is highly effective against human IDH1 mutant acute myeloid leukemia in vivo. Leukemia 31(10):2020–2028
181. Cho YS, Levell JR, Liu G, Caferro T, Sutton J, Shafer CM et al (2017) Discovery and evaluation of clinical candidate IDH305, a brain penetrant mutant IDH1 inhibitor. ACS Med Chem Lett 8(10):1116–1121
182. DiNardo CD, Schimmer AD, Yee KWL, Hochhaus A, Kraemer A, Carvajal RD et al (2016) A phase I study of IDH305 in patients with advanced malignancies including relapsed/refractory AML and MDS that harbor IDH1R132 mutations. Blood 128(22):1073–1073
183. Deng G, Shen J, Yin M, McManus J, Mathieu M, Gee P et al (2015) Selective inhibition of mutant isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 (IDH1) via disruption of a metal binding network by an allosteric small molecule. J Biol Chem 290(2):762–774
184. Popovici-Muller J, Lemieux RM, Artin E, Saunders JO, Salituro FG, Travins J et al (2018) Discovery of AG-120 (Ivosidenib): a first-in-class mutant IDH1 inhibitor for the treatment of IDH1 mutant cancers. ACS Med Chem Lett 9(4):300–305
185. Heredia V, Mendiola M, Ortiz E, Bernabéu D, Pozo-Kreilinger JJ, Miguel M et al (2017) 1524PAG-120, a novel IDH1 targeted molecule, inhibits invasion and migration of chondrosarcoma cells in vitro. Ann Oncol 28(Suppl 5). https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdx387.049
186. Nicolay B, Narayanaswamy R, Aguado E, Nagaraja R, Murtie J, Liu G et al (2017) The IDH1 mutant inhibitor AG-120 shows strong inhibition of 2-HG production in an orthotopic IDH1 mutant glioma model in vivo. Neuro-Oncology 19(suppl 6):iv86. Presented at the 22nd Annual Scientific Meeting and Education Day of the Society for Neuro-oncology, November 16–19, 2017, San Francisco, CA, USA. https://doi.org/10.1093/neuonc/nox168.351
187. Dhillon S (2018) Ivosidenib: first global approval. Drugs 78(14):1509–1516
188. Brooks N, DeWalt R, Boulet S, Lu ZH, Kays L, Cavitt R et al (2019) Identification and characterization of LY3410738, a novel covalent inhibitor of cancer-associated mutant Isocitrate dehydrogenase 1 (IDH1). Cancer Res 79(13):615. https://doi.org/10.1158/1538-7445.Am2019-Lb-274
189. Wang F, Travins J, DeLaBarre B, Penard-Lacronique V, Schalm S, Hansen E et al (2013) Targeted inhibition of mutant IDH2 in leukemia cells induces cellular differentiation. Science 340(6132):622–626
190. Chen J, Yang J, Sun X, Wang Z, Cheng X, Lu W et al (2017) Allosteric inhibitor remotely modulates the conformation of the orthestric pockets in mutant IDH2/R140Q. Sci Rep 7(1):16458. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-16427-w
191. Kernytsky A, Wang F, Hansen E, Schalm S, Straley K, Gliser C et al (2015) IDH2 mutation-induced histone and DNA hypermethylation is progressively reversed by small-molecule inhibition. Blood 125(2):296–303
192. Yen K, Travins J, Wang F, David MD, Artin E, Straley K et al (2017) AG-221, a first-in-class therapy targeting acute myeloid leukemia harboring oncogenic IDH2 mutations. Cancer Discov 7(5):478–493
193. Amatangelo MD, Quek L, Shih A, Stein EM, Roshal M, David MD et al (2017) Enasidenib induces acute myeloid leukemia cell differentiation to promote clinical response. Blood 130(6):732–741
194. Stein EM, DiNardo CD, Fathi AT, Pollyea DA, Stone RM, Altman JK et al (2019) Molecular remission and response patterns in patients with mutant-IDH2 acute myeloid leukemia treated with enasidenib. Blood 133(7):676–687
195. Ma R, Yun CH (2018) Crystal structures of pan-IDH inhibitor AG-881 in complex with mutant human IDH1 and IDH2. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 503(4):2912–2917
196. Yen K, Konteatis Z, Straley K, Artin E, David M, Quivoron C et al (2017) AG-881, a brain penetrant, potent, pan-mutant IDH (mIDH) inhibitor for use in mIDH solid and hematologic malignancies. Presented at the AACR-NCI-EORTC International Conference on Molecular Targets and Cancer Therapeutics, October 26–30, 2017, Philadelphia, PA, USA. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.TARG-17-B126
197. Mellinghoff IK, Penas-Prado M, Peters KB, Cloughesy TF, Burris HA, Maher EA et al (2016) Phase 1 study of AG-881, an inhibitor of mutant IDH1/IDH2, in patients with advanced IDH-mutant solid tumors, including glioma. J Clin Oncol 36(15 Suppl):2002–2002. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2018.36.15_suppl.2002

198. El-Mir MY, Nogueira V, Fontaine E, Averet N, Rigoulet M, Leverve X (2000) Dimethylbiguanide inhibits cell respiration via an indirect effect targeted on the respiratory chain complex I. J Biol Chem 275(1):223–228
199. Owen MR, Doran E, Halestrap AP (2000) Evidence that metformin exerts its anti-diabetic effects through inhibition of complex 1 of the mitochondrial respiratory chain. Biochem J 348:607–614
200. Zhou G, Myers R, Li Y, Chen Y, Shen X, Fenyk-Melody J et al (2001) Role of AMP-activated protein kinase in mechanism of metformin action. J Clin Invest 108(8):1167–1174
201. Shaw RJ, Lamia KA, Vasquez D, Koo SH, Bardeesy N, Depinho RA et al (2005) The kinase LKB1 mediates glucose homeostasis in liver and therapeutic effects of metformin. Science 310(5754):1642–1646
202. He L, Sabet A, Djedjos S, Miller R, Sun X, Hussain MA et al (2009) Metformin and insulin suppress hepatic gluconeogenesis through phosphorylation of CREB binding protein. Cell 137(4):635–646
203. Lee JM, Seo WY, Song KH, Chanda D, Kim YD, Kim DK et al (2010) AMPK-dependent repression of hepatic gluconeogenesis via disruption of CREB.CRTC2 complex by orphan nuclear receptor small heterodimer partner. J Biol Chem 285(42):32182–32191
204. Bridges HR, Jones AJ, Pollak MN, Hirst J (2014) Effects of metformin and other biguanides on oxidative phosphorylation in mitochondria. Biochem J 462(3):475–487
205. Whelan R, Watts R, Orr CA, Althoff RR, Artiges E, Banaschewski T et al (2014) Neuropsychosocial profiles of current and future adolescent alcohol misusers. Nature 512(7513):185–189
206. Dowling RJ, Zakikhani M, Fantus IG, Pollak M, Sonenberg N (2007) Metformin inhibits mammalian target of rapamycin-dependent translation initiation in breast cancer cells. Cancer Res 67(22):10804–10812
207. Green AS, Chapuis N, Maciel TT, Willems L, Lambert M, Arnoult C et al (2010) The LKB1/AMPK signaling pathway has tumor suppressor activity in acute myeloid leukemia through the repression of mTOR-dependent oncogenic mRNA translation. Blood 116(20):4262–4273
208. Buzzai M, Jones RG, Amaravadi RK, Lum JJ, DeBerardinis RJ, Zhao F et al (2007) Systemic treatment with the antidiabetic drug metformin selectively impairs p53-deficient tumor cell growth. Cancer Res 67(14):6745–6752
209. Ben Sahra I, Laurent K, Giuliano S, Larbret F, Ponzio G, Gounon P et al (2010) Targeting cancer cell metabolism: the combination of metformin and 2-deoxyglucose induces p53-dependent apoptosis in prostate cancer cells. Cancer Res 70(6):2465–2475
210. Zhuang Y, Miskimins WK (2008) Cell cycle arrest in metformin treated breast cancer cells involves activation of AMPK, downregulation of cyclin D1, and requires p27Kip1 or p21Cip1. J Mol Signal 3:18. https://doi.org/10.1186/1750-2187-3-18
211. Fendt SM, Bell EL, Keibler MA, Davidson SM, Wirth GJ, Fiske B et al (2013) Metformin decreases glucose oxidation and increases the dependency of prostate cancer cells on reductive glutamine metabolism. Cancer Res 73(14):4429–4438
212. Janzer A, German NJ, Gonzalez-Herrera KN, Asara JM, Haigis MC, Struhl K (2014) Metformin and phenformin deplete tricarboxylic acid cycle and glycolytic intermediates during cell transformation and NTPs in cancer stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(29):10574–10579
213. Evans JM, Donnelly LA, Emslie-Smith AM, Alessi DR, Morris AD (2005) Metformin and reduced risk of cancer in diabetic patients. BMJ 330(7503):1304–1305
214. Lee MS, Hsu CC, Wahlqvist ML, Tsai HN, Chang YH, Huang YC (2011) Type 2 diabetes increases and metformin reduces total, colorectal, liver and pancreatic cancer incidences in Taiwanese: a representative population prospective cohort study of 800,000 individuals. BMC Cancer 11:20. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2407-11-20
215. Garrett CR, Hassabo HM, Bhadkamkar NA, Wen S, Baladandayuthapani V, Kee BK et al (2012) Survival advantage observed with the use of metformin in patients with type II diabetes and colorectal cancer. Br J Cancer 106(8):1374–1378
216. Shu Y, Sheardown SA, Brown C, Owen RP, Zhang S, Castro RA et al (2007) Effect of genetic variation in the organic cation transporter 1 (OCT1) on metformin action. J Clin Invest 117(5):1422–1431
217. Appleyard MV, Murray KE, Coates PJ, Wullschleger S, Bray SE, Kernohan NM et al (2012) Phenformin as prophylaxis and therapy in breast cancer xenografts. Br J Cancer 106(6):1117–1122
218. Park JH, Kim YH, Park EH, Lee SJ, Kim H, Kim A et al (2019) Effects of metformin and phenformin on apoptosis and epithelial-mesenchymal transition in chemoresistant rectal cancer. Cancer Sci 110(9):2834–2845
219. Vancura A, Bu P, Bhagwat M, Zeng J, Vancurova I (2018) Metformin as an anticancer agent. Trends Pharmacol Sci 39(10):867–878
220. Eagle H (1955) The minimum vitamin requirements of the L and HeLa cells in tissue culture, the production of specific vitamin deficiencies, and their cure. J Exp Med 102(5):595–600
221. Yang L, Moss T, Mangala LS, Marini J, Zhao H, Wahlig S et al (2014) Metabolic shifts toward glutamine regulate tumor growth, invasion and bioenergetics in ovarian cancer. Mol Syst Biol 10:728. https://doi.org/10.1002/msb.20134892
222. van Geldermalsen M, Wang Q, Nagarajah R, Marshall AD, Thoeng A, Gao D et al (2016) ASCT2/SLC1A5 controls glutamine uptake and tumour growth in triple-negative basal-like breast cancer. Oncogene 35(24):3201–3208

223. DeBerardinis RJ, Mancuso A, Daikhin E, Nissim I, Yudkoff M, Wehrli S et al (2007) Beyond aerobic glycolysis: transformed cells can engage in glutamine metabolism that exceeds the requirement for protein and nucleotide synthesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(49):19345–19350
224. Fan J, Kamphorst JJ, Mathew R, Chung MK, White E, Shlomi T et al (2013) Glutamine-driven oxidative phosphorylation is a major ATP source in transformed mammalian cells in both normoxia and hypoxia. Mol Syst Biol 9:712. https://doi.org/10.1038/msb.2013.65
225. DeBerardinis RJ, Cheng T (2010) Q's next: the diverse functions of glutamine in metabolism, cell biology and cancer. Oncogene 29(3):313–324
226. Son J, Lyssiotis CA, Ying H, Wang X, Hua S, Ligorio M et al (2013) Glutamine supports pancreatic cancer growth through a KRAS-regulated metabolic pathway. Nature 496(7443):101–105
227. Duran RV, Oppliger W, Robitaille AM, Heiserich L, Skendaj R, Gottlieb E et al (2012) Glutaminolysis activates Rag-mTORC1 signaling. Mol Cell 47(3):349–358
228. Jewell JL, Kim YC, Russell RC, Yu FX, Park HW, Plouffe SW et al (2015) Metabolism. Differential regulation of mTORC1 by leucine and glutamine. Science 347(6218):194–198
229. Zhang J, Fan J, Venneti S, Cross JR, Takagi T, Bhinder B et al (2014) Asparagine plays a critical role in regulating cellular adaptation to glutamine depletion. Mol Cell 56(2):205–218
230. Dranoff G, Elion GB, Friedman HS, Campbell GL, Bigner DD (1985) Influence of glutamine on the growth of human glioma and medulloblastoma in culture. Cancer Res 45(9):4077–4081
231. Rubin AL (1990) Suppression of transformation by and growth adaptation to low concentrations of glutamine in NIH-3T3 cells. Cancer Res 50(9):2832–2839
232. Yuneva M, Zamboni N, Oefner P, Sachidanandam R, Lazebnik Y (2007) Deficiency in glutamine but not glucose induces MYC-dependent apoptosis in human cells. J Cell Biol 178(1):93–105
233. Fogal V, Babic I, Chao Y, Pastorino S, Mukthavaram R, Jiang P et al (2015) Mitochondrial p32 is upregulated in Myc expressing brain cancers and mediates glutamine addiction. Oncotarget 6(2):1157–1170
234. Tanaka K, Sasayama T, Irino Y, Takata K, Nagashima H, Satoh N et al (2015) Compensatory glutamine metabolism promotes glioblastoma resistance to mTOR inhibitor treatment. J Clin Invest 125(4):1591–1602
235. Katt WP, Lukey MJ, Cerione RA (2017) A tale of two glutaminases: homologous enzymes with distinct roles in tumorigenesis. Future Med Chem 9(2):223–243
236. Huang F, Zhang Q, Ma H, Lv Q, Zhang T (2014) Expression of glutaminase is upregulated in colorectal cancer and of clinical significance. Int J Clin Exp Pathol 7(3):1093–1100
237. Yu D, Shi X, Meng G, Chen J, Yan C, Jiang Y et al (2015) Kidney-type glutaminase (GLS1) is a biomarker for pathologic diagnosis and prognosis of hepatocellular carcinoma. Oncotarget 6(10):7619–7631
238. Xiang L, Mou J, Shao B, Wei Y, Liang H, Takano N et al (2019) Glutaminase 1 expression in colorectal cancer cells is induced by hypoxia and required for tumor growth, invasion, and metastatic colonization. Cell Death Dis 10(2):40. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41419-018-1291-5
239. Cao J, Zhang C, Jiang GQ, Jin SJ, Gao ZH, Wang Q et al (2019) Expression of GLS1 in intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma and its clinical significance. Mol Med Rep 20(2):1915–1924
240. Willis RC, Seegmiller JE (1977) The inhibition by 6-diazo-5-oxo-l-norleucine of glutamine catabolism of the cultured human lymphoblast. J Cell Physiol 93(3):375–382
241. Houchens DP, Ovejera AA, Sheridan MA, Johnson RK, Bogden AE, Neil GL (1979) Therapy for mouse tumors and human tumor xenografts with the antitumor antibiotic AT-125. Cancer Treat Rep 63(3):473–476
242. Thangavelu K, Chong QY, Low BC, Sivaraman J (2014) Structural basis for the active site inhibition mechanism of human kidney-type glutaminase (KGA). Sci Rep 4:3827. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep03827
243. Ahluwalia GS, Grem JL, Hao Z, Cooney DA (1990) Metabolism and action of amino acid analog anticancer agents. Pharmacol Ther 46(2):243–271
244. Magill GB, Myers WP, Reilly HC, Putnam RC, Magill JW, Sykes MP et al (1957) Pharmacological and initial therapeutic observations on 6-diazo-5-oxo-1-norleucine (DON) in human neoplastic disease. Cancer 10(6):1138–1150
245. Cervantes-Madrid D, Romero Y, Duenas-Gonzalez A (2015) Reviving lonidamine and 6-Diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine to be used in combination for metabolic cancer therapy. Biomed Res Int 2015:690492. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/690492
246. Barclay RK, Phillipps MA (1966) Effects of 6-diazo-5-oxol-norleucine and other tumor inhibitors on the biosynthesis of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide in mice. Cancer Res 26(2):282–286
247. Robinson MM, McBryant SJ, Tsukamoto T, Rojas C, Ferraris DV, Hamilton SK, Hansen JC, Curthoys NP (2007) Novel mechanism of inhibition of rat kidney-type glutaminase by bis-2-(5-phenylacetamido-1,2,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)ethyl sulfide (BPTES). Biochem J 406(3):407–414
248. Thangavelu K, Pan CQ, Karlberg T, Balaji G, Uttamchandani M, Suresh V et al (2012) Structural basis for the allosteric inhibitory mechanism of human kidney-type glutaminase (KGA) and its regulation by Raf-Mek-Erk signaling in cancer cell metabolism. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109(20):7705–7710

249. Xu X, Meng Y, Li L, Xu P, Wang J, Li Z, Bian J (2019) Overview of the development of glutaminase inhibitors: achievements and future directions. J Med Chem 62(3):1096–1115
250. Yuneva MO, Fan TW, Allen TD, Higashi RM, Ferraris DV, Tsukamoto T et al (2012) The metabolic profile of tumors depends on both the responsible genetic lesion and tissue type. Cell Metab 15(2):157–170
251. Le A, Lane AN, Hamaker M, Bose S, Gouw A, Barbi J et al (2012) Glucose-independent glutamine metabolism via TCA cycling for proliferation and survival in B cells. Cell Metab 15(1):110–121
252. Xiang Y, Stine ZE, Xia J, Lu Y, O'Connor RS, Altman BJ et al (2015) Targeted inhibition of tumor-specific glutaminase diminishes cell-autonomous tumorigenesis. J Clin Invest 125(6):2293–2306
253. Shukla K, Ferraris DV, Thomas AG, Stathis M, Duvall B, Delahanty G et al (2012) Design, synthesis, and pharmacological evaluation of bis-2-(5-phenylacetamido-1,2,4-thiadiazol-2-yl)ethyl sulfide 3 (BPTES) analogs as glutaminase inhibitors. J Med Chem 55(23):10551–10563
254. Gross MI, Demo SD, Dennison JB, Chen L, Chernov-Rogan T, Goyal B et al (2014) Antitumor activity of the glutaminase inhibitor CB-839 in triple-negative breast cancer. Mol Cancer Ther 13(4):890–901
255. Parlati F, Demo S, Gross M, Janes J, Lewis E, MacKinnon A et al (2014) CB-839, a novel potent and selective glutaminase inhibitor, has broad anti-proliferative activity in cell lines derived from both solid tumors and hematological malignancies. Cancer Res 74:1416–1416
256. Matre P, Velez J, Jacamo R, Qi Y, Su X, Cai T et al (2016) Inhibiting glutaminase in acute myeloid leukemia: metabolic dependency of selected AML subtypes. Oncotarget 7(48):79722–79735
257. Guo L, Zhou B, Liu Z, Xu Y, Lu H, Xia M et al (2016) Blockage of glutaminolysis enhances the sensitivity of ovarian cancer cells to PI3K/mTOR inhibition involvement of STAT3 signaling. Tumour Biol 37(8):11007–11015
258. Parlati F, Gross M, Janes J, Lewis E, MacKinnon A, Rodriguez M et al (2014) Glutaminase inhibitor CB-839 synergizes with pomalidomide in preclinical multiple myeloma models. Blood 124(21):4720. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood.V124.21.4720.4720
259. Eads JR, Krishnamurthi SS, Saltzman JN, Bajor DL, Vinayak S, Barnholtz-Sloan J et al (2018) Phase I clinical trial of the glutaminase inhibitor CB-839 plus capecitabine in patients with advanced solid tumors. J Clin Oncol 36(15 Suppl):2562. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2018.36.15_suppl.2562
260. Li R, Wei P, Wang Y, Liu Y, Liu X, Meng D (2017) Brachyantheraoside A 8, a new natural nor-oleanane triterpenoid as a kidney-type glutaminase inhibitor from Stauntonia brachyanthera. RSC Adv 7(83):52533–52542. https://doi.org/10.1039/C7RA11270J
261. Wu C, Zheng M, Gao S, Luan S, Cheng L, Wang L et al (2017) A natural inhibitor of kidney-type glutaminase: a withanolide from Physalis pubescens with potent anti-tumor activity. Oncotarget 8(69):113516–113530
262. Sellers K, Fox MP, Bousamra M 2nd, Slone SP, Higashi RM, Miller DM et al (2015) Pyruvate carboxylase is critical for non-small-cell lung cancer proliferation. J Clin Invest 125(2):687–698
263. Davidson SM, Papagiannakopoulos T, Olenchock BA, Heyman JE, Keibler MA, Luengo A et al (2016) Environment impacts the metabolic dependencies of Ras-driven non-small cell lung cancer. Cell Metab 23(3):517–528
264. Menendez JA, Lupu R (2007) Fatty acid synthase and the lipogenic phenotype in cancer pathogenesis. Nat Rev Cancer 7(10):763–777
265. Medes G, Thomas A, Weinhouse S (1953) Metabolism of neoplastic tissue. IV. A study of lipid synthesis in neoplastic tissue slices in vitro. Cancer Res 13(1):27–29
266. Swinnen JV, Brusselmans K, Verhoeven G (2006) Increased lipogenesis in cancer cells: new players, novel targets. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 9(4):358–365
267. Schulze A, Harris AL (2012) How cancer metabolism is tuned for proliferation and vulnerable to disruption. Nature 491(7424):364–373
268. Srere PA (1972) The citrate enzymes: their structures, mechanisms, and biological functions. Curr Top Cell Regul 5:229–283
269. Qian X, Hu J, Zhao J, Chen H (2015) ATP citrate lyase expression is associated with advanced stage and prognosis in gastric adenocarcinoma. Int J Clin Exp Med 8(5):7855–7860
270. Gao Y, Islam MS, Tian J, Lui VW, Xiao D (2014) Inactivation of ATP citrate lyase by Cucurbitacin B: a bioactive compound from cucumber, inhibits prostate cancer growth. Cancer Lett 349(1):15–25
271. Yahagi N, Shimano H, Hasegawa K, Ohashi K, Matsuzaka T, Najima Y et al (2005) Co-ordinate activation of lipogenic enzymes in hepatocellular carcinoma. Eur J Cancer 41(9):1316–1322
272. Wang D, Yin L, Wei J, Yang Z, Jiang G (2017) ATP citrate lyase is increased in human breast cancer, depletion of which promotes apoptosis. Tumour Biol 39(4). https://doi.org/10.1177/1010428317698338
273. Teng L, Chen Y, Cao Y, Wang W, Xu Y, Wang Y et al (2018) Overexpression of ATP citrate lyase in renal cell carcinoma tissues and its effect on the human renal carcinoma cells in vitro. Oncol Lett 15(5):6967–6974
274. Migita T, Narita T, Nomura K, Miyagi E, Inazuka F, Matsuura M et al (2008) ATP citrate lyase: activation and therapeutic implications in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 68(20):8547–8554
275. Wen J, Min X, Shen M, Hua Q, Han Y, Zhao L et al (2019) ACLY facilitates colon cancer cell metastasis by CTNNB1. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 38(1):401. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-019-1391-9

276. Pearce NJ, Yates JW, Berkhout TA, Jackson B, Tew D, Boyd H et al (1998) The role of ATP citrate-lyase in the metabolic regulation of plasma lipids. Hypolipidaemic effects of SB-204990, a lactone prodrug of the potent ATP citrate-lyase inhibitor SB-201076. Biochem J 334:113–119
277. Hatzivassiliou G, Zhao F, Bauer DE, Andreadis C, Shaw AN, Dhanak D et al (2005) ATP citrate lyase inhibition can suppress tumor cell growth. Cancer Cell 8(4):311–321
278. Chen JC, Chiu MH, Nie RL, Cordell GA, Qiu SX (2005) Cucurbitacins and cucurbitane glycosides: structures and biological activities. Nat Prod Rep 22(3):386–399
279. Mukherjee PK, Nema NK, Maity N, Sarkar BK (2013) Phytochemical and therapeutic potential of cucumber. Fitoterapia 84:227–236. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fitote.2012.10.003
280. Promkan M, Dakeng S, Chakrabarty S, Bogler O, Patmasiriwat P (2013) The effectiveness of cucurbitacin B in BRCA1 defective breast cancer cells. PLoS One 8(2):e55732. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0055732
281. Dakeng S, Duangmano S, Jiratchariyakul W, UP Y, Bogler O, Patmasiriwat P (2012) Inhibition of Wnt signaling by cucurbitacin B in breast cancer cells: reduction of Wnt-associated proteins and reduced translocation of galectin-3-mediated beta-catenin to the nucleus. J Cell Biochem 113(1):49–60
282. Aribi A, Gery S, Lee DH, Thoennissen NH, Thoennissen GB, Alvarez R et al (2013) The triterpenoid cucurbitacin B augments the antiproliferative activity of chemotherapy in human breast cancer. Int J Cancer 132(12):2730–2737
283. Thoennissen NH, Iwanski GB, Doan NB, Okamoto R, Lin P, Abbassi S et al (2009) Cucurbitacin B induces apoptosis by inhibition of the JAK/STAT pathway and potentiates antiproliferative effects of gemcitabine on pancreatic cancer cells. Cancer Res 69(14):5876–5884
284. Iwanski GB, Lee DH, En-Gal S, Doan NB, Castor B, Vogt M et al (2010) Cucurbitacin B, a novel in vivo potentiator of gemcitabine with low toxicity in the treatment of pancreatic cancer. Br J Pharmacol 160(4):998–1007
285. Chan KT, Meng FY, Li Q, Ho CY, Lam TS, To Y et al (2010) Cucurbitacin B induces apoptosis and S phase cell cycle arrest in BEL-7402 human hepatocellular carcinoma cells and is effective via oral administration. Cancer Lett 294(1):118–124
286. Kausar H, Munagala R, Bansal SS, Aqil F, Vadhanam MV, Gupta RC (2013) Cucurbitacin B potently suppresses non-small-cell lung cancer growth: identification of intracellular thiols as critical targets. Cancer Lett 332(1):35–45
287. Piao XM, Gao F, Zhu JX, Wang LJ, Zhao X, Li X et al (2018) Cucurbitacin B inhibits tumor angiogenesis by triggering the mitochondrial signaling pathway in endothelial cells. Int J Mol Med 42(2):1018–1025
288. Hunsakunachai N, Nuengchamnong N, Jiratchariyakul W, Kummalue T, Khemawoot P (2019) Pharmacokinetics of cucurbitacin B from Trichosanthes cucumerina L. in rats. BMC Complement Altern Med 19(1):157. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12906-019-2568-7
289. Wei J, Leit S, Kuai J, Therrien E, Rafi S, Harwood HJ Jr, DeLaBarre B et al (2019) An allosteric mechanism for potent inhibition of human ATP-citrate lyase. Nature 568(7753):566–570
290. Abu-Elheiga L, Jayakumar A, Baldini A, Chirala SS, Wakil SJ (1995) Human acetyl-CoA carboxylase: characterization, molecular cloning, and evidence for two isoforms. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92(9):4011–4015
291. Tong L (2005) Acetyl-coenzyme A carboxylase: crucial metabolic enzyme and attractive target for drug discovery. Cell Mol Life Sci 62(16):1784–1803
292. Abu-Elheiga L, Brinkley WR, Zhong L, Chirala SS, Woldegiorgis G, Wakil SJ (2000) The subcellular localization of acetyl-CoA carboxylase 2. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(4):1444–1449
293. Milgraum LZ, Witters LA, Pasternack GR, Kuhajda FP (1997) Enzymes of the fatty acid synthesis pathway are highly expressed in in situ breast carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 3(11):2115–2120
294. Svensson RU, Parker SJ, Eichner LJ, Kolar MJ, Wallace M, Brun SN et al (2016) Inhibition of acetyl-CoA carboxylase suppresses fatty acid synthesis and tumor growth of non-small-cell lung cancer in preclinical models. Nat Med 22(10):1108–1119
295. Stoiber K, Naglo O, Pernpeintner C, Zhang S, Koeberle A, Ulrich M et al (2018) Targeting de novo lipogenesis as a novel approach in anti-cancer therapy. Br J Cancer 118(1):43–51
296. Brusselmans K, De Schrijver E, Verhoeven G, Swinnen JV (2005) RNA interference-mediated silencing of the acetyl-CoA-carboxylase-alpha gene induces growth inhibition and apoptosis of prostate cancer cells. Cancer Res 65(15):6719–6725
297. Parker RA, Kariya T, Grisar JM, Petrow V (1977) 5-(Tetradecyloxy)-2-furancarboxylic acid and related hypolipidemic fatty acid-like alkyloxyarylcarboxylic acids. J Med Chem 20(6):781–791
298. McCune SA, Harris RA (1979) Mechanism responsible for 5-(tetradecyloxy)-2-furoic acid inhibition of hepatic lipogenesis. J Biol Chem 254(20):10095–10101
299. Arbeeny CM, Meyers DS, Bergquist KE, Gregg RE (1992) Inhibition of fatty acid synthesis decreases very low density lipoprotein secretion in the hamster. J Lipid Res 33(6):843–851
300. Fukuda N, Ontko JA (1984) Interactions between fatty acid synthesis, oxidation, and esterification in the production of triglyceride-rich lipoproteins by the liver. J Lipid Res 25(8):831–842
301. Wang C, Xu C, Sun M, Luo D, Liao DF, Cao D (2009) Acetyl-CoA carboxylase-alpha inhibitor TOFA induces human cancer cell apoptosis. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 385(3):302–306

302. Guseva NV, Rokhlin OW, Glover RA, Cohen MB (2011) TOFA (5-tetradecyl-oxy-2-furoic acid) reduces fatty acid synthesis, inhibits expression of AR, neuropilin-1 and Mcl-1 and kills prostate cancer cells independent of p53 status. Cancer Biol Ther 12(1):80–85
303. Li S, Qiu L, Wu B, Shen H, Zhu J, Zhou L et al (2013) TOFA suppresses ovarian cancer cell growth in vitro and in vivo. Mol Med Rep 8(2):373–378
304. He D, Sun X, Yang H, Li X, Yang D (2018) TOFA induces cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in ACHN and 786-O cells through inhibiting PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathway. J Cancer 9(15):2734–2742
305. Hershey BJ, Vazzana R, Joppi DL, Havas KM (2019) Lipid droplets define a sub-population of breast cancer stem cells. J Clin Med 9(1):E87. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcm9010087
306. Gerth K, Bedorf N, Irschik H, Hofle G, Reichenbach H (1994) The soraphens: a family of novel antifungal compounds from Sorangium cellulosum (Myxobacteria). I. Soraphen A1 alpha: fermentation, isolation, biological properties. J Antibiot (Tokyo) 47(1):23–31
307. Bedorf N, Schomburg D, Gerth K, Reichenbach H, Höfle G (1993) Antibiotics from gliding bacteria, LIV. Isolation and structure elucidation of soraphen A1α, a novel antifungal macrolide from Sorangium cellulosum. Liebigs Annalen der Chemie 1993(9):1017–1021
308. Ligon J, Hill S, Beck J, Zirkle R, Molnar I, Zawodny J et al (2002) Characterization of the biosynthetic gene cluster for the antifungal polyketide soraphen A from Sorangium cellulosum so ce26. Gene 285(1–2):257–267
309. Shen Y, Volrath SL, Weatherly SC, Elich TD, Tong L (2004) A mechanism for the potent inhibition of eukaryotic acetyl-coenzyme A carboxylase by soraphen A, a macrocyclic polyketide natural product. Mol Cell 16(6):881–891
310. Beckers A, Organe S, Timmermans L, Scheys K, Peeters A, Brusselmans K et al (2007) Chemical inhibition of acetyl-CoA carboxylase induces growth arrest and cytotoxicity selectively in cancer cells. Cancer Res 67(17):8180–8187
311. Jump DB, Torres-Gonzalez M, Olson LK (2011) Soraphen A, an inhibitor of acetyl CoA carboxylase activity, interferes with fatty acid elongation. Biochem Pharmacol 81(5):649–660
312. Harriman G, Greenwood J, Bhat S, Huang X, Wang R, Paul D et al (2016) Acetyl-CoA carboxylase inhibition by ND-630 reduces hepatic steatosis, improves insulin sensitivity, and modulates dyslipidemia in rats. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(13):E1796–E1805
313. Cho YS, Lee JI, Shin D, Kim HT, Jung HY, Lee TG et al (2010) Molecular mechanism for the regulation of human ACC2 through phosphorylation by AMPK. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 391(1):187–192
314. Lawitz EJ, Poordad F, Coste A, Loo N, Djedjos CS, McColgan B et al (2017) Acetyl-CoA carboxylase (ACC) inhibitor GS-0976 leads to suppression of hepatic de novo lipogenesis and significant improvements in MRI-PDFF, MRE, and markers of fibrosis after 12 weeks of therapy in patients with NASH. J Hepatol 66(1):S34. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-8278(17)30328-8
315. Lawitz EJ, Coste A, Poordad F, Alkhouri N, Loo N, McColgan BJ et al (2018) Acetyl-CoA carboxylase inhibitor GS-0976 for 12 weeks reduces hepatic de novo lipogenesis and steatosis in patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. ClinGastroenterol Hepatol 16(12):1983–1991. e3. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cgh.2018.04.042
316. Loomba R, Kayali Z, Noureddin M, Ruane P, Lawitz EJ, Bennett M et al (2018) GS-0976 reduces hepatic steatosis and fibrosis markers in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 155(5):1463–1473. e6. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.gastro.2018.07.027
317. Lally JSV, Ghoshal S, DePeralta DK, Moaven O, Wei L, Masia R et al (2019) Inhibition of acetyl-CoA carboxylase by phosphorylation or the inhibitor ND-654 suppresses lipogenesis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Cell Metab 29(1):174–182. e5. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cmet.2018.08.020
318. Grunt TW, Wagner R, Grusch M, Berger W, Singer CF, Marian B et al (2009) Interaction between fatty acid synthase- and ErbB-systems in ovarian cancer cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 385(3):454–459
319. Zhou Y, Niu C, Li Y, Gao B, Zheng J, Guo X, Ma W (2012) Fatty acid synthase expression and esophageal cancer. Mol Biol Rep 39(10):9733–9739
320. Cerne D, Zitnik IP, Sok M (2010) Increased fatty acid synthase activity in non-small cell lung cancer tissue is a weaker predictor of shorter patient survival than increased lipoprotein lipase activity. Arch Med Res 41(6):405–409
321. Daker M, Bhuvanendran S, Ahmad M, Takada K, Khoo AS (2013) Deregulation of lipid metabolism pathway genes in nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells. Mol Med Rep 7(3):731–741
322. Hao Q, Li T, Zhang X, Gao P, Qiao P, Li S et al (2014) Expression and roles of fatty acid synthase in hepatocellular carcinoma. Oncol Rep 32(6):2471–2476
323. Zhang D, Tai LK, Wong LL, Chiu LL, Sethi SK, Koay ES (2005) Proteomic study reveals that proteins involved in metabolic and detoxification pathways are highly expressed in HER-2/neu-positive breast cancer. Mol Cell Proteomics 4(11):1686–1696
324. Van de Sande T, Roskams T, Lerut E, Joniau S, Van Poppel H, Verhoeven G et al (2005) High-level expression of fatty acid synthase in human prostate cancer tissues is linked to activation and nuclear localization of Akt/PKB. J Pathol 206(2):214–219
325. Bandyopadhyay S, Pai SK, Watabe M, Gross SC, Hirota S, Hosobe S et al (2005) FAS expression inversely correlates with PTEN level in pros-

tate cancer and a PI 3-kinase inhibitor synergizes with FAS siRNA to induce apoptosis. Oncogene 24(34):5389–5395
326. Visca P, Sebastiani V, Botti C, Diodoro MG, Lasagni RP, Romagnoli F et al (2004) Fatty acid synthase (FAS) is a marker of increased risk of recurrence in lung carcinoma. Anticancer Res 24(6):4169–4173
327. Wang Y, Zhang XR, Fu J, Tan W, Zhang W (2004) Prognostic value of expression of FASE, HER-2/neu, bcl-2 and p53 in stage I non-small cell lung cancer. Zhonghua Zhong Liu Za Zhi 26(6):369–372
328. Funabashi H, Kawaguchi A, Tomoda H, Omura S, Okuda S, Iwasaki S (1989) Binding site of cerulenin in fatty acid synthetase. J Biochem 105(5):751–755
329. Moche M, Schneider G, Edwards P, Dehesh K, Lindqvist Y (1999) Structure of the complex between the antibiotic cerulenin and its target, beta-ketoacyl-acyl carrier protein synthase. J Biol Chem 274(10):6031–6034
330. Pizer ES, Jackisch C, Wood FD, Pasternack GR, Davidson NE, Kuhajda FP (1996) Inhibition of fatty acid synthesis induces programmed cell death in human breast cancer cells. Cancer Res 56(12):2745–2747
331. Pizer ES, Wood FD, Heine HS, Romantsev FE, Pasternack GR, Kuhajda FP (1996) Inhibition of fatty acid synthesis delays disease progression in a xenograft model of ovarian cancer. Cancer Res 56(6):1189–1193
332. Malvoisin E, Wild F (1990) Effect of drugs which inhibit cholesterol synthesis on syncytia formation in vero cells infected with measles virus. Biochim Biophys Acta 1042(3):359–364
333. Moelling K, Schulze T, Knoop MT, Kay J, Jupp R, Nicolaou G et al (1990) In vitro inhibition of HIV-1 proteinase by cerulenin. FEBS Lett 261(2):373–377
334. Kuhajda FP, Pizer ES, Li JN, Mani NS, Frehywot GL, Townsend CA (2000) Synthesis and antitumor activity of an inhibitor of fatty acid synthase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(7):3450–3454
335. Rendina AR, Cheng D (2005) Characterization of the inactivation of rat fatty acid synthase by C75: inhibition of partial reactions and protection by substrates. Biochem J 388(Pt 3):895–903
336. Li JN, Gorospe M, Chrest FJ, Kumaravel TS, Evans MK, Han WF et al (2001) Pharmacological inhibition of fatty acid synthase activity produces both cytostatic and cytotoxic effects modulated by p53. Cancer Res 61(4):1493–1499
337. Zhou W, Simpson PJ, McFadden JM, Townsend CA, Medghalchi SM, Vadlamudi A et al (2003) Fatty acid synthase inhibition triggers apoptosis during S phase in human cancer cells. Cancer Res 63(21):7330–7337
338. Menendez JA, Mehmi I, Verma VA, Teng PK, Lupu R (2004) Pharmacological inhibition of fatty acid synthase (FAS): a novel therapeutic approach for breast cancer chemoprevention through its ability to suppress Her-2/neu (erbB-2) oncogene-induced malignant transformation. Mol Carcinog 41(3):164–178
339. Corominas-Faja B, Vellon L, Cuyas E, Buxo M, Martin-Castillo B, Serra D et al (2017) Clinical and therapeutic relevance of the metabolic oncogene fatty acid synthase in HER2+ breast cancer. Histol Histopathol 32(7):687–698
340. Alli PM, Pinn ML, Jaffee EM, McFadden JM, Kuhajda FP (2005) Fatty acid synthase inhibitors are chemopreventive for mammary cancer in neu-N transgenic mice. Oncogene 24(1):39–46
341. Loftus TM, Jaworsky DE, Frehywot GL, Townsend CA, Ronnett GV, Lane MD et al (2000) Reduced food intake and body weight in mice treated with fatty acid synthase inhibitors. Science 288(5475):2379–2381
342. Puig T, Vazquez-Martin A, Relat J, Petriz J, Menendez JA, Porta R et al (2008) Fatty acid metabolism in breast cancer cells: differential inhibitory effects of epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) and C75. Breast Cancer Res Treat 109(3):471–479
343. Kridel SJ, Axelrod F, Rozenkrantz N, Smith JW (2004) Orlistat is a novel inhibitor of fatty acid synthase with antitumor activity. Cancer Res 64(6):2070–2075
344. CWt P, Johnson LC, Kridel SJ, Lowther WT (2007) Crystal structure of the thioesterase domain of human fatty acid synthase inhibited by Orlistat. Nat Struct Mol Biol 14(8):704–709
345. Menendez JA, Vellon L, Lupu R (2005) Antitumoral actions of the anti-obesity drug orlistat (XenicalTM) in breast cancer cells: blockade of cell cycle progression, promotion of apoptotic cell death and PEA3-mediated transcriptional repression of Her2/neu (erbB-2) oncogene. Ann Oncol 16(8):1253–1267
346. Knowles LM, Axelrod F, Browne CD, Smith JW (2004) A fatty acid synthase blockade induces tumor cell-cycle arrest by down-regulating Skp2. J Biol Chem 279(29):30540–30545
347. Menendez JA, Vellon L, Lupu R (2006) The anti-obesity drug Orlistat induces cytotoxic effects, suppresses Her-2/neu (erbB-2) oncogene overexpression, and synergistically interacts with trastuzumab (Herceptin) in chemoresistant ovarian cancer cells. Int J Gynecol Cancer 16(1):219–221
348. Menendez JA, Vellon L, Lupu R (2005) Orlistat: from antiobesity drug to anticancer agent in Her-2/neu (erbB-2)-overexpressing gastrointestinal tumors? Exp Biol Med (Maywood) 230(3):151–154
349. Liu H, Liu JY, Wu X, Zhang JT (2010) Biochemistry, molecular biology, and pharmacology of fatty acid synthase, an emerging therapeutic target and diagnosis/prognosis marker. Int J Biochem Mol Biol 1(1):69–89
350. Alwarawrah Y, Hughes P, Loiselle D, Carlson DA, Darr DB, Jordan JL et al (2016) Fasnall, a selective FASN inhibitor, shows potent anti-tumor activity in the MMTV-Neu model of HER2(+) breast cancer. Cell Chem Biol 23(6):678–688
351. Megha, London E (2004) Ceramide selectively displaces cholesterol from ordered lipid domains (rafts): implications for lipid raft structure and function. J Biol Chem 279(11):9997–10004

352. Paumen MB, Ishida Y, Muramatsu M, Yamamoto M, Honjo T (1997) Inhibition of carnitine palmitoyltransferase I augments sphingolipid synthesis and palmitate-induced apoptosis. J Biol Chem 272(6):3324–3329
353. McGarry JD, Mills SE, Long CS, Foster DW (1983) Observations on the affinity for carnitine, and malonyl-CoA sensitivity, of carnitine palmitoyltransferase I in animal and human tissues. Demonstration of the presence of malonyl-CoA in non-hepatic tissues of the rat. Biochem J 214(1):21–28
354. Bandyopadhyay S, Zhan R, Wang Y, Pai SK, Hirota S, Hosobe S et al (2006) Mechanism of apoptosis induced by the inhibition of fatty acid synthase in breast cancer cells. Cancer Res 66(11):5934–5940
355. Syed-Abdul MM, Parks EJ, Gaballah AH, Bingham K, Hammoud GM, Kemble G et al (2020) Fatty acid synthase inhibitor TVB-2640 reduces hepatic de novo lipogenesis in males with metabolic abnormalities. Hepatology 72(1):(103–118). https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.31000
356. Buckley D, Heuer T, O'Farrell M, McCulloch B, Kemble G (2016) Translational studies of a first-in-class FASN inhibitor, TVB-2640, linking preclinical studies to clinical laboratory observations in solid tumor patients. Mol Cancer Res 14(1). AACR Special Conference: Metabolism and Cancer; June 7–10, 2015; Bellevue, WA, USA. https://doi.org/10.1158/1557-3125.METCA15-A75
357. Dean EJ, Falchook GS, Patel MR, Brenner AJ, Infante JR, Arkenau HT et al (2016) Preliminary activity in the first in human study of the first-in-class fatty acid synthase (FASN) inhibitor, TVB-2640. Cancer Res 77(13 Supplement):CT153–CT153. https://doi.org/10.1158/1538-7445.AM2017-CT153
358. O'Farrell M, Heuer T, Grimmer K, Crowley R, Waszczuk J, Fridlib M et al (2016) Abstract LB-214: FASN inhibitor TVB-2640 shows pharmacodynamic effect and evidence of clinical activity in KRAS-mutant NSCLC patients in a phase I study. Proceedings: AACR 107th Annual Meeting 2016; April 16–20, 2016; New Orleans, LA, USA. https://doi.org/10.1158/1538-7445.AM2016-LB-214
359. Dinardo CD, Schimmer AD, Yee KW, Hochhaus A, Krämer A, Carvajal RD et al (2016) A phase I study of IDH305 in patients with advanced malignancies including relapsed/refractory AML and MDS that harbor IDH1R132 mutations. Blood 128(22):1073. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood.V128.22.1073.1073
360. DiNardo CD, Stein EM, de Botton S, Roboz GJ, Altman JK, Mims AS et al (2018) Durable remissions with ivosidenib in IDH1-mutated relapsed or refractory AML. N Engl J Med 378(25):2386–2398
361. Stein EM, DiNardo CD, Pollyea DA, Fathi AT, Roboz GJ, Altman JK et al (2017) Enasidenib in mutant IDH2 relapsed or refractory acute myeloid leukemia. Blood 130(6):722–731
362. Weiss GR, McGovren JP, Schade D, Kufe DW (1982) Phase I and pharmacological study of acivicin by 24-hour continuous infusion. Cancer Res 42(9):3892–3895
363. MJ S, Bennett BD, Joshi AD, Gao P, Thomas AG, Ferraris DV et al (2010) Inhibition of glutaminase preferentially slows growth of glioma cells with mutant IDH1. Cancer Res 70(22):8981–8987
364. Brenner AJ, Von Hoff DD, Infante JR, Patel MR, Jones SF, Burris HA et al (2015) First-in-human investigation of the oral first-in-class fatty acid synthase (FASN) inhibitor, TVB-2640. J Clin Oncol 33(15 Suppl):TPS2615. https://doi.org/10.1200/jco.2015.33.15_suppl.tps2615

A Review of Monoclonal Antibody-Based Treatments in Non-small Cell Lung Cancer

3

Yunes Panahi, Amir Hossein Mohammadzadeh, Behzad Behnam, Hossein M. Orafai, Tannaz Jamialahmadi, and Amirhossein Sahebkar

Abstract

Non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) is one of the most common types of lung cancer worldwide. It metastasizes rapidly and has a poor prognosis. The first-line treatment for most patients is a combination of chemotherapy and radiation. In many subjects, using targeted treatments alongside chemoradiation has shown a better outcome in terms of progression and quality of life for patients. These targeted treatments include small biological inhibiting molecules and monoclonal antibodies. In this review, we have assessed studies focused upon the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer. Some therapies are approved, such as bevacizumab and atezolizumab, while some are still in clinical trials, such as ficlatuzumab and ipilimumab, and others have been rejected due to inadequate disease control, such as figitumumab.

Y. Panahi
Pharmacotherapy Department, Faculty of Pharmacy, Baqiyatallah University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

A. H. Mohammadzadeh
Chemical Injuries Research Center, Systems Biology and Poisonings Institute, Baqiyatallah University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

B. Behnam
Pharmaceutics Research Center, Institute of Neuropharmacology, Kerman University of Medical Sciences, Kerman, Iran

Herbal and Traditional Medicines Research Center, Kerman University of Medical Sciences, Kerman, Iran

Faculty of Pharmacy, Department of Pharmaceutical Biotechnology, Kerman University of Medical Sciences, Kerman, Iran

H. M. Orafai
Faculty of Pharmacy, Department of Pharmaceutics, University of Ahl Al Bayt, Karbala, Iraq

Faculty of Pharmacy, Department of Pharmaceutics, Al-Zahraa University, Karbala, Iraq

T. Jamialahmadi
Department of Food Science and Technology, Quchan Branch, Islamic Azad University, Quchan, Iran

Faculty of Medicine, Department of Nutrition, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

A. Sahebkar (✉)
Neurogenic Inflammation Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Biotechnology Research Center, Pharmaceutical Technology Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Polish Mother's Memorial Hospital Research Institute (PMMHRI), Lodz, Poland

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_3

Keywords

Lung cancer · Non-small cell · Monoclonal antibodies · Targeted treatment

3.1 Introduction

Lung cancers are the most common cancers worldwide and the leading cause of cancer-related deaths globally. They are divided into three groups based on the microscopic appearance of the tumor cells: non-small cell lung cancers (NSCLCs), small cell lung cancers (SCLCs), and bronchial adenomas [1, 2]. NSCLCs are the most common, comprising more than 80% of lung cancers and have three distinct subtypes: squamous cell carcinoma (epidermoid); adenocarcinoma; and large cell (undifferentiated) carcinoma [1, 3].

Treatment of NSCLC consists of surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, targeted treatments, and immunotherapy, either alone or in combination. The most common drugs of choice for chemotherapy regimens include cisplatin, carboplatin, docetaxel, gemcitabine, paclitaxel, vinorelbine, and pemetrexed. Unlike chemotherapy drugs, targeted agents are specifically designed to attack cancer cells, causing less damage to normal cells, and are thus being used alone or in combination with chemotherapeutic agents. The common targeting agents used in NSCLC treatment are biological inhibitors or monoclonal antibodies that are aimed at different receptors and ligands, such as epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), programmed cell death ligand 1 (PD-L1), type 1 insulin-like growth factor receptor (IGF-1R), receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa-B ligand (RANKL), hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), and cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA-4). Monoclonal antibodies against each target are shown in Table 3.1, and some of the approved drugs that have indications in other types of cancer are shown in Table 3.2. In Table 3.3, the common adverse effects of each agent are mentioned [1–6].

Table 3.1 MABs and biological inhibitors in NSCLC

Class of drug	Generic name	Brand name
TKI	Erlotinib	Tarceva®
	Gefitinib	Iressa®
	Crizotinib	Xalkori®
	Afatinib	Gilotrif®
PARP	Veliparib	–
	Olaparib	Lynparza®
PI3K	Buparlisib	–
	Alpelisib	–
EGFR	Cetuximab	Erbitux®
	Nimotuzumab	TheraCIM®
	Matuzumab	–
	Necitumumab	Portrazza®
	Panitumumab	Vectibix®
VEGF EGFR	Bevacizumab	Avastin®
VEGFR	Ramucirumab	Cyramza®
PD-1	Pembrolizumab	Keytruda®
	Nivolumab	Opdivo®
PD-L1	Atezolizumab	Tecentriq®
	Durvalumab	Imfinzi®
	Avelumab	Bavencio®
IGF-1R	Figitumumab	–
RANKL	Denosumab	Prolia®, Xgeva®
HGF	Ficlatuzumab	–
	Rilotumumab	–
CTLA-4	Ipilimumab	Yervoy®
	Tremelimumab	–
TR-2 (DR5)	Conatumumab	–

3.2 Targeted Therapies and their Approved Antibodies

3.2.1 Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR)

One of the potential targets in NSCLC is the epidermal growth factor receptors (EGFRs). They are widely expressed on the cell surface (up to 85%) of lung cancer patients and affect cell cycle progression, apoptosis, angiogenesis, tumor cell motility, and metastasis [7, 8]. The EGFR group is divided into four tyrosine kinase receptor subtypes: EGFR, HER2, HER3, and HER4 [9]. The most important ligands that bind to these receptors are epidermal growth factor (EGF) and transforming growth factor α (TGFα). Therapeutic agents directed at these receptors include monoclonal antibodies, vaccines against

Table 3.2 Approved monoclonal antibodies for lung cancer and their indications

Drug	Indications
Bevacizumab	Colorectal cancer Lung cancer Kidney cancer Cervical cancer Ovarian cancer
Ramucirumab	Metastatic NSCLC Gastric cancer Colorectal cancer
Pembrolizumab	Advanced non-small cell lung cancer Advanced melanoma Head and neck squamous cell cancer Classical Hodgkin's disease Lymphoma Microsatellite instability-high cancer Advanced urothelial bladder cancer Advanced gastric cancer Advanced cervical cancer Primary mediastinal B-cell lymphoma
Nivolumab	Advanced non-small cell lung cancer Melanoma Advanced kidney cancer Head and neck squamous cell cancer Advanced bladder cancer Advanced liver cancer Colorectal cancer (MSI-H/dMMR) Classical Hodgkin lymphoma
Atezolizumab	Patients with previously treated metastatic non-small cell lung cancer Certain patients with advanced urothelial carcinoma

EGF, ligand-toxin conjugates, and tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs). The most common of these are monoclonal antibodies such as cetuximab, nimotuzumab, panitumumab, matuzumab, necitumumab, and TKIs, such as erlotinib, gefitinib, crizotinib, and afatinib [7, 9–12]. Studies have shown that patients with EGFR mutations show a better response to targeting agents than to chemotherapy. The mutations are categorized into three classes, being identified only by direct sequencing of polymerase chain reaction analyses of the EGFR gene. It should be noted that mutations are more common in women and non-smokers [8, 13]. How therapeutic agents bind to EGFR is shown in Fig. 3.1.

3.2.1.1 Cetuximab

Cetuximab is a chimeric IgG1 antibody directed against EGFR. It works by blocking the binding of EGF and TGFα to the receptor. Studies have addressed the efficacy of cetuximab alone or in combination with other drugs or radiation therapy for the treatment of NSCLC [11]. However, the data from multiple clinical trials indicates that cetuximab does not benefit overall survival. It was therefore removed from the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) and the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) guidelines in 2016 [14, 15]. It should be noted that cetuximab is still used in head and neck cancers, as well as in metastatic colorectal cancer, and the most common adverse effects of this agent are acne-like rash, diarrhea, and rare infusion reactions [7, 10–12, 16, 17].

3.2.1.2 Nimotuzumab

Nimotuzumab is a humanized anti-EGFR IgG1 monoclonal antibody that has approval for the treatment of advanced head and neck tumors, glioma, and esophageal cancer [18]. There have been several clinical studies addressing the effect of nimotuzumab in combination with radiother-

Table 3.3 Common side effects of MABs used in NSCLC

Drug name	Common side effects
Cetuximab	Acne-like rash, diarrhea, and rare infusion reactions
Nimotuzumab	Skin rash, pruritus, and diarrhea
Matuzumab	Skin and gastrointestinal events (e.g., rash, diarrhea)
Necitumumab	Acneform rash, skin dryness, fissures, and hypomagnesemia
Panitumumab	Skin toxicity including dry skin and acne, diarrhea, deep vein thrombosis, paronychia and stomatitis
Bevacizumab	Hemorrhage, hyper-tension, proteinuria, and headache
Ramucirumab	Febrile neutropenia and pneumonia
Pembrolizumab	Fatigue, pyrexia, and diarrhea
Nivolumab	Pruritus, diarrhea, and nausea
Atezolizumab	Fatigue, nausea, decreased appetite, asthenia, pneumonia, and increased aspartate aminotransferase
Durvalumab	Cough, fatigue, upper respiratory tract infections, and rash
Avelumab	Treatment-related pneumonitis and immune-related events
Figitumumab	Hyperglycemia, rash, diarrhea, decreased appetite, and asthenia
Denosumab	Osteonecrosis of the jaws
Ficlatuzumab	Diarrhea, acnei-form dermatitis, and paronychia
Rilotumumab	Anemia, lymphopenia, diarrhea and acnei-form rash
Ipilimumab	Skin and gastrointestinal events (e.g., rash, pruritus, and diarrhea)
Tremelimumab	Diarrhea, nausea, anorexia, colitis, vomiting, dyspnea, asthenia, and dry skin
Conatumumab	Increased amylase and lipase, peripheral neuropathy, diarrhea, vomiting, and headaches

apy or TKIs against NSCLC which have had promising results. Nimotuzumab is mostly used when there is tolerance against TKIs. With the low dose and high efficacy of this drug, it appears to be a promising monoclonal antibody (MAB) for the treatment of EGFR-associated NSCLCs. It should be noted that unlike other anti-EGFR MABs, nimotuzumab rarely binds to EGFR expressed in normal tissue. The most common adverse effects of nimotuzumab include skin rashes, pruritus, and diarrhea [19–26].

3.2.1.3 Matuzumab

Matuzumab is a humanized IgG1 monoclonal antibody directed against EGFR. Matuzumab has been assessed in a number of clinical studies, confirming both its patient tolerance and antitumor activity. These trials have included phase 1 and 2 for use of matuzumabin combination with paclitaxel or pemetrexed. The side effects include cutaneous and gastrointestinal events (e.g., rash, diarrhea) which are common among anti-EGFR antibody therapies [27–29].

3.2.1.4 Necitumumab

Necitumumab is a fully human IgG1 anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody. Several clinical trials have investigated necitumumab as a therapeutic agent for NSCLC patients with encouraging results [30, 31]. The SQUIRE phase 3 clinical trial compared the use of necitumumab alongside gemcitabine and cisplatin against gemcitabine and cisplatin alone in stage 4 previously untreated NSCLC patients and the results showed an improvement in overall survival in patients on the necitumumab regimen [30, 32–36]. Due to its success in the SQUIRE clinical trial, a phase 2 clinical trial comparing the use of necitumumab with paclitaxel and carboplatin as an alternative chemotherapy choice, compared to paclitaxel and carboplatin alone, was undertaken. The results of this trial support the use of necitumumab alongside chemotherapeutic agents for NSCLC patients [37]. Although promising results have been shown in previous clinical trials, by contrast, the phase 3 INSPIRE clinical trial, in which necitumumab was used alongside pemetrexed and cisplatin versus pemetrexed and cisplatin alone in stage 4 previously untreated NSCLC patients, no advantage of addition of necitumumab on survival of NSCLC patients was seen [38]. The overall adverse effects of necitumumab are similar to this group of antibodies and include acneiform rash, skin dryness, fissures, and hypomagnesemia [31, 35].

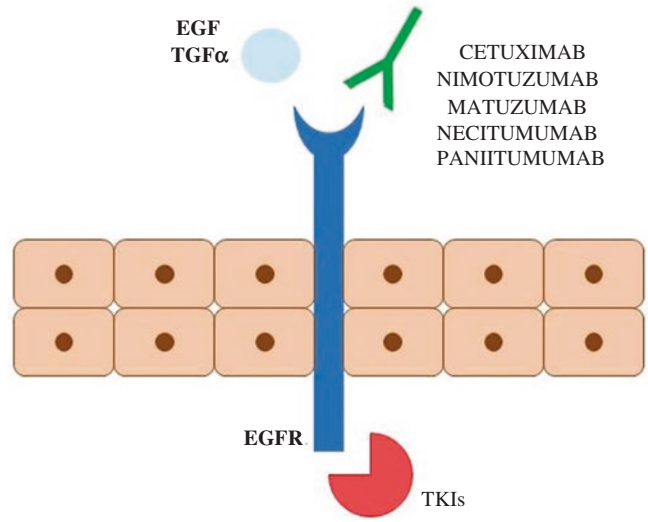


Fig. 3.1 EGFR and its associated monoclonal antibodies

3.2.1.5 Panitumumab

Panitumumab is a fully human IgG2 monoclonal antibody which targets EGFR and is used as a therapeutic agent either alone or in combination for various types of cancers [39, 40]. A phase 2 clinical trial with the addition of panitumumab to paclitaxel and carboplatin showed that there was no improvement in overall survival and time to progression in NSCLC patients, despite acceptable toxicity [41]. Another phase 2 clinical trial (CHAMP) showed that the use of panitumumab alongside pemetrexed and cisplatin resulted in increased toxicity and lowered the quality of life of NSCLC patients [42]. Another phase 2 clinical trial showed that the use of panitumumab alongside carboplatin and paclitaxel had no advantage compared to carboplatin and paclitaxel alone [43]. A similar phase 2 trial compared panitumumab with carboplatin and pemetrexed to carboplatin and pemetrexed alone, with the same result [44]. Only one phase 3 clinical trial showed efficacy from adding panitumumab to erlotinib and bevacizumab as a second-line treatment for NSCLC [45]. The adverse effects of this agent include skin toxicity, including dry skin and acne, diarrhea, deep vein thrombosis, paronychia, and stomatitis [41, 45, 46].

3.2.2 Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF)

VEDF receptors are a group of three tyrosine kinase receptors that are highly expressed on tumor cells and have an important role in cancer angiogenesis. VEGF includes eight ligands that induce angiogenesis by signaling through the tyrosine kinase receptors [47, 48]. Monoclonal antibodies against VEGF prevent the proliferation of vascular tumor cells by inhibiting the physiological pathway of angiogenesis. The only monoclonal antibody approved for inhibiting vasculature growth via VEGF in NSCLC is bevacizumab [48–50]. How these agents bind to the VEGFR is illustrated in Fig. 3.2.

3.2.2.1 Bevacizumab

Bevacizumab is a recombinant humanized anti-IgG1 antibody against VEGF, approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2006 as a first-line treatment for non-squamous NSCLC in combination with carboplatin and paclitaxel, carboplatin and pemetrexed, or cisplatin and pemetrexed. VEGF is the major regulator of angiogenesis in normal and malignant tissues. It should be noted that a history of hemoptysis is a contraindication for use of this drug, and it is not

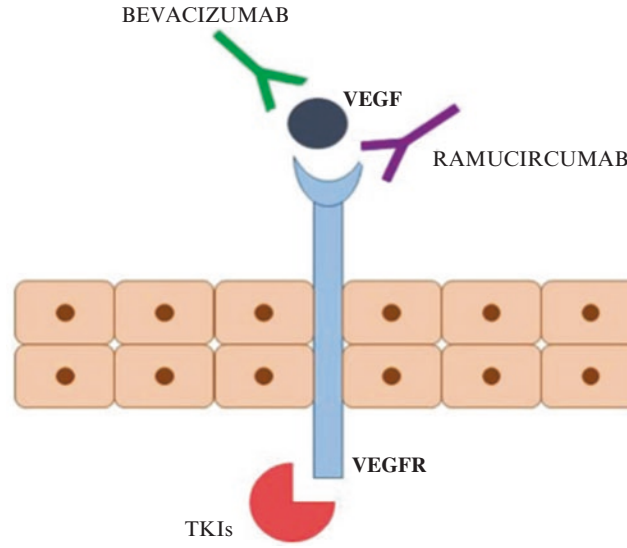


Fig. 3.2 VEFG and its associated monoclonal antibodies

recommended for patients with squamous cell cancer. Bevacizumab can also be used as a single agent for maintenance therapy. The most serious adverse effect which can also be fatal is hemorrhage, which can be pulmonary or gastrointestinal related. Other common side effects include hypertension, proteinuria, and headache [51–54].

3.2.2.2 Ramucirumab

Ramucirumab is an FDA approved human IgG1 antibody directed against VEGF receptor 2. It is administered intravenously with a 10 mg/kg dose before docetaxel for patients with metastatic NSCLC. The most common adverse effects are febrile neutropenia and pneumonia. In 2014, at the conclusion of the REVEL clinical trial, it was also approved for gastric and colorectal cancers [55–57].

3.2.3 PD-1 and PD Ligands 1 and 2 (PD-L1 and L2)

One of the potential checkpoints for therapeutic targets directed against tumor cells are programmed cell death ligand 1 (PD-L1, also known as CD274) and 2 (PD-L2), that are present on tumor cells with their receptor on T-cells. PD-L1 and PD-L2 bind to the programmed cell death 1 receptor on T-cells, causing a downregulation of apoptotic molecules, and thus increasing the survival of tumor tissue. Pembrolizumab and nivolumab are antibodies that bind to PD-1 on T-cells, and atezolizumab, durvalumab, and avelumab are antibodies that bind to PD-L1, and these agents are used to treat NSCLC [2, 58–60]. The use of anti-PD-1 is more effective against tumors that express both PD ligands [61–63]. The interactions of PD-L and PD-L1 and their associated drugs are illustrated in Fig. 3.3.

3.2.3.1 Pembrolizumab

Pembrolizumab is a humanized IgG4 monoclonal antibody directed against PD-1 for use in advanced NSCLC. Based on guidelines from the NCCN for NSCLC, the FDA has approved the use of pembrolizumab as a first-line treatment for patients with more than 50% expression of PD-L1 and for patients with metastatic non-squamous NSCLC, combined with carboplatin and pemetrexed. Pembrolizumab is used in patients with negative or unknown test results for EGFR mutations and anaplastic lymphoma kinase (ALK) rearrangements. High-dose IV corticosteroids should be administered for patients with immune-mediated adverse events. The recommended dose of pembrolizumab is 200 mg administered as an intravenous infusion over 30 min every 3 weeks. Based on the

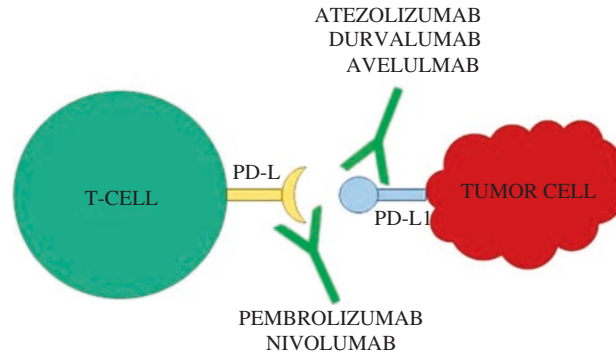


Fig. 3.3 PD-L and PD-L1 and their associated monoclonal antibodies

KEYNOTE-024 trial, pembrolizumab showed a longer progression-free period with less adverse effects than with combined platinum-based chemotherapy agents. The common adverse effects of pembrolizumab include fatigue, pyrexia, and diarrhea [64–67].

3.2.3.2 Nivolumab

Nivolumab is a human IgG4 monoclonal antibody directed against PD-1receptors on T-cells and is used for the treatment of various cancers, including metastatic NSCLC. The safety of nivolumab as a second-line treatment in metastatic NSCLC was evaluated by the CHECKMATE-017 and CHECKMATE-057 clinical trials. The recommended dose of nivolumab is 240 mg every 2 weeks or 480 mg every 4 weeks, administered as an intravenous infusion over 30 min. The most common side effects are pruritus, diarrhea, and nausea [68]. Nivolumab can be used for the treatment of both squamous and non-squamous NSCLC [59, 67, 69–71].

3.2.3.3 Atezolizumab

Atezolizumab, a humanized monoclonal IgG1 antibody, is the first FDA-approved antibody directed against PD-L1, with approval granted in 2016. The Fc region of atezolizumab is modified so it eliminates antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC) or complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) [67, 72]. It is used as a second-line therapy in patients with metastatic NSCLC who have disease progression during or after platinum-based chemotherapy [61]. Several clinical trials (BIRCH, POLAR, OAK) have demonstrated that adding atezolizumab to the chemotherapy regimen of cancer patients improves their overall survival. However, side effects are common and include fatigue, nausea, decreased appetite, asthenia, pneumonia, and increased aspartate aminotransferase [61, 67]. Unlike pembrolizumab, the use of atezolizumab is independent of the percentage of PD-L1 expression [73, 74]. The recommended clinical dose for atezolizumab is 1200 mg every 3 weeks, and it has a half-life of 27 days [75].

3.2.3.4 Durvalumab

Durvalumab is an approved human IgG1 monoclonal antibody for urothelial carcinoma and stage 3 NSCLC that binds to PD-L1. The recommended dosing for treatment of stage 3 NSCLC is 10 mg/kg every 2 weeks. The most common adverse effects are cough, fatigue, upper respiratory tract infections, and rash. Following the PACIFIC clinical trial, which established the safety and efficacy of durvalumab, it gained approval in 2017 [72, 76–80].

3.2.3.5 Avelumab

Avelumab is a fully human IgG1 monoclonal antibody that binds to PD-L1 and blocks its binding to PD-L and CD80 [58]. According to a phase 1 clinical study (JAVELIN), avelumab demonstrated acceptable safety and efficacy in patients with recurrent NSCLC who were previously treated with platinum-based therapies. Its side effects include treatment-related pneumonitis and immune-related adverse events [81, 82].

3.2.4 IGF-1R

IGF receptors are a group of three tyrosine kinase receptors consisting of IGF-1R, IGF-2R, and the insulin receptor (INSR) that play a role in cell growth and proliferation. IGF-1, IGF-2, and insulin-like binding proteins are the ligands for these receptors [83, 84]. These ligands and their receptors are over expressed in malignant tumors, resulting in proliferation, metastasis, and drug resistance [84, 85]. The interaction of the IGF-1 receptor with its ligand is illustrated in Fig. 3.4.

3.2.4.1 Figitumumab

Figitumumab is a human IgG2 monoclonal antibody that inhibits IGF-1R. IGF receptors play important roles in cell growth and development. IGF-1R is expressed on the majority of lung cancer cell lines, and thus affects cancer progression. Blocking this receptor aids the inhibitory effect of chemotherapy agents. Figitumumab was added as a first-line therapy to carboplatin plus paclitaxel and showed good results in phase 2 clinical trials but failed to increase overall survival in NSCLC patients in phase 3 clinical trials due to adverse events such as hyperglycemia, rash, diarrhea, decreased appetite, and asthenia. Thus, further development of figitumumab was discontinued [86–88].

3.2.5 RANKL

Skeletal lesions and bone metastases are common in NSCLC patients, causing extreme pain and impacting the patient's quality of life. Bisphosphonates and denosumab are both recommended for treatment. The RANKL present on osteoblasts binds to the RANK receptor on osteoclasts, inducing bone resorption through signal transduction [89–91]. This interaction is illustrated in Fig. 3.5.

3.2.5.1 Denosumab

Denosumab is a novel, fully human IgG2 monoclonal antibody specific to RANKL present on osteoblasts, which causes inactivation of bone resorption by osteoclasts [92]. Several clinical trials have evaluated the efficacy of denosumab compared to bisphosphonates, although data to date show no difference between them [93–96]. Even though there have been reports of osteonecrosis of the jaw when using this agent, it is recommended that 120 mg denosumab be administered subcutaneously every month for treatment of metastatic bone disease [90, 97].

3.2.6 HGF

HGF, or scatter factor, is a cellular growth factor that activates tyrosine kinase signaling after binding to mesenchymal epithelial transition

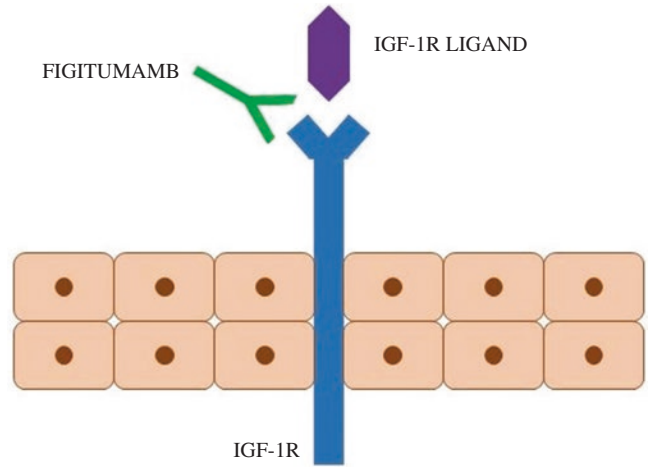


Fig. 3.4 IGF-1 receptor and ligand and the effects of figitumumab

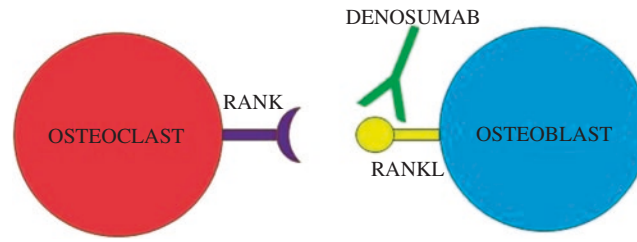


Fig. 3.5 RANK and RANKL and their associated monoclonal antibodies

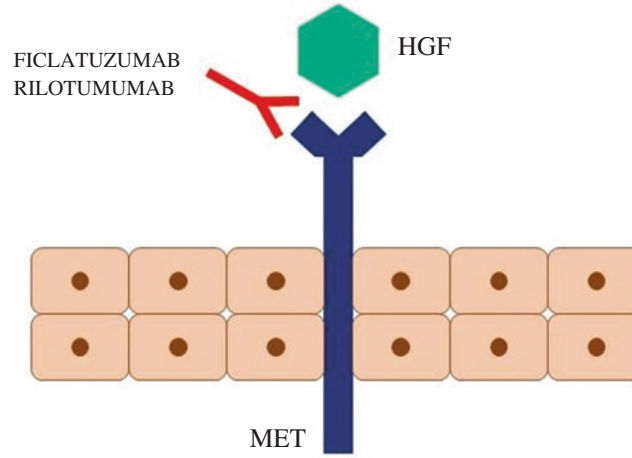


Fig. 3.6 HGF and MET

factor (c-MET) or the HGF receptor (HGFR). MET is expressed in epithelial cells and its activation can lead to resistance to EGF receptor inhibitors [98–100]. A schematic illustrating the interaction between MET and HGF is shown in Fig. 3.6.

3.2.6.1 Ficlatuzumab

Ficlatuzumab (AV299) is a humanized IgG1 monoclonal antibody that binds to HGF, thus inhibiting signaling of the c-MET receptor. Studies show that combination therapy with ficlatuzumab and cetuximab or erlotinibcan have a good patient outcome, but combination therapy with ficlatuzumab and gefitinib offers no benefit over gefitinib alone. The most common adverse events of ficlatuzumab include diarrhea, acneiform dermatitis, and paronychia [101, 102].

3.2.6.2 Rilotumumab

Rilotumumab (AMG 102) is a fully human IgG2 monoclonal antibody directed against human HGF. A clinical trial studied the effect of adding rilotumumab to erlotinib in patients with previously treated NSCLC [98]. Despite side effects such as anemia, lymphopenia, diarrhea, and acneiform rash, the safety profile as well as the disease control rate were determined to be acceptable.

3.2.7 CTLA-4

CTLA-4, also known as CD152, is an immune modulator which downregulates and inhibits immune responses, specifically those of T-cells. The homolog of CTLA-4 is CD28, which stimulates response. Both receptors act when bound with CD80 (B7–1) and CD86 (B7–2) on antigen presenting cells (APCs). CTLA-4 is normally expressed on regulatory T-cell lymphocytes, but in cancers and immune diseases, it is also expressed on normal T-cells resulting in a downregulation of the immune response [103–105]. A schematic illustrating the interaction between CTLA-4 and CD80/CD86 is shown in Fig. 3.7.

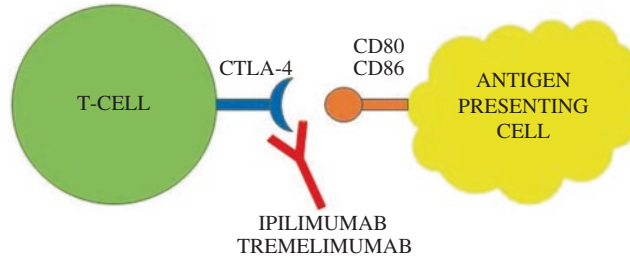


Fig. 3.7 CTLA-4 and its associated monoclonal antibodies

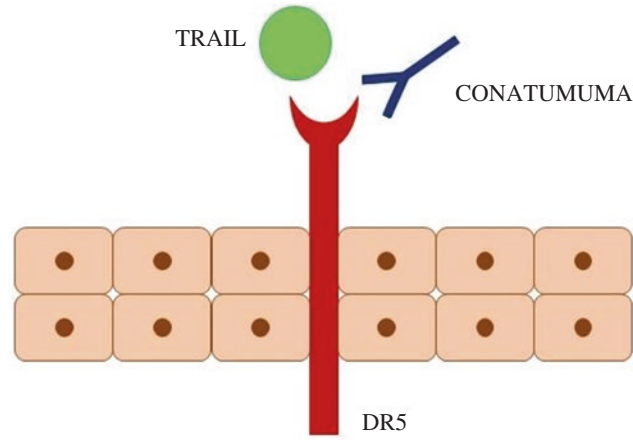


Fig. 3.8 Death receptor 5 (DR5) and TRAIL

3.2.7.1 Ipilimumab

Ipilimumab is a fully human IgG1 monoclonal antibody that inhibits the attachment of CTLA-4 to its ligands (CD80 and CD86). Clinical studies comparing the use of ipilimumab alongside paclitaxel and carboplatin versus paclitaxel and carboplatin alone showed that adding ipilimumab to the treatment regimen improves progression-free survival. The most common adverse effects involve the skin and gastrointestinal tract (e.g., rash, pruritus, and diarrhea) [106, 107]. Ipilimumab is an approved agent for patients with metastatic melanoma [107, 108]. Different clinical trials (CHECKMATE 032 and CHECKMATE 012) have shown promising results for the use of ipilimumab alongside nivolumab for patients with both SCLC and NSCLC who have previously been treated with platinum-based therapies [68, 109]. Ipilimumab is also suggested alongside carboplatin and etoposide as first-line treatment for extensive-stage SCLC, but results to date have been inconclusive [108, 110].

3.2.7.2 Tremelimumab

Tremelimumab is a fully human IgG2 monoclonal antibody and inhibitor of CTLA-4. A phase 1 clinical trial carried out between 2013 and 2015 showed manageable tolerance for durvalumab (20 mg/kg every 4 weeks) plus tremelimumab (1 mg/kg), thereby dictating the doses for current phase 3 clinical trials [78, 111]. The ARCTIC phase 3 clinical trial is currently on-going for studies of durvalumab with or without tremelimumab for previously treated NSCLC patients [77]. The most common observed adverse effects are diarrhea, nausea, anorexia, colitis, vomiting, dyspnea, asthenia, and dry skin [111].

3.2.8 Tumor Necrosis Factor-Related Apoptosis-Inducing Ligand (TRAIL) Receptor 2 (TR-2) or Death Receptor 5 (DR5)

TR-2 or DR5 causes cell apoptosis when in contact with TRAIL, a protein that functions as a ligand [112, 113]. The interaction of TRAIL with DR5 is illustrated in Fig. 3.8.

3.2.8.1 Conatumumab

Conatumumab is a fully human IgG1 monoclonal antibody directed against the extracellular domain of death receptor 5, imitating the activity of TRAIL and thus inducing cell apoptosis. A randomized clinical trial was undertaken to study the effect of adding conatumumab to paclitaxel and carboplatin as a first-line treatment in NSCLC. Even though the treatment was tolerated, despite side effects such as increased amylase and lipase, peripheral neuropathy, diarrhea, vomiting and headaches, no significant improvement in outcome was observed [113, 114].

3.3 Conclusions

Treatment of NSCLC is still a challenging area for caregivers, due to specific patient and tumor characteristics that are associated with this disease. However, pharmaceutical companies worldwide have shown interest in developing targeted therapies to improve patient survival. Studies have shown that the use of monoclonal antibodies for cancer treatment has improved the overall survival of cancer patients, due to direct targeting of the tumor cells. Some therapies have been approved by drug administrations but most are still in clinical trial and research phases. Despite having shown significant clinical effects, extensive studies are still needed to determine safety, efficacy, and when their use is warranted, especially in terms of specific genetic alterations and long-term adverse effects.

Conflict of Interest The authors have no conflicts of interest.

References

1. Moya-Horno I, Viteri S, Karachaliou N, Rosell R (2018) Combination of immunotherapy with targeted therapies in advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Ther Adv Med Oncol 10:1758834017745012. https://doi.org/10.1177/1758834017745012
2. Gridelli C, Baas P, Barlesi F, Ciardiello F, Crinò L, Felip E et al (2017) Second-line treatment options in non-small-cell lung cancer: report from an international experts panel meeting of the Italian Association of Thoracic Oncology. Clin Lung Cancer 19(4):301–314
3. Silva AP, Coelho PV, Anazetti M, Simioni PU (2017) Targeted therapies for the treatment of non-small-cell lung cancer: monoclonal antibodies and biological inhibitors. Hum Vaccin Immunother 13(4):843–853
4. Socinski MA, Obasaju C, Gandara D, Hirsch FR, Bonomi P, Bunn PA et al (2017) Current and emergent therapy options for advanced squamous-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 13(2):165–183
5. Vestergaard HH, Christensen MR, Lassen UN (2018) A systematic review of targeted agents for non-small cell lung cancer. Acta Oncol 57(2):176–186
6. Johnson DB, Rioth MJ, Horn L (2014) Immune checkpoint inhibitors in NSCLC. Curr Treat Options in Oncol 15(4):658–669
7. Pirker R (2013) EGFR-directed monoclonal antibodies in non-small cell lung cancer. Target Oncol 8(1):47–53
8. Evans M, O'Sullivan B, Smith M, Hughes F, Mullis T, Trim N et al (2018) Large-scale EGFR mutation testing in clinical practice: analysis of a series of 18,920 non-small cell lung cancer cases. Pathol Oncol Res 25(4):1401–1409
9. Sridhar SS, Seymour L, Shepherd FA (2003) Inhibitors of epidermal-growth-factor receptors: a review of clinical research with a focus on non-small-cell lung cancer. Lancet Oncol 4(7):397–406
10. Pirker R, Filipits M (2011) Monoclonal antibodies against EGFR in non-small cell lung cancer. Crit Rev Oncol/Hematol 80(1):1–9
11. Pirker R, Pereira JR, Szczesna A, Von Pawel J, Krzakowski M, Ramlau R et al (2009) Cetuximab plus chemotherapy in patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (FLEX): an open-label randomised phase III trial. Lancet 373(9674):1525–1531
12. Lynch TJ, Patel T, Dreisbach L, McCleod M, Heim WJ, Robert H et al (2007) B3-03: a randomized multicenter phase III study of cetuximab (Erbitux®) in combination with taxane/carboplatin versus taxane/carboplatin alone as first-line treatment for patients with advanced/metastatic non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). J Thorac Oncol 2(8):S340–S341
13. da Cunha SG, Shepherd FA, Tsao MS (2011) EGFR mutations and lung cancer. Annu Rev Pathol 6:49–69
14. Wood DE (2015) National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) clinical practice guidelines for lung cancer screening. Thorac Surg Clin 25(2):185–197
15. Masters GA, Johnson DH, Temin S (2016) Systemic therapy for stage IV non–small-cell lung cancer: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline update. J Oncol Pract 12(1):90–93
16. Mazzarella L, Guida A, Curigliano G (2018) Cetuximab for treating non-small cell lung cancer. Expert Opin Biol Ther 18(4):483–493
17. Bradley JD, Paulus R, Komaki R, Masters G, Blumenschein G, Schild S et al (2015) Standard-

dose versus high-dose conformal radiotherapy with concurrent and consolidation carboplatin plus paclitaxel with or without cetuximab for patients with stage IIIA or IIIB non-small-cell lung cancer (RTOG 0617): a randomised, two-by-two factorial phase 3 study. Lancet Oncol 16(2):187–199
18. Solomon MT, Miranda N, Jorrín E, Chon I, Marinello JJ, Alert J et al (2014) Nimotuzumab in combination with radiotherapy in high grade glioma patients: a single institution experience. Cancer Biol Ther 15(5):504–509
19. Kim HR, Jang JS, Sun JM, Ahn MJ, Kim DW, Jung I et al (2017) A randomized, phase II study of gefitinib alone versus nimotuzumab plus gefitinib after platinum-based chemotherapy in advanced non-small cell lung cancer (KCSG LU12-01). Oncotarget 8(9):15943–15951
20. Lee JY, Sun JM, Lim SH, Kim HS, Yoo KH, Jung KS et al (2015) A phase Ib/II study of afatinib in combination with nimotuzumab in non–small cell lung cancer patients with acquired resistance to gefitinib or erlotinib. Clin Cancer Res 22(9):2139–2145
21. Qi D, Cui Y, Wang Q, Huang C, Xu J, Yang Y et al (2015) A clinical trial on docetaxel and carboplatin therapy with or without nimotuzumab for the treatment of advanced nonsmall cell lung cancer. J Cancer Res Ther 11(Suppl 1):C32–C37. https://doi.org/10.4103/0973-1482.163836
22. Kim SH, Shim HS, Cho J, Jeong JH, Kim SM, Hong YK et al (2013) A phase I trial of gefitinib and nimotuzumab in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Lung Cancer 79(3):270–275
23. Bebb G, Smith C, Rorke S, Boland W, Nicacio L, Sukhoo R et al (2011) Phase I clinical trial of the anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody nimotuzumab with concurrent external thoracic radiotherapy in Canadian patients diagnosed with stage IIb, III or IV non-small cell lung cancer unsuitable for radical therapy. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 67(4):837–845
24. Choi HJ, Sohn JH, Lee CG, Shim HS, Lee IJ, Yang WI et al (2011) A phase I study of nimotuzumab in combination with radiotherapy in stages IIB–IV non-small cell lung cancer unsuitable for radical therapy: Korean results. Lung Cancer 71(1):55–59
25. Sung H-J, Cho J-Y (2008) Biomarkers for the lung cancer diagnosis and their advances in proteomics. BMB Rep 41(9):615–625
26. Molina R, Filella X, Auge J, Fuentes R, Bover I, Rifa J et al (2003) Tumor markers (CEA, CA 125, CYFRA 21-1, SCC and NSE) in patients with non-small cell lung cancer as an aid in histological diagnosis and prognosis. Tumor Biol 24(4):209–218
27. Hartmann J, Kollmannsberger C, Cascorbi I, Mayer F, Schittenhelm M, Heeger S et al (2013) A phase I pharmacokinetic study of matuzumab in combination with paclitaxel in patients with EGFR-expressing advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Investig New Drugs 31(3):661–668
28. Kollmannsberger C, Schittenhelm M, Honecker F, Tillner J, Weber D, Oechsle K et al (2006) A phase I study of the humanized monoclonal anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) antibody EMD 72000 (matuzumab) in combination with paclitaxel in patients with EGFR-positive advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Ann Oncol 17(6):1007–1013
29. Schiller JH, von Pawel J, Schütt P, Ansari RH, Thomas M, Saleh M et al (2010) Pemetrexed with or without matuzumab as second-line treatment for patients with stage IIIB/IV non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 5(12):1977–1985
30. Chigutsa E, Long AJ, Wallin JE (2017) Exposure-response analysis of necitumumab efficacy in squamous non-small cell lung cancer patients. CPT Pharmacometrics Syst Pharmacol 6(8):560–568
31. Thakur MK, Wozniak AJ (2017) Spotlight on necitumumab in the treatment of non-small-cell lung carcinoma. Lung Cancer 8:13–19
32. Thatcher N, Hirsch FR, Luft AV, Szczesna A, Ciuleanu TE, Dediu M et al (2015) Necitumumab plus gemcitabine and cisplatin versus gemcitabine and cisplatin alone as first-line therapy in patients with stage IV squamous non-small-cell lung cancer (SQUIRE): an open-label, randomised, controlled phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol 16(7):763–774
33. Paz-Ares L, Socinski M, Shahidi J, Hozak R, Soldatenkova V, Kurek R et al (2016) Correlation of EGFR-expression with safety and efficacy outcomes in SQUIRE: a randomized, multicenter, open-label, phase III study of gemcitabine–cisplatin plus necitumumab versus gemcitabine–cisplatin alone in the first-line treatment of patients with stage IV squamous non-small-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 27(8):1573–1579
34. Reck M, Socinski MA, Luft A, Szczęsna A, Dediu M, Ramlau R et al (2016) The effect of necitumumab in combination with gemcitabine plus cisplatin on tolerability and on quality of life: results from the phase 3 SQUIRE trial. J Thorac Oncol 11(6):808–818
35. Reck M, Thomas M, Kropf-Sanchen C, Mezger J, Socinski MA, Depenbrock H et al (2016) Necitumumab plus gemcitabine and cisplatin as first-line therapy in patients with stage IV EGFR-expressing squamous non-small-cell lung cancer: German subgroup data from an open-label, randomized controlled phase 3 study (SQUIRE). Oncol Res Treat 39(9):539–547
36. Park K, Cho EK, Bello M, Ahn MJ, Thongprasert S, Song EK et al (2017) Efficacy and safety of first-line necitumumab plus gemcitabine and cisplatin versus gemcitabine and cisplatin in east Asian patients with stage IV squamous non-small cell lung cancer: a subgroup analysis of the phase 3, open-label, randomized SQUIRE study. Cancer Res Treat 49(4):937–946
37. Spigel DR, Luft A, Depenbrock H, Ramlau R, Khalil M, Kim JH et al (2017) An open-label, randomized, controlled phase II study of paclitaxel-carboplatin chemotherapy with necitumumab versus paclitaxel-carboplatin alone

in first-line treatment of patients with stage IV squamous non–small-cell lung cancer. Clin Lung Cancer 18(5):480–488
38. Paz-Ares L, Mezger J, Ciuleanu TE, Fischer JR, von Pawel J, Provencio M et al (2015) Necitumumab plus pemetrexed and cisplatin as first-line therapy in patients with stage IV non-squamous non-small-cell lung cancer (INSPIRE): an open-label, randomised, controlled phase 3 study. Lancet Oncol 16(3):328–337
39. Giusti RM, Shastri K, Pilaro AM, Fuchs C, Cordoba-Rodriguez R, Koti K et al (2008) US Food and Drug Administration approval: panitumumab for epidermal growth factor receptor–expressing metastatic colorectal carcinoma with progression following fluoropyrimidine-, oxaliplatin-, and irinotecan-containing chemotherapy regimens. Clin Cancer Res 14(5):1296–1302
40. Weiner LM, Belldegrun AS, Crawford J, Tolcher AW, Lockbaum P, Arends RH et al (2008) Dose and schedule study of panitumumab monotherapy in patients with advanced solid malignancies. Clin Cancer Res 14(2):502–508
41. Crawford J, Swanson P, Schwarzenberger P, Sandler A, Prager D, Zhang K et al (2013) A phase 2 randomized trial of paclitaxel and carboplatin with or without panitumumab for first-line treatment of advanced non–small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 8(12):1510–1518
42. Schuette W, Behringer D, Stoehlmacher J, Kollmeier J, Schmager S, von Weikersthal LF et al (2015) CHAMP: a phase II study of panitumumab with pemetrexed and cisplatin versus pemetrexed and cisplatin in the treatment of patients with advanced-stage primary nonsquamous non–small-cell lung cancer with particular regard to the KRAS status. Clin Lung Cancer 16(6):447–456
43. Edelman MJ, Hu C, Le QT, Donington JS, D'Souza WD, Dicker AP et al (2017) Randomized phase II study of preoperative chemoradiotherapy±panitumumab followed by consolidation chemotherapy in potentially operable locally advanced (stage IIIa, N2+) non–small cell lung cancer: NRG oncology RTOG 0839. J Thorac Oncol 12(9):1413–1420
44. Spigel DR, Mekhail TM, Waterhouse D, Hadley T, Webb C, Burris HA III et al (2017) First-line carboplatin, pemetrexed, and panitumumab in patients with advanced non-squamous KRAS wild type (WT) non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC). Cancer Investig 35(8):541–546
45. Wang Y, Wang H, Jiang Y, Zhang Y, Wang X (2017) A randomized phase III study of combining erlotinib with bevacizumab and panitumumab versus erlotinib alone as second-line therapy for Chinese patients with non-small-cell lung cancer. Biomed Pharmacother 89:875–879
46. Blumenschein GR, Reckamp K, Stephenson GJ, O'Rourke T, Gladish G, McGreivy J et al (2010) Phase 1b study of motesanib, an oral angiogenesis inhibitor, in combination with carboplatin/paclitaxel and/or panitumumab for the treatment of advanced non–small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 16(1):279–290
47. Wieck MM, Spurrier RG, Levin DE, Mojica SG, Hiatt MJ, Reddy R et al (2016) Sequestration of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) induces late restrictive lung disease. PLoS One 11(2):e0148323. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0148323
48. Niu G, Chen X (2010) Vascular endothelial growth factor as an anti-angiogenic target for cancer therapy. Curr Drug Targets 11(8):1000–1017
49. Chen XW, Sun JG, Zhang LP, Liao XY, Liao RX (2017) Recruitment of CD11b+ Ly6C+ monocytes in non-small cell lung cancer xenografts challenged by anti-VEGF antibody. Oncol Lett 14(1):615–622
50. Shibuya M (2011) Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and its receptor (VEGFR) signaling in angiogenesis: a crucial target for anti- and pro-angiogenic therapies. Genes Cancer 2(12):1097–1105
51. Cohen MH, Gootenberg J, Keegan P, Pazdur R (2007) FDA drug approval summary: bevacizumab (Avastin®) plus carboplatin and paclitaxel as first-line treatment of advanced/metastatic recurrent nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer. Oncologist 12(6):713–718
52. Sandler A, Gray R, Perry MC, Brahmer J, Schiller JH, Dowlati A et al (2006) Paclitaxel–carboplatin alone or with bevacizumab for non–small-cell lung cancer. New Engl J Med 355(24):2542–2550
53. Sandler AB, Schiller JH, Gray R, Dimery I, Brahmer J, Samant M et al (2009) Retrospective evaluation of the clinical and radiographic risk factors associated with severe pulmonary hemorrhage in first-line advanced, unresectable non–small-cell lung cancer treated with carboplatin and paclitaxel plus bevacizumab. J Clin Oncol 27(9):1405–1412
54. von Pawel J, Spigel DR, Ervin T, Losonczy G, Barlesi F, Juhász E et al (2018) Randomized phase II trial of parsatuzumab (anti-EGFL7) or placebo in combination with carboplatin, paclitaxel, and bevacizumab for first-line nonsquamous non-small cell lung cancer. Oncologist 23(6):654–e58. https://doi.org/10.1634/theoncologist.2017-0690
55. Garon EB, Ciuleanu TE, Arrieta O, Prabhash K, Syrigos KN, Goksel T et al (2014) Ramucirumab plus docetaxel versus placebo plus docetaxel for second-line treatment of stage IV non-small-cell lung cancer after disease progression on platinum-based therapy (REVEL): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised phase 3 trial. Lancet 384(9944):665–673
56. Reck M, Paz-Ares L, Bidoli P, Cappuzzo F, Dakhil S, Moro-Sibilot D et al (2017) Outcomes in patients with aggressive or refractory disease from REVEL: a randomized phase III study of docetaxel with ramucirumab or placebo for second-line treatment of stage IV non-small-cell lung cancer. Lung Cancer 112:181–187

57. Smit EF, Garon EB, Reck M, Cappuzzo F, Bidoli P, Cohen RB et al (2018) Exposure-response relationship for ramucirumab from the randomized, double-blind, phase 3 REVEL trial (docetaxel versus docetaxel plus ramucirumab) in second-line treatment of metastatic non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 82(1):77–86
58. Gil-Bazo I (2017) Avelumab—a new programmed death-ligand 1 inhibitor against advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Transl Lung Cancer Res 6(S1):S35–S38. https://doi.org/10.21037/tlcr.2017.11.01
59. Wang C, Thudium KB, Han M, Wang XT, Huang H, Feingersh D et al (2014) In vitro characterization of the anti-PD-1 antibody nivolumab, BMS-936558, and in vivo toxicology in non-human primates. Cancer Immunol Res 2(9):846–856
60. Cui S, Dong L, Qian J, Ye L, Jiang L (2018) Classifying non-small cell lung cancer by status of programmed cell death ligand 1 and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes on tumor cells. J Cancer 9(1):129–134
61. Santini FC, Rudin CM (2017) Atezolizumab for the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer. Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol 10(9):935–945
62. Passiglia F, Galvano A, Rizzo S, Incorvaia L, Listì A, Bazan V et al (2018) Looking for the best immune-checkpoint inhibitor in pre-treated NSCLC patients: an indirect comparison between nivolumab, pembrolizumab and atezolizumab. Int J Cancer 142(6):1277–1284
63. Bianco A, Malapelle U, Rocco D, Perrotta F, Mazzarella G (2018) Targeting immune checkpoints in non small cell lung cancer. Curr Opin Pharm 40:46–50
64. Herbst RS, Baas P, Kim D-W, Felip E, Pérez-Gracia JL, Han J-Y, Molina J, Kim J-H, Arvis CD, Ahn M-J (2016) Pembrolizumab versus docetaxel for previously treated, PD-L1-positive, advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (KEYNOTE-010): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 387(10027):1540–1550
65. Langer CJ, Gadgeel SM, Borghaei H, Papadimitrakopoulou VA, Patnaik A, Powell SF et al (2016) Carboplatin and pemetrexed with or without pembrolizumab for advanced, non-squamous non-small-cell lung cancer: a randomised, phase 2 cohort of the open-label KEYNOTE-021 study. Lancet Oncol 17(11):1497–1508
66. Reck M, Rodríguez-Abreu D, Robinson AG, Hui R, Csőszi T, Fülöp A et al (2016) Pembrolizumab versus chemotherapy for PD-L1–positive non–small-cell lung cancer. New Engl J Med 375(19):1823–1833
67. Seetharamu N, Preeshagul IR, Sullivan KM (2017) New PD-L1 inhibitors in non-small cell lung cancer – impact of atezolizumab. Lung Cancer 8:67–78
68. Hellmann MD, Rizvi NA, Goldman JW, Gettinger SN, Borghaei H, Brahmer JR et al (2017) Nivolumab plus ipilimumab as first-line treatment for advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (CheckMate 012): results of an open-label, phase 1, multicohort study. Lancet Oncol 18(1):31–41
69. Feng Y, Wang X, Bajaj G, Agrawal S, Bello A, Lestini B et al (2017) Nivolumab exposure–response analyses of efficacy and safety in previously treated squamous or nonsquamous non–small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 23(18):5394–5405
70. Borghaei H, Paz-Ares L, Horn L, Spigel DR, Steins M, Ready NE et al (2015) Nivolumab versus docetaxel in advanced nonsquamous non–small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 373(17):1627–1639
71. Brahmer J, Reckamp KL, Baas P, Crinò L, Eberhardt WE, Poddubskaya E et al (2015) Nivolumab versus docetaxel in advanced squamous-cell non–small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 373(2):123–135
72. Lee HT, Lee JY, Lim H, Lee SH, Moon YJ, Pyo HJ et al (2017) Molecular mechanism of PD-1/PD-L1 blockade via anti-PD-L1 antibodies atezolizumab and durvalumab. Sci Rep 7(1). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-06002-8
73. Ilie M, Hofman P (2017) Atezolizumab in advanced non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Dis 9(10):3603–3606
74. Rittmeyer A, Barlesi F, Waterkamp D, Park K, Ciardiello F, von Pawel J et al (2017) Atezolizumab versus docetaxel in patients with previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer (OAK): a phase 3, open-label, multicentre randomised controlled trial. Lancet 389(10066):255–265. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(16)32517-X
75. Vansteenkiste J, Wauters E, Park K, Rittmeyer A, Sandler A, Spira A (2017) Prospects and progress of atezolizumab in non-small cell lung cancer. Expert Opin Biol Ther 17(6):781–789
76. Antonia SJ, Villegas A, Daniel D, Vicente D, Murakami S, Hui R et al (2017) Durvalumab after chemoradiotherapy in stage III non–small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 377(20):1919–1929
77. Planchard D, Yokoi T, McCleod MJ, Fischer JR, Kim YC, Ballas M et al (2016) A phase III study of durvalumab (MEDI4736) with or without tremelimumab for previously treated patients with advanced NSCLC: rationale and protocol design of the ARCTIC study. Clin Lung Cancer 17(3):232–236. e231
78. Antonia S, Goldberg SB, Balmanoukian A, Chaft JE, Sanborn RE, Gupta A et al (2016) Safety and antitumour activity in a phase 1b study of combined checkpoint blockade with anti-PD-L1 (durvalumab) and anti-CTLA4 (tremelimumab) in non-small cell lung cancer. Lancet Oncol 17(3):299–308
79. Rebelatto MC, Midha A, Mistry A, Sabalos C, Schechter N, Li X et al (2016) Development of a programmed cell death ligand-1 immunohistochemical assay validated for analysis of non-small cell lung cancer and head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Diagn Pathol 11(1):95. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13000-016-0545-8

80. Shafique MR, Robinson LA, Antonia S (2018) Durvalumab: a potential maintenance therapy in surgery-ineligible non-small-cell lung cancer. Cancer Manag Res 10:931–940
81. Gulley JL, Rajan A, Spigel DR, Iannotti N, Chandler J, Wong DJ et al (2017) Avelumab for patients with previously treated metastatic or recurrent non-small-cell lung cancer (JAVELIN solid tumor): dose-expansion cohort of a multicentre, open-label, phase 1b trial. Lancet Oncol 18(5):599–610
82. Xie H, Adjei AA (2017) Avelumab: another active immune checkpoint inhibitor in non-small cell lung cancer. Transl Lung Cancer Res 6(Suppl 1):S41–S43. https://doi.org/10.21037/tlcr.2017.10.15
83. Xu Y, Kong GKW, Menting JG, Margetts MB, Delaine CA, Jenkin LM et al (2018) How ligand binds to the type 1 insulin-like growth factor receptor. Nat Commun 9(1):821. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-018-03219-7
84. Yuan J, Yin Z, Tao K, Wang G, Gao J (2018) Function of insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor in cancer resistance to chemotherapy. Oncol Lett 15(1):41–47
85. Humar M, Kern I, Vlacic G, Hadzic V, Cufer T (2017) Insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor expression in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer and its impact on overall survival. Radiol Oncol 51(2):195–202
86. Scagliotti G, Bondarenko I, Blackhall F, Barlesi F, Hsia TC, Jassem J et al (2014) Randomized, phase III trial of figitumumab in combination with erlotinib versus erlotinib alone in patients with nonadenocarcinoma nonsmall-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 26(3):497–504
87. Langer CJ, Novello S, Park K, Krzakowski M, Karp DD, Mok T (2014) Randomized, phase III trial of first-line figitumumab in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin versus paclitaxel and carboplatin alone in patients with advanced non–small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 32(19):2059–2066
88. Karp DD, Pollak MN, Cohen RB, Eisenberg PD, Haluska P, Yin D et al (2009) Safety, pharmacokinetics, and pharmacodynamics of the insulin-like growth factor type 1 receptor inhibitor figitumumab (CP-751,871) in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin. J Thorac Oncol 4(11):1397–1403
89. Nakagawa T, Ohta K, Kubozono K, Ishida Y, Naruse T, Takechi M et al (2015) Zoledronate inhibits receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa-B ligand-induced osteoclast differentiation via suppression of expression of nuclear factor of activated T-cell c1 and carbonic anhydrase 2. Arch Oral Biol 60(4):557–565
90. de Oliveira CC, Brizeno LAC, de Sousa FB, Mota MRL, Alves APNN (2016) Osteonecrosis of the jaw induced by receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B ligand (Denosumab) - review. Med Oral Patol Oral Cir Bucal 21(4):e431–e439. https://doi.org/10.4317/medoral.21044
91. Panagiotidis I, Christoulas D, Terpos E (2016) Inhibition of receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa-B ligand pathway for the management of aggressive osteosarcoma. Ann Transl Med 4(24):510. https://doi.org/10.21037/atm.2016.11.75
92. Narducci P, Bareggi R, Nicolin V (2011) Receptor activator for nuclear factor kappa B ligand (RANKL) as an osteoimmune key regulator in bone physiology and pathology. Acta Histochem 113(2):73–81
93. Udagawa H, Niho S, Kirita K, Umemura S, Matsumoto S, Yoh K et al (2017) Impact of denosumab use on the survival of untreated non-squamous non-small cell lung cancer patients with bone metastases. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 143(6):1075–1082
94. Hendriks LE, Hermans BC, van den Beuken-van MH, Hochstenbag MM, Dingemans A-MC (2016) Effect of bisphosphonates, denosumab, and radioisotopes on bone pain and quality of life in patients with non–small cell lung Cancer and bone metastases: a systematic review. J Thorac Oncol 11(2):155–173
95. Curioni-Fontecedro A, Husmann L, Soldini D, Stahel R (2013) Primary non-small cell lung cancer response upon treatment with denosumab. Lung Cancer 82(3):506–508
96. Takeno A, Yamamoto M, Notsu M, Sugimoto T (2016) Administration of anti-receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B ligand (RANKL) antibody for the treatment of osteoporosis was associated with amelioration of hepatitis in a female patient with growth hormone deficiency: a case report. BMC Endo Dis 16(1):66. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12902-016-0148-0
97. Yassin M, Soliman A, De Sanctis V, Abdelrahman M, Aziz Bedair E, AbdelGawad M (2014) Effects of the anti-receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa B ligand denusomab on beta thalassemia major-induced osteoporosis. Indian J Endocrinol Metab 18(4):546–551
98. Tarhini AA, Rafique I, Floros T, Tran P, Gooding WE, Villaruz LC et al (2017) Phase 1/2 study of rilotumumab (AMG 102), a hepatocyte growth factor inhibitor, and erlotinib in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer 123(15):2936–2944. https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.30717
99. Bottaro DP, Rubin JS, Faletto DL, Chan AL, Kmiecik TE, Woude GV et al (1991) Identification of the hepatocyte growth factor receptor as the c-met proto-oncogene product. Science 251(4995):802–804
100. Naldini L, Weidner KM, Vigna E, Gaudino G, Bardelli A, Ponzetto C et al (1991) Scatter factor and hepatocyte growth factor are indistinguishable ligands for the MET receptor. EMBO J 10(10):2867–2878
101. D'Arcangelo M, Cappuzzo F (2013) Focus on the potential role of ficlatuzumab in the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer. Biologics 7:61–68
102. Mok TSK, Geater SL, Su WC, Tan EH, Yang JCH, Chang GC et al (2016) A randomized phase 2 study comparing the combination of ficlatuzumab and gefitinib with gefitinib alone in Asian patients with advanced stage pulmonary adenocarcinoma. J Thorac Oncol 11(10):1736–1744

103. Thompson CB, Allison JP (1997) The emerging role of CTLA-4 as an immune attenuator. Immunity 7(4):445–450
104. Rowshanravan B, Halliday N, Sansom DM (2017) CTLA-4: a moving target in immunotherapy. Blood 131(1):58–67
105. Leach DR, Krummel MF, Allison JP (1996) Enhancement of antitumor immunity by CTLA-4 blockade. Science 271(5256):1734–1736
106. Lynch TJ, Bondarenko I, Luft A, Serwatowski P, Barlesi F, Chacko R et al (2012) Ipilimumab in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin as first-line treatment in stage IIIB/IV non–small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomized, double-blind, multicenter phase II study. J Clin Oncol 30(17):2046–2054
107. Reck M, Bondarenko I, Luft A, Serwatowski P, Barlesi F, Chacko R et al (2012) Ipilimumab in combination with paclitaxel and carboplatin as first-line therapy in extensive-disease-small-cell lung cancer: results from a randomized, double-blind, multicenter phase 2 trial. Ann Oncol 24(1):75–83
108. Arriola E, Wheater M, Galea I, Cross N, Maishman T, Hamid D et al (2016) Outcome and biomarker analysis from a multicenter phase 2 study of ipilimumab in combination with carboplatin and etoposide as first-line therapy for extensive-stage SCLC. J Thorac Oncol 11(9):1511–1521
109. Antonia SJ, López-Martin JA, Bendell J, Ott PA, Taylor M, Eder JP et al (2016) Nivolumab alone and nivolumab plus ipilimumab in recurrent small-cell lung cancer (CheckMate 032): a multicentre, open-label, phase 1/2 trial. Lancet Oncol 17(7):883–895
110. Reck M, Luft A, Szczesna A, Havel L, Kim SW, Akerley W et al (2016) Phase III randomized trial of ipilimumab plus etoposide and platinum versus placebo plus etoposide and platinum in extensive-stage small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 34(31):3740–3748
111. Planchard D, Barlesi F, Gomez-Roca C, Mazieres J, Varga A, Greillier L et al (2016) Phase I, safety, tolerability and preliminary efficacy study of tremelimumab (Trem) in combination with gefitinib (Gef) in EGFR-mutant (EGFR-mut) NSCLC (GEFTREM). Ann Oncol 27(Suppl 6):vi429. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdw383.45
112. Tabernero J, Chawla SP, Kindler H, Reckamp K, Chiorean EG, Azad NS et al (2015) Anticancer activity of the type I insulin-like growth factor receptor antagonist, ganitumab, in combination with the death receptor 5 agonist, conatumumab. Target Oncol 10(1):65–76
113. Herbst RS, Kurzrock R, Hong DS, Valdivieso M, Hsu CP, Goyal L et al (2010) A first-in-human study of conatumumab in adult patients with advanced solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 16(23):5883–5891
114. Paz-Ares L, Bálint B, de Boer RH, van Meerbeeck JP, Wierzbicki R, De Souza P et al (2013) A randomized phase 2 study of paclitaxel and carboplatin with or without conatumumab for first-line treatment of advanced non–small-cell lung Cancer. J Thorac Oncol 8(3):329–337

4 Parkinson's Disease and Impairment in Mitochondrial Metabolism: A Pathognomic Signature

Biswadeep Das, Sriya Priyadarshini Dash, Swabhiman Mohanty, and Paritosh Patel

Abstract

Mitochondrial bioenergetics is vital for the proper functioning of cellular compartments. Impairments in mitochondrial DNA encoding the respiratory chain complexes and other assisting proteins, accumulation of intracellular reactive oxygen species, an imbalance in cellular calcium transport, or the presence of organic pollutants, high fat-ketogenic diets or toxins, and advancing age can result in complex disorders, including cancer, metabolic disease, and neurodegenerative disorders. Such manifestations are distinctly exhibited in several age-related neurodegenerative diseases, such as in Parkinson's disease (PD). Defects in complex I along with perturbed signaling pathways is a common manifestation of PD. Impaired oxidative phosphorylation could increase the susceptibility to PD. Therefore, unraveling the mechanisms of mitochondrial complexes in clinical scenarios will assist in developing potential early biomarkers and standard tests for energy failure diagnosis and assist to pave a new path for targeted therapeutics against PD.

B. Das (✉) · S. P. Dash · S. Mohanty · P. Patel
School of Biotechnology, KIIT University, Bhubaneswar, India
e-mail: biswadeep.das@kiitbiotech.ac.in

Keywords

Mitochondria · Complex I · Mitochondrial DNA · Genomic DNA · OxPhos · Parkinson's disease

4.1 Introduction

Mitochondria are the chief energy production sites in eukaryotic cells and play a critical role in cell growth, differentiation, cellular signaling, apoptosis, and cell cycle control. They are double layered organelles, located in the cytoplasm of the cells and are among the largest cell organelles. The interaction between outer membrane proteins, such as hexokinase and the voltage-dependent anion channel (VDAC 1), and the inner membrane proteins including the adenine nucleotide translocator, connect both membranes together. Each membrane is a phospholipid bilayer with embedded proteins. The outer membrane is smooth, while the inner membrane has many inverted folds called cristae, which increase the surface area and form working spaces for mitochondrial reactions. The inner membrane is selectively permeable to certain molecules, such as pyruvic acid and adenosine triphosphate (ATP) [1]. The mitochondrial process of oxidative phosphorylation (OxPhos) aids in metabolizing car-

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_4

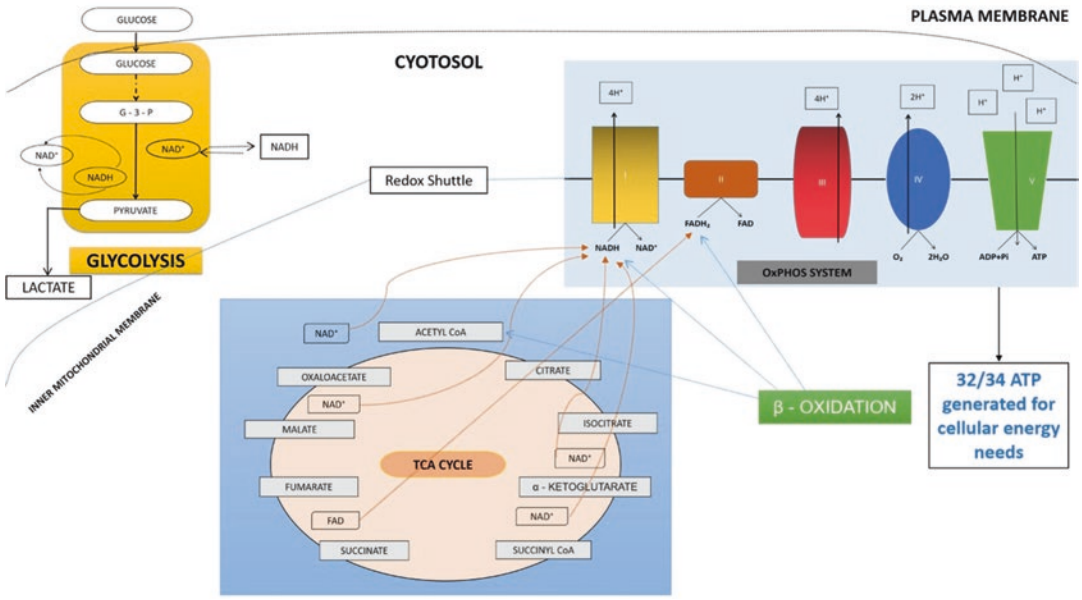


Fig. 4.1 Figure showing the link between the three most important modes of energy production pathways: glycolysis, tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle, and electron transport chain (ETC). The oxidative phosphorylation system acts as the pivotal connection between cellular bioenergetics (glycolysis) and the mitochondrial TCA cycle, yielding maximum number of ATP molecules (32/34)

bohydrates and fatty acids. It acts as a link between cellular bioenergetics (glycolysis) and the mitochondrial Kreb's cycle and electron transport chain (ETC) (Fig. 4.1). The ETC is considered as the synonym of OxPhos as this produces the maximum energy (32 ATP/glucose molecule), compared to the other two processes [2, 3].

The ETC is multi-protein complex encompassing electron donors to an electron acceptor (oxygen) in the redox reaction and releases energy in the form of ATP. The four protein complexes in the ETC are known as complex I, II, III, and IV. Several steps are involved in the transfer of the redox energy through nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NADH) and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FADH) to oxygen. The non-integral protein of ETC is the cytochrome C (CYC) situated on the inner mitochondrial membrane. Coenzyme Q helps in the energy transfer from complex I to III bypassing complex II. Complex I consists of NADH succinate dehydrogenase complex that pumps four hydrogen ions across the membrane into the intermembrane space, thereby creating a hydrogen ion gradient. Complex II consists of FADH2 and does not pump protons to the intermembrane space but participates indirectly in ETC by donating electrons. Ubiquinone, being the first electron acceptor for both complex I and II, transfers them to complex III and enhances the proton gradient. The electrons are then delivered to CYC, which transports them to complex IV. Complex IV consists of proteins and enzymes that finally accepts the electrons and reduces oxygen by accepting two protons from the surrounding medium to generate water. Due to the pumping of protons by the complexes, ATP synthesis occurs at complex V by the electrochemical gradient through the transfer of an inorganic phosphate to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) [3, 4].

The whole process involved in oxidation of high energy compounds (NADH, FADH2) along with the transfer of inorganic phosphates to ADP via the proton gradient is called OxPhos. During OxPhos, a cascade of biochemical reactions takes place that leads to the production of huge amount of reactive oxygen species (ROS), such as reactive hydroxyl, nitrogen, oxygen, and hydrogen

species during the whole process [4, 5]. ROS can indiscriminately react with a wide variety of organic substrates causing peroxidation of lipids, cross-linking and modification of proteins and mutations in DNA, and can cause significant alterations in the structure and function of cell organelles [4–7]. Substantial ROS generation in the mitochondria due to OxPhos can lead to the onset and progression of neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease (PD), Huntington's disease (HD), and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) because of the excessive demand of energy by the neurons that need to be persistently metabolically active. Such diseases can manifest in a wide variety of clinical symptoms and vary in their pathophysiology, with some causing memory and cognitive impairments and others affecting a person's ability to move, speak, or breathe [5–9]. PD is one such neurodegenerative disorder that has deep links with perturbed OxPhos. Disturbances in OxPhos could increase susceptibility to PD through incremental increases in oxidative stress, mutation-induced failures in the ETC, transfer of limited energy to the neurons, and deposition of fats leading to plaque accumulation.

Here, we review the mechanisms of the mitochondrial complexes in clinical scenarios with the aim of providing insights into the development of potential early biomarkers and standard tests for energy failure diagnosis and to pave a new path for targeted therapeutics against PD.

4.2 Impaired Mitochondrial Metabolism Etiologies

Some of the major causes of aberrant mitochondrial metabolism are attributed to ROS and gene mutations. Several studies have reported certain "large scale deletions or point mutations" in the mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) that severely affect mitochondrial energy metabolism by hampering the OxPhos process [9]. Hence, the gradual deterioration of mitochondrial ETC will lead to the production of less ATP, thereby affecting vital cellular processes, in favor of more catabolic pathways, such as autophagy and lysosomal degradation, resulting in the accumulation of waste products in the cell (Fig. 4.2). The etiologies of the mitochondrial dysfunction can be conferred by intrinsic or

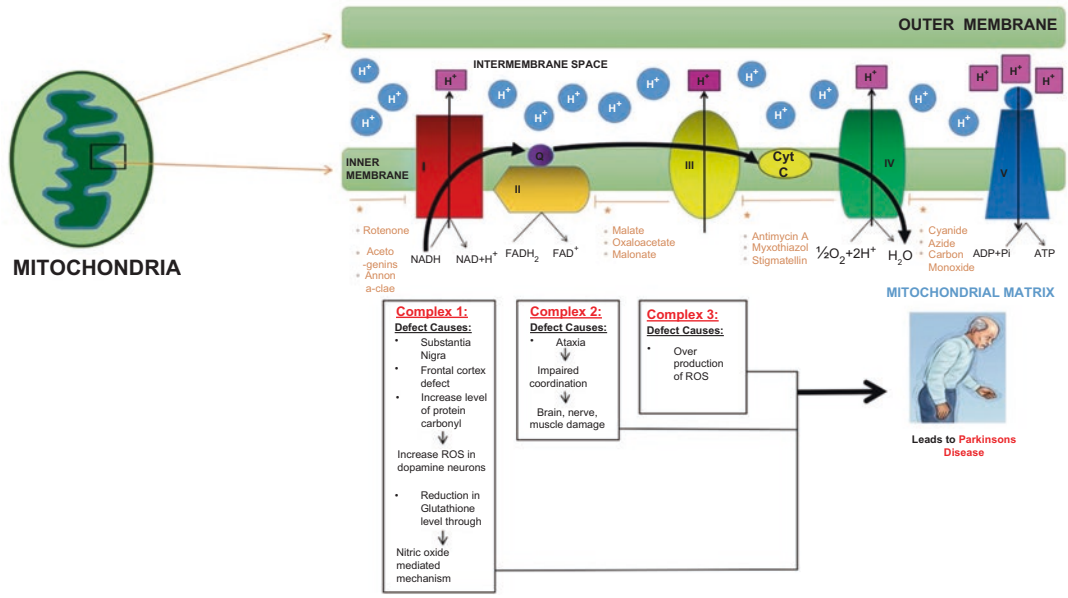


Fig. 4.2 Figure demonstrating several factors responsible for inducing irregularities in the electron transport chain (ETC) complexes of the mitochondria, thereby leading to Parkinson's disease

extrinsic factors, some of which are summarized below.

4.2.1 Mutations in the OxPhos System

The integrity of OxPhos system is imperative for optimal cellular energy production. However, the functional assembly of OxPhos is a complex process. The main factors causing mitochondrial impaired mechanism include mutations. MtDNA and nuclear DNA (nDNA) encode several subunits of complex I, II, III, IV, and V. Complex I [NADH dehydrogenase chain 1 (ND)-1–6 and ND-4 L], complex III (CYB), complex IV [CYB oxidase (COI-III)], and complex V (ATP 6 and ATP 8) comprise the 13 mtDNA-encoded subunits [10]. If there happens to be any abnormalities in any of the genes, this may cause mitochondrial dysfunction, which might eventually lead to a condition such as Parkinsonism [11]. A small change, deletion, or duplication in either of the genes will affect the other. For example, mutations in polymerase gamma (POLG) is one of the most common nDNA mutations that influences the regulation of mtDNA [12]. A study revealed that an increase in the number of mtDNA deletion or rearrangements in substantia nigra pars compacta (SNpc) are observed in PD patients. One study found 47% more protein carbonyl modifications on catalytic subunits in cortical mitochondria isolated from PD brain tissues, indicating an increased burden of oxidative damage [13]. MtDNA haplotype analysis revealed that certain haplogroups reduced the risk of PD. Maternally inherited mutations in mtDNA were detected in one family with PD. Using single molecular polymerase chain reaction (PCR) of individual pigmented neurons of the substantia nigra in aged people and PD patients, somatic deletions in mtDNA were found to be increased to high levels [11, 14]. MtDNA can also undergo single base deletion, and duplication, as well as tandem duplication and depletion, thereby decreasing the amount of mitochondria in the cell which, in turn, could lead to mitochondrial dysfunction. Such defects in the mtDNA or nDNA genes of enzymes can eventually decrease the ATP:ADP ratio [15]. Adult OxPhos diseases can be inherited as autosomal recessive and dominant traits with a milder phenotype and include mtDNA deletions. Mutations in LRRK 2 (leucine-rich repeat kinase 2) are the most common cause for development of PD. The five enzyme complexes of OxPhos are synthesized from 13 polypeptides encoded by the mtDNA and 50 polypeptides encoded by the nDNA. Complex I defects are the most common of the respiratory chain defects and are frequently exhibited as a result of impaired assembly of the enzyme. Such defects are seen to induce the fatal neurodegenerative disorder Leigh Syndrome (LS) with or without cardiomyopathy. Complex III exhibits frequent mutations in CYB and BCS1L genes, which leads to excessive ROS production that can damage DNA and tissues [15, 16]. These mutations can further impair the formation of the complex III enzyme, thereby reducing its activity. Several gene defects have been reported in complex IV, which are inherited as an autosomal recessive deficiency and exhibited in critical diseases like LS, fatal infantile CYC oxidase deficiency, and late-onset neurodegenerative disease. In addition, ATP6 gene mutations in complex V have been manifested in neuropathy, ataxia, and LS [15].

4.2.2 Defects in Complex 1 and PD Prognosis: A Pathognomic Signature

It is now well-known that the activity of complex I is reduced in the substantia nigra of PD patients [16, 17]. A recent study showed that a PD-specific complex 1 deficiency was also found in the frontal cortex. A number of catalytic subunits of complex I were seen with increased levels of protein carbonyls in the Parkinsonian brain, resulting in excessive oxidative damage of complex I subunits that could lead to complex disassembly and dysfunction [18]. The authors suggested that sporadic PD is a result of the decrease in complex I activity. However, it appears that the substantia nigra is more vulnerable to impairments of com-

plex I activity than the other brain regions and peripheral organs, possibly due to the increased levels of ROS generated within dopamine neurons as a result of dopamine metabolism and iron content [19, 20]. In a mouse model, the mitochondrial mass was found to be lower in dopaminergic neurons of the SNpc compared to dopaminergic neurons located in the adjacent ventral tegmental area (VTA) [19]. Similar studies have shown that humans also have a low mitochondrial mass in SNpc dopamine neurons, with complex I inhibition and selective degeneration in PD [20]. Increased burdens of oxidative stress can be reproduced by the incubation of control brain mitochondria with NADH in the presence of rotenone and administration of exogenous oxidants. Decrease in the antioxidant capacity also leads to acute reduction of cellular and mitochondrial glutathione levels that results in decreased mitochondrial complex I dysfunction through a nitric oxide-mediated mechanism [1]. In addition, the succinate dehydrogenase complex flavoprotein subunit A (SDHA) gene present in complex II exhibits missense mutations that cause ataxia, myopathy, and optic atrophy. Mutations in *mt-CYB* and *BCS1L* genes of complex III can also lead to the overproduction of ROS that can damage the mtDNA of neurons [20].

4.2.3 Intracellular ROS

Because electron flow through the ETC is an inefficient process, wherein only 0.4–4% of the oxygen is reduced, this leads to production of "primary" ROS, like the superoxide anion. When the superoxide anion has accumulated to excessive amounts in the cells, this gradually leads to the generation of "secondary" ROS, such as highly reactive hydroxyl radicals that can damage DNA components (purines and pyrimidines, the deoxyribose backbone) and induce mutations. The imbalance between ROS production and cellular antioxidant activity leads to oxidative stress. ROS can affect mitochondrial DNA by causing modulations in ATP production [21, 22]. ROS requires high energy, large numbers of mitochondria, and high presence of fatty acids. Thus, they can damage the susceptible neurons. ROS also stimulates aging and causes cell damage in the body. Oxidative stress is the imbalance between the generation of ROS (free radicals) and antioxidant defenses. Complexes I and III are considered as the major sites involved in the production of superoxide and other ROS [20–24]. This oxidative stress can lead to mitochondrial dysfunction that will ultimately lead to the reduction in ATP, calcium influx, and increased permeability of mitochondrial permeability pore, eventually resulting in apoptosis as exhibited in PD [21, 22]. From this, it can be seen that oxidative stress can cause dopaminergic neurotoxicity. Studies have shown that induction of oxidative stress can not only cause deleterious changes in mitochondrial function but can also induce an innate immune response, resulting in a diminution in cellular antioxidant defenses [16, 20–28]. In addition, a number of environmental factors have been found to cause overproduction of ROS that can damage DNA components and induce mutations [16, 27–32]. In this regard, ROS generation in the neuronal cells can have a significant negative impact. Because the brain is metabolically highly active, it is more susceptible to oxidative stress-related injuries than most other tissues. Hence, the increased ROS production and decreased production of antioxidant enzymes can further lead to brain cell death and neurodegeneration as found in PD.

4.2.4 Impaired Calcium Balance

Calcium acts as a second messenger in signal transduction. The transport of calcium ions across biological membranes is vital for the proper functioning of enzymes and processes. Perturbations in this process have been associated with irregularities in membrane permeability that can lead to increased respiratory rates and altered balance between oxygen consumption and OxPhos [33]. Mitochondrial swelling occurs due to increased influx of calcium ions because of improper mitochondrial cristae unfolding, caused by the opening of the mitochondrial per-

meability transition pore (MPTP). This can result in physiological responses leading to the loss of mitochondrial membrane potential and abnormalities in cellular calcium homeostasis, elevated oxidative stress, and reduced ATP. Consumption of calcium-rich food enhances MPTP opening leading to the increased entry of calcium ions into the mitochondria, thereby causing swelling. Thus, calcium deregulation is known to impair mitochondrial function that can lead to MPTP opening and apoptosis [26, 34]. This process has been implicated in the progression of PD and other neurodegenerative disease [35]. In addition, the mitochondria-associated endoplasmic reticulum (ER) membrane (MAM) is the membrane that joins the mitochondria with the ER and is responsible for calcium transport for signal transduction pathways. The excessive efflux of Ca^{2+} from the ER is regulated by mitochondria. If the efflux is beyond the limit, then Ca^{2+} is transported and binds with protein kinase C (PKC) and activates the transcription factor, thereby leading to apoptosis and disassembly of the mitochondrial complexes [33, 34]. However, if the influx of calcium ion in the mitochondrial matrix decreases, this may affect the proton ion gradient of the ETC, thereby affecting ATP synthesis by lowering the rate. Eventually, such dysregulated Ca^{2+} transport across the mitochondrial membranes will lead to the generation of excessive ROS, lower ATP production, and disassemble the mitochondrial complexes, leading to apoptosis. Such phenomena have been consistently observed in PD cases [35].

4.2.5 Mitochondrial ETC Inhibitors and Environmental Toxicants

Several drugs and toxins impart "off-target" effects to mitochondrial metabolism. In particular, they can inhibit and uncouple the ETC, generate and exacerbate ROS production, and alter mitochondrial protein synthesis [36]. One of the signature mitochondrial toxins is the broad-spectrum pesticide, rotenone. Rotenone interrupts the OxPhos system by inhibiting the NADH dehydrogenase enzyme, thereby blocking the electron transport in mitochondria, mainly by inhibiting electron transfer from Fe-S centers in complex I to ubiquinone, creating a cloud of electrons within the mitochondrial matrix. This ultimately prevents oxygen availability for cellular respiration. The cellular oxygen will be finally reduced to free radical form, generating ROS that will eventually hamper mitochondrial DNA and function. An example of this is adriamycin (doxorubicin), a chemotherapeutic used as an antineoplastic drug that acts by intercalation within DNA bases and inhibition of topoisomerase II and induces irreversible and amplified cardiomyopathy in the mitochondria. This drug easily enters the mitochondria due to its lipophilic nature and interacts with cardiolipin, a signature mitochondrial inner membrane lipid [36–39], and acts as an uncoupler of OxPhos, leading to ROS generation and decreased ATP production.

Environmental toxicants including both organic and inorganic compounds have also been implicated in mitochondrial toxicity. For example, paraquat acts like a mito-inhibitor by modulating the redox cycling in a similar manner as adriamycin [40]. Also, cyanide and carbon monoxide act as inhibitors of complex IV [33] and halt the aerobic cellular respiration abruptly. Situations in which there is a simultaneous occurrence of folate deficiency with either cyanide or methanol exposure have resulted in mitochondrial toxicity-mediated optic neuropathy in approximately 50,000 people [38–42], suggesting the impact of such toxicants via an environment–environment interaction mechanism. The implications of the mitochondrial effects posed by these toxicants/chemicals have also been exhibited in several clinical syndromes and pathologies associated with mitochondrial abnormalities. For example, the mitochondrial defects posed by rotenone, paraquat, and manganese are all associated with PD and other age-related neurodegenerative diseases [38, 39, 42, 43].

4.2.6 Increased Fat Diet Uptake

Hepatocyte fatty acid oxidation and ketone body production can be induced by high fat diets. In

such diets, the nutrient supply and cellular energetic needs enhance the function of mitochondria. Such diets can lead to obesity, which is a major cause of impaired mitochondrial metabolism and behavior [44]. A fat-rich diet decreases $FADH_2$-associated cellular respiration and increases proton leak, thereby compromising mitochondrial energetic efficiency in addition to an elevation in ROS production. Due to improper mitochondrial energetic cristae unfolding, there is an increased influx of calcium ions that enhances mitochondrial swelling. As a result, the MPTP opens, which can induce increased oxidative stress, decreased ATP production, and abnormalities in cellular calcium homeostasis, as well as other effects [45]. The dysregulation of calcium can lead to impaired mitochondrial function that can result in MPTP opening and apoptosis. This finding has led to the suggestion that the increased mitochondrial swelling could be a major cause for MPTP opening in neurodegenerative diseases, such as PD. Several models of PD have been generated and shown to have enhanced oxidative stress upon intake of a fat-rich diet [44, 46, 47]. Such an inadequate maternal nutrition can increase maternal and fetal oxidative stress through the increased production of ROS [48].

4.3 PD and Perturbed Mitochondrial Metabolism

The brain consumes more than 30% of the total energy generated by an organism because it needs to maintain synaptic homeostasis. Therefore, neurons require the most energy among all cell types in the body and harbor huge numbers of mitochondria to support proper function. In line with this, several studies have demonstrated that mitochondrial diseases frequently manifest along with neuromuscular abnormalities [6, 49–51]. A gradual fall in ATP production due to impaired mitochondrial metabolism with advancing age is currently a typical hallmark of neurodegenerative disease, such as in case of PD.

PD is an age-related neurodegenerative disease marked by locomotory disturbances exhibiting rigidity, bradykinesia, and resting tremor, with an average incidence of around 25 per 100,000 people that increases sharply with age after age 60 [52]. The etiology of PD is marked by the damage to dopaminergic receptors in the substantia nigra region of the brain. The most notable cause of such damage is the accumulation of ROS (Fig. 4.3) that are produced considerably in the glial cells and mitochondria of the neurons (mainly highly pigmented neurons), referred to as the "hot spots" of brain ROS generation [53]. Mitochondrial profiling of PD patients has demonstrated defects in the mitochondrial OxPhos system in platelets, muscle, and substantia nigra, thereby suggesting that mitochondrial function assessment should be an early predictor of the progression of PD. In addition, interactions between the intermediates of the quinol cycle with hydrogen peroxide to form hydroxyl radicals might also lead to the development of PD. In various studies around the world, it has been found that oxidative stress and complex I inactivity causes the OxPhos impairment and increased risk of PD. Mainly, the inhibitors and pesticides are considered to be the causative agent of the failure of complex I. Recent studies have also found that complex I defects in the ETC of the mitochondria severely affect neurons, leading to the development of PD by over production of ROS [54, 55]. Mutations in the phosphatase and tenson homologue (PTEN)-induced putative kinase 1 (PINK1) gene responsible for the regulation of osmotic pressure and mitochondrial membrane potential causes irregularities in the management of cellular oxidative stress and causes a huge production of ROS in the neurons. This gene mutation is considered as one of the genetic hallmarks of PD. The PTEN gene mutation also induces impairment of the alpha synuclein protein, which directly interrupts mitochondrial complex I activity, thereby leading to decreased ATP production and mitochondrial dysfunction. In addition, exogenous agents like environmental pesticides could be related to PD development, such as the effect seen with MPTP. Classical PD cases (5–10%) result from

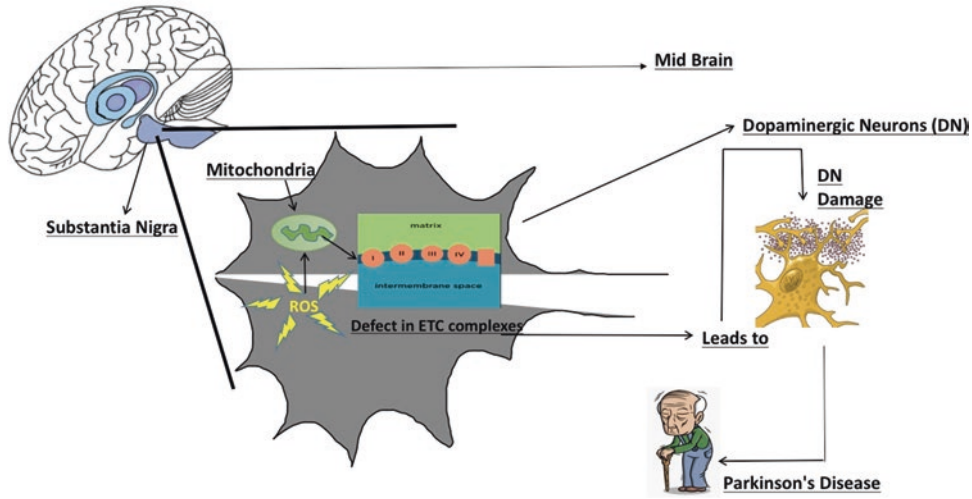


Fig. 4.3 Figure showing the implication of "ROS" in inducing perturbed mitochondrial metabolism leading to dopaminergic neuron damage and eventually Parkinson's disease

monogenetic mutations, although the remaining cases have no known etiology. When MPTP enters astrocytes, it converts into 1-methyl 4 phenylpyridinium (MPP+) that enters into the dopamenergic neurons in the SNpc and causes damage. MPP+ gets selectively absorbed by the pigmented dopaminergic neurons, thereby suppressing complex I, increasing ROS formation and oxidative stress-induced neuronal death. Similarly, rotenone that acts as a complex I inhibitor has been used to create PD animal models. An analysis of the association between pesticide exposure and in PD in 436 cases and 854 controls found an increased risk of PD after long-term exposure to pesticides. The calculated combined adjusted odds ratio (OR) was 1.94 (1.49–2.53) and similar ORs were observed in studies conducted in the United States, Asia, Europe, and Canada. It was also observed that the risk of PD increased with longer exposure times, with an adjusted OR of 5.81 (1.99–16.97) for ≥10 years of exposure [56]. Subsequently, another study reviewed 31 case-control studies published up to 2003 and found that about half of them reported significant associations between pesticide exposure and PD risk [57]. An epidemiological study from 2000 to 2011 found that seven out of the eight prospective studies provided evidence of an association between pesticide exposure and PD, reporting risk estimates of twofold or higher. Among 23 case studies, 13 studies found an increased risk of PD [58, 59]. In support of the epidemiological evidence, increased levels of some pesticides have been quantified in post-mortem brains from PD patients. High concentrations of pesticides including dieldrin, lindane, and p-p-DDE have been observed in PD cases compared with controls [60, 61]. Furthermore, complex IV inhibitors like carbon monoxide have also been implicated in the suppression of the activity of motor neurons in PD-related cases [62]. Mitochondrial profiling of PD patients has demonstrated defects in the mitochondrial OxPhos in the platelets [63], muscle [64], and substantia nigra [65], thereby suggesting that mitochondrial function assessment should be an early predictor of PD. In addition, interactions between the intermediates of the quinol cycle with hydrogen peroxide to form hydroxyl radicals that act as ROS might also lead to the development of PD. Complex I impairment may also cause accumulation of alpha synuclein, which results in increased oxidative stress damage and dysfunction of this complex [66]. Conversely, a key regulator of energy metabolism, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ coactivator (PGC-1) plays a role in neuroprotection [67]. This has been suggested by studies which showed

that its inhibition decreases the activity of complex I.

As suggested above, the most important agent for oxidative damage is the accumulation of ROS [68–71] that are produced at high levels in glial cells and mitochondria of the neurons (mainly the highly pigmented neurons), and these are referred to as the "hot spots" of brain ROS generation. In line with this, annonaceous acetogenins [72, 73], one of the most powerful lipophilic complex I inhibitors [74, 75], was found to cause neuronal cell death [76] and induce redistribution of tau protein [77] (a feature of Parkinsonism) in primary cultures of striated neurons [73].

4.4 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

Considering the fact that mitochondrial OxPhos plays an imperative role in shaping the clinical outcome of a neurodegenerative disorder, answering questions pertaining to the role of perturbed energy metabolism in PD will be crucial for developing early diagnostics and prompt therapeutics for improving the clinical manifestations. Some questions that could be posed for discussion are: (1) what are the different mitochondrial proteins that mediate the advent and progression of PD; (2) what are the mitochondrial energy cascades involved in PD; (3) how do the energy metabolism regulation work in PD; (4) what are the specific biomarkers for the early detection of PD; (5) how does perturbed redox biology aid in the progression of PD; and (6) how can natural dietary compounds aid in ameliorating pertubed mitochondrial energy metabolism in PD? Presently, there is a scarcity of therapeutics for the specific management of neurodegenerative diseases. This has enhanced the quest to identify compounds aimed at improving mitochondrial energy metabolism in clinical medicine, with particular reference to neurodegenerative diseases, such as PD. Hence, human clinical trials focused on evaluating the therapeutic potential of non-specific energy-boosting compounds in clinical scenarios are welcomed and are currently being pursued [78]. Naturally occurring compounds, such as plant-based products, mushrooms, organic supplements, and probiotics having antioxidant properties are currently being investigated as ways of improving mitochondrial function and energy deficit. Among these, oral creatine and creatine analogs, or amino acid derivatives and peptides derived from biological sources have shown interesting outcomes. Some studies have demonstrated low-to-medium positive therapeutic potential of organic creatine for improving energy metabolism in HD and PD [78, 79]. However, little or no information is currently available on the role of several other similar compounds on mitochondrial uptake and bioenergetic behavior in clinical interventions. Therefore, more studies focusing on the role of mitochondrial energy metabolism in PD and other neurodegenerative disease are warranted, particularly in the direction of developing early diagnostic biomarkers and generating alternative, effective therapeutics.

References

1. Elfawy HA, Das B (2019) Crosstalk between mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and age related neurodegenerative disease: etiologies and therapeutic strategies. Life Sci 218:165–184
2. Andreyev AY, Kushnareva YE, Starkov AA (2005) Mitochondrial metabolism of reactive oxygen species. Biokhimiya 70:246–264
3. Shoubridge EA (2001) Nuclear genetic defects of oxidative phosphorylation. Hum Mol Genet 10(20):2277–2284
4. Zecca L, Youdim MBH, Riederer P, Connor JR, Crichton RR (2004) Iron, brain ageing and neurodegenerative disorders. Nat Rev Neurosci 5(11):863–873
5. Castello PR, Drechsel DA, Patel M (2007) Mitochondria are a major source of paraquat-induced reactive oxygen species production in the brain. J Biol Chem 282(19):14186–14193
6. Zuo L, Motherwell MS (2013) The impact of reactive oxygen species and genetic mitochondrial mutations in Parkinson's disease. Gene 532(1):18–23
7. Gorell JM, Peterson EL, Rybicki BA, Johnson CC (2004) Multiple risk factors for Parkinson's disease. J Neurol Sci 217(2):169–174
8. Wirdefeldt K, Adami HO, Cole P et al (2011) Epidemiology and etiology of Parkinson's disease: a review of the evidence. Eur J Epidemiol 26(Suppl 1):S1–S8. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10654-011-9581-6

9. Schapira AH, Jenner P (2011) Etiology and pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease. Mov Disord 26(6):1049–1055
10. Teismann P, Mounsey RB (2011) Mitochondrial dysfunction in Parkinson's disease: pathogenesis and neuroprotection. Parkinsons Dis 2011:617472. https://doi.org/10.4061/2011/617472
11. Abeliovich A, Gitler AD (2016) Defects in trafficking bridge Parkinson's disease pathology and genetics. Nature 539(7628):207–216
12. Canta A, Chiorazzi A, Carozzi VA, Meregalli C, Oggioni N, Bossi M et al (2016) Age-related changes in the function and structure of the peripheral sensory pathway in mice. Neurobiol Aging 45:136–148
13. Wyss-Coray T (2016) Ageing, neurodegeneration and brain rejuvenation. Nature 539(7628):180–186
14. Kanthasamy AG, Kitazawa M, Kanthasamy A, Anantharam V (2005) Dieldrin-induced neurotoxicity: relevance to Parkinson's disease pathogenesis. Neurotoxicology 26(4):701–719
15. Lightowlers RN, Taylor RW, Turnbull DM (2015) Mutations causing mitochondrial disease: what is new and what challenges remain? Science 349(6255):1494–1499
16. Schapira AHV (2007) Mitochondrial dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Cell Death Differ 14(7):1261–1266
17. Devi L, Raghavendran V, Prabhu BM, Avadhani NG, Anandatheerthavarada HK (2008) Mitochondrial import and accumulation of α-synuclein impair complex I in human dopaminergic neuronal cultures and Parkinson disease brain. J Biol Chem 283(14):9089–9100
18. Gu G, Reyes PF, Golden GT, Woltjer RL, Hulette C, Montine TJ et al (2002) Mitochondrial DNA deletions/rearrangements in Parkinson disease and related neurodegenerative disorders. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 61(7):634–639
19. Wallace DC, Shoffner JM, Watts RL, Torroni A, Wallace DC (1992) Mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation defects in Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 32(3):113–114
20. Palacino JJ, Sagi D, Goldberg MS, Krauss S, Motz C, Wacker M et al (2004) Mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative damage in. J Biol Chem 279(18):18614–18622
21. Jeong EM, Chung J, Liu H et al (2016) Role of mitochondrial oxidative stress in glucose tolerance, insulin resistance, and cardiac diastolic dysfunction. J Am Heart Assoc 5(5):e003046. https://doi.org/10.1161/JAHA.115.003046
22. Kalani K, Yan SF, Du Yan SS (2018) Mitochondrial permeability transition pore: a potential drug target for neurodegeneration. Drug Discov Today 23(12):1983–1989
23. Burbulla LF, Krebiehl G, Krüger R (2010) Balance is the challenge - the impact of mitochondrial dynamics in Parkinson's disease. Eur J Clin Investig 40(11):1048–1060
24. Lestienne P, Nelson J, Riederer P, Jellinger K, Reichmann H (1990) Normal mitochondrial genome in brain from patients with Parkinson's disease and complex I defect. J Neurochem 55(5):1810–1812
25. Song DD, Shults CW, Sisk A, Rockenstein E, Masliah E (2004) Enhanced substantia nigra mitochondrial pathology in human α-synuclein transgenic mice after treatment with MPTP. Exp Neurol 186(2):158–172
26. Schapira AH (1993) Mitochondrial complex I deficiency in Parkinson's disease. Adv Neurol 60:288–291
27. Keeney PM, Xie J, Capaldi RA, Bennett JP (2006) Parkinson's disease brain mitochondrial complex I has oxidatively damaged subunits and is functionally impaired and misassembled. J Neurosci 26(19):5256–5264
28. Liang WS, Dunckley T, Beach TG, Grover A, Mastroeni D, Walker DG et al (2007) Gene expression profiles in anatomically and functionally distinct regions of the normal aged human brain. Physiol Genomics 28(3):311–322
29. Szarka A, Bánhegyi G, Sümegi B (2014) Mitochondria, oxidative stress and aging. Orv Hetil 155(12):447–452
30. Islam MT (2017) Oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction-linked neurodegenerative disorders. Neurol Res 39(1):73–82
31. Umeno A, Biju V, Yoshida Y (2017) In vivo ROS production and use of oxidative stress-derived biomarkers to detect the onset of diseases such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and diabetes. Free Radic Res 51(4):413–427
32. Uttara B, Singh A, Zamboni P, Mahajan R (2009) Oxidative stress and neurodegenerative diseases: a review of upstream and downstream antioxidant therapeutic options. Curr Neuropharmacol 7(1):65–74
33. Tarasov AI, Griffiths EJ, Rutter GA (2012) Regulation of ATP production by mitochondrial Ca(2+). Cell Calcium 52(1):28–35
34. Pérez MJ, Quintanilla RA (2017) Development or disease: duality of the mitochondrial permeability transition pore. Dev Biol 426(1):1–7
35. Verma M, Wills Z, Chu CT (2018) Excitatory dendritic mitochondrial calcium toxicity: implications for Parkinson's and other neurodegenerative diseases. Front Neurosci 12:523. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2018.00523
36. Dykens JA, Will Y (2007) The significance of mitochondrial toxicity testing in drug development. Drug Discov Today 12(17–18):777–785
37. Zorova LD, Popkov VA, Plotnikov EY, Silachev DN, Pevzner IB, Jankauskas SS et al (2018) Mitochondrial membrane potential. Anal Biochem 552:50–59
38. Martinez TN, Greenamyre JT (2012) Toxin models of mitochondrial dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Antioxidants Redox Signal 16(9):920–934
39. Freire C, Koifman S (2012) Pesticide exposure and Parkinson's disease: epidemiological evidence of association. Neurotoxicology 33(5):947–971

40. Koller WC (1986) Paraquat and Parkinson's disease. Neurology 36(8):1147. https://doi.org/10.1212/wnl.36.8.1147-b
41. Smart RC, Hodgson E (2007) Molecular and biochemical toxicology, 4th edn. John Wiley & Sons, Inc, Hoboken, NJ. https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470285251
42. Cannon JR, Greenamyre JT (2011) The role of environmental exposures in neurodegeneration and neurodegenerative diseases. Toxicol Sci 124(2):225–250
43. Sadun A (1998) Acquired mitochondrial impairment as a cause of optic nerve disease. Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc 96:881–923
44. Bajracharya R, Youngson NA, Ballard JWO (2019) Dietary macronutrient management to treat mitochondrial dysfunction in parkinson's disease. Int J Mol Sci 20(8):E1850. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20081850
45. Kim KY, Sack MN (2012) Parkin in the regulation of fat uptake and mitochondrial biology: emerging links in the pathophysiology of Parkinson's disease. Curr Opin Lipidol 23(3):201–205
46. Liu H, Yuan L, Yang X, Wang K (2003) La3+, Gd3+ and Yb3+ induced changes in mitochondrial structure, membrane permeability, cytochrome c release and intracellular ROS level. Chem Biol Interact 146:27–37
47. Paul R, Choudhury A, Kumar S, Giri A, Sandhir R, Borah A (2017) Cholesterol contributes to dopamine neuronal loss in MPTP mouse model of Parkinson's disease: involvement of mitochondrial dysfunctions and oxidative stress. PLoS One 2(2):e0171285. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0171285
48. Blochberger A, Jones S (2011) Parkinson's disease clinical features and diagnosis. Clin Pharm 3:361–366
49. Zawia NH, Lahiri DK, Cardozo-Pelaez F (2009) Epigenetics, oxidative stress, and Alzheimer disease. Free Radic Biol Med 46(9):1241–1249
50. Billingsley KJ, Barbosa IA, Bandrés-Ciga S, Quinn JP, Bubb VJ, Deshpande C et al (2019) Mitochondria function associated genes contribute to Parkinson's disease risk and later age at onset. NPJ Park Dis 5:8. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41531-019-0080-x
51. Grünewald A, Kumar KR, Sue CM (2019) New insights into the complex role of mitochondria in Parkinson's disease. Prog Neurobiol 177:73–93
52. DeMaagd G, Philip A (2015) Parkinson's disease and its management part 1: disease entity, risk factors, pathophysiology, clinical presentation, and diagnosis. P T 40(8):504–532
53. Nita M, Grzybowski A (2016) The role of the reactive oxygen species and oxidative stress in the pathomechanism of the age-related ocular diseases and other pathologies of the anterior and posterior eye segments in adults. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2016:3164734. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/3164734
54. William Langston J, Forno LS, Rebert CS, Irwin I (1984) Selective nigral toxicity after systemic administration of 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyrine (MPTP) in the squirrel monkey. Brain Res 292(2):390–394
55. Trist B, Hare D, Double K (2019) Oxidative stress in the aging substantia nigra and the etiology of Parkinson's disease. Aging Cell 18(6):e13031. https://doi.org/10.1111/acel.13031
56. Campos RT, Seelen M, Hoek G, Brouwerb M, Hussb A, Peters S et al (2015) Parkinson's disease and long-term exposure to outdoor air pollution: a matched case-control study in the Netherlands. ISEE Conf Abstract 2015:1075. https://doi.org/10.1289/isee.2015.2015-1075
57. Cao F, Souders CL, Perez-Rodriguez V, Martyniuk CJ (2019) Elucidating conserved transcriptional networks underlying pesticide exposure and Parkinson's disease: a focus on chemicals of epidemiological relevance. Front Genet 9:701. https://doi.org/10.3389/fgene.2018.00701
58. Sallmén M, Uuksulainen S, Hublin C, Koskinen A, Sainio M (2019) O2D. 5 risk of Parkinson disease in solvent exposed workers in Finland. Occup Environ Med 76(1):A19. https://doi.org/10.1136/OEM-2019-EPI.51
59. GBD 2016 Neurology Collaborators (2019) Global, regional, and national burden of neurological disorders, 1990–2016: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2016. Lancet Neurol 18(5):459–480
60. Rodríguez-Moro G, Abril N, Jara-Biedma R, Ramírez-Acosta S, Gómez-Ariza JL, García-Barrera T et al (2019) Metabolic impairments caused by a "chemical cocktail" of DDE and selenium in mice using direct infusion triple quadrupole time-of-flight and gas chromatography-mass spectrometry. Chem Res Toxicol 32(10):1940–1954
61. Djaldetti R, Steinmetz A, Rigbi A, Scherfler C, Poewe W, Roditi Y et al (2019) The role of exposure to pesticides in the etiology of Parkinson's disease: a 18 F-DOPA positron emission tomography study. J Neural Transm 126(2):159–166
62. Ma H, Liu Y, Tang L, Bao X, Song F, Zhu M et al (2019) Echinacoside selectively rescues complex I inhibition-induced mitochondrial respiratory impairment via enhancing complex II activity. Neurochem Int 125:136–143
63. Petruş AT, Lighezan DL, Dănilă MD, Duicu OM, Sturza A, Muntean DM et al (2019) Assessment of platelet respiration as emerging biomarker of disease. Physiol Res 68(3):347–363
64. Ng YS, Lax NZ, Bindoff LA, Turnbull DM (2019) Mitochondrial neurodegenerative disorders I: Parkinsonism and cognitive deficits. Diagnosis Manag Mitochondrial Disord:223–239
65. Chen C, Vincent AE, Blain AP, Smith AL, Turnbull DM, Reeve AK (2020) Investigation of mitochondrial biogenesis defects in single substantia nigra neurons using post-mortem human tissues. Neurobiol Dis 134:104631. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2019.104631
66. Farfara D, Feierman E, Richards A et al (2019) Knockdown of circulating C1 inhibitor induces neurovascular impairment, glial cell activation,

neuroinflammation, and behavioral deficits. Glia 67:1359–1373
67. Naoi M, Wu Y, Shamoto-Nagai M, Maruyama W (2019) Mitochondria in neuroprotection by phytochemicals: bioactive polyphenols modulate mitochondrial apoptosis system, function and structure. Int J Mol Sci 20(10):E2451. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20102451
68. Patel P, Kumari P, Verma SK, Mallick MA (2019) Cellular and molecular impact of green synthesized silver nanoparticles. Silver Nanoparticles - Health and Safety [Working Title]. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.90717. https://www.intechopen.com/online-first/cellular-and-molecular-impact-of-green-synthesized-silver-nanoparticles
69. Chen D, Zhang XY, Sun J et al (2019) Asiatic acid protects dopaminergic neurons from neuroinflammation by suppressing mitochondrial ROS production. Biomol Ther 27:442–449
70. Verma SK, Nisha K, Panda PK, Patel P, Kumari P, Mallick MA et al (2020) Green synthesized MgO nanoparticles infer biocompatibility by reducing in vivo molecular nanotoxicity in embryonic zebrafish through arginine interaction elicited apoptosis. Sci Total Environ 713:136521. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2020.136521
71. Ballance WC, Qin EC, Chung HJ, Gillette MU, Kong H (2019) Reactive oxygen species-responsive drug delivery systems for the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. Biomaterials 217:119292. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biomaterials.2019.119292
72. Degli Esposti M, Ghelli A, Ratta M, Ratta M, Cortes D, Estornell E (1994) Natural substances (acetogenins) from the family annonaceae are powerful inhibitors of mitochondrial NADH dehydrogenase (Complex I). Biochem J 301(Pt 1):161–167
73. Luisetto M, Almukhtar N, Rafa A, Ahmadabadi BN, Mashori GR, Khan FA et al (2019) Role of plants, environmental toxins and physical neurotoxicological factors in Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Alzheimer Disease and other Neurodegenerative Diseases. J Neurosci Neurol Disord 3:001–086. https://doi.org/10.29328/journal.jnnd.1001019. https://www.heighpubs.org/jnnd/pdf/jnnd-aid1019.pdf
74. Lickteig B, Wimalasena VK, Wimalasena K (2019) N-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium scaffold-containing lipophilic compounds are potent complex i inhibitors and selective dopaminergic toxins. ACS Chem Neurosci 10(6):2977–2988
75. Smith RE, Shejwalkar P (2020) Potential neurotoxicity of graviola (Annona muricata) juice. In: Safety issues in beverage production. Volume 18: The science of beverages. Elsevier Inc, Amsterdam, Netherlands, pp 429–449
76. Pinho BR, Reis SD, Hartley RC, Murphy MP, Oliveira JMA (2019) Mitochondrial superoxide generation induces a parkinsonian phenotype in zebrafish and huntingtin aggregation in human cells. Free Radic Biol Med 130:318–327
77. Salama M, El-Desouky S, Alsayed A, El-Hussiny M, Magdy K, Fekry E et al (2019) siRNA blocking of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) attenuates pathology in annonacin-induced tauopathy in mice. Neurotox Res 35(4):987–992
78. https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02967250
79. Ostojic SM (2017) Co-administration of creatine and guanidinoacetic acid for augmented tissue bioenergetics: a novel approach? Biomed Pharmacother 91:238–240

5 Targeted Treatment of Age-Related Fibromyalgia with Supplemental Coenzyme Q10

Iain P. Hargreaves and David Mantle

Abstract

Fibromyalgia is a common chronic pain condition of unknown aetiology, although mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and inflammation have been implicated in the pathophysiology of this disorder. Treatment generally involves physiotherapy, anticonvulsants, and antidepressant therapy; however, the symptomatic relief conferred by these treatments can be very variable, and there is a need for additional therapeutic strategies. One such treatment which is gaining a lot of interest is the use of coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) supplementation. The therapeutic efficacy associated with CoQ10 supplementation is thought to arise from the ability of supplementation to restore an underlying deficit in CoQ10 status which has been associated with fibromyalgia together with the ability of CoQ10 to improve mitochondrial activity, restore cellular antioxidant capacity, and ameliorate inflammation. This chapter outlines the evidence supporting the therapeutic utility of CoQ10 in the treatment of fibromyalgia.

I. P. Hargreaves (✉)
School of Pharmacy and Biomolecular Sciences, Liverpool John Moores, Liverpool, UK
e-mail: I.P.Hargreaves@ljmu.ac.uk

D. Mantle
Pharma Nord (UK) Ltd., Newcastle, UK

Keywords

Fibromyalgia · Mitochondrial dysfunction · Oxidative stress · Coenzyme Q10 · CoQ10 · Supplementation

5.1 Introduction

Fibromyalgia is a chronic disabling disorder, affecting up to 5% of the U.K. population. In addition to the cardinal symptoms of muscle pain and fatigue, fibromyalgia patients also suffer from a wide range of co-morbidities, including headache, anxiety/depression, sleep deprivation, memory and concentration disturbances, as well as digestive dysfunction [1]. The reason people develop fibromyalgia is not fully understood and conventional prescribed drug treatments may be of limited effectiveness. Treatment has progressed from inappropriate use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID) and opioid type pain relieving drugs, through the use of anticonvulsants, such as pregablin and gabapentin, and antidepressants such as amitriptyline, to non-pharmacological treatments such as cognitive behavioural therapy or specific exercise regimes [1]. However, the symptomatic relief conferred by these various treatments can be very variable, and there is a need for additional therapeutic

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_5

strategies, including those based on nutritional supplementation. Therefore, the aim of this chapter will be to provide information on nutritional treatment strategies targeted to pain relief in fibromyalgia, focussing upon coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) supplementation and the evidence supporting its therapeutic utility in the treatment of this disorder.

5.2 Pathogenesis of Fibromyalgia

The pathological mechanisms underlying fibromyalgia are thought to involve mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and dysregulation of the inflammatory response [2]. However, there is a growing consensus that the oxidative stress and inflammation associated with fibromyalgia originate from the mitochondrial dysfunction [3, 4]. Evidence of oxidative stress in fibromyalgia has been indicated by increased levels of the lipid peroxidation production, malondialdehyde in blood mononuclear cells (BMC), and plasma of patients with this condition in conjunction with decreased activity of the antioxidant enzyme, catalyse [5]. Furthermore, an increase in mitochondrial reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation was reported in the BMC of patients with fibromyalgia in a study conducted by Cordero et al. in 2013 [6]. Indices of the dysregulation of inflammation in fibromyalgia have been denoted by increased serum/plasma levels of the pro-inflammatory cytokines, tumour necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) [7], interleukin (IL)-8 and IL-1Ra [8] and IL-1B and IL-18 [4]. Decreased levels of ATP [5, 7, 9], a decreased mitochondrial DNA content relative to that of nuclear DNA [5, 9] together with a diminution in the status of the mitochondrial respiratory chain (MRC) carrier, CoQ10 [3, 5, 7] and a decreased mitochondrial membrane potential have all been reported in the BMC of patients with fibromyalgia strongly supporting evidence of mitochondrial dysfunction in this disorder.

Within the confines of this chapter, it would not be possible to outline all of the mechanisms that have been proposed to account for the oxidative stress, inflammatory response, and mitochondrial dysfunction reported in fibromyalgia. However, a paradigm will be offered based on the results of studies from the current literature to account for these pathological anomalies in fibromyalgia.

Mitochondrial dysfunction appears to be one of the primary events initiating both ROS generation and inflammation in fibromyalgia [7, 10]. The cause of the MRC impairment with deficiencies in the activities of the MRC enzymes, complex I,II, III, and IV (Fig. 5.1) together reduced expression in the protein levels of complexes I and III as well as a diminution in the expression of the electron carrier cytochrome c [4]. It has been suggested that the MRC impairment may be related to the downregulation of genes encoding for the regulatory proteins, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma coactivator 1-alpha (PGC-1α), transcription factor A, mitochondrial (TFAM), and nuclear respiratory factor 1 (NRF1) that has been reported in fibromyalgia and which would be expected to impair mitochondrial biogenesis [4]. An impairment in mitochondrial biogenesis may account for the decrease in both mitochondrial DNA copy number and the activity of the mitochondrial marker enzyme, citrate synthase, in BMC isolated from patients with fibromyalgia [5, 9]. However, the deficit in CoQ10 status which has been widely reported in fibromyalgia may also be an important causative factor for the mitochondrial dysfunction determined in this order. A deficit in cellular CoQ10 status has been associated with multiple MRC enzyme deficiencies, decreased mitochondrial membrane potential, and a concomitant reduction in ATP levels [11] which have all been documented in fibromyalgia [12].

In addition to its role as an electron carrier in the MRC, CoQ10 also serves as a potent lipid soluble antioxidant [13] and, accordingly, a deficiency in cellular CoQ10 status has been associated with an increase in mitochondrial ROS generation which has also been reported in the BMC of fibromyalgia patients [4, 11]. This increase in ROS generation together with the accumulation of the products of mitochondrial

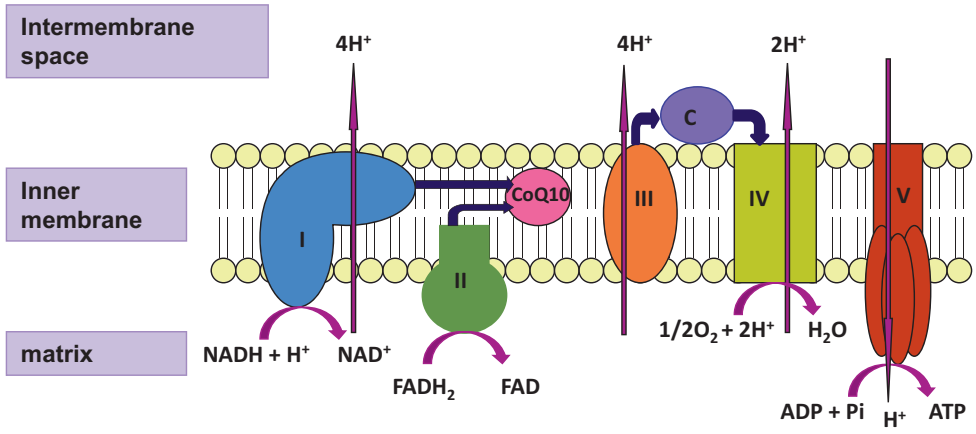


Fig. 5.1 Diagram of the mitochondrial respiratory chain (MRC) showing the enzyme complexes I–V and the electron carriers coenzyme Q_{10} (CoQ10) and cytochrome c (C)

DNA oxidation have been reported to be potent activators of the NACHT, LRR, and PYD domains-containing protein 3 (NLRP3) inflammasome, a cytosolic oligomeric protein complex present in the cells of the immune system which regulates the innate immune response [14].

In vitro and in vivo studies using BMC isolated from fibromyalgia patients have reported increased gene expression of the NLRP3 protein, a component of the inflammasome, as well as caspase-1, an inflammatory response initiator, together with increased serum and cell culture levels of the inflammatory cytokines, IL-1β and IL-18 in association with a deficit in cellular CoQ10 status [4]. Pharmacologically induced CoQ10 deficiency in BMC from healthy volunteers has also been reported to cause an increase in the synthesis of the pro-inflammatory cytokine, TNF-α, accompanied by an increase in mitochondrial ROS production [7]. As well as promoting the inflammatory response by generating ROS and oxidized mitochondrial DNA products, a CoQ10 deficiency may also remove the inhibitory effect of this molecule on inflammasome activation [7]. A high positive correlation has been reported between serum IL-1β and IL-18 levels and the pain scores in fibromyalgia patients indicating the importance of inflammation in the pathophysiology of this disorder [4]. Furthermore, inflammatory cytokines have been reported to induce fatigue, fever, sleep, and myalgia, which are symptoms reported in fibromyalgia [8].

The putative mechanisms that have been implicated in the generation of oxidative stress and inflammation in fibromyalgia are outlined in Fig. 5.2. Although there is some evidence to indicate that a deficiency in cellular CoQ10 status may be an important triggering event in the mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress and inflammation associated with fibromyalgia, the actual factors responsible for this deficiency, have yet to be elucidated.

Overall, Fibromyalgia is thought to result from a self-reinforcing, increasingly destructive process of impaired energy production, free radical damage, and inflammation.

5.3 Fibromyalgia and Aging

Fibromyalgia is a disorder that can occur at any age in both men and women. However, fibromyalgia is considered by some medical practitioners as a condition primarily affecting middle aged women. Thus, fibromyalgia in older patients is understudied, and because of the likelihood of other age-related problems, diagnosis of fibromyalgia in the elderly may be overlooked. Only six clinical studies relating specifically to fibromyalgia in the elderly have been published in the medical literature over the past 30 years. In 1988,

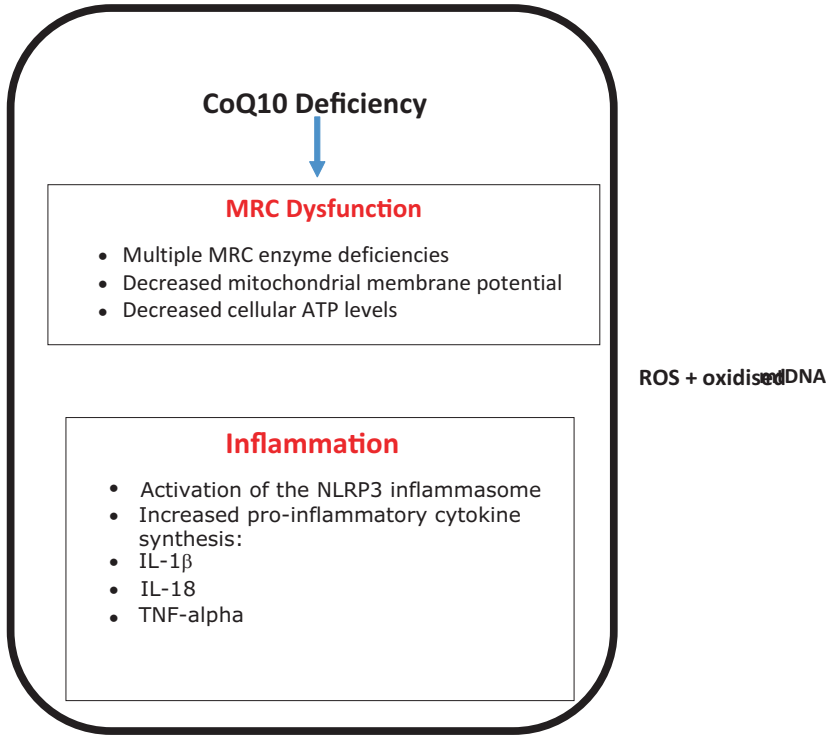


Fig. 5.2 Putative mechanism of oxidative stress and inflammation generation in fibromyalgia. *COQ10* coenzyme Q_{10}, *MRC* mitochondrial respiratory chain, *ROS* reactive oxygen species, *mtDNA* mitochondrial DNA

Yunus et al. first reported that fibromyalgia in the elderly was often unrecognised and treated with inappropriate medications such as steroids [15]. The most recent study by Jacobsen et al. (2015) found that more than 80% of older (55–95-years-old) patients with fibromyalgia were subject to pain, lack of mobility, and sleep disruption resulting from under-treatment [16]. In addition, many of these patients were using ineffective and potentially harmful opioid- or steroid-type medications.

Two non-pharmacological interventions known to benefit fibromyalgia are exercise and nutrition [17, 18]. Exercise is an important part of the treatment in fibromyalgia, and it also helps to keep the bodyweight down, which reduces the stresses on the joints. However, older individuals may find taking part in such exercise regimes challenging. With regard to nutrition, supplementation may benefit the primary symptoms or co-morbidities associated with fibromyalgia. Fibromyalgia patients are at increased risk of disorders such as diabetes, thyroid dysfunction, cardiovascular disease, and osteoporosis. In view of its MRC electron carrier and antioxidant functions, supplementation with CoQ10 may benefit the cardinal symptoms of muscle pain and fatigue, as well as headache and migraine which have been associated with cellular energy failure and oxidative stress [5, 13]. In addition, nutritional supplementation may benefit co-morbidities, such as gastrointestinal dysfunction (probiotics), osteoporosis (calcium, vitamin D3, vitamin K2), sleep problems (melatonin), and thyroid dysfunction (selenium) [19].

5.4 Nutritional Supplementation and Aging

Nutritional supplementation may be of particular importance in the elderly. The body requires a range of nutrients to maintain normal functioning. Some of these, such as CoQ10 and glucosamine,

are manufactured wholly or mainly within the body, while many (such as vitamins) must be derived from the normal diet. As people age, their bodies become less efficient at manufacturing nutrients, such as CoQ10, or in absorbing dietary nutrients from the digestive tract. As an example, optimum production of CoQ10 occurs around 25 years of age, production then gradually declines with increasing age, such that production at age 65 is approximately half that of 25. Thus, supplementation with CoQ10 in older individuals with fibromyalgia addresses two issues, a deficiency known to occur in fibromyalgia and a deficiency known to result from the normal aging process [20].

Similarly, the elderly are at risk of the potential deficiency in a wide range of other essential nutrients, and a study by Borg et al. in 2015 identified deficiencies of vitamin D3, vitamins B1, B2, and B12, calcium, magnesium, and selenium as being of particular public health concern [21]. Selenium is a trace element essential for the activity of 25 selenoproteins involved in the regulation of the inflammatory response and cellular antioxidant capacity, and therefore a deficiency in this trace element may lead to a weakening of the immune system and a compromised antioxidant capacity which are both integral to the pathophysiology of fibromyalgia [22]. As noted above, many of these nutrients have been found to be depleted in fibromyalgia, with a corresponding benefit on symptoms following supplementation. Again, supplementation addresses two issues: (1) deficiency due to fibromyalgia and (2) deficiency due to aging [19, 23].

5.5 CoQ10

CoQ10 is a lipid soluble molecule consisting of a benzoquinone nucleus derived from tyrosine and an isoprenoid side chain which is synthesised in all the cells of the body apart from red blood cells, as the presence of mitochondria are required for its synthesis [13]. As previously mentioned, the major function of CoQ10 is that of an electron carrier in the MRC where it transports electrons derived from complex I and complex III to complex III enabling a continuous passage of electrons within the MRC, a prerequisite for oxidative phosphorylation and cellular ATP generation (Fig. 5.1) [13]. CoQ10 also serves as an important lipid soluble antioxidant molecule protecting cellular membranes and circulatory lipoproteins against free-radical-induced oxidative damage [13, 24]. The antioxidant function of CoQ10 is attributed to its fully reduced ubiquinol form, in addition to acting as an antioxidant in its own right, and it is also involved in the regeneration of other antioxidants, such as α-tocopherol (the active antioxidant form of vitamin E) and vitamin C [25]. One of the principle enzymes involved in reducing CoQ10 to its ubiquinol form is the selenium-containing enzyme thioredoxin reductase. Therefore, a deficit in selenium status may compromise cellular antioxidant capacity [26]. Furthermore, selenium also serves as a prosphetic group for the antioxidant enzyme glutathione peroxidase [22]. In addition to its role as an electron carrier and antioxidant, CoQ10 has also been shown to directly affect the expression of a number of genes, including some of those involved in inflammation [24]. It has been suggested that CoQ10 is able to elicit an anti-inflammatory response by both its antioxidant function as well as by controlling the gene expression of the nuclear transcription factor, NFF-kappaB1 which has a key role in regulating the immune response to infection [27].

An adequate supply of CoQ10 is essential for normal functioning of mitochondria. Although some CoQ10 is obtained from the normal diet (approximately 5 mg/day), most of the daily CoQ10 requirement (estimated at 500 mg) is synthesised within the body [24]. As noted above, as people age, the capacity of the body to synthesise its own CoQ10 decreases. Optimal production occurs around the mid-20s, with a continual decline in tissue levels thereafter [20]. In addition to the normal aging process, CoQ10 levels have also been shown to be depleted in a variety of disorders, including fibromyalgia, as well as by statin-type drugs. Dietary supplementation with CoQ10 therefore provides a mechanism to maintain adequate levels within the body [13, 24].

5.6 Clinical Studies on CoQ10 Supplementation in Fibromyalgia

Fibromyalgia patients have been shown to have depleted tissue levels of CoQ10 (up to 40–50% of normal), together with increased levels of mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and inflammation, both in adult [7, 9] and juvenile [28] patients. A recent Norwegian clinical study has highlighted the link between fibromyalgia and inflammation [29]. The study comprised 150 women aged 18–60, divided equally into three groups: (1) fibromyalgia patients; (2) chronic fatigue syndrome patients; and (3) healthy controls. Blood samples from the study were taken from all participants and analysed for levels of high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hsCRP), a sensitive biochemical marker of inflammation.

Both the fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome patients had significantly increased mean levels of hsCRP (1.3 mg/L and 0.94 mg/L, respectively), compared to the levels in healthy controls (0.60 mg/L). The results from this study are noteworthy since inflammation is a well-known cause of pain and fatigue [30].

A number of clinical studies have been undertaken to investigate the effect of CoQ10 supplementation on fibromyalgia symptoms. The rationale for using CoQ10 in the treatment of fibromyalgia is multifaceted. This includes replenishing the underlying CoQ10 deficiency associated with the disorder, increasing electron flow in the MRC, enhancing cellular antioxidant capacity, and modulating the inflammatory response.

Cordero et al. correlated headache symptoms with reduced CoQ10 levels and increased oxidative stress [5]. Following CoQ10 supplementation (300 mg/day for 3 months), there was a significant decrease in oxidative stress as indicated by an increase in the activity of antioxidant enzyme, catalase, and a significant decrease in level of the lipid oxidation product, malondialdehyde, in the BMC of fibromyalgia patients. These effects were accompanied by significant improvement in headache symptoms in the fibromyalgia patients. Similarly, a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical study in 20 fibromyalgia patients found that supplementation with CoQ10 (Pharma Nord Bio-Quinone, 300 mg/day for 40 days) significantly reduced (by more than 50%) pain and fatigue [4]. There was a corresponding improvement in mitochondrial energy generation as indicated by BMC ATP levels and reduced oxidative stress and inflammation, as assessed by the circulatory levels of the inflammatory cytokines, IL-1b and IL-18. In the latter study, psychopathological symptoms (including depression) were significantly improved following CoQ10 supplementation compared to placebo, and this improvement was linked to the effect of CoQ10 supplementation in reducing oxidative stress and inflammation and increasing levels of the neurotransmitter, serotonin [31, 32].

Several studies have reported abnormal blood lipid profiles in patients with fibromyalgia. In a study of 80 women with fibromyalgia, Gurer et al. reported increased blood levels of total and LDL-cholesterol compared to normal control subjects [33]. In a study carried out in Spain at Seville University, Cordero et al. evaluated the blood lipid profiles of 180 patients with fibromyalgia [34]. Approximately two-thirds of these patients had increased levels of total cholesterol and low density lipoprotein (LDL)-cholesterol, which correlated with the severity of their fibromyalgia symptoms assessed using the Fibromyalgia Impact Questionnaire (FIQ) and Visual Analogue Scales (VAS) of pain. These increases in cholesterol may result in part from genetic factors as well as from lack of exercise and increased body mass index (BMI). The lack of physical activity and increased total/ LDL-cholesterol blood levels may explain the increased risk of cardiovascular disease in fibromyalgia patients noted by Acosta-Manzano et al. [35].

Various studies have demonstrated that coenzyme Q10 can help to control cholesterol levels in the blood. First, CoQ10 can reduce cholesterol levels by directly inhibiting the genes responsible for the biosynthesis of LDL-cholesterol. Second, CoQ10 is circulated in the blood using LDL-cholesterol as a carrier. At the same time, the antioxidant action of CoQ10 helps to prevent the LDL-cholesterol from being oxidatively damaged by free radicals, thereby reducing the risk of atherosclerosis. Third, in addition to inhibiting

cholesterol synthesis, statin drugs also inhibit the body's production of CoQ10, which is generated via the same biochemical pathway [24, 36]. Supplementation with CoQ10 can reduce statin-associated adverse effects, such as muscle pain or the increased risk of diabetes. Randomised controlled clinical trials have shown supplemental CoQ10, both alone or in combination with other supplements, can significantly reduce total blood or LDL-cholesterol levels in hypercholesterolaemic subjects. Thus, studies by Schmelzer et al. in 2011 [37], using 150 mg CoQ10/day for 2 weeks, and by Mohseni et al. in 2014 [38], using 200 mg CoQ10 for 12 weeks, reported significant reductions of approximately 15% in LDL cholesterol levels following CoQ10 supplementation.

A study by Miyamae et al. in 2013 also reported that ubiquinol treatment (100 mg/day for 12 weeks) of patients with juvenile fibromyalgia resulted in decreased circulatory levels of free cholesterol and cholesterol esters, indicating that ubiquinol supplementation improved cholesterol metabolism and chronic fatigue scores, as measured by the Chalder Fatigue Scale [28].

The beneficial effects of CoQ10 as an adjunct therapy to the commonly used anticonvulsant, pregabalin (commonly used to reduce the pain sensation in fibromyalgia), was recently demonstrated in a study by Sawaddiruk et al. [39]. In this randomised placebo-controlled clinical study, 11 fibromylagia patients were randomly allocated to pregabalin alone or to pregabalin with CoQ10. The results of the study indicated that although pregbalin treatment alone reduced pain and anxiety in the patients, pregbalin combined with CoQ10 treatment reduced pain, anxiety, as well as mitochondrial oxidative stress in BMC and inflammation in the fibromyalgia patients, compared to baseline.

5.7 Safety and Bioavailability of CoQ10

CoQ10 is generally well-tolerated, with no serious adverse effects reported in long-term use [40]. In rare cases, individuals may experience mild gastrointestinal disturbance. There are no known toxic effects, and CoQ10 cannot be overdosed. The safety of CoQ10 has been confirmed in more than 200 randomised controlled trials, covering a wide range of disorders. Several case studies have suggested that CoQ10 may interfere with the action of warfarin, although a randomised controlled clinical trial showed that CoQ10 supplementation at 100 mg/day had no effect on the clinical action of this anticoagulant medication [41].

Bioavailability is defined as the proportion of an ingested substance that reaches the blood circulation. Because of its relatively large molecular size and lipid solubility, the bioavailability of CoQ10 is intrinsically low. CoQ10 is absorbed from the intestinal tract via the same mechanism as other lipid soluble nutrients. This occurs via a lipid carrier through mucosal cells initially into the lymph, and thence into the bloodstream. Thus, absorption is optimised when CoQ10 is dissolved in a carrier oil (preferably soya or palm oil). When supplemental CoQ10 is first produced (via a yeast fermentation process), it is obtained in the form of crystals which cannot be absorbed from the digestive tract. It is essential that these crystals are dispersed into single CoQ10 molecules (and remain dispersed during the product shelf-life) to enable optimum bioavailability. Adding CoQ10 crystals to a carrier oil without such dispersal, a cost-saving technique used by some manufacturers, is inadequate. Disparity in the findings of clinical trials supplementing CoQ10 undoubtedly result from inadequate bioavailability and insufficient dosage or treatment duration.

5.8 Conclusions

In view of the ability of CoQ10 supplementation to restore an underlying CoQ10 deficiency in fibromyalgia patients together with its ability to improve MRC activity, restore cellular antioxidant capacity and ameliorate inflammation, all of which are factors associated with the pathophysiology of fibromyalgia, CoQ10 therapy should be considered as an appropriate adjunct treatment for this chronic pain disorder as shown in Fig. 5.3. However, larger controlled clinical trials are still required to provide further data of the effectiveness of CoQ10 in the treatment of fibromyalgia.

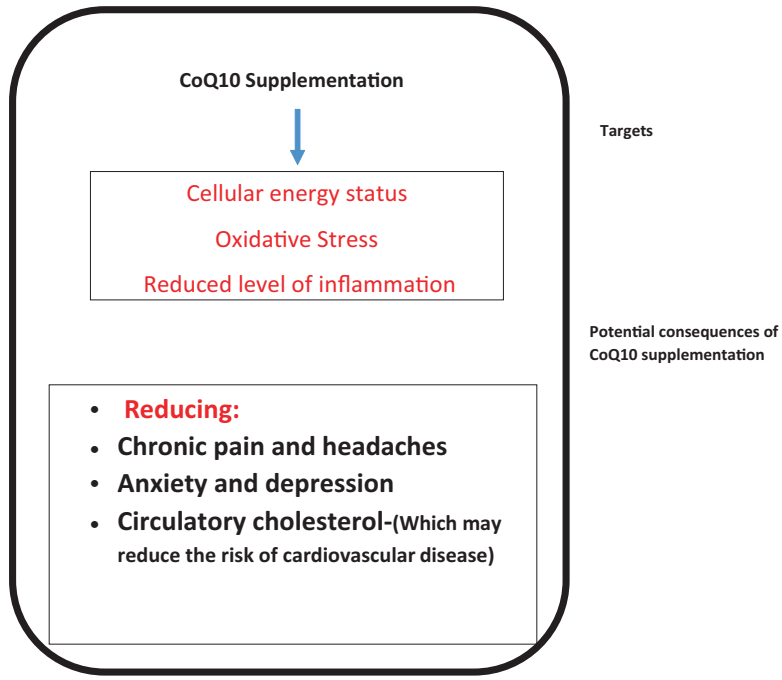


Fig. 5.3 The potential targets and consequences of CoQ_{10} supplementation in fibromyalgia. *COQ10* coenzyme Q_{10}

References

1. Guymer E, Littlejohn G (2013) Fibromyalgia. Aust Fam Physician 42(10):690–694
2. Romano GF, Tomassi S, Russell A, Mondelli V, Pariante CM (2015) Fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue: the underlying biology and related theoretical issues. Adv Psychosom Med 34:61–77
3. Cordero MD, de Miguel M, Carmona-López I, Bonal P, Campa F, Moreno-Fernández AM (2010) Oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction in fibromyalgia. Neuro Endocrinol Lett 31(2):169–173
4. Cordero MD, Alcocer-Gómez E, Culic O, Carrión AM, de Miguel M, Díaz-Parrado E et al (2014) NLRP3 inflammasome is activated in fibromyalgia: the effect of CoQ10. Antioxd Redox Signal 20(8):1169–1180
5. Cordero MD, Cano-García FJ, Alcocer-Gómez E, De Miguel M, Sánchez-Alcázar JA (2012) Oxidative stress correlates with headache symptoms in fibromyalgia: CoQ10 effect on clinical improvement. PLoS One 7(4):e35677. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0035677
6. Cordero MD, Alcocer-Gómez E, de Miguel M, Culic O, Carrión AM, Alvarez-Suarez JM et al (2013) Can CoQ10 improve clinical and molecular parameters in fibromyalgia? Antioxd Redox Signal 19(12):1356–1361
7. Cordero MD, Díaz-Parrado E, Carrión AM, Alfonsi S, Sánchez-Alcazar JA, Bullón P et al (2013) Is inflammation a mitochondrial dysfunction dependent event in fibromyalgia? Antioxid Redox Signal 18(7):800–807
8. Wallace DJ, Linker-Israeli M, Hallegua D, Silverman S, Silver D, Weisman MH (2001) Cytokines play an aetiopathogenetic role in fibromyalgia: a hyphothesis and pilot study. Rheumatology (Oxford) 40(7):743–749
9. Castro-Marrero J, Cordero MD, Sáez-Francas N, Jimenez-Gutierrez C, Aguilar-Montilla FJ, Aliste L et al (2013) Could mitochondrial dysfunction be a differentiating marker between CFS and fibromyalgia? Antioxid Redox Signal 19(15):1855–1860
10. Cordero MD, Alcocer-Gómez E, Cano-García FJ, De Miguel M, Carrión AM, Navas P et al (2011) Clinical symptoms in fibromyalgia are better associated to lipid peroxidation levels in blood mononuclear cells rather than in plasma. PLoS One 6(10):e26915. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0026915
11. Duberley KE, Abramov AY, Chalasani A, Heales SJ, Rahman S, Hargreaves IP (2013) Human neuronal coenzyme Q10 deficiency results in global loss of mitochondrial respiratory chain activity, increased mitochondrial oxidative stress and reversal of ATP synthase activity: implications for pathogenesis and treatment. J Inherit Metab Dis 36(1):63–73
12. Cordero MD, De Miguel M, Moreno Fernández AM, Carmona López IM, Garrido Maraver J, Cotán D et al (2010) Mitochondrial dysfunction and mitophagy activation in blood mononuclear cells of fibromyalgia patients: implications in the pathogenesis of the disease. Arthritis Res Ther 12(1):R17. https://doi.org/10.1186/ar2918

13. Hargreaves IP (2003) Ubiquinone: cholesterol's reclusive cousin. Ann Clin Biochem 40.(Pt 3:207–218
14. Zhen YU, Zhang HU (2019) NLRP3 inflammasome and inflammatory bowel disease. Front Immunol 10:276. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2019.00276
15. Yunus MB, Holt GS, Masi AT, Aldag JC (1988) Fibromyalgia syndrome among the elderly. Comparison with younger patients. J Am Geriatric Soc 36(11):987–995
16. Jacobson SA, Simpson RG, Lubahn C, Hu C, Belden CM, Davis KJ et al (2015) Characterization of fibromyalgia symptoms in patients 55 to 95 years old: a longitudinal study showing symptom persistence with suboptimal treatment. Aging Clin Exp Res 27(1):75–82
17. Busch AJ, Webber SC, Brachaniec M, Bidonde J, Bello-Haas VD, Danyliw AD et al (2011) Exercise therapy for fibromyalgia. Curr Pain Headache Rep 15(5):358–367
18. Bjorklund G, Dadar M, Chirumbolo S, Aaseth J (2018) Fibromyaslgia and nutrition: therapeutic possibilities? Biomed Pharmacother 103:531–538
19. Mohabbat AB, Mahapatra S, Jenkins SM, Bauer BA, Vincent A, Wahner-Roedler DL (2019) Use of complementary and integrative therapies by fibromyalgia patients: a 14-year follow-up study. Mayo Clin Proc Innov Qual Outcomes 3(4):418–428
20. Kalén A, Appelkvist EL, Dallner G (1989) Age-related changes in the lipid compositions of rat and human tissues. Lipids 24(7):579–584
21. Borg S, Verlaan S, Hemsworth J, Mijnarends DM, Schols JM, Luiking YC et al (2015) Micronutient intakes and potential inadequacies of community dwelling older adults: a systematic review. Br J Nutr 113(8):1195–1206
22. Hargreaves IP, Mantle D (2019) Supplementation with selenium and coenzyme Q10 in critically ill patients. Brit J Hosp Med 80(10):589–593
23. Eisinger J, Plantamura A, Marie PA, Ayavou T (1994) Selenium and magnesium status in fibromyalgia. Magnes Res 7(3–4):285–288
24. Mantle D (2015) Coenzyme Q10 and cardiovascular disease: an overview. Br J Cardiol 22(4):1–7
25. Crane FL (2001) Biochemical functions of coenzyme Q10. J Am Coll Nutr 20(6):591–598
26. Xia L, Nordman T, Olsson JM, Damdimopoulos A, Björkhem-Bergman L, Nalvarte I et al (2003) The mammalian selenoenzyme thioredoxin reductase reduces ubiquinone. A novel mechanism for defence against oxidative stress. J Biol Chem 278(4):2141–2146
27. Schmelzer C, Lindner I, Rimbach G, Niklowitz P, Menke T, Döring F (2008) Functions of coenzyme Q10 in inflammation and gene expression. Biofactors 32(1–4):179–183
28. Miyamae T, Seki M, Naga T, Uchino S, Asazuma H, Yoshida T et al (2013) Increased oxidative stress and CoQ10 deficiency in juvenile fibromyalgia: amelioration of hypercholesterolemia and fatigue by ubiquinol-10 supplementation. Redox Rep 18(1):12–19
29. Groven N, Fors EA, Reitan SK (2019) Patients with fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome show increased hsCRP compared to healthy controls. Brain Behav Immun 81:172–177
30. Sluka KA, Clauw DJ (2016) Neurobiology of fibromyalgia and chronic widespread pain. Neuroscience 338:114–129
31. Alcocer-Gomez E, Sánchez-Alcázar JA, Cordero MD (2014) CoQ10 regulates serotonin levels and depressive symptoms in fibromyalgia symptoms. J Clin Psychopharmacol 34(2):277–278
32. Alcozer-Gomez E, Culic O, Navarro-Pando JM, Sánchez-Alcázar JA, Bullón P (2017) Effect of CoQ10 on psychopathological symptoms in fibromyalgia patients. CNS Neurosci Ther 23(2):188–189
33. Gurer G, Sendur OF, Ay C (2006) Serum lipid profile in fibromyalgia women. Clin Rheumatol 25(3):300–303
34. Codero MD, Alcocer-Gómez E, Cano-García FJ, Sánchez-Domínguez B, Fernández-Riejo P, Moreno Fernández AM et al (2014) Clinical symptoms in fibromyalgia are associated to overweight and lipid profile. Rheumatol Int 34(3):19–22
35. Acosta-Manzano P, Segura-Jiménez V, Estévez-López F, Álvarez-Gallardo IC, Soriano-Maldonado A, Borges-Cosic M et al (2017) Do women with fibromyalgia present higher cardiovascular risk profile than healthy women? Clin Exp Rheumatol 105(3):61–67
36. Hargreaves IP, Duncan AJ, Heales SJ, Land JM (2005) The effect of HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors on coenzyme Q10: possible biochemical/clinical implications. Drug Saf 28(8):659–676
37. Schmelzer C, Niklowitz P, Okun JG, Haas D, Menke T, Döring F (2011) Ubiquinol-induced gene expression signatures are translated into altered parameters of erythropoiesis and reduced low density lipoprotein cholesterol levels in humans. IUBMB Life 63(1):42–48
38. Mohseni M, Vafa MR, Hajimiresmail SJ, Zarrati M, Rahimi Forushani A, Bitarafan V et al (2014) Effects of coenzyme q10 supplementation on serum lipoproteins, plasma fibrinogen, and blood pressure in patients with hyperlipidemia and myocardial infarction. Iran Red Crescent Med J 16(10):e16433. https://doi.org/10.5812/ircmj.16433
39. Sawaddiruk P, Apaijai N, Paiboonworachat S, Kaewchur T, Kasitanon N, Jaiwongkam T et al (2019) Coenzyme Q10 supplementation alleviates pain in pregabalin-treated fibromyalgia patients via reducing brain activity and mitochondrial dysfunction. Free Radic Res 53(8):901–909
40. Hidaka T, Fujii K, Funahashi I, Fukutomi N, Hosoe K (2008) Safety assessment of CoQ10. Biofactors 32(1–4):199–208
41. Engelsen J, Nielsen JD, Hansen KF (2003) Effect of CoQ10 and Ginkgo biloba on warfarin dosage in patients on long term warfarin treatment. A double blind placebo controlled cross-over trial. Ugeaskr Laeger 165(18):1868–1871

6 Immunoregulatory Effects of Tolerogenic Probiotics in Multiple Sclerosis

Hadi Atabati, Esmaeil Yazdanpanah, Hamed Mortazavi, Saeed Gharibian bajestani, Amir Raoofi, Seyed-Alireza Esmaeili, Azad Khaledi, Ehsan Saburi, Jalil Tavakol Afshari, Thozhukat Sathyapalan, Abbas Shapouri Moghaddam, and Amirhossein Sahebkar

Abstract

Gut microbiota has essential roles in the prevention and progression of multiple sclerosis (MS). The association between the gut microbiota and the central nervous system (CNS) or immune system response of MS patients has been documented in many studies. The composition of the gut microbiota could lead to sensitization or resistance against promotion and development of MS disease. Probiotics are the major part of gut microflorapopulation and could be substituted with tolerogenic pro-

Hadi Atabati and Esmaeil Yazdanpanah contributed equally.

H. Atabati
Leishmaniasis Research Center, Sabzevar University of Medical Sciences, Sabzevar, Iran

E. Yazdanpanah · S.-A. Esmaeili
Immunology Research Center, Bu-Ali Research Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Faculty of Medicine, Immunology Department, Student Research Committee, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

H. Mortazavi
Department of Geriatric Nursing, School of Nursing and Midwifery, Geriatric Care Research Center, North Khorasan University of Medical Sciences, Bojnurd, Iran

S. G. bajestani
Student Research Committee, Dental School, Dentistry Research Center, Research Institute of Dental Sciences, Shahid Beheshti University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

A. Raoofi
Cellular and Molecular Research Center, Sabzevar University of Medical Sciences, Sabzevar, Iran

A. Khaledi
Infectious Diseases Research Center, Kashan University of Medical Sciences, Kashan, Iran

Faculty of Medicine, Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Kashan University of Medical Sciences, Kashan, Iran

E. Saburi
Department of Medical Genetics and Molecular Medicine, School of Medicine, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

J. T. Afshari · A. S. Moghaddam (✉)
Faculty of Medicine, Department of Immunology, BuAli Research Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran
e-mail: ShapouriMA@mums.ac.ir

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_6

biotics that protect the CNS against autoimmune responses. Tolerogenic probiotics with anti-inflammatory and immuno-modulatory properties have effects on intestinal flora and can reestablish regulatory mucosal and systemic immune responses. Probiotics are able to prevent and restore excessive activation of inflammatory responses, especially autoreactive T cells and inflammatory cytokines. Tolerogenic probiotics, through induction of regulatory T cells and increase of anti-inflammatory cytokines, play a crucial role in controlling inflammation and maintaining tolerance and hemostasis. Therefore, probiotics can be considered as a preventive or therapeutic tool in MS. In the present review, we focus on the immunoregulatory effects of tolerogenic probiotics on the severity of disease, as well as Th1, Th2, and Treg populations in different experimental and human studies of MS.

Keywords

Tolerogenic probiotics · *Lactobacillus* · *Bifidobacterium* · Multiple sclerosis · Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis

6.1 Introduction

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is a complex autoimmune disorder of the central nervous system (CNS) characterized by generation of autoantibodies and autoreactive T cells against myelin proteins leading to focal inflammation, axonal degeneration and damage, or dysfunction of neurons and oligodendrocytes, followed by progressive, long-term physical and/or mental disability [1, 2]. Around 2.5 million people are currently diagnosed with MS worldwide [3]. In recent years, MS mortality has increased, rising from 12,000 in 1990 to 20,000 in 2012 [4]. The median life expectancy is approximately 5–10 years lower for MS patients compared with an age-matched general population [5].

Similar to many other autoimmune diseases, women are much more susceptible to MS with a female to male ratio of 2:1 to 3:1, although men with MS tend to have more severe clinical outcomes and poorer recovery after the initial disease relapse [6]. Since all regions of CNS can be affected, MS patients can exhibit diverse manifestations varying greatly case by case and over the course of disease, representing a challenge to clinicians [7]. The signs and symptoms tend to debut between the ages of 20 and 40 years [8]. Patients complain frequently about gait instability, sensory disturbances, fatigue, weakness, spasticity, loss of balance, tremor, vision problems and depression, as well as bladder and bowel dysfunctions that seriously reduce the quality of their lives [7, 9, 10].

Although neither the primary cause nor the pathogenesis of MS is known definitively, the interplay between environmental factors and genetic factors has been demonstrated to contribute to the dysregulation of immune tolerance, involving an orchestrated attack of the innate and adaptive immune system towards components of the brain or spinal cord [11]. It has been reported that, during the disease course in both patients and animal model of MS, experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), immune regulatory defects in synergy with increased migration of autoagressive myelin antigen specific CD4+ effector T cell promote a key process in the pathogenesis of the disease [12]. The presence of plaques are the pathologic hallmark of MS, which consists of a defined hypocellular area and axonal oligodendrocyte damage accompanied by variable gliosis and inflammation, relative preservation of axons, formation of an astrocytic scar and

T. Sathyapalan
Academic Diabetes, Endocrinology and Metabolism, Hull York Medical School, University of Hull, Heslington, UK

A. Sahebkar (✉)
Biotechnology Research Center, Pharmaceutical Technology Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Neurogenic Inflammation Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Polish Mother's Memorial Hospital Research Institute (PMMHRI), Lodz, Poland

cell death, as well as the presence of inflammatory cells (mostly lymphocytes) infiltrating into the CNS [13, 14].

EAE is a T-cell-mediated model of autoimmune demyelination of the CNS, which widely serves an experimental model for MS in order to provide insights into the possible cellular and molecular factors involved in the pathogenesis [15]. It is well established that the EAE model can be developed in susceptible sensitized animals through immunization by different myelin-derived proteins emulsified in complete Freund's adjuvant (CFA) such as myelin oligodendrocyte glycoprotein (MOG), proteolipid protein (PLP) or myelin basic protein (MBP), or by adoptive transfer of autoreactive T cells to naive animals [15, 16]. A growing number of studies using MS animal models have led to the suggestion that B cells have no critical role in the induction of EAE [17] but play a critical role in controlling the onset and severity of the EAE immunopathogenesis [18]. The autoimmune etiology of MS and EAE has been shown to involve breakdown of the blood–brain barrier (BBB) and autoimmune response as a result of dysregulated innate and adaptive immune pathways, resulting in myelin loss, varying degrees of axonal pathology, and progressive neurological dysfunction that causes clinical manifestations of these diseases [19, 20].

Based on the clinical disease pattern, MS pathology is commonly classified into four major clinical subtypes characterized by increasing severity, including relapsing-remitting (RR), secondary-progressive (SP), primary-progressive (PP), and progressive-relapsing (PR). Interestingly, subtypes of MS have dissimilar underlying neuropathologies, suggesting that MS may represent a heterogeneous group of autoimmunity disorders [21]. RR is the most common subtype of MS and accounts for 85% to 90% of cases, which is characterized by relapses usually followed by periods of recovery or remission [22]. PPMS is estimated to represent about 10–15% of patients with MS, in which clinical disability progression occurs continuously with no distinct period of remission or remissions. This subtype of MS has been most commonly diagnosed in older subjects compared to relapsing onset MS, with no gender predominance [23–25]. Within a span of 10–15 years in disease onset, up to 60% of patients with RRMS will subsequently go on to develop SPMS, which is followed by a phase of uninterrupted disease progression (Table 6.1) [21, 26].

Table 6.1 Common four major clinical forms of MS (based on pathology)

Type	Disease course
Relapsing/remitting multiple sclerosis (RRMS)	The most common subtype of MS and characterized by acute neurological deficits or worsening of relapses generally followed by periods of incomplete or complete recovery
Secondary progressive multiple sclerosis (SPMS)	Second most common type of MS, characterized by initial relapses, followed by progressive neurological decrease without any remission
Primary progressive multiple sclerosis (PPMS)	Accounts for approximate 10–15% of patients with MS. characterized by steady functional decline from the onset of the disease independent of relapses (inflammation)
Progressive relapsing multiple sclerosis (PRMS)	The lowest common type of MS types, characterized by progressive disability from the onset of symptoms, with later superimposed acute attacks. PRMS and PPMS cannot be distinguish during early stages, until the relapses occur

6.2 MS and the Immune System

Despite extensive efforts aimed at defining MS immunopathology, the precise mechanisms that initiate immune responses to auto-antigens or derived peptides remain debatable [27]. MS is known as an autoimmune disorder, in which the host immune system fails to distinguish the self-peptides from foreign ones, leading to an aggressive immune response against the myelin sheath surrounding axon terminals, and consequently to myelin destruction and loss of oligodendrocytes and axons [28, 29]. Under normal conditions, the CNS is considered as an immune-privileged site that accessibility of T cells and other immune cells is restricted by the endothelial BBB and epithelial blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier

(BCSFB) [30, 31]. Environmental factors in genetically susceptible subjects are thought to play an important role in disruption of BBB-mediated immune surveillance, whereby activated cells readily pass through the inflamed barrier [27].

In the initiation of CNS inflammation, under certain conditions autoantigens or microbial antigens are presented by professional antigen-presenting cells (APCs) to T cells in lymphoid tissues that can provoke peripheral activation of proinflammatory lymphocytes [32]. After activation in periphery, myelin-specific T cells are capable of transmigration across the BBB into the CNS which is regulated by adhesion of integrins on the leukocyte surface and endothelial cells then be reactivated by APCs presenting self-antigens in the brain [33]. After reactivation in the CNS, autoreactive T cells trigger an inflammatory cascade which consequently activates macrophages and microglial cells [34]. In turn, macrophages and microglia secrete chemokines that contribute to the recruitment of additional T cells, DCs, and macrophages followed by oligodendrocyte death, demyelination, and ultimately neuronal loss [33–35]. It is important to point out that antibodies and B cells can also have the capacity to migrate across the CNS followed by demyelination and inflammation by complement-mediated cytotoxicity [20, 36]. With a key role in recruitment of adaptive immune cells to the CNS, astrocytes and microglial cells, as the main innate immune cells of MS lesions, critically contribute to the demyelination and neurodegeneration process of MS through functional changes associated with their activation [9, 37, 38]. Additionally, astrocytes as the most abundant cell population in the CNS are able to modulate CNS inflammatory responses by secreting cytokines and chemokines at multiple levels [39]. These insights emphasize the importance of the innate immune response as strong mediators of MS pathogenesis.

6.2.1 Th1 and Th17 in MS

Recent evidence has revealed that pro-inflammatory T cells, such as Th1 and Th17 subtypes, are crucial immunological participants in the neural-immune mechanisms underlying MS/EAE with distinct clinical signs and pathological features [40]. There have been extensive studies in favor of both Th1 and Th17 cells that imply complementary roles in the pathogenesis of EAE by inducing an inflammatory milieu resulting in demyelination within the brain and spinal cord, with axonal damage [40]. Th17 cells are characterized by the production of proinflammatory cytokines, such as interleukin (IL)-22, IL-21, IL-17A-F and IL-23, which have been recognized as key contributors to MS by increasing inflammation in myelin sites [38]. Another Th lineage, the autoreactive Th1 type lymphocytes that generate IFN-γ and TNF-α, have been shown to increase MS by developing inflammation or by exerting toxic or pro-apoptotic effects on oligodendrocytes. However, it should be noted that production of IFN-γ and IL-17 are the indicator cytokines of Th1 and Th17 cells, respectively [41, 42]. There is accumulating evidence demonstrating an increased frequency of IFN-γ -producing Th1 and IL-17-producing Th17 cells during EAE/MS relapse [42–44] which has been shown to be closely related to infiltrating monocytes and macrophages into the CNS following increases in the permeability of the BBB. This has been further supported by other studies that have shown high levels of inflammatory mediators secreted by infiltrating Th17 cells that could drive disruption of BBB tight junctions, demyelination, and hamper nerve conduction [45, 46]. Additional studies have revealed that impairment of all of the factors involved in Th17 cell development or deficiency consistently either attenuate or abrogate EAE [47]. On the other hand, TNF-α and IFN-γ have all been shown to exert direct myelinotoxic properties and elevated amounts of these cytokines coincide with disease activity [48].

6.2.2 Th9 and Th22 in MS

Two additional subsets of effector T cells Th9 and Th22 have been recognized, and the capacity of these T-cell subsets to induce EAE is currently

being investigated. Multiple lines of evidence have recently pointed to a role of Th9 and Th22 in the immunopathogenesis of MS [38, 49]. The frequencies of Th22 and the related cytokine IL-22 have been detected to be increased in the blood and CSF of patients with MS, especially during the active phases of the disease. In addition, it is important to note that IL-22 concentrations, the signature cytokines of Th22, were found to be increased during a relapse phase of MS, suggesting a role in the immunopathogenesis [49]. The role of Th9 in EAE was further supported by studies which showed that Th9 cells induce EAE and inflammation and IL-9 knockout mice are protected from developing EAE, indicating that Th9 cells may provoke the inflammatory process [38]. However, the accurate role of these subsets in EAE and MS is not clearly understood and has been the subject of on-going investigations.

6.2.3 CD8+ T Cells and B Cells in MS

Supported by the EAE animal model, growing evidence points to the pathogenic involvement of $CD8^+$T cells in the pathophysiology of MS, although it has traditionally regarded to be a $CD4^+$-mediated autoimmune disease [50]. Recent neuropathological studies have convincingly demonstrated that, within the T cell population, $CD8^+$ T-cells are the most predominant T-cells in CNS lesions [51], where their numbers strongly correlate with the extent of acute axonal damage [50]. $CD8^+$ T cells are believed to mediate pathogenic processes in numerous cells types by direct cytotoxicity or production of pro-inflammatory mediators including IL-17, IFN-γ, and TNF-α [51, 52]. Besides the involvement of T cells in MS pathogenesis, limited attention has been directed to another important immune cell type, i.e., B cells. B cells and humoral immunity contribute to initiation, progression, and subsequent tissue damage in the autoimmune pathogenesis of MS by different mechanisms such as abnormal production of antibodies, co-stimulating T cells to produce and release inflammatory factors, and by secretion of inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-6, TNF-α, and IL-12 [53]. Studies have also demonstrated accumulation of B cells and plasma cells in the brains and CSF of patients with MS [54].

6.2.4 T Regulatory (Treg) and Th2 Cells in MS

Along with the upregulation of proinflammatory mediators following induction of EAE, immunosuppressive activity of Tregs has been reported to be impaired in MS [55]. Tregs play an important role in maintaining immune homeostasis, the prevention of autoimmunity, and suppressing deleterious inflammatory responses [56]. Treg is a unique CD4+ T-cell subset defined by expression of transcription factor Foxp3 and secretion of the suppressive cytokines TGF-β, IL-10, and IL-35 along with a protective role in MS by modulation of inflammation [57]. The mechanism by which Tregs have been implicated in immunosuppressive functions on various effector cells, especially pathogenic autoreactive T cells, is directly through production of the above-mentioned suppressive cytokines or in a contact-dependent fashion or indirectly via inhibiting maturation of APCs [19]. Another important anti-inflammatory CD4+ T-subset that has been proposed to possess a protective function in the disease is Th2. Alteration of Th2-related is recognized as a primary contributing factor to an inflammatory demyelinating disease [2]. Th2 cells are a source of anti-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-4, IL-10, and TGF-β and are also supposed to be involved in the attenuation of neuro-inflammatory processes by down-regulating various aspects of the Th1 inflammatory response [58]. There is abundant evidence that upregulation of Th2-derived cytokines can reduce the severity of inflammatory demyelinating diseases, such as MS, and is associated with the recovery from disease [2, 59]. Additionally, IL-$4^{-/-}$and IL-$10^{-/-}$mice have been demonstrated to have increased susceptibility to EAE [2].

To summarize, switching immune cells from an anti-inflammatory to a pro-inflammatory state, in particular with an increased ratio of Th17/Treg

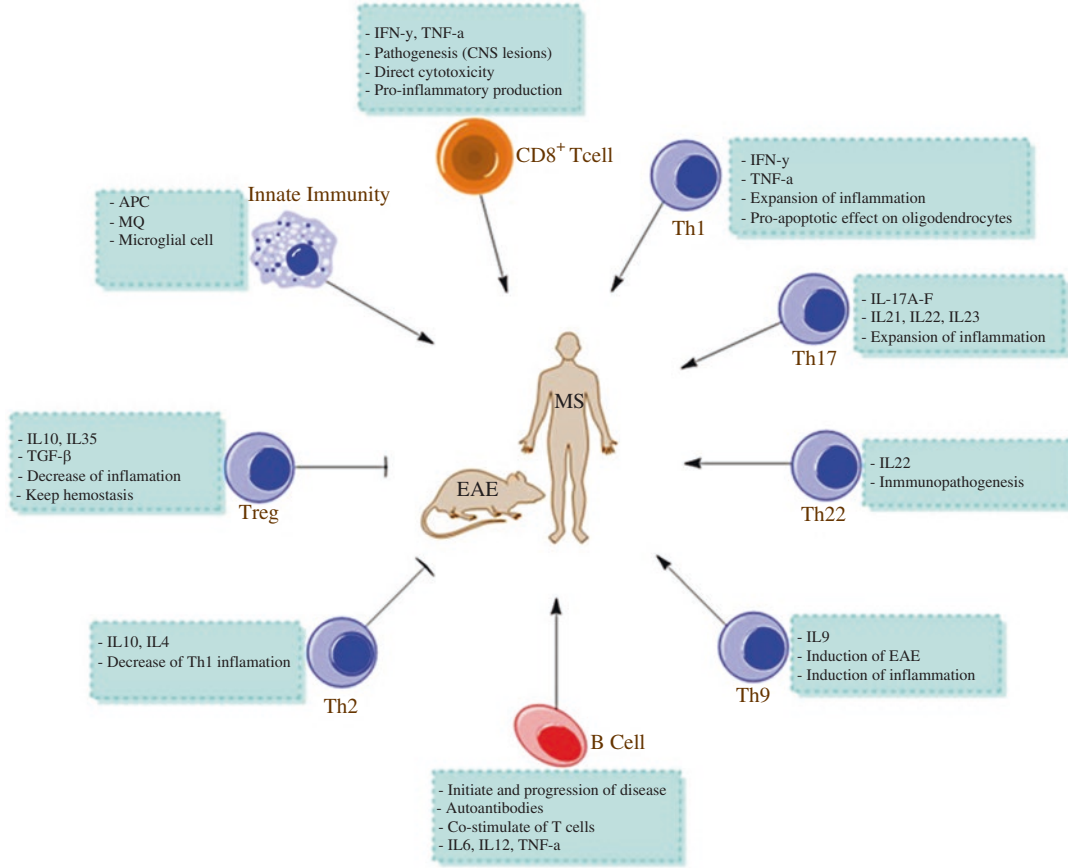


Fig. 6.1 Schematic figure of different immune cells and their inhibitory or activation roles in control or progression of disease in MS patient and EAE mice

and Th1/Th2, which causes a high inflammatory state in the CNS, may precede the clinical and laboratory symptoms of the disease activity (Fig. 6.1).

6.3 Risk Factors of MS

As mentioned above, MS is a complex disease in which both genetic and environmental factors contribute to its etiology and clinical course [60]. In most autoimmune/inflammatory disorders, the human leukocyte antigen region has the strongest genetic associations with MS [61]. Evidence for the importance of genetics comes from epidemiologic studies that show first-degree relatives have 20–40 times greater chance of developing MS in comparison to the general population [62]. Second- and third-degree relatives also have a clearly elevated risk of MS incidence [63]. Furthermore, twin studies from several populations have consistently indicated that dizygotic twins (~5% concordance) display a significantly lower clinical concordance rate than monozygotic twins (~30% concordance), supporting a high heritability [63]. The risk of developing MS increases from typically seven- to 26-fold in parents, from 12- to 38-fold in siblings, and from 6- to 25-fold in children of MS patients [64]. However, the hypothesis that genetic predisposition alone is not sufficient for promoting MS has been drawn from twin studies showing that monozygotic twins (100% genetic similarity) have an approximately 25–30% lifetime risk of developing MS when one of them has been diagnosed, suggesting the influence of both genetic

susceptibility and environmental triggers in the evolution of MS [10, 65].

One of the most intriguing aspects of MS is that lifestyle and environmental factors may have a strong influence on progression and course. A large number of environmental risk factors including smoking and sedentary lifestyle [66], physical activity [67], obesity [68], indigenous geography, and migration patterns, exposure to infectious agents [68], and sleep restriction [69] have been identified to play an important role in the prevention and management of this condition.

Environmental contributions are further supported by analysis of the ratio of hormone levels in MS patients. It was found that sex hormone have potential association with course and susceptibility to MS [70, 71]. Of note, it was proposed that the incidence of MS may be decreased with migration from low risk to high risk countries before 15 years of age [72]. This latitude gradient in MS has been suggested to be driven by environmental rather than genetic factors, especially exposure to sunlight and decreased levels of vitamin D [69, 73].

In addition to these environmental risk factors, the dietary habits and the gut microbiota have been frequently recognized to be associated with an increased risk of MS [74]. Epidemiological studies have reported that diets rich in low-calorie meals based on vegetables, whole cereals, legumes, fruit, and fish pose beneficial effects in the prevention and alleviation of MS [75] through inhibiting production of proinflammatory molecules and restoring or maintaining a diverse symbiotic gut microbiota [76]. Conversely, eating high-salt diets, animal fat, hypercaloric diets, red meat, saturated animal fat, sugar-sweetened drinks, and fried food has been shown to be associated with increased risk of the disease by elevating proinflammatory pathways and subsequent promotion of a dysbiosis gut microbiota state [75, 76]. It is noteworthy that influence of the many MS risk factors may be related to the gut microbiota dysbiosis [10]. A bidirectional connection between the gut microbiota and CNS disease supports the concept that dysbiosis of the gastrointestinal microbiota can also influence the clinical manifestations and inflammatory markers in MS/EAE [10]. Current evidence from different clinical studies has revealed striking variations in the composition of the intestinal microbiome in MS patients compared to that in healthy controls [77]. It has also been indicated that more than 70% of MS patients suffer from at least one gastrointestinal tract disease [78]. The overall evidence indicates that a comprehensive program of lifestyle modification can appear as a non-invasive and viable approach for preventing and controlling MS and possibly other neurological conditions.

6.4 Therapeutics Approaches for MS

During the past decade, there have been considerable efforts to develop efficient therapeutic approaches for MS [79]. Owing to the growing evidence from both animal and human studies suggesting pathophysiology of autoimmunity and immune-mediated mechanisms involved in the disease, research focuses on developing a promising therapy to modulate or suppress inflammatory responses [80]. Despite tremendous scientific efforts, the available preventive disease-modifying therapies (DMTs) have failed to treat MS completely and are aimed at slowing the progression of the disease, protection of functional capability, reducing individual symptoms and delaying or preventing progressive MS onset. Of these, the interferons and glatiramer acetate are the best treatments currently in use, and these appear to work by decreasing immune-mediated inflammation [3, 4, 81]. On the other hand, these drugs are only effective against the RRMS subtype and exhibit some drawbacks, such as inconvenient methods of administration, significant side effects, and low adherence rates. Therefore, more efficient preventive treatment strategies need to be developed [82, 83].

Currently, the ability of probiotics to impact on many aspects of physiological and pathological processes of the host has opened up new therapeutic prospects for the treatment of CNS inflammation [84]. The most common types of

microorganisms used as probiotics are *Lactobacillus (L)* and *Bifidobacterium (B)* [85]. A number of health improving properties have been attributed to the consumption of some probiotic strains, which leads to protection of the function of the gastrointestinal epithelial barrier, increased adhesion to intestinal mucosa, interference with the ability of pathogens to colonize, competitive exclusion of pathogenic microorganisms, and enhancement of antimicrobial peptide production and immunomodulatory functions [86, 87]. Treatment using probiotic therapy has been found to exhibit broader spectrum of action mechanisms to achieve immune modulation compared to conventional immunosuppressant drugs [88]. In contrast to immunosuppressant drugs, adverse reactions upon long-term treatment of probiotics have been rare [88]. Surprisingly, treatment with some probiotics could have profound effects on CNS functions, conferring the potential therapeutic effect of probiotics on neurodegenerative diseases [87, 89].

Probiotic-based therapies have been shown to have immune-modulating effects as prophylactic agents or dietary supplements to reverse immunological disturbances which, in turn, modulate the progression of EAE and probably MS. The immunomodulatory and beneficial effect of probiotic treatments has often been suggested to be related to inhibition of Th1/Th17 responses while increasing the immunoregulatory responses of Treg cells [9, 88, 90]. Another potential mechanism behind the efficacy of probiotic administration has also been attributed to decreasing the production of pathogenic cytokines (IL17, IFNγ, TNFα, and IL-12) and increasing anti-inflammatory cytokines (IL-4, IL-10, and TGFβ) [88, 91]. More importantly, another underlying molecular mechanism through which probiotic administration may modulate CNS function is through mitigating neurotoxin-induced oxidative dysfunctions and neurotoxicity [92]. Histological analysis of the CNS showed that probiotic administration decreased recruitment of inflammatory cells into the spinal cord and subsequently suppressed clinical paralysis in EAE mice [91]. All of these results point to the use of dietary supplemented with probiotics as an alternative approach to conventional therapy in MS patients. However, there is a necessity for further studies to fully quantify their clinical efficacy in this disease.

6.4.1 Probiotics and Autoimmune Diseases

Probiotics are live microorganisms that colonize different sites of the mucosal gut barrier. The beneficial effects of non-photogenic probiotics have been shown in many studies [93]. Probiotics can help in keeping the integrity of intestinal barrier [94], modulation of immune responses [95], and better absorption of foods [96]. These live microorganisms can produce antimicrobial compounds with anti-pathogenic effects and maintain the balance of the microbial population in the intestine [97]. The important roles of probiotics are modulation of immune responses in different diseases. Probiotics increase the strength of immune response in diseases such as cancer and infection but tolerogenic probiotics regulate the immune response and help in keeping tolerance in inflammatory and autoimmune diseases [98]. In fact, tolerogenic probiotics could directly and indirectly affect all autoimmune responses, through the generation of tolerance mechanisms and inhibitory cytokines. Research in this area has shown the effects of tolerogenic probiotics in autoimmune conditions such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) through increase of inhibitory cytokines, decrease of inflammatory cytokines, and production of modulatory DCs [99, 100]. Administration of *L. delbrueckii* and *L. rhamnosus* probiotics were found to generate tolerogenic DCs and Treg in in vitro and amelioration of symptoms in a pristane-induced lupus mouse model [100–102]. These beneficial immunomodulation effects also changed the feature of immune response to tolerance in irritable bowel disease (IBD) [103], rheumatoid arthritis [104], and allergy [105]. Multiple sclerosis is one of the most injurious autoimmune diseases that has

been found to be linked with dysregulated immune responses and imbalance of gut microbiota [106]. It seems that the use of probiotic strains can maintain and restore the microbial balance with reduction of inflammatory responses in MS patients. All studies on dysbiosis in patients and animal models with MS have confirmed the homeostatic role of gut–brain axis in the host [107]. The present literature review was intended to evaluate the regulatory effects and the therapeutic impacts of probiotic strains on immune system responses in MS patients.

6.4.2 Cross-Talk of Multiple Sclerosis and Microbiota

Several cross-sectional studies have demonstrated that an altered gut microbiota composition is associated with some types of neurological and autoimmune diseases, such as type 1 diabetes, rheumatoid arthritis, Parkinson's disease, MS, and EAE, [108, 109]. Owing to the intimate relationship between commensal microbes and the immune system, it is not surprising that an aberrant gut microbiome plays a crucial role in dysregulation of immune responses and immunological tolerance and subsequently triggers and/or exacerbates the spontaneous development of EAE [110]. Much evidence has accumulated to show the importance of the microbiota in regulation of the development and/or function of different types of immune cells, especially with respect to the balance between potentially pro-inflammatory cells, Th1 and Th17 cells, and anti-inflammatory T cells, Th2, and Tregs, which represent a potential role of dysbiosis in autoimmune and inflammatory diseases [111, 112]. A key mechanism by which commensal microbiota affects the homeostasis of immune cell populations in lamina propria involves stimulation of innate immunity by microbial "pattern recognition receptors" [112]. Various microorganisms have been found which have been implicated in the development and/or maintenance of the gut immune system in MS. Some microorganisms seem to facilitate beneficial immune responses while others promote harmful ones [10]. In the case of human autoimmune diseases, a comparison between individuals afflicted with MS and healthy controls showed that MS patient microbiota populations were different compared in gut microbiota, which could mean that this is a risk factor in disease exacerbation [10, 109]. Supportive of this postulate, the dysbiosis found in patients suffering with RRMS can be a result of either increased levels of *Mycoplana, Pseudomonas, Blautia, Haemophilus* and *Dorea genera*, or decreased levels of *Parabacteroides, Adlercreutzia*, and *Prevotella* [113]. Furthermore, by comparing the sample patients and healthy controls, a decrease has been found in *Bacteroides*, *Prevotella*, *Anaerostipes*, *Faecalibacterium*, and *Clostridia XIVa* and *IV* clusters were observed [10], as well as an increase in the proportions of *Actinobacteria*, *Bifidobacterium Akkermansiamuciniphila*, *Mycoplasma*, *Acinetobactercalcoaceticus* in the gut microbiota of MS patients [10, 109, 114, 115]. Notably, a shorter time to relapse was associated with absence of *Fusobacteria*, as well as with the presence of the *Archaea Euryarchaeota* and an increased abundance trend of *Firmicutes* and *Euryarchaeotawere* [116]. Collectively, a rise in incidence and prevalence rate of MS in developed countries has been attributed to altered profiles of the intestinal bacterial flora.

Another mechanism suggested through which the gut microbiota can play a central role in MS is the bidirectional microbiota–gut–brain axis that transfers signals between the gastrointestinal system and the CNS. It is known that a dysregulated microbiota homeostasis is associated with several CNS developmental problems, confirming the effect of the gut commensal microbiota composition and the development and function of the CNS [110, 117]. In addition, human studies have pointed out that an increase of intestinal barrier and BBB permeability, caused by bacterial dysbiosis, can initiate an immune-inflammatory response in MS [10, 28]. This was supported by a result which showed that the

absence of microbiota might induce disruption of BBB tight connections and thus elevate BBB permeability [118]. Interestingly, a number of relevant processes are constantly controlled by gut microbiota such as the maturation and function of microglia [119], the limitation of astrocyte pathogenicity, stimulation of microglia, and expression of myelin genes [10].

6.4.3 Modulatory Effects of Tolerogenic Probiotics on CNS

The CNS is a privileged site, which must be protected from immune responses and immune cells. Therefore, any strategy or treatment that can help this security is crucial. Probiotics are able to protect the CNS barrier by different indirect mechanisms. One study showed that a mixture of three probiotic Lactobacilli on EAE mice decreased inflammation in the CNS following reduced autoreactive T cell responses. Also, clinical scores were significantly reduced after 20 days of probiotics therapy [90]. Treatment of female C57BL/6 EAE mice with two tolerogenic *lactobacillus* strains showed reduction in clinical scores, delays in the time of disease onset, and infiltration of mononuclear cells into the CNS [120]. A study on the EAE rat model colonized with *Bifidobacteriumanimalis* showed that the severity of EAE was delayed [121]. Oral administration of *P. acidilactici R037*, as a prophylactic or treatment, could suppress severity of disease in the EAE model [122]. In addition, prevention in the development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis was observed in C57BL/6 mice after administration of a lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-free Hsp65 producing recombinant *Lactococcuslactis* strain was found to reduce infiltration of inflammatory cells and injury signs in the CNS [123]. In another study, it was shown that in MS patients and healthy people, the gut microbiota is different which could potentially affect the disease course. In fact, distinct microbial flora in RRMS patients compared to healthy people altered the disease course and susceptibility to MS [124]. It has been shown that TGF-α as inhibitory and VEGF-β as promoting factors of inflammation and cell damage are significantly associated with gut microbiota, and any change or breakdown in this flora population leads to excessive inflammation and progression of disease [125]. Some studies showed that the gut microbiota could regulate the integrity of the BBB, and breakdown in normal gut microbiota of germ-free mice caused the elevated permeability [126]. Furthermore, a change in gut microbiota by antibiotic therapy in EAE mice showed that the altered population of flora led to decreased severity and progression of MS [127].

6.4.4 Modulatory Effects of Tolerogenic Probiotics on Treg Cells

One of the most important strategies for controlling and treating autoimmune diseases with increased uncontrolled immune responses focuses on increasing Treg cells and related anti-inflammatory cytokines to restore homeostasis of immune responses. Tolerogenic probiotics could affect immune cells through unknown mechanism and increase the shift towards Treg cells. In vitro and in vivo studies showed that tolerogenic bacteria could reduce inflammation and control the Th1, Th17/Treg axis. An in vivo study in EAE mice showed that the mixture of three probiotic Lactobacilli (*L. plantarum DSM 15312*, *L. paracasei DSM 13434,* and *DSM 15313*) could induce $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$ Treg cells in mesenteric lymph nodes (MLN), as well as TGF-β1 in serum, and IL-10 in MLN, spleen and blood [90]. The colonization of EAE mice with *Bacteroidesfragilis* decreased the symptoms in mice through induction of $Foxp3^+$ Treg cell differentiation [128]. *Lactobacillus plantarum A7* and *Bifidobacterium animalis PTCC 1631* strain, as tolerogenic microbiota, have been shown to increase anti-inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-10 and TGF-β, along with reduction of T cell prolifera-

tion in spleen and lymph nodes of a C57BL/6 EAE female mouse model separately and in combined treatment [120].

Colonization of mice by *Pediococcusacidilactici R037* provided a significant elevation in the number of $CD4^+$ T cells in both spleen and MLN. Administration of *R037* showed that it had beneficial effects on EAE through induction of FOXP3-IL10-producing Tr1 cells [122]. In an in vivo study, consumption of Hsp65-producing *Lactococcuslactis* by C57BL/6 mice showed significant elevation in the number of $CD4^+$ $FOXP3^+$ natural-Treg and inducible-Treg (also $CD4^+$ LAP^+ Treg) in spinal cord, spleen, and MLN. The study showed that CD4+ LAP+ Treg cells play an effective role in controlling the EAE [123]. Anti-inflammatory responses were also observed following cell culture of lymph node and spleen cells through increased IL-10 and reduced IL-17 production [123]. In an EAE mouse model, colonization of germ-free mice by gut microbiota from MS patient was shown to reestablish MS susceptibility through reduction in function and proportion of Treg cells and also decreased IL-10 levels [129, 130]. Oral administration of purified polysaccharide A derived from *B. fragilis* could decrease inflammation in EAE mice and may serve as a preventive and therapeutic tool by induction of Treg and IL10-producing cells [131]. *Prevotella histicola* use in a transgenic mouse model could reduce the severity of disease through elevation of the number of tolerogenic cells, such as Treg ($CD4^+FoxP3^+$), DCs, and macrophages [132]. In a human study, MS patients fed a probiotic cocktail (*Bifidobacterium, Lactobacillus,* and *Streptococcus*) daily for 2 months showed a significant reduction in the number of inflammatory monocytes and decreased CD80 and HLA-DR expression on classical monocytes and DCs, when compared with control group. In the control group, the administration of the probiotic cocktail showed reduced expression of HLA.DQA1 and HLA. DPB1 as MS risk alleles [132].

6.4.5 Modulatory Effects of Tolerogenic Probiotics on Th1 and Th17

Th1 and Th17 cells are involved in the pathogenesis of MS, with the immunopathology occurring through this inflammatory axis. Therefore, many approaches have targeted reduction of the inflammation of this autoimmune branch, and probiotics are able to decrease the inflammatory activity of Th1 and Th17 cells. In an in vitro study, the influence of segmented filamentous bacterium (SFB) on Th17 cell differentiation demonstrated that colonization of mice with a single commensal microbe induced Th17 cells and production of both IL-22 and IL-17 in the intestinal *lamina propria*. This suggested that the microbiota of MS patients has a pro-inflammatory effect [133]. The suppressive effects of *L. plantarum DSM 15312*, *L. paracasei DSM 13434*, and *DSM 15313* were observed in an EAE mouse model, which could attenuate the pro-inflammatory cytokine profile of the Th1 and Th17 pathway [90]. This probiotic mixture reduced IL17, TNF-α and IFN-γ as a pro-inflammatory cytokines and induced the secretion of anti-inflammatory cytokines such as TGF-β1, IL10, and IL4 in EAE mice [90]. A reduction of some pro-inflammatory cytokines (IL17, IFN-γ, and IL6 along with T cell proliferation) was observed in EAE mice administered two-*lactobacillus* strains, especially when these were given as a mixture [120]. A study on the changes in intestinal microbial population showed that antibiotics could reduce *Lactobacillusmurinus* and *Bacteroides fragilis* and increase *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron*, which led to suppression of EAE development by reducing iNKT cells, Th17 cells, and inflammatory cytokines, such as IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-17 [134]. Probiotic administration could induce peripheral anti-inflammatory responses through decreased CD80 expression on monocytes, as well as decreased frequency of inflammatory monocytes, and HLA-DR expression on DCs [135]. *P.*

histicola could modulate the severity of inflammatory cytokines from the Th1 and Th17 pathway in EAE mice by effects on systemic immune responses [132]. In an in vivo study, antibiotic therapy in EAE mice altered the intestinal flora, which was associated with reduction of inflammatory cytokines such as IL17, IFN-γ, IL6, macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP) and monocyte chemoattractant protein (MCP), and increased IL-10 levels, as well as alleviation of the disease severity [136]. Administration of *Helveticus* in EAE mice significantly reduced pathogenic Th17 cells in the spinal cord. In addition, in a prophylactic mode of therapy, this *Lactobacillus* could reduce the ratio of Th17/$CD4^+$ T cells in inguinal lymph nodes before the onset of disease. Also, administration of *Lactobacillushelveticus* reduced production of IL-6 cytokines in in vitro therefore indirectly affected Th17 linage development [137]. Combination usage of *Bifidobacteriumanimalis* and *Lactobacillusplantarum* in a mouse model ameliorated severity of disease and clinical scores through inhibition in the development of Th1 and Th17 linage cells, via an increase in the frequency of $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$-T cells (Treg) in spleen and lymph nodes [120]. In MS, different inflammatory responses of T cells are responsible in the outcome and progression of the disease, but the roles of autoreactive B cells and autoantibodies are important in control of the time of onset and the disease severity. Induction of the Th2 linage could lead to secretion of cytokines that contribute to the expansion of autoantibody production and, however, could modulate the Th1/Th2 axis inversely. It was found that the effect of tryptophan on gut microbiota could reduce differentiation of Th2 and modulate immune responses [138]. Also, the effect of *Lactobacillus casei* in an autoimmune and allergic mouse model revealed that probiotic administration could prevent inflammation and modulate Th2 responses, and thereby decrease production of IgE and autoantibodies [139]. However, the effect of probiotics on modulation of Th2 immune responses in MS disease requires further study.

6.5 Concluding Remarks

MS is a complicated autoimmune disease with neuro-pathological and immuno-pathological responses that persistently destroy myelin, as an auto-antigen, in the spinal cord and CNS. Tissue damage in MS patients occurs mainly due to excessive activated T cell responses, especially Th1, Th17, and dysregulated Treg cells, and release of their related pro-inflammatory and inflammatory cytokines, such as IFN-ϒ, TNF-α, IL-6, IL-17, and low levels of IL-10 and TGF-β. Various studies have shown the role of probiotics on diverse aspects of innate and acquired immune cells. Tolerogenic probiotic restores the balance of gut–brain axis and the Th1/17–Treg axis through different known and unknown mechanisms. In fact, tolerogenic probiotics alter innate immune cells (especially DCs) and shift the direction of the response towards tolerance. Also, these probiotics could change the microbiota population, prevent the differentiation and expansion of autoreactive T cells (Th1 and Th17), and reduce the levels of IFN-ϒ, TNF-α, and IL-17. However, tolerogenic probiotics could help to maintain tolerance and hemostasis of immune response through restoring the Treg/Th1/Th17 balance. Increased numbers of $CD4^+$, $CD25^+$, $FOXP3^+$ regulatory T cells and elevated level of IL-10 and TGF-β were found to be associated with tolerogenic roles of probiotics, through decreased inflammatory cytokines and T cell branch expansion, leading to prevention of over-activated autoreactive T Cells in the CNS (Table 6.2). Due to the ease of use and the good safety and regulatory properties, tolerogenic probiotics can be used as a complimentary drug in suffering MS patients. However, these categories of probiotics must be studied in combination with cohort studies for more effective evaluation.

Conflicts of Interest The authors declare that there are no conflicts of interest.

Table 6.2 Results of different tolerogenic probiotics effects on modulation of immune responses in human and animal model

Probiotics strain	In vivo/in vitro model	Probiotic effect on				Description	Ref
		CNS	Th1	Th17	Treg		
L. plantarum DSM 15312, L. paracasei DSM 13434 and *DSM 15313*	EAE mice	*	*	*	*	– Reduction of CNS inflammation and clinical score – Indication of CD4 + CD25 + Foxp3+ regulatory T cells (Tregs), IL10 and TGF-β1 – Decrease of Th1 and Th17 pro-inflammatory cytokine profile (IL17, TNF-α, and IFN-γ)	[123]
L. plantarum A7 and *B.animalisPTCC 1631*	EAE mice	*	*	*	*	– Reduction in clinical score and infiltration of mononuclear cells into the CNS – Delay in the time of disease onset – Reduction of T cell proliferation – Decrease of IL17, IFN-γ, and IL6 – Increase of IL10 and TGF-β	[124]
Bifidobacterium animalis	EAE mice	*				– Delay in severity of EAE	[125]
P. Acidilactici R037	EAE mice	*			*	– Suppression of disease severity – Induction of FOXP3- IL10 – Producing Tr1 cells	[126]
Recombinant *Lactococcus lactis*	EAE mice	*		*	*	– Reduction of inflammatory cells infiltration and injury signs in the CNS – Increase of n-Treg, i-Treg, and CD4+ LAP+ Treg – Increase of IL10 and decease of IL17	[127]
Gut microbiota	MS patients, EAE mice	*				Change in disease course and susceptibility to MS	[128, 131]
Gut microbiota	MS patients	*				– Effect on TGF-α as inhibitory and VEGF-β as promoting factors of inflammation and cell damage in MS disease	[129]
Gut microbiota	Germ-free mice	*				– Regulation of blood-brain barrier (BBB) integrity	[130]
Bacteroides fragilis	EAE mice				*	– Induce differentiation of Foxp3+ Treg cell	[132]
MS patients gut microbiota	EAE mice				*	– Reestablish MS susceptibility – Decrease of IL10 and Treg	[133, 134]
B. fragilis	EAE mice				*	– Induction of Treg and IL10-producing cells	[135]
Prevotella histicola	Transgenic mice				*	– Increase the frequency of Treg (CD4 + FoxP3+) and tolerogenic cell (DC and macrophage)	[136]
Bifidobacterium, Lactobacillus, and *Streptococcus*	MS patients, healthy control			*	*	– In patients: Decrease the frequency of inflammatory monocytes, decrease of CD80 and HLA-DR expression on classical monocytes and DC – In healthy individual: Decrease expression of HLA-DQA1 and HLA. DPB1(MS risk allele)	[136]

(continued)

Table 6.2 (continued)

Probiotics strain	In vivo/in vitro model	Probiotic effect on				Description	Ref
		CNS	Th1	Th17	Treg		
Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron	EAE mice		*	*		– Decrease of Th17 cells and inflammatory cytokine such as IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-6, and IL-17	[138]
Histicola	EAE mice		*	*		– Modulate the inflammatory cytokines of Th1 and Th17	[136]
Lactobacillus helveticus	EAE mice			*		– Reduction of pathogenic Th17 cells – Reduction the ratio of Th17/CD4+ T cells in inguinal lymph nodes	[137]

L Lactobacillus, *B Bifidobacterium*, *CNS* central nervous system, *EAE* experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, *MS* multiple sclerosis

References

1. Zhang X, Tao Y, Chopra M, Dujmovic-Basuroski I, Jin J, Tang Y, Drulovic J et al (2015) IL-11 induces Th17 cell responses in patients with early relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis. J Immunol 194(11):5139. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1401680
2. Fernando V, Omura S, Sato F, Kawai E, Martinez NE, Elliott SF et al (2014) Regulation of an autoimmune model for multiple sclerosis in Th2-biased GATA3 transgenic mice. Int J Mol Sci 15(2):1700–1718
3. Evans E, Piccio L, Cross AH (2018) Use of vitamins and dietary supplements by patients with multiple sclerosis: a review. JAMA Neurol 75(8):1013–1021
4. Koriem KMM (2016) Multiple sclerosis: new insights and trends. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 6(5):429–440
5. Lin R, Charlesworth J, van der Mei I, Taylor BV (2012) The genetics of multiple sclerosis. Pract Neurol 12(5):279–288
6. Ribbons KA, McElduff P, Boz C, Trojano M, Izquierdo G, Duquette P et al (2015) Male sex is independently associated with faster disability accumulation in relapse-onset MS but not in primary progressive MS. PLoS One 10(6):e0122686. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0122686
7. Loma I, Heyman R (2011) Multiple sclerosis: pathogenesis and treatment. Curr Neuropharmacol 9(3):409–416
8. Namjooyan F, Ghanavati R, Majdinasab N, Jokari S, Janbozorgi M (2014) Uses of complementary and alternative medicine in multiple sclerosis. J Tradit Complement Med 4(3):145–152
9. van den Hoogen WJ, Laman JD, tHart BA (2017) Modulation of multiple sclerosis and its animal model experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by food and gut microbiota. Front Immunol 8:1081. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01081
10. Chu F, Shi M, Lang Y, Shen D, Jin T, Zhu J et al (2018) Gut microbiota in multiple sclerosis and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis: current applications and future perspectives. Mediat Inflamm 2018:8168717. https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/8168717
11. Liu H, Huang J, Dou M, Liu Y, Xiao B, Liu X et al (2017) Variants in the IL7RA gene confer susceptibility to multiple sclerosis in Caucasians: evidence based on 9734 cases and 10436 controls. Sci Rep 7(1):1207. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-01345-8
12. Farrokhi M, Masoudifar A, Derakhshan A, Saadatmand S, Rouhi-Boroujeni H, Etemadifar M et al (2017) The association of interleukin-16 gene polymorphisms with IL-16 serum levels and risk of multiple sclerosis. Immunol Investig 2:1–9. https://doi.org/10.1080/08820139.2016.1268154
13. Hernández-Pedro NY, Espinosa-Ramirez G, de la Cruz VP, Pineda B, Sotelo J (2013) Initial immunopathogenesis of multiple sclerosis: innate immune response. Clin Dev Immunol 2013:413465. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/413465
14. Cierny D, Hanysova S, Michalik J, Kantorova E, Kurca E, Skerenova M et al (2015) Genetic variants in interleukin 7 receptor alpha chain (IL-7Ra) are associated with multiple sclerosis risk and disability progression in central European Slovak population. J Neuroimmunol 282:80–84
15. Ji Q, Goverman J (2007) Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis mediated by CD8+ T cells. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1103:157–166
16. Zargari M, Allameh A, Sanati MH, Tiraihi T, Lavasani S, Emadyan O (2007) Relationship between the clinical scoring and demyelination in central nervous system with total antioxidant capacity of plasma during experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis development in mice. Neurosci Lett 412(1):24–28
17. Hemmer B, Nessler S, Zhou D, Kieseier B, Hartung H-P (2006) Immunopathogenesis and immunotherapy of multiple sclerosis. Nat Clin Pract Neurol 2:201. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncpneuro0154
18. Matsushita T, Yanaba K, Bouaziz J-D, Fujimoto M, Tedder TF (2008) Regulatory B cells inhibit EAE

initiation in mice while other B cells promote disease progression. J Clin Invest 118(10):3420–3430
19. Glatigny S, Bettelli E (2018) Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) as animal models of multiple sclerosis (MS). Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 8(11). https://doi.org/10.1101/cshperspect.a028977
20. Constantinescu CS, Farooqi N, O'Brien K, Gran B (2011) Experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) as a model for multiple sclerosis (MS). Br J Pharmacol 164(4):1079–1106
21. Maghzi A-H, Borazanci A, McGee J, Steven Alexander J, Gonzalez-Toledo E, Minagar A (2011) 1 - Multiple sclerosis: pathophysiology, clinical features, diagnosis, and management. In: Minagar A (ed) Neuroinflammation. Elsevier, London, pp 1–23
22. Javan M-R, Seyfizadeh N, Aslani S, Farhoodi M, Babaloo Z (2014) Molecular analysis of interleukin-25 exons 1 and 2 and its serum levels in Iranian patients with multiple sclerosis. Am J Clin Exp Immunol 3(2):91–96
23. Gajofatto A, Turatti M, Benedetti MD (2017) Primary progressive multiple sclerosis: current therapeutic strategies and future perspectives. Expert Rev Neurother 17(4):393–406
24. Miller DH, Leary SM (2007) Primary-progressive multiple sclerosis. Lancet Neurol 6(10):903–912
25. Goldenberg MM (2012) Multiple sclerosis review. P T 37(3):175–184
26. Ghasemi N, Razavi S, Nikzad E (2017) Multiple sclerosis: pathogenesis, symptoms, diagnoses and cell-based therapy. Cell J 19(1):1–10
27. Losy J (2013) Is MS an inflammatory or primary degenerative disease? J Neural Transm 120(10):1459–1462
28. Kirby T, Ochoa-Repáraz J (2018) The gut microbiome in multiple sclerosis: a potential therapeutic avenue. Med Sci (Basel) 6(3):69. https://doi.org/10.3390/medsci6030069
29. Rossi B, Constantin G (2016) Live imaging of immune responses in experimental models of multiple sclerosis. Front Immunol 7:506. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2016.00506
30. Pilli D, Zou A, Tea F, Dale RC, Brilot F (2017) Expanding role of T cells in human autoimmune diseases of the central nervous system. Front Immunol 8:652. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.00652
31. Engelhardt B, Coisne C (2011) Fluids and barriers of the CNS establish immune privilege by confining immune surveillance to a two-walled castle moat surrounding the CNS castle. Fluids Barriers CNS 8(1):4. https://doi.org/10.1186/2045-8118-8-4
32. Boppana S, Huang H, Ito K, Dhib-Jalbut S (2011) Immunologic aspects of multiple sclerosis. Mt Sinai J Med 78(2):207–220
33. Airas L, Rissanen E, Rinne JO (2015) Imaging neuroinflammation in multiple sclerosis using TSPO-PET. Clin Transl Imaging 3:461. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40336-015-0147-6
34. Gharagozloo M, Gris KV, Mahvelati T, Amrani A, Lukens JR, Gris D (2018) NLR-dependent regulation of inflammation in multiple sclerosis. Front Immunol 8:2012. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.02012
35. Goverman J (2009) Autoimmune T cell responses in the central nervous system. Nat Rev Immunol 9(6):393–407
36. Kinzel S, Weber MS (2017) The role of peripheral CNS-directed antibodies in promoting inflammatory CNS demyelination. Brain Sci 7(7):70. https://doi.org/10.3390/brainsci7070070
37. Ponath G, Park C, Pitt D (2018) The role of astrocytes in multiple sclerosis. Front Immunol 9:217. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2018.00217
38. Dargahi N, Katsara M, Tselios T, Androutsou ME, de Courten M, Matsoukas J et al (2017) Multiple sclerosis: immunopathology and treatment update. Brain Sci 7(7):E78. https://doi.org/10.3390/brainsci7070078
39. Rothhammer V, Quintana FJ (2015) Control of autoimmune CNS inflammation by astrocytes. Semin Immunopathol 37(6):625–638
40. Fletcher JM, Lalor SJ, Sweeney CM, Tubridy N, Mills KHG (2010) T cells in multiple sclerosis and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Clin Exp Immunol 162(1):1–11
41. Paris D, Beaulieu-Abdelahad D, Mullan M, Ait-Ghezala G, Mathura V, Bachmeier C et al (2013) Amelioration of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by anatabine. PLoS One 8(1):e55392. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0055392
42. Hedegaard CJ, Krakauer M, Bendtzen K, Lund H, Sellebjerg F, Nielsen CH (2008) T helper cell type 1 (Th1), Th2 and Th17 responses to myelin basic protein and disease activity in multiple sclerosis. Immunology 125(2):161–169
43. Imam SA, Guyton MK, Haque A, Vandenbark A, Tyor WR, Ray SK et al (2007) Increased calpain correlates with Th1 cytokine profile in PBMCs from MS patients. J Neuroimmunol 190(1–2):139–145
44. Passos GRD, Sato DK, Becker J, Fujihara K (2016) Th17 cells pathways in multiple sclerosis and neuromyelitis optica spectrum disorders: pathophysiological and therapeutic implications. Mediat Inflamm 2016:5314541. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/5314541
45. Kebir H, Kreymborg K, Ifergan I, Dodelet-Devillers A, Cayrol R, Bernard M et al (2007) Human TH17 lymphocytes promote blood-brain barrier disruption and central nervous system inflammation. Nat Med 13(10):1173–1175
46. Xia P, Gong X, Xiao L, Wang Y, Zhang T, Liao Q et al (2018) CCDC134 ameliorated experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by suppressing Th1 and Th17 cells. Brain Behav Immun 71:158–168
47. Ciric B, Rostami A (2010) IL-17A in autoimmune inflammation of the central nervous system: a promising therapeutic target in multiple sclerosis? Open Autoimmun J 2:171–180

48. Hollifield RD, Harbige LS, Pham-Dinh D, Sharief MK (2003) Evidence for cytokine dysregulation in multiple sclerosis: peripheral blood mononuclear cell production of pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines during relapse and remission. Autoimmunity 36(3):133–141
49. Fard NA, Azizi G, Mirshafiey A (2016) The potential role of T helper cell 22 and IL-22 in immunopathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. Innov Clin Neurosci 13(7–8):30–36
50. Huseby ES, Huseby PG, Shah S, Smith R, Stadinski BD (2012) Pathogenic CD8 T cells in multiple sclerosis and its experimental models. Front Immunol 3:64. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2012.00064
51. Denic A, Wootla B, Rodriguez M (2013) CD8(+) T cells in multiple sclerosis. Expert Opin Ther Targets 17(9):1053–1066
52. Grigoriadis N, van Pesch V (2015) A basic overview of multiple sclerosis immunopathology. Eur J Neurol 2:3–13
53. Wekerle H (2017) B cells in multiple sclerosis. Autoimmunity 50(1):57–60
54. Awad AM, Stuve O (2010) Immunopathogenesis of multiple sclerosis: new insights and therapeutic implications. Continuum (Minneap Minn) 16(5 Multiple Sclerosis):166–180
55. Gawlik B, Hafler D (2013) Regulatory T cells in MS. In: Gawlik BB, Hafler DA (eds) Multiple sclerosis immunology. Springer, New York, NY, pp 22–47. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4614-7953-6_2
56. Benson A, Murray S, Divakar P, Burnaevskiy N, Pifer R, Forman J et al (2012) Microbial infection-induced expansion of effector T cells overcomes the suppressive effects of regulatory T cells via an IL-2 deprivation mechanism. J Immunol 188(2):800–810
57. Workman CJ, Szymczak-Workman AL, Collison LW, Pillai MR, Vignali DAA (2009) The development and function of regulatory T cells. Cell Mol Life Sci 66(16):2603–2622
58. Hussain RZ, Hayardeny L, Cravens PC, Yarovinsky F, Eagar TN, Arellano B et al (2014) Immune surveillance of the central nervous system in multiple sclerosis--relevance for therapy and experimental models. J Neuroimmunol 276(1–2):9–17
59. Nagelkerken L (1998) Role of Th1 and Th2 cells in autoimmune demyelinating disease. Braz J Med Biol Res 31(1):55–60
60. Simpson S Jr, Taylor BV, van der Mei I (2015) The role of epidemiology in MS research: past successes, current challenges and future potential. Mult Scler 21(8):969–977
61. Handel AE, Giovannoni G, Ebers GC, Ramagopalan SV (2010) Environmental factors and their timing in adult-onset multiple sclerosis. Nat Rev Neurol 6(3):156–166
62. Zuvich RL, McCauley JL, Pericak-Vance MA, Haines JL (2009) Genetics and pathogenesis of multiple sclerosis. Semin Immunol 21(6):328–333
63. Oksenberg JR, Baranzini SE, Sawcer S, Hauser SL (2008) The genetics of multiple sclerosis: SNPs to pathways to pathogenesis. Nat Rev Genet 9:516. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrg2395
64. Nielsen NM, Westergaard T, Rostgaard K, Frisch M, Hjalgrim H, Wohlfahrt J et al (2005) Familial risk of multiple sclerosis: a nationwide cohort study. Am J Epidemiol 162(8):774–778
65. Kakalacheva K, Münz C, Lünemann JD (2011) Viral triggers of multiple sclerosis. Biochim Biophys Acta 1812(2):132–140
66. Marck CH, De Livera AM, Brown CR, Neate SL, Taylor KL, Weiland TJ et al (2018) Health outcomes and adherence to a healthy lifestyle after a multimodal intervention in people with multiple sclerosis: three year follow-up. PLoS One 13(5):e0197759. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0197759
67. Dorans KS, Massa J, Chitnis T, Ascherio A, Munger KL (2016) Physical activity and the incidence of multiple sclerosis. Neurology 87(17):1770–1776
68. Brenton JN, Goldman MD (2016) A study of dietary modification: perceptions and attitudes of patients with multiple sclerosis. Mult Scler Relat Disord 8:54–57
69. Hedstrom AK, Olsson T, Alfredsson L (2015) The role of environment and lifestyle in determining the risk of multiple sclerosis. Curr Top Behav Neurosci 26:87–104
70. Coo H, Aronson KJ (2004) A systematic review of several potential non-genetic risk factors for multiple sclerosis. Neuroepidemiology 23(1–2):1–12
71. Gold SM, Voskuhl RR (2009) Estrogen and testosterone therapies in multiple sclerosis. Prog Brain Res 175:239–251
72. Hawkes CH (2002) Is multiple sclerosis a sexually transmitted infection? J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 73(4):439–443
73. Taylor BV (2011) The major cause of multiple sclerosis is environmental: genetics has a minor role--yes. Mult Scler 17(10):1171–1173
74. Riccio P (2011) The molecular basis of nutritional intervention in multiple sclerosis: a narrative review. Complement Ther Med 19(4):228–237
75. Riccio P, Rossano R (2015) Nutrition facts in multiple sclerosis. ASN Neuro 7(1):1759091414568185. https://doi.org/10.1177/1759091414568185
76. Labuschagne IL, Blaauw R (2018) An anti-inflammatory approach to the dietary management of multiple sclerosis: a condensed review. South Afr J Clin Nutr 31(3):67–73
77. Kirby TO, Ochoa-Reparaz J (2018) The gut microbiome in multiple sclerosis: a potential therapeutic avenue. Med Sci (Basel) 6(3):69. https://doi.org/10.3390/medsci6030069
78. Abdurasulova I, Tarasova E, Matsulevich A, Eliseev AV, Ermolenko E, Suvorov A, Klimenko V (2017) Changes in the qualitative and quantitative composition of the intestinal microflora in rats in experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. Ross Fiziol Zh Im I M Sechenova 101(11):1235–1249
79. Humphries C (2012) Progressive multiple sclerosis: the treatment gap. Nature 484:S10. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature11108

80. Bennett JL, Miravalle AA (2010) Recent advances in the treatment of multiple sclerosis. J Exp Pharmacol 2:155–161
81. de Souza JM, Goncalves BDC, Gomez MV, Vieira LB, Ribeiro FM (2018) Animal toxins as therapeutic tools to treat neurodegenerative diseases. Front Pharmacol 9:145. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2018.00145
82. Glanz BI, Musallam A, Rintell DJ, Chitnis T, Weiner HL, Healy BC (2014) Treatment satisfaction in multiple sclerosis. Int J MS Care 16(2):68–75
83. Tankou SK, Regev K, Healy BC, Cox LM, Tjon E, Kivisakk P et al (2018) Investigation of probiotics in multiple sclerosis. Mult Scler 24(1):58–63
84. Umbrello G, Esposito S (2016) Microbiota and neurologic diseases: potential effects of probiotics. J Transl Med 14(1):298. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12967-016-1058-7
85. Caputi V, Giron MC (2018) Microbiome-gut-brain Axis and toll-like receptors in Parkinson's disease. Int J Mol Sci 19(6). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19061689
86. Bermudez-Brito M, Plaza-Diaz J, Munoz-Quezada S, Gomez-Llorente C, Gil A (2012) Probiotic mechanisms of action. Ann Nutr Metab 6(2):160–174
87. Kobayashi Y, Sugahara H, Shimada K, Mitsuyama E, Kuhara T, Yasuoka A et al (2017) Therapeutic potential of Bifidobacterium breve strain A1 for preventing cognitive impairment in Alzheimer's disease. Sci Rep 7(1):13510. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-13368-2
88. Kwon HK, Kim GC, Kim Y, Hwang W, Jash A, Sahoo A et al (2013) Amelioration of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis by probiotic mixture is mediated by a shift in T helper cell immune response. Clin Immunol 146(3):217–227
89. Westfall S, Lomis N, Kahouli I, Dia SY, Singh SP, Prakash S (2017) Microbiome, probiotics and neurodegenerative diseases: deciphering the gut brain axis. Cell Mol Life Sci 74(20):3769–3787
90. Lavasani S, Dzhambazov B, Nouri M, Fåk F, Buske S, Molin G et al (2010) A novel probiotic mixture exerts a therapeutic effect on experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis mediated by IL-10 producing regulatory T cells. PLoS One 5(2):e9009. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0009009
91. Salehipour Z, Haghmorad D, Sankian M, Rastin M, Nosratabadi R, Soltan Dallal MM et al (2017) Bifidobacterium animalis in combination with human origin of Lactobacillus plantarum ameliorate neuroinflammation in experimental model of multiple sclerosis by altering CD4+ T cell subset balance. Biomed Pharmacother 95:1535–1548
92. Divyashri G, Krishna G, Muralidhara PSG (2015) Probiotic attributes, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory and neuromodulatory effects of Enterococcus faecium CFR 3003: in vitro and in vivo evidence. J Med Microbiol 64(12):1527–1540
93. Fijan S (2014) Microorganisms with claimed probiotic properties: an overview of recent literature. Int J Environ Res Public Health 11(5):4745–4767
94. Yu Q, Yuan L, Deng J, Yang Q (2015) Lactobacillus protects the integrity of intestinal epithelial barrier damaged by pathogenic bacteria. Front Cell Infect Microbiol 5:26. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcimb.2015.00026
95. Corthésy B, Gaskins HR, Mercenier A (2007) Cross-talk between probiotic bacteria and the host immune system. J Nutr 137(3):781S–790S
96. Saulnier DM, Spinler JK, Gibson GR, Versalovic J (2009) Mechanisms of probiosis and prebiosis: considerations for enhanced functional foods. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20(2):135–141
97. Garcia-Gutierrez E, Mayer MJ, Cotter PD, Narbad A (2018) Gut microbiota as a source of novel antimicrobials. Gut Microbes 10(1):1–21
98. Vitetta L, Vitetta G, Hall S (2018) Immunological tolerance and function: associations between intestinal Bacteria, probiotics, prebiotics, and phages. Front Immunol 9:2240. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2018.02240
99. Esmaeili SA, Mahmoudi M, Momtazi AA, Sahebkar A, Doulabi H, Rastin M (2017) Tolerogenic probiotics: potential immunoregulators in systemic lupus erythematosus. J Cell Physiol 232(8):1994–2007
100. Esmaeili SA, Mahmoudi M, Rezaieyazdi Z, Sahebari M, Tabasi N, Sahebkar A et al (2018) Generation of tolerogenic dendritic cells using Lactobacillus rhamnosus and Lactobacillus delbrueckii as tolerogenic probiotics. J Cell Biochem 119(9):7865–7872
101. Khorasani S, Mahmoudi M, Kalantari MR, Lavi Arab F, Esmaeili SA, Mardani F et al (2019) Amelioration of regulatory T cells by Lactobacillus delbrueckii and Lactobacillus rhamnosus in pristane-induced lupus mice model. J Cell Physiol 234(6):9778–9786
102. Mardani F, Mahmoudi M, Esmaeili SA, Khorasani S, Tabasi N, Rastin M (2018) In vivo study: Th1–Th17 reduction in pristane-induced systemic lupus erythematosus mice after treatment with tolerogenic Lactobacillus probiotics. J Cell Physiol 234(1):642–649
103. Schultz M, Sartor RB (2000) Probiotics and inflammatory bowel diseases. Am J Gastroenterol 95(1):S19–S21
104. Mohammed AT, Khattab M, Ahmed AM, Turk T, Sakr N, Khalil AM et al (2017) The therapeutic effect of probiotics on rheumatoid arthritis: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized control trials. Clin Rheumatol 36(12):2697–2707
105. Hajavi J, Esmaeili SA, Varasteh AR, Vazini H, Atabati H, Mardani F et al (2018) The immunomodulatory role of probiotics in allergy therapy. J Cell Physiol 234(3):2386–2398
106. Adamczyk-Sowa M, Medrek A, Madej P, Michlicka W, Dobrakowski P (2017) Does the gut microbiota influence immunity and inflammation in multiple sclerosis pathophysiology? J Immunol Res 2017:7904821. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/7904821
107. Colpitts SL, Kasper LH (2017) Influence of the gut microbiome on autoimmunity in the central nervous system. J Immunol 198(2):596–604

108. Vogt NM, Kerby RL, Dill-McFarland KA, Harding SJ, Merluzzi AP, Johnson SC et al (2017) Gut microbiome alterations in Alzheimer's disease. Sci Rep 7(1):13537. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-13601-y
109. Jangi S, Gandhi R, Cox LM, Li N, von Glehn F, Yan R et al (2016) Alterations of the human gut microbiome in multiple sclerosis. Nat Commun 7:12015. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms12015
110. Yadav SK, Boppana S, Ito N, Mindur JE, Mathay MT, Patel A et al (2017) Gut dysbiosis breaks immunological tolerance toward the central nervous system during young adulthood. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(44):E9318–E9327
111. Hooper LV, Littman DR, Macpherson AJ (2012) Interactions between the microbiota and the immune system. Science (New York, NY) 336(6086):1268–1273
112. Kamada N, Núñez G (2013) Role of the gut microbiota in the development and function of lymphoid cells. J Immunol 190(4):1389–1395
113. Chen J, Chia N, Kalari KR, Yao JZ, Novotna M, Paz Soldan MM et al (2016) Multiple sclerosis patients have a distinct gut microbiota compared to healthy controls. Sci Rep 6:28484. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep28484
114. Camara-Lemarroy CR, Metz LM, Yong VW (2018) Focus on the gut-brain axis: multiple sclerosis, the intestinal barrier and the microbiome. World J Gastroenterol 24(37):4217–4223
115. Cekanaviciute E, Yoo BB, Runia TF, Debelius JW, Singh S, Nelson CA, Kanner R, Bencosme Y, Lee YK, Hauser SL, Crabtree-Hartman E, Sand IK, Gacias M, Zhu Y, Casaccia P, Cree BAC, Knight R, Mazmanian SK, Baranzini SE (2017) Gut bacteria from multiple sclerosis patients modulate human T cells and exacerbate symptoms in mouse models. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(40):10713–10718
116. Tremlett H, Fadrosh DW, Faruqi AA, Hart J, Roalstad S, Graves J et al (2016) Gut microbiota composition and relapse risk in pediatric MS: a pilot study. J Neurol Sci 363:153–157
117. Principi N, Esposito S (2016) Gut microbiota and central nervous system development. J Infect 73(6):536–546
118. Braniste V, Al-Asmakh M, Kowal C, Anuar F, Abbaspour A, Toth M et al (2014) The gut microbiota influences blood-brain barrier permeability in mice. Sci Transl Med 6(263):263ra158. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3009759
119. Erny D, Hrabe de Angelis AL, Jaitin D, Wieghofer P, Staszewski O, David E et al (2015) Host microbiota constantly control maturation and function of microglia in the CNS. Nat Neurosci 18(7):965–977
120. Salehipour Z, Haghmorad D, Sankian M, Rastin M, Nosratabadi R, Dallal MMS et al (2017) Bifidobacterium animalis in combination with human origin of Lactobacillus plantarum ameliorate neuroinflammation in experimental model of multiple sclerosis by altering CD4+ T cell subset balance. Biomed Pharmacother 95:1535–1548
121. Ezendam J, De Klerk A, Gremmer E, Van Loveren H (2008) Effects of Bifidobacterium animalis administered during lactation on allergic and autoimmune responses in rodents. Clin Exp Immunol 154(3):424–431
122. Takata K, Kinoshita M, Okuno T, Moriya M, Kohda T, Honorat JA et al (2011) The lactic acid bacterium Pediococcus acidilactici suppresses autoimmune encephalomyelitis by inducing IL-10-producing regulatory T cells. PLoS One 6(11):e27644. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0027644
123. Rezende RM, Oliveira RP, Medeiros SR, Gomes-Santos AC, Alves AC, Loli FG et al (2013) Hsp65-producing Lactococcus lactis prevents experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice by inducing CD4+ LAP+ regulatory T cells. J Autoimmun 40:45–57
124. Chen J, Chia N, Kalari KR, Yao JZ, Novotna M, Soldan MMP et al (2016) Multiple sclerosis patients have a distinct gut microbiota compared to healthy controls. Sci Rep 6:28484. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep28484
125. Rothhammer V, Borucki DM, Tjon EC, Takenaka MC, Chao C-C, Ardura-Fabregat A et al (2018) Microglial control of astrocytes in response to microbial metabolites. Nature 557(7707):724–728
126. Michel L, Prat A (2016) One more role for the gut: microbiota and blood brain barrier. Ann Transl Med 4(1):15. https://doi.org/10.3978/j.issn.2305-5839.2015.10.16
127. Lee YK, Menezes JS, Umesaki Y, Mazmanian SK (2011) Proinflammatory T-cell responses to gut microbiota promote experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(Suppl 1):4615–4622
128. Ochoa-Repáraz J, Mielcarz DW, Ditrio LE, Burroughs AR, Foureau DM, Haque-Begum S et al (2009) Role of gut commensal microflora in the development of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Immunol 183(10):6041–6050
129. Berer K, Gerdes LA, Cekanaviciute E, Jia X, Xiao L, Xia Z et al (2017) Gut microbiota from multiple sclerosis patients enables spontaneous autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(40):10719–10724
130. Cekanaviciute E, Yoo BB, Runia TF, Debelius JW, Singh S, Nelson CA et al (2017) Gut bacteria from multiple sclerosis patients modulate human T cells and exacerbate symptoms in mouse models. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(40):10713–10718
131. Ochoa-Repáraz J, Mielcarz DW, Ditrio LE, Burroughs AR, Begum-Haque S, Dasgupta S et al (2010) Central nervous system demyelinating disease protection by the human commensal Bacteroides fragilis depends on polysaccharide A expression. J Immunol 185(7):4101–4108
132. Mangalam A, Shahi SK, Luckey D, Karau M, Marietta E, Luo N et al (2017) Human gut-derived

commensal bacteria suppress CNS inflammatory and demyelinating disease. Cell Rep 20(6):1269–1277
133. Ivanov II, Atarashi K, Manel N, Brodie EL, Shima T, Karaoz U et al (2009) Induction of intestinal Th17 cells by segmented filamentous bacteria. Cell 139(3):485–498
134. Yokote H, Miyake S, Croxford JL, Oki S, Mizusawa H, Yamamura T (2008) NKT cell-dependent amelioration of a mouse model of multiple sclerosis by altering gut flora. Am J Pathol 173(6):1714–1723
135. Tankou SK, Regev K, Healy BC, Tjon E, Laghi L, Cox LM et al (2018) A probiotic modulates the microbiome and immunity in multiple sclerosis. Ann Neurol 83(6):1147–1161
136. Nicol B, Salou M, Laplaud D-A, Wekerle H (2015) The autoimmune concept of multiple sclerosis. Presse Med 44(4):e103–e112
137. Yamashita M, Ukibe K, Matsubara Y, Hosoya T, Sakai F, Kon S et al (2018) Lactobacillus helveticus SBT2171 attenuates experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mice. Front Microbiol 8:2596. https://doi.org/10.3389/fmicb.2017.02596
138. Bartel S, Jatzlauk G, Kepert I, Fonseca J, Müller C, Milger K et al (2016) D-tryptophan is a probiotic substance influencing the gut microbiome and in vitro Th2 differentiation. J Allergy Clin Immunol 139(5):1525–1535
139. Schiffer C, Lalanne AI, Cassard L, Mancardi DA, Malbec O, Bruhns P et al (2011) A strain of Lactobacillus casei inhibits the effector phase of immune inflammation. J Immunol 187(5):2646–2455

7 Multifaceted Roles of Long Non-coding RNAs in Head and Neck Cancer

Leslie Duncan, Chloe Shay, and Yong Teng

Abstract

The majority of RNA transcripts are non-coding RNA (ncRNA) transcripts with lengths exceeding 200 nucleotides that are not translated into protein. Unlike microRNAs (miRNAs), long ncRNAs (lncRNAs) are not confined to a single mechanism of action but have a large and diverse role in biological processes as they can function as transcription regulators, decoys, scaffolds, and enhancer RNAs. Currently, many lncRNA molecules are under investigation for their role in tumorigenesis, metastasis, and prognosis in different types of cancer. This review not only summarizes the characteristics and functions of lncRNAs but also discusses the therapeutic implications and applications of lncRNAs with roles associated with head and neck cancer. Our aim is to pinpoint the potential way to perturb specific lncRNAs for future therapeutic use.

Keywords

lncRNA · Roles and functions · Head and neck cancer

Abbreviations

BANCR	BRAF-activated non-coding ribonucleic acid
EMT	Epithelial-mesenchymal transitions
ERK	Extracellular signal-regulated kinase
H19	H19 imprinted maternally expressed transcript
HNC	Head and neck cancer
HNGA1	Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma glycolysis-associated 1
HNSCC	Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma
HOTAIR	HOX transcript antisense ribonucleic acid

L. Duncan
Department of Oral Biology and Diagnostic Sciences, Dental College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

Department of Biology, College of Science and Mathematics, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

C. Shay
Department of Pediatrics, Emory Children's Center, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Y. Teng (✉)
Department of Oral Biology and Diagnostic Sciences, Dental College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

Georgia Cancer Center, Medical College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA
e-mail: yteng@augusta.edu

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_7

HuR	Human antigen R
lncRNA	Long non-coding RNA
MALAT1	Metastasis-associated lung adenocarcinoma transcript 1
MAP	Mitogen-activated protein
MEK	Mitogen-activated protein kinase
miRNA	MicroRNA
mRNA	Messenger RNA
NAMA	Mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway and growth arrest
ncRNA	Non-coding RNA
NKILA	NF-κB interacting lncRNA
Raf	Rapidly accelerated fibrosarcoma
rRNA	Ribosomal RNA
sncRNA	Small non-coding RNA
tRNA	Transfer RNA

7.1 Introduction

The human body is a large and complex system that needs a precise set of directions to function properly. The genetic code that manages the body comes from DNA, and the process to make and replicate DNA is intense and complicated, and made up of many molecular stages. A key molecule used in this process is RNA, of which there are many different types. The three main types of RNA are messenger (mRNA), transfer (tRNA), and ribosomal RNA (rRNA). In a process known as transcription, DNA is transcribed into mRNA. The mRNA is then translated using tRNAs to make amino acid sequences known as peptide chains. Some genes, however, do not code for proteins. These genes result in a transcript known as a non-coding RNA (ncRNA). The ncRNAs are broken into two classes known as small ncRNAs (sncRNAs) and long ncRNAs (lncRNAs). Further subdivision of sncRNAs results in more classes of ncRNAs with one of the main types being the microRNAs (miRNAs). If the RNA is made up of 20–25 nucleotides, it is considered as miRNA. If the RNA is made up of 200 nucleotides or more, it is considered as a lncRNA [1–5]. In research, miRNAs are currently under intensive study as they are important regulators of the stability and expression of intracellular mRNAs. With many researchers examining miRNAs for possible therapeutic treatments for cancer, this has sparked research on lncRNAs. The function of lncRNAs is not fully understood, but these molecules are known to play a major role in inhibition and activation of many genes. Because previous research has exemplified the importance of ncRNAs, the lncRNA class is currently being studied in connection with human diseases, especially cancer.

7.2 Structure and Characteristics of lncRNAs

Generally, lncRNA is made up of 200 nucleotides or more and does not encode proteins. More than 98% of the genes transcribed are non-coding [1, 6–11]. While the exact function is unknown, evidence has shown the importance of lncRNA in splicing, imprinting, transcription, translation, cell cycle regulation, and apoptosis. These lncRNA are also suggested to play a part in cancer and other human diseases [12–14]. Structurally, an lncRNA molecule consists of a 3′ polyadenylated tail and a 5′ cap [1, 7]. Due to the abundance of lncRNA transcripts, a classification system has been created. Based on the location and context of the genome, the effect on DNA sequences, the mechanism of functioning, and the target mechanism, lncRNAs can be categorized [1–4, 15]. There are two classifications for the location of the gene called intergenic and intronic. Intergenic refers to an lncRNA that is between two coding regions. Intronic refers to an lncRNA that is transcribed from introns only. Similar to the location, the context also subdivides lncRNA into two categories known as sense and antisense. Sense lncRNAs are transcribed from the sense strand of protein encoding genes and contain exons. These may overlap with part or all of the protein encoding genes. Conversely, antisense lncRNA is transcribed from the antisense strand of protein encoding genes. It has been discovered that lncRNAs are involved in transcriptional regulation, and therefore they are also classified based on how they interact with DNA, known as *cis*- and *trans*-lncRNAs. The *cis*-

lncRNAs help regulate expression of genes that are close by. The *trans*-lncRNAs help regulate expression of genes that are further away. The mechanism of functioning for the lncRNA transcripts falls into three groups including transcriptional regulation, post-transcriptional regulation, and other forms of regulation [1, 16]. Both transcriptional and post- transcriptional regulation can be further subdivided based on how the regulation is occurring. The third classification for the mechanism of functioning is made up of unknowns. There are no subgroups, because there is not enough available information to classify these lncRNAs other than via the mechanisms of functioning. The last group of classification is target mechanisms, and there are four types known as signal, decoy, guide, and scaffold. Signal targeting mechanisms refer to specific expression based on cell type. Decoy mechanisms bind and move different protein targets as their only function. Proteins that are bound and directed to specific target regions are under control of guided target mechanisms. Lastly, proteins that are gathered are done so through scaffold target mechanisms which serve as a central platform. Further details regarding these classifications discussed above are given in Table 7.1. It is important to note that these classifications exist only through current knowledge of the subject and are expected to change as more information is gathered [17].

Table 7.1 Categorization and functions of lncRNAs

Category	Sub-category	Functions
Location and context of the genome	Intergenic lncRNA	Transcribed between coding regions
	Intronic lncRNA Sense lncRNA Antisense lncRNA	Transcribed from introns Transcribed from sense strand Transcribed from antisense strand
The effect on DNA sequences	Cis lncRNA	Regulates genes close
	Trans lncRNA	Regulates genes far
The mechanism of functioning	Transcriptional lncRNA	
	Post-transcriptional lncRNA	
	Other lncRNA	
The target mechanism	Signal lncRNA Decoy lncRNA Guide lncRNA Scaffold lncRNA	Regulates transcription in response to stimuli Binds and moves targets Directs proteins to targets Serves as central platform

7.3 lncRNAs Associated with Tumorigenesis and Development of Head and Neck Cancer (HNC)

With 98.5% of the human genome consisting of ncRNA, of which tens of thousands are of the lncRNA subtype, there are a multitude of studies being conducted on their potential roles. The new found discovery of lncRNA in the initiation and progression [18–22] of HNC has led to the idea of using them as a new treatment that may provide a better prognosis for patients. Due to the abundance of lncRNAs, there are numerous lncRNAs that are known to function in head and neck tumorigenesis, with more being discovered. There are many types of cancers that fall into the HNC category [23, 24]. The most prevalent subset of these is head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC). This includes cancers found in the lining of the upper digestive tract including the throat, nose, and mouth regions. These cancers have been found to have a correlation with multiple lncRNAs including HOX transcript antisense RNA (HOTAIR), H19 imprinted maternally expressed transcript (H19), and HNSCC glycolysis-associated 1 (HNGA1) [25, 26]. HOTAIR was seen to be expressed at very high levels in HNSCC when compared to normal tissues [27–29]. It was discovered that a reduction in the HOTAIR levels leads to cell death and slow tumor development. H19 is also seen to be expressed highly in HNSCC and leads to a higher invasive capacity as well as a higher rate of tumor recurrence. HNGA1 is involved in

the process of glycolysis and increases cancer cell proliferation. Regulation of these three lncRNAs may offer a treatment for HNSCC via knockdown of the genes. It has been shown that knockdown of all three of these lncRNAs resulted in poor proliferation, migration, and invasion of HNSCC cells [18, 30–32]. Thyroid cancer has associated lncRNAs as well, partially overlapping with those of HNSCC. For example, HOTAIR has also been seen to function in thyroid cancer along with BRAF-activated ncRNA (BANCR) and non-protein coding RNA, associated with MAP kinase pathway and growth arrest (NAMA). BANCR has been shown to be upregulated in thyroid cancer cells in comparison with healthy tissue, and apoptosis was found to be induced by the reduction of BANCR expression, although there was no effect of this on cell migration [18]. Other evidence shows conflicting data suggesting unknown factors may be involved in the regulation of BANCR expression in thyroid cancer. NAMA, closely related to BANCR, has been found to be downregulated in thyroid cancer. In addition, NAMA expression was found to be stimulated by reduced BRAF expression, inactivation of the MAP pathway, or DNA damage. These changes lead to activation of the proto-oncogene serine/threonine-protein kinase/mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase (MEK)/extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) signaling pathway known to regulate cell growth and differentiation [18]. Therefore, the activation of this pathway is a potential target for future treatment of thyroid cancer, and further research in this area should help to confirm this.

7.4 lncRNAs Associated with Invasion and Metastasis of HNC

Metastasis is partially responsible for the relapse and poor prognosis [1] of HNC. Recently the discovery of the role of lncRNAs in mediating metastasis has led to possible future advances for treatment of HNC. Multiple lncRNAs have been studied specifically for their effects on metastasis in HNC including metastasis associated lung adenocarcinoma transcript 1 (MALAT1), HOTAIR, and NF-κB interacting lncRNA (NKILA) [33–36]. It has also been suggested that the lncRNAs could function by working in tandem with their corresponding mRNAs [1]. To understand how lncRNAs aid in the process of metastasis, the mechanisms underlying metastasis must first be understood. Epithelial mesenchymal transitions (EMT) are important for cancer cells to metastasize [37–43]. In this process, epithelial cells transition to resemble the mesenchymal phenotype. This allows the cancer cells to migrate, proliferate, and differentiate into specific tissues and organs since mesenchymal cells do not have a specialized function [41–48]. By traveling through the lymph nodes and bloodstream, these cells choose the best environment for proliferation based on the ability to obtain the best nutrition. MALAT1 has been studied for its role in metastasis based on its ability to aid HNC cells to undergo EMT and invade other tissues [1, 49]. It was seen that when MALAT1 was inhibited, the EMT of HNC cells was altered. One possibility for this change is thought to be the inactivation of β-catenin and NF-κB pathways. These pathways are regulators of EMT, so as they are inhibited, a chain reaction effect is seen in the modification of EMT [1, 33, 36, 49]. In this case, it was also seen that two EMT markers, N-cadherin and vimentin, in MALAT1 were knocked down in HNC cells [1, 33, 36, 49]. Several studies have provided evidence that the knockdown of MALAT1 in HNC could impair migration of the cancer. HOTAIR is another lncRNA that is being studied in its effects of cancer metastasis [1, 35, 50, 51]. Studies have shown several ways by which HOTAIR influences HNC metastasis. Recently it has been indicated that HOTAIR functions in EMT by decreasing E-cadherin levels. Other studies have shown that a knockdown in HOTAIR decreased the invasiveness of HNC significantly. Aside from other regulation responsibilities, HOTAIR has also been suggested to work in a regulatory loop progressing metastasis in correspondence with the RNA-binding protein Hu antigen R (HuR) [52]. HuR is an RNA binding protein that works to stabilize mRNA to better regulate gene expression. Unlike

Table 7.2 Known lncRNAs involved in HNC metastasis

lncRNA	HNC subtypes
HOTAIR	NPC, OSCC, LSCC
H19	NPC, LSCC
MALAT1	NPC
ANRIL	NPC
ROR	NPC
AFAP1-AS1	NPC
LET	NPC
LINC0086	NPC
LOC401317	NPC
PTENP1	OSCC
UCA1	OSCC
FOXCUT	OSCC
FTH1P3	OSCC
TUG1	OSCC
NEAT1	LSCC
PVT1	LSCC
LOC157273	LSCC

HNC head and neck cancer, *NPC* nasopharyngeal carcinoma, *OSCC* oral squamous cell carcinoma, *LSCC* laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma

MALAT1 and HOTAIR, NKILA suppresses metastasis. In addition, NKILA is being studied for its negative regulation of HNC and its function as a poor prognosis indicator [1]. It has been seen that the levels of NKILA are lower in HNC then in unaffected cells and normal tissue. The knockdown of NKILA actually resulted in the increased metastasis of HNC, confirming the negative correlation. These three lncRNAs are not alone in their regulation of metastasis. They are aided by multiple other lncRNAs shown in Table 7.2.

7.5 lncRNAs Associated with Treatment Resistance in HNC

While new therapies are being discovered as possible targets for HNC patients, there is also the concern of maintaining oral function [53]. In order to protect the functionality of patients, numerous therapies have been used in combination including chemotherapy and radiotherapy. The drugs frequently used in both chemotherapy and radiotherapy are known as antineoplastic drugs, which act to inhibit or stop the development of tumors. Combination therapies can lead to what is known as multiple drug resistance (MDR) leading to the resistance to non-structurally related drugs as well. Factors that have been linked to resistance include the ATP-binding cassette transporter (ABC) and cancer stem cells (CSCs). A gene known as *ABCB1*, or *MDR1*, produces P-glycoprotein (P-gp) which is known to be an ABC transporter associated with MDR. P-gp has been known to provide resistance in HNC. In one experiment, cell lines were treated with a drug known as doxorubicin. After treatment with this drug for 3 months, the cells were seen to be resistant. The overexpression of P-gp has been suggested to increase resistance more than 100 times greater than in normal cells [53–56]. While the process causing the expression of P-gp is unknown, recently it was demonstrated that P-gp is transferred between cells via micro-vesicles. However, this occurrence has yet to be seen specifically in HNC. Cancer stem cells aid tumors to maintain growth and recur in patients through renewing and preserving themselves. CSCs are recognized in HNSCC by the increased expression of the cell surface adhesion receptor, CD44. The ability of the cancer stem cells to alter their phenotype shows the relationship to EMT. It is seen that molecules important in the process of EMT are associated with poor prognosis. It has been theorized that the relationship between EMT and CSCs are a critical cause for the resistance to antineoplastic treatments.

7.6 Prognostic Role of lncRNAs in HNC

Some lncRNAs have been found to be associated with the prognosis of HNC. By analyzing a group of HNC patients and creating a model to identify specific lncRNAs, it has been suggested that five individual lncRNAs can be used to predict prognosis of HNSCC patients postoperatively [54]. This model also accounted for the co-expression of genes and lncRNAs, to serve as a final confirmation of prognosis. A risk score was calculated and this showed that as the mortality risk increased so did the risk score. Conversely, as the risk score

increased the expression of the five lncRNAs being studied decreased. The lncRNAs identified to be an indicator of prognosis are RP11-180M15.7, RP11-197N18.2, AC021188.4, RP11-474D1.3, and RP11-347C18.5. Not only are these lncRNAs closely associated with HNSCC but they are also involved in many cellular pathways associated with cancer proliferation.

Other studies showed similar results with more lncRNAs having prognostic value. For example, poor survival was seen in patients with over-expression of RP11-366H4.1, HOTTIP, RP11-865I6.2, and RP11-275N1.1 [55]. These lncRNAs differ from those previously mentioned, in that their over-expression correlates with a poor prognosis. While miRNAs have been studied in the past, they have not been studied in combination with lncRNAs. A risk score was developed for the performance of lncRNA, miRNA, and mRNA. Patients with a high risk score were also seen to have a worse survival than those with a low risk score. Success in predicting lncRNA, miRNA, and mRNA interactions may reveal much needed new information on HNSCC [55].

7.7 Conclusions

HNC is characterized by a poor prognosis due to the late-stage diagnosis and the aggressive nature of this form of cancer [57]. Improvements have been made in medical techniques, although about 50% of HNC diagnoses are still advanced cases. The treatments including surgical procedures, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy have all significantly improved as well. However, the 5-year survival rate of patients with advanced HNC does not reflect the most recent advances in detection and treatment. Increasing studies have demonstrated that lncRNAs play key roles in tumorigenesis and tumor progression, leading to abnormal signaling transduction, immune escape, and cellular metabolic rewiring. By better understanding lncRNAs and applying novel technologies (e.g., a new generation of gene-editing tools and effective tumor-seeking drug delivery systems) to target cancer-associated lncRNAs, there may be more hope for treatment of HNC patients. Currently, the research is still in its early stages and has large barriers to overcome, although great promise has been shown in using lncRNAs as both compelling indicators and targets for HNC.

Acknowledgments This work was supported in part by NIH grant (R03DE028387 and R01DE028351), Augusta University CURS Summer Scholars, and the Department of Medicine's Translational Research Program.

Competing interests: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

References

1. Lou X, Qiu Y, Jiang Y, Chen F, Jiang L, Zhou Y et al (2018) Long non-coding RNA implicated in the invasion and metastasis of head and neck cancer: possible function and mechanisms. Mol Cancer 17(1):14. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12943-018-0763-7
2. Derrien T, Johnson R, Bussotti G, Tanzer A, Djebali S, Tilgner H et al (2012) The GENCODE v7 catalog of human long noncoding RNAs: analysis of their gene structure, evolution, and expression. Genome Res 22(9):1775–1789
3. Wang KC, Chang HY (2011) Molecular mechanisms of long noncoding RNAs. Mol Cell 43(6):904–914
4. Mattick JS, Rinn JL (2015) Discovery and annotation of long noncoding RNAs. Nat Struct Mol Biol 22(1):5–7
5. Guttman M, Rinn JL (2012) Modular regulatory principles of large non-coding RNAs. Nature 482(7385):339–346
6. Schmitz SU, Grote P, Herrmann B (2016) Mechanisms of long noncoding RNA function in development and disease. Cell Mol Life Sci 73(13):2491–2509
7. Hon C-C, Ramilowski JA, Harshbarger J, Bertin N, Rackham OJ, Gough J et al (2017) An atlas of human long non-coding RNAs with accurate 5′ ends. Nature 543(7644):199–204
8. Ponting CP, Oliver PL, Reik W (2009) Evolution and functions of long noncoding RNAs. Cell 136(4):629–641
9. Yao Y, Chen X, Lu S, Zhou C, Xu G, Yan Z et al (2018) Circulating long noncoding RNAs as biomarkers for predicting head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Cell Physiol Biochem 50(4):1429–1440
10. Boland R (2017) Non-coding RNA: It's NOt Junk. Dig Dis Sci 62(5):1107–1109
11. Fatica A, Bozzoni I (2014) Long non-coding RNAs: new players in cell differentiation and development. Nat Rev Genet 15(1):7–21
12. Chen G, Wang Z, Wang D, Qiu C, Liu M, Chen X et al (2013) LncRNADisease: a database for long-non-coding RNA-associated diseases. Nucleic Acids

Res 41(Database issue):D983–D986. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks1099
13. Quek XC, Thomson DW, Maag JL, Bartonicek N, Signal B, Clark MB et al (2015) lncRNAdb v2.0: expanding the reference database for functional long noncoding RNAs. Nucleic Acids Res 43(Database issue):D168–D173. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gku988
14. Uszczynska-Ratajczak B, Lagarde J, Frankish A, Guigo R, Johnson R (2018) Towards a complete map of the human long non-coding RNA transcriptome. Nat Rev Genet 19(9):535–548
15. Ma L, Bajic VB, Zhang Z (2013) On the classification of long non-coding RNAs. RNA Biol 10(6):925–933
16. Dykes IM, Emanueli C (2017) Transcriptional and post-transcriptional gene regulation by long non-coding RNA. Genomics Proteomics Bioinformatics 15(3):177–186
17. Bartonicek N, Maag JL, Dinger ME (2016) Long non-coding RNAs in cancer: mechanisms of action and technological advancements. Mol Cancer 15(1):43. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12943-016-0530-6
18. Song W, Sun Y, Lin J, Bi X (2017) Current research on head and neck cancer- associated long noncoding RNAs. Oncotarget 9(1):1403–1425
19. Kang H, Kiess A, Chung CH (2015) Emerging biomarkers in head and neck cancer in the era of genomics. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 12(1):11–26
20. Yang QQ, Deng YF (2014) Long non-coding RNAs as novel biomarkers and therapeutic targets in head and neck cancers. Int J Clin Exp Pathol 7(4):1286–1292
21. Luo Y, Morgan SL, Wang KC (2016) PICSAR: long noncoding RNA in cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma. J Invest Dermatol 136(8):1701–1710
22. Hedberg ML, Goh G, Chiosea SI, Bauman JE, Freilino ML, Zeng Y et al (2016) Genetic landscape of metastatic and recurrent head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. J Clin Investig 126(1):169–180
23. Leemans CR, Braakhuis BJ, Brakenhoff RH (2011) The molecular biology of head and neck cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 11(1):9–22
24. Marur S, Forastiere AA (2016) Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: update on epidemiology, diagnosis, and treatment. Mayo Clin Proc 91(3):386–396
25. Rahimy E, Kuo SZ, Ongkeko WM (2014) Evaluation of non-coding RNAs as potential targets in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cancer stem cells. Curr Drug Targets 15(13):1247–1260
26. Gibb EA, Brown CJ, Lam WL (2011) The functional role of long non-coding RNA in human carcinomas. Mol Cancer 10:38. https://doi.org/10.1186/1476-4598-10-38
27. Li D, Feng J, Wu T, Wang Y, Sun Y, Ren J, Liu M (2013) Long intergenic noncoding RNA HOTAIR is overexpressed and regulates PTEN methylation in laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Am J Pathol 182(1):64–70
28. Fatima R, Akhade VS, Pal D, Rao SM (2015) Long noncoding RNAs in development and cancer: potential biomarkers and therapeutic targets. Mol Cell Ther 3:5. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40591-015-0042-6
29. Wang E, Zaman N, Mcgee S, Milanese JS, Masoudi-Nejad A, O'Connor-McCourt M (2015) Predictive genomics: a cancer hallmark network framework for predicting tumor clinical phenotypes using genome sequencing data. Semin Cancer Biol 30:4–12
30. Argiris A, Karamouzis MV, Raben D, Ferris RL (2009) Head and neck cancer. Lancet 371(9625):1695–1709
31. Kuang J, Zhao M, Li H, Dang W, Li W (2016) Identification of potential therapeutic target genes and mechanisms in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma by bioinformatics analysis. Oncol Lett 11(5):3009–3014
32. Yang B, Chen Z, Huang Y, Han G, Li W (2017) Identification of potential biomarkers and analysis of prognostic values in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma by bioinformatics analysis. Onco Targets Ther 10:2315–2321
33. Zhou X, Liu S, Cai G, Kong L, Zhang T, Ren Y et al (2015) Long non coding RNA MALAT1 promotes tumor growth and metastasis by inducing epithelial-mesenchymal transition in oral squamous cell carcinoma. Sci Rep 5:15972. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep15972
34. Sethi N, Kang Y (2011) Unravelling the complexity of metastasis-molecular understanding and targeted therapies. Nat Rev Cancer 11(10):735–748
35. Wu Y, Zhang L, Zhang L, Wang Y, Li H, Ren X et al (2015) Long non-coding RNA HOTAIR promotes tumor cell invasion and metastasis by recruiting EZH2 and repressing E-cadherin in oral squamous cell carcinoma. Int J Oncol 46(6):2586–2594
36. Xie L, Hu Z, Wang X, Li Z (2013) Expression of long noncoding RNA MALAT1 gene in human nasopharyngeal carcinoma cell lines and its biological significance. Nan Fang Yi Ke Da Xue Xue Bao 33(5):692–697
37. Li J, Lenferink AE, Deng Y, Collins C, Cui Q, Purisima EO et al (2010) Identification of high-quality cancer prognostic markers and metastasis network modules. Nat Commun 1:34. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms1033
38. Dhamija S, Diederichs S (2016) From junk to master regulators of invasion: lncRNA functions in migration, EMT and metastasis. Int J Cancer 139(2):269–280
39. Liang Y, Wu Y, Chen X, Zhang S, Wang K, Guan X et al (2017) A novel long noncoding RNA linc00460 up-regulated by CBP/P300 promotes carcinogenesis in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. Biosci Rep 37(5):BSR20171019. https://doi.org/10.1042/BSR20171019
40. Huang GW, Xue YJ, Wu ZY, Xu XE, Wu JY, Cao HH et al (2018) A three-lncRNA signature predicts overall survival and disease-free survival in patients with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. BMC Cancer 18(1):147. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12885-018-4058-6

41. Kalluri R, Weinberg R (2009) The basics of epithelial-mesenchymal transition. J Clin Invest 119(6):1420–1428
42. Pastushenko I, Blanpain C (2019) EMT transition states during tumor progression and metastasis. Trends Cell Biol 29(3):212–226
43. De Craene B, Berx G (2013) Regulatory networks defining EMT during cancer initiation and progression. Nat Rev Cancer 13(2):97–110
44. Wang L, Yang F, Jia LT, Yang AG (2017) Missing links in epithelial-mesenchymal transition: long noncoding RNAs enter the arena. Cell Physiol Biochem 44(4):1665–1680
45. Liang J, Liang L, Ouyang K, Li Z, Yi X (2107) MALAT1 induces tongue cancer cells' EMT and inhibits apoptosis through Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway. J Oral Pathol Med 46(2):98–105
46. Ye X, Weinberg RA (2015) Epithelial-mesenchymal plasticity: a central regulator of cancer progression. Trends Cell Biol 25(11):675–686
47. Jiang Y, Cao W, Wu K, Qin X, Wang X, Li Y et al (2019) LncRNA LINC00460 promotes EMT in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma by facilitating peroxiredoxin-1 into the nucleus. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 38(1):365. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-019-1364-z
48. Lamouille S, Xu J, Derynck R (2014) Molecular mechanisms of epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 15(3):178–196
49. Hu L, Wu Y, Tan D, Meng H, Wang K, Bai Y et al (2015) Up-regulation of long noncoding RNA MALAT1 contributes to proliferation and metastasis in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 34:7. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13046-015-0123-z
50. Gupta RA, Shah N, Wang KC, Kim J, Horlings HM, Wong DJ et al (2010) Long non-coding RNA HOTAIR reprograms chromatin state to promote cancer metastasis. Nature 464(7291):1071–1076
51. Zhao G, Fu Y, Su Z, Wu R (2018) How long noncoding RNAs and MicroRNAs mediate the endogenous RNA network of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: a comprehensive analysis. Cell Physiol Biochem 50(1):332–341
52. Xu CZ, Jiang C, Wu Q, Liu L, Yan X, Shi R (2016) A feed-forward regulatory loop between HuR and the long noncoding RNA HOTAIR promotes head and neck squamous cell carcinoma progression and metastasis. Cell Physiol Biochem 40(5):1039–1051
53. López-Verdín S, Lavalle-Carrasco J, Carreón-Burciaga RG, Serafín-Higuera N, Molina-Frechero N, González-González R et al (2018) Molecular markers of anticancer drug resistance in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: a literature review. Cancers (Basel) 10(10):E376. https://doi.org/10.3390/cancers10100376
54. Liu G, Zheng J, Zhuang L, Lv Y, Zhu G, Pi L et al (2018) A prognostic 5-lncRNA expression signature for head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Sci Rep 8(1):15250. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-018-33642-1
55. Pan Y, Liu G, Wang D, Li Y (2019) Analysis of lncRNA-mediated ceRNA crosstalk and identification of prognostic signature in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Front Pharmacol 10:150. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2019.00150
56. Li W, Notani D, Rosenfeld MG (2016) Enhancers as non-coding RNA transcription units: recent insights and future perspectives. Nat Rev Genet 17(4):207–223
57. HeroiuCataloiu AD, Danciu CE, Popescu CR (2013) Multiple cancers of the head and neck. Maedica (Buchar) 8(1):80–85

8

A Systematic Review on the Genotoxic Effects of Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors

Mahnaz Ahmadimanesh, Mohammad Reza Abbaszadegan, Narges Hedayati, Rezvan Yazdian-Robati, Tannaz Jamialahmadi, and Amirhossein Sahebkar

Abstract

Depression is a mental disorder and a major public health concern affecting millions of people worldwide. It is a common disorder that has been associated with several medical comorbidities often linked with aging, such as dementia, type II diabetes, cardiovascular and cerebrovascular diseases, as well as metabolic syndrome. There are a variety of medications available for depression treatment. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are one of the antidepressant drug classes that are most widely used to treat depressive disorders and depressive symptoms in other diseases. Due to many contradictory findings on the adverse effects and toxicities of SSRIs (especially genotoxicities), we reviewed the genotoxic

M. Ahmadimanesh
Department of Pharmacodynamics and Toxicology, School of Pharmacy, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Food and Drug Vice Presidency, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

M. R. Abbaszadegan
Immunology Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Medical Genetics Research Center, Faculty of Medical Sciences, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

N. Hedayati
Department of Pharmacodynamics and Toxicology, School of Pharmacy, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

R. Yazdian-Robati (✉)
Molecular and Cell biology Research Center, Faculty of Medicine, Mazandaran University of Medical Sciences, Sari, Iran
e-mail: R.yazdian@mazums.ac.ir

T. Jamialahmadi
Department of Food Science and Technology, Quchan Branch, Islamic Azad University, Quchan, Iran

Department of Nutrition, Faculty of Medicine, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

A. Sahebkar (✉)
Biotechnology Research Center, Pharmaceutical Technology Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Neurogenic Inflammation Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Polish Mothers Memorial Hospital Research Institute (PMMHRI), Mashhad, Iran

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_8

effects of these drugs. Based on the guidelines proposed in the PRISMA statement, we performed a systematic review by searching international electronic databases including PubMed, Scopus, Embase, and Web of Science to find the published documents on SSRIs and their genotoxic effects from January 1990 to November 2019. After the removal of 203 duplicate articles, 385 articles were screened and 167 articles met the inclusion criteria and qualified for evaluation of their full texts. After this, 26 articles were appropriate for final review. This revealed that the proportion of genotoxicities was highest for citalopram and fluoxetine, with a smaller proportion for sertraline. Limited documentations showed genotoxic and partial genotoxic effects for paroxetine and escitalopram, respectively. Although a number of studies have found genotoxic effects of SSRIs, there are also some factors including doses, duration of exposure, model of experiments, and the type of technique assay that may affect the results.

Keywords

Antidepressants · SSRIs · DNA damage · Genotoxicity

8.1 Introduction

Depression, as a heterogeneous disorder, usually appears late in life and often co-occurs with serious comorbid medical conditions especially those seen more typically with advanced age such as cardiovascular and cerebrovascular diseases, type II diabetes, stroke, osteoporosis, and neurodegenerative diseases [1]. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are a class of antidepressant drugs, introduced in the late 1980s and prescribed in the treatment and management of different forms of psychiatric disorders [2]. The five SSRIs, including citalopram, fluvoxamine, fluoxetine, paroxetine, and sertraline, are currently marketed in many countries around the world. SSRIs increase the level of serotonin in the brain by inhibiting the uptake of this neurotransmitter into nerve terminals which relieves depression symptoms [3, 4]. The favorable safety profiles of these drugs support their widespread and long-term use [5]. Among the several adverse effects of SSRIs, genotoxic and carcinogenic reactions are among the most severe. Interactions between toxic agents and DNA can lead to gene mutation, recombination, chromosomal damage, or aneuploidy which, if not properly repaired, may cause different diseases including cancer, malignancies, cardiovascular diseases, and aging [6, 7], as well as alterations in heritable traits and impaired reproductive capacity [8].

For these reasons, it is vital to carefully evaluate the genotoxic risk of SSRI antidepressants [9, 10]. Some experimental studies on bacteria, molds, and mammalian cells have been conducted to evaluate substance-induced genetic damage and their interactions with DNA at low concentrations [11]. Due to widespread application of SSRIs and their controversial effects on genetic material, we designed this review to further assess the DNA toxicity of these compounds. To our knowledge, this is the first systematic review on this topic. Due to extensive consumption of these medications worldwide, the results of this review should receive widespread interest.

8.2 Methods

This review was conducted based on previous published articles on genotoxic effects of SSRIs according to the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-analyses (PRISMA) guidelines [12].

8.2.1 Literature Search Strategy

Data for this systematic review were obtained through a comprehensive literature search of publications in the electronic databases consisting of PubMed, Scopus, Embase, and Web of Science from January 1990 until November 2019.

The keywords for our database search included "SSRI" and "genotoxicity" or "DNA damage."

8.2.2 Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria

All articles were evaluated by two independent investigators. Only studies written in English were reviewed. At first, the titles and abstracts were screened, and this was followed by full-text screening. The inclusion criteria were all published original articles with the abovementioned keywords, sufficient information, and studies with full-text articles. Additionally, studies with poor quality or without consistent, non-related articles, review articles, case reports, editorials, conference papers, letters to the editor, and non-related abstracts were excluded (Fig. 8.1).

8.2.3 Data Extraction

For a systematic review of literature, critical information including authors' names, models of experiments, technique assays, drug names, and outcomes were independently extracted from each study.

8.3 Results

8.3.1 Literature Search

The detailed explanation process of study selection is illustrated in Fig. 8.1. Initially, the searching of the above databases between 1990 and 2019 retrieved 755 records and 203 duplicate articles were removed. After screening all articles, 167 articles met the inclusion criteria and qualified for full-text evaluation. Subsequently, studies with missing data or those with inconsistent inclusion criteria were excluded. Finally, 26 of these articles were considered appropriate and reviewed in detail. A summary of the main characteristics of the qualified studies included in this review is given in Table 8.1.

8.3.2 Citalopram

In a study performed by Franco and colleagues, the possible genotoxic effects of citalopram in *Aspergillus nidulans* were examined. The results showed that nontoxic concentrations of citalopram (50, 75 and 100 μmol /L) could induce a recombinogenic effect in *A. nidulans* [13]. In the treated group, the homozygotization index (HI) rates were higher than 2.0 and significantly different compared to control ones. The authors claimed that the recombinogenic potential of citalopram may be related to the recombinational repair. In mice given 12 or 24 mg/kg of citalopram orally for 7 days, significant DNA strand breaking and micronuclei formation were observed. Moreover, the fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) analysis showed aneugenic and clastogenic effects on somatic cells [14]. Gürbüzel et al. employed the somatic mutation and recombination test (SMART) to observe the genotoxicity of citalopram and sertraline in two *Drosophila melanogaster* strains. SMART is a sensitive in vivo assay based on the loss of heterozygosity, which may happen through different mechanisms such as mitotic recombination. Although citalopram showed a genotoxic effect in *Drosophila*, sertraline did not show such an effect [15]. Attia and Bakheet tested the genotoxic effects of citalopram at multiple doses (6, 12, and 24 mg/kg/day, the recommended human doses) on germ cells of male mice. Their finding of increased sperm DNA strand breaks and the frequency of aberrant primary spermatocytes at the 12 and the 24 mg/kg/day dose suggested that citalopram is genotoxic after long-term treatment in germ cells of mice [9]. In addition, in 2017 Ilgin et al. showed a significant increase (44.8%) in sperm DNA damage in citalopram-administrated rats by using the single-cell gel electrophoresis comet assay® [16]. Magni and coworkers assessed the genotoxicity of two antidepressants frequently found in the aquatic

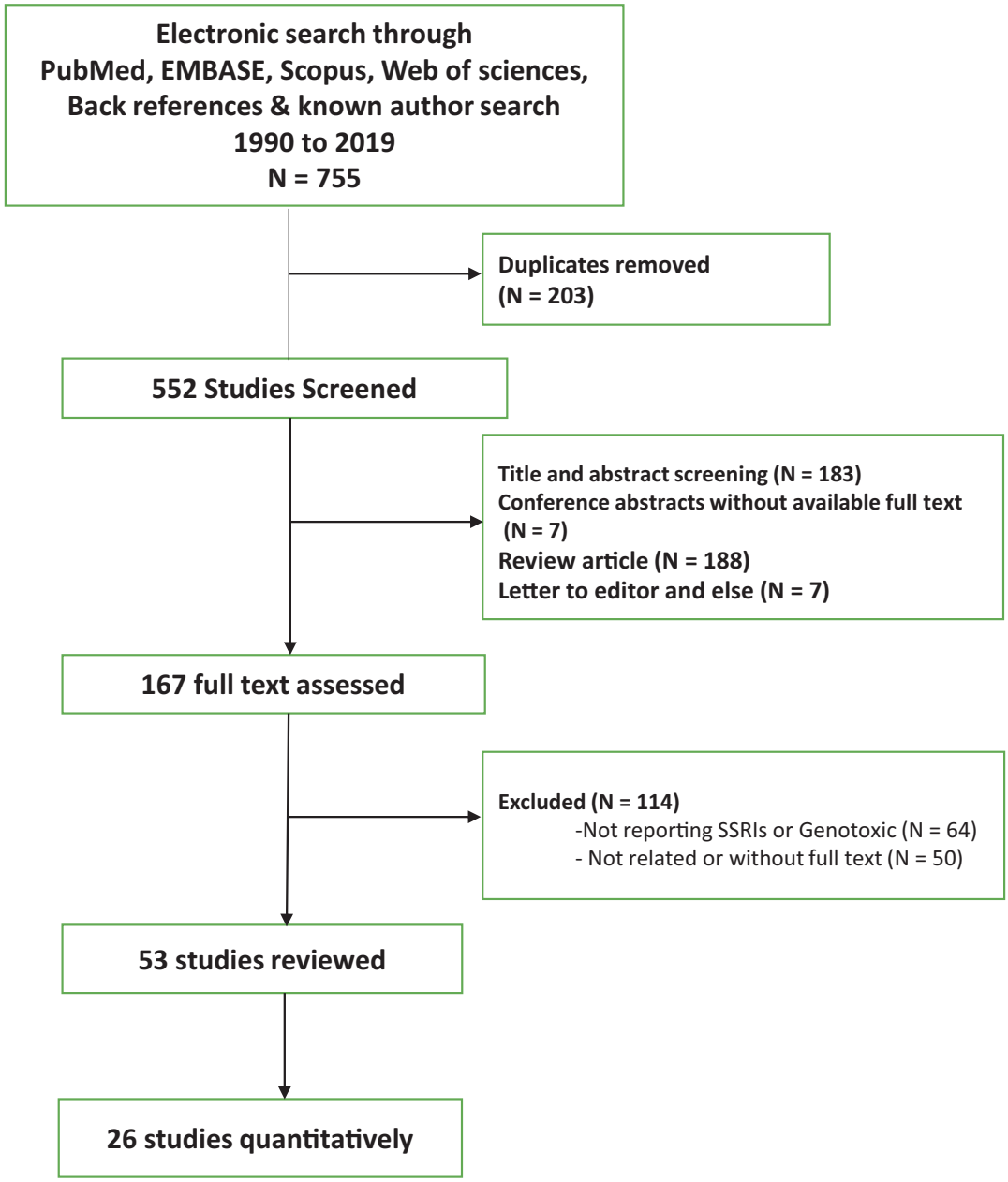


Fig. 8.1 Diagram showing the study selection protocol

environment (fluoxetine and citalopram) on *Dreissena polymorpha* using single-cell gel electrophoresis assay, DNA diffusion assay, and micronucleus (MN) testing. In this study, *polymorpha* specimens were exposed to fluoxetine and citalopram alone and in combination at the environmental concentration of 500 ng/L for 14 days. The obtained results revealed that fluoxetine, citalopram, and their combination did not cause evident damage to this organism [17].

Table 8.1 Details of included studies

Drugs names	Authors' names	Models	Technique assay	Outcomes
Citalopram	Franco et al. (2010) [49]	*Aspergillus nidulans*	Mitotic recombination	Genotoxic
	Gürbüzel et al. (2012) [50]	*Drosophila melanogaster*	Somatic mutation and recombination	Genotoxic (somatic mutagen)
	Magni et al. (2016) [17]	*Dreissena polymorpha*	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Attia et al. (2013) [14]	In vivo	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Attia et al. (2013) [9]	In vivo (germ cell-sperm)	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Ilgin et al. (2017) [16]	Human (sperm)	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Ahmadimanesh et al. (2019) [51]	Human	Comet assay	Non-genotoxic
Escitalopram	Cobanoglu et al. (2018) [18]	In vitro	SCE/comet assay/ micronucleus	Potentially genotoxic
Fluoxetine	Jin et al. (2018) [52]	E.coli	Ames	Mutagen
	Maranho et al. (2015) [53]	Ampelisca brevicornis	Alkaline precipitation assay	Genotoxic
	Magni et al. (2016) [17]	*Dreissena polymorpha*	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Maranho et al. (2014) [54]	*Polychaete Hediste diversicolor*	DNA damage strand	Genotoxic
	Cortez et al. (2019) [55]	*Perna perna*	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Ofoegbu et al. (2019) [23]	*Schmidtea mediterranea*	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Slamon et al. (2001) [19]	In vitro	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Lacaze et al. (2015) [28]	In vitro	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Wieczerzak et al. (2018) [56]	In vitro	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Djordjevic et al. (2011) [27]	In vivo	DNA fragment assay	Genotoxic
	Alzahrani et al. (2012) [20]	In vivo	SCE (bone marrow cells)	Genotoxic
	Dusman et al. (2014) [21]	In vivo/plant	Chromosome aberration	Non genotoxic or mutagen
	Elmorsy et al. (2017) [32]	In vivo	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Safarinejad. (2008) [26]	Human (sperm)	SCSA	Genotoxic
Paroxetine	Lacaze et al. (2015) [28]	In vitro	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Tanrikut et al. (2010) [25]	Human (sperm)	Tunel assay	Genotoxic
Sertraline	Davies et al. (1998) [57]	In vivo/In vitro	Ames	Non-genotoxic
	Gürbüzel et al. (2012) [50]	*Drosophila melanogaster*	Somatic mutation and recombination	Non-genotoxic
	Elmorsy et al. (2017) [32]	In vivo	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Battal et al. (2013) [58]	In vivo	Micronucleus/comet assay	Non- genotoxic
	Atli et al. (2017) [59]	Human (sperm)	Comet assay	Genotoxic
	Bozkurt et al. (2004) [60]	Human	CA/SCE/HFC	Genotoxic
	Ahmadimanesh et al (2019) [51]	Human	Comet assay	Non- genotoxic

8.3.3 Escitalopram

Escitalopram, a member of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, increases significantly the SCE at 5 and 10 mg/mL. No statistically significant increase was reported by authors regarding DNA damage or MN formation [18].

8.3.4 Fluoxetine

Slamon et al. assessed the effects of acute exposure of fluoxetine on DNA damage in C6 glioma cells using an alkaline comet assay. They showed that the comet tail moment values increased in C6 cells with increasing concentrations of antidepressant drugs. Exposure to fluoxetine at 1 μM or 5 μM for 24 h showed the most DNA damage [19]. Alzahrani et al. assessed the effects of fluoxetine on genotoxic damage in somatic and germ cells. Sister chromatid exchanges (SCEs) and sperm abnormalities in mice were evaluated. The results indicated that oral administration of fluoxetine at 2.6, 7.8, and 13.0 mg/kg concentrations for 35 days increased the times of SCE and enhanced sperm abnormalities. Moreover, a dose-dependent reduction in sperm count and motility was observed. As a result, fluoxetine showed an in vivo genotoxic effect [20]. Using two model systems consisting of *Allium cepa* L. root meristem cells and Wistar rat bone marrow cells, Düsman et al. studied the cytotoxicity and mutagenicity of fluoxetine hydrochloride. They showed fluoxetine with or without concomitant vitamin A or C treatment was only cytotoxic to *A. cepa* cells. Wistar rats treated intraperitoneally or by oral gavage demonstrated no cytotoxic or mutagenic potential of the drug [21]. For the first time, the genotoxicity of fluoxetine in varying environmental conditions on the human adenocarcinoma cancer HT29 cell line was examined by Wieczerzak and colleagues. They found that environmental conditions such as low pH led to a synergistic increase in the DNA damage caused by fluoxetine [22]. The genotoxic effects of fluoxetine in the planarian *Schmidtea mediterranea* were tested by Ofoegbua et al., with the results confirming that fluoxetine caused DNA damage [23]. A recent study used an alkaline precipitation assay to examine the cytogenotoxic effects of fluoxetine in the tropical brown mussel *P. perna*. The authors concluded that fluoxetine causes DNA damage in *P. perna* mussels [24]. In another study, semen parameters of 74 fertile men diagnosed with depression and taking SSRIs were compared with those of healthy volunteers. In addition, physical examinations were performed on all participants. Lower sperm counts, lower motility, more abnormal sperm morphology, as well as more DNA damage were found in men taking SSRIs. Another study revealed abnormal DNA fragmentation in sperm in a significant proportion of human patients caused by paroxetine [25]. Safarinejad used a sperm chromatin structure technique and observed impairment in all semen parameters and enhanced sperm DNA damage in patients who were already receiving citalopram, escitalopram, fluoxetine, paroxetine, and sertraline for more than 6 months [26]. Djordjevic et al. reported augmented apoptotic signaling and DNA fragmentation in male rats after treatment with fluoxetine for 21 days. The authors investigated the possibility that DNA fragmentation under fluoxetine treatment may be due to a greater decrease in Bcl-2 expression than an increase in Bax [27]. In either case, this would lead to a shift in the balance toward increased apoptosis.

8.3.5 Fluvoxamine

No document is available for the genotoxic effect of fluvoxamine.

8.3.6 Paroxetine

Lacaze et al., using the comet assay, studied the effects of fluoxetine and paroxetine on blue mussel (*Mytilus edulis*) hemocytes. It was found that paroxetine and fluoxetine (at a dose of 15 and 10 mg/L, respectively) led to DNA damage genotoxicity, immunotoxicity, and cytotoxicity [28].

8.3.7 Sertraline

In 1998 Davies and Kluwe evaluated the toxic effects of sertraline in rats, mice, rabbits, and dogs using an extensive battery of tests for chromosomal aberrations (CAs), sister chromatid exchanges (SCEs), and frequency of SCEs (HFC). While genotoxic assays were negative in treated rats compared with non-treated controls, the number of benign liver tumors was slightly enhanced in sertraline-treated male mice. Consequently, the results of these studies supported the use of sertraline in humans with a low risk [29]. Bozkurt and colleagues studied the genotoxic effect of sertraline and did not detect a statistically significant alteration between SCE and CA frequency tests and the levels of HFC in studied peripheral lymphocytes of sertraline-treated (50 mg daily for 10 months to 1 year) and non-treated patient groups [30]. Battle et al. assessed the genotoxic potential of sertraline in peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLs) using the alkaline comet assay and cytokinesis-block micronucleus (CBMN) assay. Male Wistar albino rats were exposed to sertraline at different doses (10, 40, and 80 mg/kg) under acute and chronic conditions. The results showed no significant difference between the sertraline-treated group and the control group. However, acute versus chronic administration of sertraline showed more DNA damage. Moreover, chronic and high-dose acute administration of sertraline to the rats revealed increased MN frequency in CBMN assay. Consequently, based on the findings using the CBMN assay, chronic administration of sertraline might affect some mechanisms of cell division [31]. Elmorsy and coworkers assessed the effects of fluoxetine and sertraline in a concentration range of 0.1–100 μM on primary endothelial cells of the blood-brain barrier in rats. Analysis of the data from the comet assays revealed that both drugs were genotoxic [32]. In another study, Atli and colleagues using the sperm comet assay clarified that consumption of sertraline (5, 10, and 20 mg/kg/day for 28 days) increased abnormal sperm morphology and DNA damage in male rats [33].

8.4 Discussion

Oxidative stress is considered as one of the main psychopathological mechanisms of depression [34–36]. This form of stress results from changes in the oxidant/antioxidant balance, which cause telomere instability, cell cycle arrest, and apoptosis. It has been documented that DNA or RNA damage resulting from oxidative stress is one of the earliest events in depression [37–40]. However, the results of some studies have led to the idea that antidepressants could have antioxidant properties through the suppression of mediators involved in oxidation reactions [41]. Also, Czarny et al. suggested that SSRIs have anti-inflammatory properties [42]. In agreement with these findings, Battal and coworkers revealed that sertraline treatment did not cause DNA damage and dose adjustment was important in the prevention of malignancy prognosis [31]. However, Lindqvist et al. suggested that upregulation of oxidative stress markers is associated with either no response or a poor response to antidepressant treatment. Since elevated levels of oxidative markers are correlated with increased DNA damage, treatment with SSRIs could possibly be associated with DNA damage or genotoxicity [43]. These effects are more prominent when these drugs are administered in pregnancy or for an extended period of time, since they are occasionally prescribed for more than 6 months or the therapeutic regimen is frequently repeated [44, 45]. Cardiovascular and sexual dysfunction, hyponatremia, mammary cancer and pheochromocytoma, as well as DNA damage are possible side effects of these drugs [46]. The present survey has been performed to evaluate the genotoxic potential of SSRI drugs. In the current review, we have provided comprehensive data to demonstrate a clearer outline of genotoxic-carcinogenic side effects of SSRIs. The list of experimental analyses on genotoxicity of SSRIs that were evaluated in this research are the bacterial mutation, alkaline comet, the SCE, HFC, CA, sperm chromatin structure, SMART, sperm DNA integrity, Comet-FISH studies, MN, CBMN, single-cell gel electrophoresis, and sperm DNA 8-hydroxy-

20-deoxyguanosine (8-OHdG) assays. Among those assays described in the following section, the most commonly used method for evaluation of genotoxicity of SSRIs is the comet assay.

The main mechanism involved in the genotoxicity induced by SSRI may be linked to instability in the oxidant/antioxidant balance. Increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) production and oxidative metabolism of lipids, decreasing antioxidant enzyme levels, and generation of antidepressant radicals are the most likely responsible factors in the genotoxic properties of SSRIs [16, 28, 47, 48]. According to the literature, the proportion of genotoxicity induced by citalopram and fluoxetine was 85.7% and 92.86%, respectively, while the proportion for sertraline was 42.8%. There have been only a small number of studies on paroxetine and escitalopram that revealed the genotoxic and semi-genotoxic effects of these drugs, respectively. Hence, more comprehensive studies on these medications are still needed. Since these studies are rarely performed on human subjects, an accurate genotoxic effect of these drugs is unclear. Additionally, the data available on sertraline-induced DNA damage is also controversial.

8.5 Conclusions

To the best of our knowledge, the current study is the first systematic review to examine the genotoxic effect of SSRI antidepressants. This study is of valuable interest since SSRI antidepressants are widely consumed. Due to limited data on human subjects or clinical trials and no available data on some SSRIs, the precise genotoxic effects of these medications are still equivocal. Although many studies investigated the genotoxic effects of SSRIs (fluoxetine and citalopram especially), many factors including doses, duration of exposure, model of experiments, and the type of technique assay might have affected the results.

Acknowledgment Mazandaran University of Medical Sciences provided financial support of this study by Grant No. 6067.

Conflict of Interests None.

References

1. Lindqvist D, Simon NM, Wolkowitz OM (2019) Is depression associated with accelerated aging? Mechanisms and implications. In: Neurobiology of depression: road to novel therapeutics. Academic Press, Cambridge, MA, pp 207–229
2. Vaswani M, Linda FK, Ramesh S (2003) Role of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors in psychiatric disorders: a comprehensive review. Prog Neuro-Psychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 27(1):85–102
3. Nutt DJ, Forshall S, Bell C, Rich A, Sandford J, Nash J et al (1999) Mechanisms of action of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors in the treatment of psychiatric disorders. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 9:S81–S86
4. MacQueen G, Born L, Steiner M (2001) The selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor sertraline: its profile and use in psychiatric disorders. CNS Drug Rev 7(1):1–24
5. Brambilla G, Mattioli F, Martelli A (2009) Genotoxic and carcinogenic effects of antipsychotics and antidepressants. Toxicology 261(3):77–88
6. Sponchiado G, Adam ML, Silva CD, Soley BS, de Mello-Sampayo C, Cabrini DA et al (2016) Quantitative genotoxicity assays for analysis of medicinal plants: a systematic review. J Ethnopharmacol 178:289–296
7. Kruman II, Schwartz EI (2008) DNA damage response and neuroprotection. Front Biosci 13:2504–2515
8. Carnesoltas Lázaro D, Izquierdo López Y, Frías Vázquez AI, Domínguez Odio A, González JE et al (2010) Genotoxic assessment of aqueous extract of *Rhizophora mangle* L.(mangle rojo) by spermatozoa head assay. Revista Cubana de Plantas Medicinales 15(1):18–26
9. Attia SM, Bakheet SA (2013) Citalopram at the recommended human doses after long-term treatment is genotoxic for male germ cell. Food Chem Toxicol 53:281–285
10. Behravan E, Rezaee MA (2015) Genotoxicity, teratogenicity and mutagenicity of sulfur mustard poisoning. In: Balali-Mood M, Abdollahi W (eds) Basic and clinical toxicology of mustard compounds. Springer, New York, NY, pp 317–347
11. Steinberg SM, Poziomek EJ, Engelmann WH, Rogers KR (1995) A review of environmental applications of bioluminescence measurements. Chemosphere 30(11):2155–2197
12. Hutton B, Salanti G, Caldwell DM, Chaimani A, Schmid CH, Cameron C, Ioannidis JP, Straus S, Thorlund K, Jansen JP (2015) The PRISMA extension statement for reporting of systematic reviews incorporating network meta-analyses of health care interventions: checklist and explanations. Ann Intern Med 162(11):777–784
13. Franco CC, Castro-Prado J, Rosada LJ, Sant'Anna JR, Castro-Prado MA (2010) Mitotic recombination: a genotoxic effect of the antidepressant citalopram in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Exp Biol Med (Maywood) 235(10):1257–1262

14. Attia SM, Ashour AE, Bakheet SA (2013) Comet-FISH studies for evaluation of genetic damage of citalopram in somatic cells of the mouse. J Appl Toxicol 33(9):901–905
15. Gürbüzel M, Oral E, Kizilet H, Halici Z, Gulec M (2012) Genotoxic evaluation of selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors by use of the somatic mutation and recombination test in Drosophila melanogaster. Mutat Res-Gen Tox En 748(1–2):17–20
16. Ilgin S, Kilic G, Baysal M, Kilic V, Korkut B, Ucarcan S, Atli O (2017) Citalopram induces reproductive toxicity in male rats. Birth Defects Res 109(7):475–485
17. Magni S, Parolini M, Della Torre C, de Oliveira LF, Catani M, Guzzinati R et al (2017) Multi-biomarker investigation to assess toxicity induced by two antidepressants on *Dreissena polymorpha*. Sci Total Environ 578:452–459
18. Cobanoglu H, Coskun M, Cayir A, Coskun M (2018) In vitro genotoxic and cytotoxic effects of doxepin and escitalopram on human peripheral lymphocytes. Drug Chem Toxicol 41(2):238–244
19. Slamon DN, Ward TH, Butler J, Pentreath VW (2001) Assessment of DNA damage in C6 glioma cells after antidepressant treatment using an alkaline comet assay. Arch Toxicol 75(4):243–250
20. Alzahrani H (2012) Sister chromatid exchanges and sperm abnormalities produced by antidepressant drug fluoxetine in mouse treated in vivo. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 16(15):2154–2161
21. Düsman E, Almeida I, Mariucci R, Mantovani M, Vicentini V (2014) Cytotoxicity and mutagenicity of fluoxetine hydrochloride (Prozac), with or without vitamins a and C, in plant and animal model systems. Genet Mol Res 13(1):578–589
22. Wieczerzak M, Namieśnik J, Kudłak B (2018) Genotoxicity of selected pharmaceuticals, their binary mixtures, and varying environmental conditions – study with human adenocarcinoma cancer HT29 cell line. Drug Chem Toxicol 141:1–11
23. Ofoegbu PU, Lourenço J, Mendo S, Soares AM, Pestana JL (2019) Effects of low concentrations of psychiatric drugs (carbamazepine and fluoxetine) on the freshwater planarian, *Schmidtea mediterranea*. Chemosphere 217:542–549
24. Cortez FS, da Silva SL, Guimarães LL, Pusceddu FH, Maranho LA, Fontes MK et al (2019) Marine contamination and cytogenotoxic effects of fluoxetine in the tropical brown mussel Perna perna. Mar Pollut Bull 141:366–372
25. Tanrikut C, Feldman AS, Altemus M, Paduch DA, Schlegel PN (2010) Adverse effect of paroxetine on sperm. Fertil Steril 94(3):1021–1026
26. Safarinejad MR (2008) Sperm DNA damage and semen quality impairment after treatment with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors detected using semen analysis and sperm chromatin structure assay. J Urol 180(5):2124–2128
27. Djordjevic J, Djordjevic A, Adzic M, Elaković I, Matić G, Radojcic MB (2011) Fluoxetine affects antioxidant system and promotes apoptotic signaling in Wistar rat liver. Eur J Pharmacol 659(1):61–66
28. Lacaze E, Pédelucq J, Fortier M, Brousseau P, Auffret M, Budzinski H et al (2015) Genotoxic and immunotoxic potential effects of selected psychotropic drugs and antibiotics on blue mussel (Mytilus edulis) hemocytes. Environ Pollut 202:177–186
29. Davies TS, Klowe WM (1998) Preclinical toxicological evaluation of sertraline hydrochloride. Drug Chem Toxicol 21(2):163–179
30. Bozkurt G, Abay E, Ates I, Karabogaz G, Ture M, Savran FO et al (2004) Clastogenicity of selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors. Mutat Res Genet Toxicol Environ Mutagen 558(1–2):137–144
31. Battal D, Aktas A, Sungur MA, Kadioglu E, Derici Eker E, Sahin NO et al (2013) In vivo genotoxicity assessment of sertraline by using alkaline comet assay and the cytokinesis-block micronucleus assay. Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol 113(5):339–346
32. Elmorsy E, Al-Ghafari A, Almutairi FM, Aggour AM, Carter WG (2017) Antidepressants are cytotoxic to rat primary blood brain barrier endothelial cells at high therapeutic concentrations. Toxicol In Vitro 44:154–163
33. Atli O, Baysal M, Aydogan-Kilic G, Kilic V, Ucarcan S, Karaduman B et al (2017) Sertraline-induced reproductive toxicity in male rats: evaluation of possible underlying mechanisms. Asian J Androl 19(6):672
34. Miller AH, Haroon E, Felger JC (2017) The immunology of behavior – exploring the role of the immune system in brain health and illness. Neuropsychopharmacology 42(1):1–4
35. Asrari N, Yazdian-Robati R, Abnous K, Razavi BM, Rashednia M, Hasani FV et al (2018) Antidepressant effects of aqueous extract of saffron and its effects on CREB, P-CREB, BDNF, and VGF proteins in rat cerebellum. J Pharmacopuncture 21(1):35–40
36. Dorri SA, Hosseinzadeh H, Abnous K, Hasani FV, Robati RY, Razavi BM (2015) Involvement of brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) on malathion induced depressive-like behavior in subacute exposure and protective effects of crocin. Iran J Basic Med Sci 18(10):958
37. Jha M, Trivedi M (2018) Personalized antidepressant selection and pathway to novel treatments: clinical utility of targeting inflammation. Int J Mol Sci 19(1). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19010233
38. Zhang Y, Liu X, McHale C, Li R, Zhang L, Wu Y et al (2013) Bone marrow injury induced via oxidative stress in mice by inhalation exposure to formaldehyde. PLoS One 8(9):e74974. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0074974
39. Nomiyama T, Tanaka Y, Piao L, Nagasaka K, Sakai K, Ogihara T, Nakajima K, Watada H, Kawamori R (2003) The polymorphism of manganese superoxide dismutase is associated with diabetic nephropathy in Japanese type 2 diabetic patients. J Hum Genet 48(3):138–141

40. Mezuk B, Eaton WW, Albrecht S, Golden SH (2008) Depression and type 2 diabetes over the lifespan: a meta-analysis. Diabetes Care 31(12):2383–2390
41. Khanzode SD, Dakhale GN, Khanzode SS, Saoji A, Palasodkar R (2003) Oxidative damage and major depression: the potential antioxidant action of selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors. Redox Rep 8(6):365–370
42. Czarny P, Wigner P, Galecki P, Sliwinski T (2018) The interplay between inflammation, oxidative stress, DNA damage, DNA repair and mitochondrial dysfunction in depression. Prog Neuro-Psychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 80:309–321
43. Lindqvist D, Dhabhar FS, James SJ, Hough CM, Jain FA, Bersani FS et al (2017) Oxidative stress, inflammation and treatment response in major depression. Psychoneuroendocrinology 76:197–205
44. Kerr G, McGuffie A, Wilkie S (2001) Tricyclic antidepressant overdose: a review. Emerg Med J 18(4):236–241
45. Edwards IR, Aronson JK (2000) Adverse drug reactions: definitions, diagnosis, and management. Lancet 356(9237):1255–1259
46. Farber E (1987) Possible etiologic mechanisms in chemical carcinogenesis. Environ Health Perspect 75:64–70
47. Elgebaly HA, Mosa NM, Allach M, El-massry KF, El-Ghorab AH, Al Hroob AM et al (2018) Olive oil and leaf extract prevent fluoxetine-induced hepatotoxicity by attenuating oxidative stress, inflammation and apoptosis. Biomed Pharmacother 98:446–453
48. Brambilla G, Martelli A (2009) Update on genotoxicity and carcinogenicity testing of 472 marketed pharmaceuticals. Mutat Res-Rev Mutat 681(2–3):209–229
49. Franco CCS, Castro-Prado J, Rosada LJ, Sant'Anna JR, Castro-Prado MAA (2010) Mitotic recombination: a genotoxic effect of the antidepressant citalopram in Aspergillus nidulans. Exper Biol Med 235(10):1257–1262
50. Gurbuzel M, Oral E, Kizilet H, Halici Z, Gulec M (2012) Genotoxic evaluation of selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors by use of the somatic mutation and recombination test in *Drosophila melanogaster*. Mutat Res 748(1–2):17–20
51. Ahmadimanesh M, Abbaszadegan MR, Morshedi Rad D, Moallem SA, Mohammadpour AH, Ghahremani MH, Farid Hosseini F, Behdani F, Akhondpour Manteghi A, Jowsey P (2019) Effects of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors on DNA damage in patients with depression. J Psychopharmacol 33(11):1364–1376
52. Jin M, Lu J, Chen Z, Nguyen SH, Mao L, Li J et al (2018) Antidepressant fluoxetine induces multiple antibiotics resistance in Escherichia coli via ROS-mediated mutagenesis. Environ Int 120:421–430
53. Maranho LA, Moreira LB, Baena-Nogueras RM, Lara-Martín PA, DelValls T, Martín-Díaz ML (2015) A candidate short-term toxicity test using *Ampelisca brevicornis* to assess sublethal responses to pharmaceuticals bound to marine sediments. Arch Environ Con Tox 68(2):237–258
54. Maranho LA, Baena-Nogueras RM, Lara-Martín PA, DelValls TA, Martín-Díaz ML (2014) Bioavailability, oxidative stress, neurotoxicity and genotoxicity of pharmaceuticals bound to marine sediments. The use of the polychaete *Hediste diversicolor* as bioindicator species. Environ Res 134:353–365
55. Cortez FS, Souza LDS, Guimaraes LL, Pusceddu FH, Maranho LA, Fontes MK et al (2019) Marine contamination and cytogenotoxic effects of fluoxetine in the tropical brown mussel Perna perna. Mar Pollut Bull 141:366–372
56. Wieczerzak M, Namieśnik J, Kudłak B (2019) Genotoxicity of selected pharmaceuticals, their binary mixtures, and varying environmental conditions–study with human adenocarcinoma cancer HT29 cell line. Drug Chem Toxicol 4:1–11
57. Davies TS, Kluwe WM (1998) Preclinical toxicological evaluation of sertraline hydrochloride. Drug Chem Toxicol 21(4):521–537
58. Battal D, Aktas A, Sungur MA, Kadioglu E, Eker ED, Sahin NO et al (2013) In vivo genotoxicity assessment of sertraline by using alkaline comet assay and the cytokinesis-block micronucleus assay. Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol 113(5):339–346
59. Atli O, Baysal M, Aydogan-Kilic G, Kilic V, Ucarcan S, Karaduman B, Ilgin S (2017) Sertraline-induced reproductive toxicity in male rats: evaluation of possible underlying mechanisms. Asian J Androl 19(6):672–679
60. Bozkurt G, Abay E, Ates I, Karabogaz G, Ture M, Savran FO, Palanduz S, Temocin K, Algunes C (2004) Clastogenicity of selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors. Mutat Res 558(1–2):137–144

9 Toward a New Era for the Management of Circulating Tumor Cells

Marisol Miranda Galvis, Celeste Sánchez Romero, Thiago Oliveira Bueno, and Yong Teng

Abstract

Circulating tumor cells (CTCs) are malignant cells separate from primary tumors, which can migrate through the peripheral blood, colonize other tissues, and lead to the formation of metastases. The first description of CTCs dates back to 1869 when Thomas Ashworth recognized malignant cells similar to the ones of the primary tumor in the blood vessels of an autopsied patient with metastatic cancer. Currently, CTCs have been identified in various types of cancer and have been recognized for their clinical value in the prediction of prognosis, diagnosis of minimal residual diseases, assessment of tumor sensitivity to anticancer drugs, and personalization of therapies. However, research about these topics has several limitations, principally the rarity of CTCs in bloodstream and their heterogeneous characteristics, which makes detection and isolation difficult. As a result of these limitations, current studies are focused on improvement of isolation and characterization techniques to achieve better sensitivity in clinical applications. This review covers the methods of CTC isolation and detection and current research progression on CTC in different cancer types. The clinical applications, limitations, and perspectives of CTCs are also discussed.

Keywords

Circulating tumor cells · Cancer · Liquid biopsy · Micrometastases · Metastasis

Marisol Miranda Galvis and Celeste Sánchez Romero contributed equally.

M. M. Galvis (✉)
Department of Oral Biology and Diagnostic Sciences, Dental College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA
e-mail: mgalvis@augusta.edu

C. S. Romero
Molecular Pathology, Faculty of Dentistry, Universidad de la República (UDELAR), Montevideo, Uruguay

T. O. Bueno
Clinical Oncology Department, A.C. Camargo Cancer Center, São Paulo, Brazil

Y. Teng (✉)
Department of Oral Biology and Diagnostic Sciences, Dental College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Georgia Cancer Center, Medical College of Georgia, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA
e-mail: yteng@augusta.edu

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_9

9.1 Introduction

Mechanisms of cancer progression and spreading have been a focus of surgeons and researchers for more than 100 years. These investigations have formed the basis that made possible the recent insights gained in these processes. Circulating tumor cells (CTCs) are malignant cells that disseminate from the primary tumor, circulate in the peripheral blood, and have the potential of colonizing other tissues, eventually leading to metastasis. Metastasis is the principal cause of cancer-related death, and it is accepted that it occurs when the microenvironment shows appropriate conditions for implantation and growth of CTCs in secondary sites, forming tumors in distant organs [1].

CTCs have been isolated from patients with various types of cancer and are recognized to be useful in increasing our understanding of tumor progression and metastasis, besides prognosis, monitoring of recurrences, therapeutic responses, and drug resistance mechanisms. Although clinical applications are limited by poor detection of CTCs using current isolation processes, frequently caused by the heterogeneous immunophenotypic features of CTCs, promising steps are being taken in the use of CTCs for personalized anticancer therapies [2].

9.2 Historical Background

The first morphological description of CTCs dates back to 1869 when the Australian physician Thomas Ashworth recognized malignant cells similar to the ones of the primary tumor in the blood vessels of an autopsied patient with metastatic cancer [3]. Later, the American surgeon William Halsted extended this theory to the lymphatic system and incorporated it into his practice by performing resections of axillary lymph nodes in breast cancer surgeries [4].

In 1889, the British surgeon Stephen Paget proposed the "seed and soil" theory of metastasis in which he compared selected tumoral cells with a seed that dislocates via the bloodstream and reaches specific distant organs that form the soils for sowing [5]. Paget examined more than 900 autopsy records of patients with several types of cancer. He observed discrepancies between the relative blood supply and the frequency of metastases in certain organs, and he also found that visceral and bone metastasis did not occur randomly, but followed distinct patterns. This discarded the belief of that time that metastasis was an outcome of fortuity, and he concluded that certain tumor cells (the "seeds") have specific affinity for the environment of certain organs (the "soil"), and metastases arise only when the seed and soil are compatible. Paget's observations still hold true today.

During the twentieth century, James Ewing suggested that mechanical factors prompted metastatic dissemination as a result of the anatomical disposition of the vascular system [6]. Subsequently, Weiss observed some differences between regional metastasis and organ distant metastases, as the clinical data were reviewed on site prevalence of metastases of diverse human malignancies [7]. The regional involvement could be related to anatomical or mechanical factors, such as the efferent venous circulation or lymphatic drainage to regional lymph nodes. In contrast, metastases to distant organs of several types of cancers were more site specific [8].

In 1980, Ian Hart and Isaiah Fidler supported the "seed and soil" hypothesis to explain the nonrandom pattern of cancer metastasis, when they documented the selective nature of metastasis in an assay of experimental metastasis of B16 melanoma in syngeneic mice [9]. The results showed that despite some occurrence of mechanical arrest of tumor cells in the capillary niche of distant organs, subsequent proliferation and growth into metastatic lesions were defined by specific organ cells (Fig. 9.1).

9.3 Detection Methods

The first methods for detection of CTCs in peripheral blood of patients with cancer were reported in the twentieth century, using filtration and sedimentation techniques. Using a filtration approach, Salgado et al. showed that tumor cells

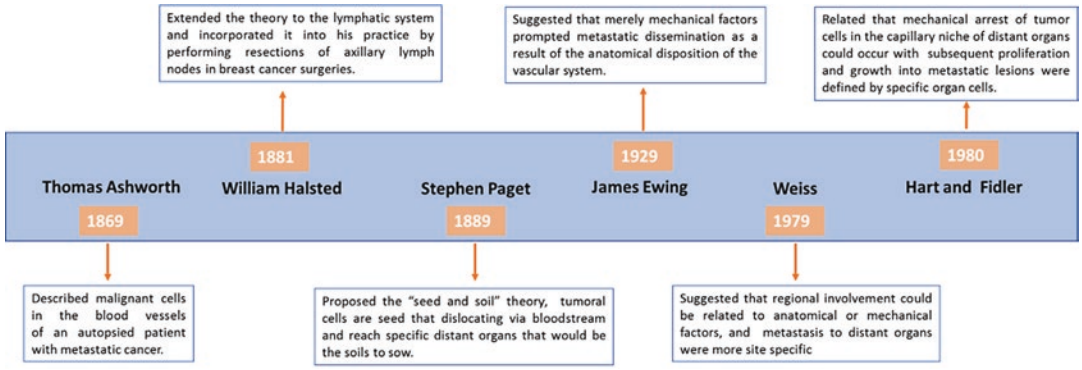


Fig. 9.1 Timeline of the historical discovery of CTCs

were commonly present in peripheral blood and in blood drained from tumor sites at surgery [10]. The protocol consisted of collecting blood samples in a syringe containing heparin followed by centrifugation. After this, the cells were incubated with a hemolyzing agent (streptolysin O) to destroy red blood cells and some white blood cells and then filtered through a Millipore filter. Finally, the cells were fixed and stained by the Papanicolaou technique. On the other hand, Alexander and Spriggs used a method to concentrate white cells by sedimentation followed by searching for the tumor cells [11]. In this technique, patient blood was mixed with a solution of dextran and heparin to sediment the erythrocytes and the fluid centrifuged for 10 min and then spread on slides to allow May-Grunwald-Giemsa staining. After this, the slides were examined under the microscope to detect unusual cells.

Today, almost a century later since the report of CTCs by Ashworth [3], numerous specific and sensitive technologies have emerged to detect CTCs in the bloodstream. However, the current methods used are an improvement over the first methods described. Detection techniques can be classified into two main groups according to the CTC properties based on biological or physical properties (Fig. 9.2).

9.3.1 Biological Properties

9.3.1.1 Density Gradient Centrifugation

The low density of CTCs (<1.077 g/mL) allows them to be distinguished from erythrocytes, leukocytes, and platelets. Centrifugation of blood samples allows separation in the pellet with normal blood cells and CTCs gathering at the interphase on differential step density gradients. Additional analyses can be performed in these CTCs by integrated cell culture (ICC) and polymerase chain reaction (PCR) [12].

9.3.1.2 Filtration

In 2000, Vona et al. [13] presented a new technique called "isolation by size of epithelial tumor cells *(*ISET)" in order to detect and count CTCs in peripheral blood samples of patients with carcinomas. In addition, this technique allows the immunocytological and molecular characterization of the cellular population. The method consists of diluting peripheral blood with a mixture of substances (saponin, paraformaldehyde, ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA), and bovine serum albumin) to be subsequently filtered by gentle aspiration under vacuum, using a module of filtration and a calibrated polycarbonate mem-

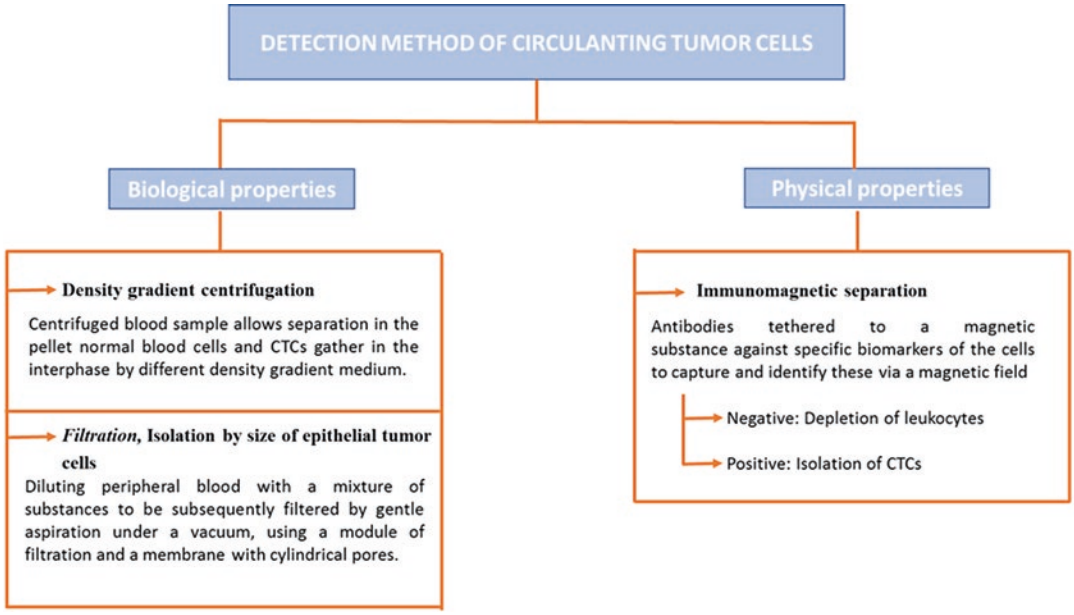


Fig. 9.2 Summary of detection methods of CTCs

brane with 8-μm-diameter cylindrical pores. Soon after, the isolated cells can be stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) or May-Grunwald-Giemsa and studied by immunostaining, laser microdissection, and/or fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH).

9.3.2 Physical Properties

The first immunomagnetic separation of CTCs was developed by Racila et al. [14]. At present, it is the most used technique due to its effectiveness for both detection and isolation. Also, it is the only method approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for this purpose. The assay combines immunomagnetic enrichment with flow cytometry and immunohistochemistry, using magnetic beads labeled with antibodies against specific target cell antigens, which can be used to identify the cells via a magnetic field. For the immunomagnetic separation phase, two approaches are available, although both selection procedures can be combined [15].

9.3.2.1 Negative Selection

This approach involves depletion of leukocytes using anti-CD45-labeled magnetic beads, with the CTCs being the non-selected cells.

9.3.2.2 Positive Selection

In this approach, the isolation of CTCs is achieved using magnetic beads labeled with antibodies against CTC surface proteins such as epithelial cell adhesion molecule (EpCAM), epithelial specific antigen (HEA), and anti-cytokeratin peptides.

In order to obtain more accurate results, modifications to this technique have been described by several authors; an example is the microchip technology developed by Nagrath et al. in the USA [16]. This method has the advantages of high-throughput processing, low shear, and efficient isolation with no requirement of prelabeling or processing of the samples [17]. This technology consists of the interaction of target CTCs with antibody (EpCAM)-coated microposts under precisely controlled laminar flow conditions [16]. Additionally, Deng et al. showed

Table 9.1 Principal studies of CTCs in several types of cancer

Reference	Type of cancer	Method of CTC detection	*n* Groups[a]	Main conclusion
[22]	Metastatic, colorectal	CellSearch system	*n* = 109 ≤3 CTCs /7.5 mL >3 CTCs/7.5 mL	Patients with less CTCs had shorter free and overall survival
[23]	Resectable lung cancer	ISET method	*n* = 208	The number of CTCs was an independent prognostic factor for overall survival
[24]	Metastatic, prostate	CellSearch system	*n* = 231 >5 CTC/7.5 mL <5 CTC/7.5 mL	CTC count was the best predictor of prognosis; patients with more CTCs had shorter overall survival rates
[25]	Melanoma		*n* = 87	CTCs were identified in 29% of patients with primary melanoma and 62.5% with metastatic melanoma patients
[26]	Metastatic sarcoma	ISET method	*n* = 11	All patients showed CTCs
[27]	Locally advanced head and neck cancer	ISET method	*n* = 83 <6.5 CTC/mL ≥6.5 CTC/mL	CTCs were identified in 94% of patients and higher counts were strongly correlated with survival and response to treatment

CTCs circulating tumor cells, *ISET* isolation by size of epithelial tumor cells
[a]Some studies have categorized patients into high and low CTC count

that the use of anti-cytokeratin antibodies in combination with the anti-EpCAM antibodies enhances assay sensitivity significantly [18].

9.4 Research of Circulating Tumor Cells in Several Types of Cancers

Research in cancer is focused in the development of therapeutic targets and early identification of metastases to reduce mortality rates [19] In this case, the identification of CTCs was a big scientific breakthrough that has been studied in several types of cancer [2]. The principal studies performed are summarized in Table 9.1.

9.4.1 Breast Cancer

The first clinical study using the CellSearch System to identify and determine the prognostic significance of CTCs was performed in women with metastatic breast cancer (MBC). Patients ($n = 117$) were separated in two groups according to the number of CTCs before the chemotherapeutic treatment: (1) fewer than 5 CTCs/7.5 mL of whole blood and (2) higher than 5 CTCs/7.5 mL of whole blood. The results showed that the number of CTCs in patients with MBC is an independent survival predictor, due to subjects with higher counts of CTCs having shorter progression-free survival and overall survival rates than the patients with fewer CTCs [20].

9.4.2 Colorectal Cancer

Colorectal malignant neoplasms are the second cause of cancer-related deaths. Development of chemotherapeutic agents for specific targets has been investigated with the identification of CTCs [21]. Cohen et al. used EpCAM isolated magnetically to characterize CTCs from patients with metastatic colorectal cancer and later analyzed their prognostic significance [22]. The authors classified the patients into two groups based on CTC levels (≤3 CTCs /7.5 mL of blood and >3 CTCs/7.5 mL of blood) and showed that patients

with more than 3 CTCs had shorter median progression-free survival and overall survival, than those patients with lower CTC counts.

9.4.3 Lung Cancer

In 2011, the American Association for Cancer Research published a study that identified CTCs in approximately half of patients with resectable lung cancer ($n = 208$). This used the ISET method associated with cytologic analyses and correlated the presence and number of CTCs with clinicopathological features and survival. Patients showing 50 or more CTCs in blood had worse overall and disease-free-survival (DSF), independently of clinical stage, and presented higher risk of recurrence and cancer-related death. The number of CTCs was a significant and independent prognostic factor of overall survival, and it was proposed as a new prognostic biomarker [23].

9.4.4 Prostate Cancer

The relationship between CTCs and survival in patients affected by prostate cancer was studied initially by De Bono et al. in 2008 [24]. The prospective research employed the CellSearch System to detect and count CTCs in blood samples of subjects with progressive disease in different stages: (1) before treatment, (2) at the start of a new line of chemotherapy, and (3) monthly thereafter. The assay patients were categorized into either unfavorable or favorable groups according to the number of CTCs: >5 CTCs/7.5 mL or <5 CTCs/7.5 mL, respectively. The analysis showed that the CTC count was an accurate predictor of prognosis, given that patients with unfavorable counts before and after treatment had shorter overall survival rates than those with favorable counts.

9.4.5 Melanoma

In 2010, the first study of CTC identification was published concerning 87 patients with cutaneous melanoma by ISET method, followed by CTC characterization by immunohistochemistry (S-100, melanosome (HMB45), MART-1/Melan-A) and reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR). The methodology included a control group of healthy volunteers with melanocytic nevi and non-melanoma skin lesions. CTCs were identified in 29% of patients with primary melanoma and in 62.5% of metastatic melanoma patients, while in the control group CTCs were not detected [25].

9.4.6 Sarcomas

Recently Chinen et al. performed for the first time the isolation, identification, and characterization of CTCs in sarcoma patients [26]. The study included blood samples from 11 patients with high-grade and metastatic sarcoma isolated by ISET. CTCs were identified in all of the cases by cytomorphology and characterized by double immunostaining with vimentin or pan-cytokeratin and CD45 antibodies. The number of CTCs identified varied from 2 to 48/8 mL of blood, with the highest number of cells found in the case of an epithelioid sarcoma and the lowest in an osteoblastic osteosarcoma. The ISET technique was limited to study epithelial malignancies, and thus this research showed the sensitivity of this method applied to sarcomas, a group of neoplasms with frequent metastasis and poor prognosis.

9.4.7 Head and Neck Cancer

A prospective study evaluating 83 patients affected by head and neck cancer demonstrated the prognostic role of CTCs in this malignancy through the ISET method. The study evaluated blood samples of patients diagnosed with non-metastatic locally advanced head and neck squamous cell carcinoma, treated with curative surgical resection plus adjuvant radiotherapy, or by a non-surgical strategy (radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy). Patients were sorted according to the count of CTCs at baseline (<6.5/mL versus

≥6.5/mL). CTCs were detected in 94% of the patients ($n = 78$) and significantly correlated with prognosis and response to treatment. The 2-year overall survival was 85.6% versus 22.9% (HR, 0.18; 95%CI, 0.06–0.49; $P < 0.0001$), revealing the prognostic potential of CTCs in head and neck cancer [27].

9.5 Clinical Applications and Limitations

Cancer-related death is usually provoked by dissemination, resulting in regional and distant metastases that could develop years after the removal of the primary tumor, despite the fact that tumor spread may not be evident at the time of the primary diagnosis. For example, many patients affected by breast cancer with negative axillary lymph nodes develop local or distant metastases. This could be explained by the presence of CTCs, which would represent the hematogenous phase of metastasis [28, 29].

Imaging has been the gold standard for disease monitoring in cancer. Combined with these traditional methods, CTC quantification must represent an alternative approach that could reveal micrometastases earlier than is currently possible, thereby improving the monitoring of disease status [30]. In this regard, Bud et al. compared CTC quantification to traditional radiologic assessment and suggested that CTC calculation is a reproducible tool that could be used earlier in the course of disease compared to imaging evaluation [31]. It has been proposed that CTCs play a crucial role for developing metastases. For this reason, monitoring CTCs may provide valuable information for treatment and, in the future, could be used as a real-time "liquid biopsy" [32, 33].

Until now, most of the studies of CTCs and prognosis using the CellSearch System (https://www.cellsearchctc.com/) for quantification have applied a cutoff value ≥5 CTCs/7.5 mL for categorization, as proposed by Cristofanilli et al. [20]. Prognostic correlations have been observed such that those few patients with very high levels of CTCs had a markedly short survival time. In one-third of MBC patients, CTCs were not detected, which constitutes a positive prognostic factor relative to patients with ≥1 CTCs/7.5 mL at baseline and during treatment [34]. In MBC, the prognostic properties of CTCs were shown to be robust during therapy by Hayes and colleagues [35].

Further than quantification, the evaluation of CTCs represents an accessible source of molecular information about the tumor, through the presence of treatment-relevant biomarkers (e.g., multidrug resistance proteins) [36].

Despite promising findings of several studies, CTC assessment still has not provided information on specific staging of disease, or in the guiding of adjuvant treatment. Pesta et al. proposed that analysis of the CTCs should provide information useful for the management of cancer patients, fulfilling the objectives of predictive, preventive, and personalized medicine (PPPM) [30]. However, the diagnostic value of CTC analysis is still not sufficient for clinical use. A three-step method to study CTCs was proposed to achieve specific uses for clinical practice. The first step is monitoring of treatment efficacy of cancer patients. The second one is to characterize the captured CTCs at the molecular level for the targeted treatment. The third stage is the culture of CTCs for use in a chemosensitivity assay. These steps would allow researchers to recognize and respond to changes in the phenotype of cancer cells during disease progression and introduce PPPM assisted by CTC analysis, into clinical practice.

While the clinical relevance of sequential CTC counts during treatment for use as an early response evaluation marker has been clearly demonstrated, the value of CTC characterization to guide treatment decisions in the clinic remains to be investigated [33].

There are three main limitations for CTC isolation. The first, and probably the most significant, is the rarity of CTCs in the bloodstream, since approximately ~1–100 CTCs per 10^9 blood cells are detected in cancer patients, and a significant quantity of normal hematological cells, such as erythrocytes and leukocytes, have to be eliminated to obtain pure CTCs. Secondly, there is an

apparent absence of CTCs in some patients. Finally, there are morphological and genetic heterogeneities of CTCs, even when they are disseminated from the same primary tumor. This latter property may make the isolation of CTCs difficult and the utility could be limited as the testing of drug response using such cells may differ from that of the primary tumor [2, 37–39].

It has been proposed that these limitations may be linked [40]. Studies have found that the lack or small number of CTCs in peripheral blood may actually be an issue of detection. It is known that most of the time, tumor cells require epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT) for major invasion and subsequent dissemination. When EMT occurs, CTCs suffer phenotypic changes, such as loss of expression of epithelial markers, and they acquire more mesenchymal-like phenotypes, which enables them to invade and survive in blood vessels and to invade other organs [41, 42].

Considering that CTCs are rare in peripheral blood and that CTCs with EMT may lose expression of EpCAM, this would result in the missing of EpCAM-negative CTCs in detection procedures based on use of the EpCAM antibody. In some cases, this could mean missing all of the CTCs in patients. This is an important limitation of the more extended and accepted technologies of CTC detection that are based in the presence of EpCAM in tumoral cells [2, 43, 44].

Following this hypothesis of EpCAM expression heterogeneity in CTCs, Hyun et al. [45] developed a model of EMT-induced MCF-7 breast cancer cells in order to study the physical and molecular characters of these cells. They showed that EMT-induced breast cancer cells have low levels of EpCAM expression. By RT-PCR and Western blotting, they observed that EpCAM mRNA was substantially reduced in MCF-7 cells, which indicates that EMT induction may result in decreased EpCAM expression levels. Also, they used a novel EpCAM-independent isolation system that demonstrated efficient isolation of CTCs regardless of heterogeneous EpCAM expression in breast cancer patient blood samples. This approach is called parallel multi-orifice flow fractionation (p-MOFF), which is a chip for high-throughput size-based CTC separation and was developed by the same research group in 2013 [46].

Hamilton et al. studied cell lines of primary, metastatic, and CTCs of small cell lung carcinoma (SCLC) and treated these in vitro with topotecan and epirubicin [37]. This showed that the CTC cell lines presented considerably more chemosensitivity than permanent SCLC cell lines, which suggests that response to second-line chemotherapy in SCLC patients may overestimate the effect on resident SCLC lesions and metastases. Chemosensitivity of CTCs compared to primary and metastatic tumors has been recently studied since, in some malignancies like SCLC, a decline in the CTC count during or after treatment could not reflect the response to chemotherapy of the permanent cells (from primary and metastatic tumors). Consequently, the detection of CTCs may facilitate a paradigm shift from treatment, based only on primary tumor features to a treatment that considers the molecular characteristics of CTCs [2]. Development of new technologies that overcome limitations of the more traditional techniques of CTC isolation will increase the understanding of CTC biology and association with prognosis and treatments, which is crucial in developing clinical applications. The principal clinical applications of circulating tumor cells are summarized in Table 9.2.

Table 9.2 Main clinical applications of detection and study of CTCs

• Monitoring disease status
• Detection of micrometastases
• Prognosis factor
• Pharmacological studies (e.g., drug resistance)
• Planning of personalized treatments

9.6 Conclusion

Evidence shows that CTCs have an important clinical value in early diagnosis of metastasis, as a predictor of prognosis, for monitoring of treatment and development of targeted treatment approaches. However, there are several challenges ahead, principally the rarity of CTCs in

bloodstream, their heterogeneous characteristics, and cell loss during isolation techniques. These factors make difficult the validation of a specific application of CTCs to improve survival rates in patients. Additional studies are needed to clarify the knowledge and to achieve better isolation techniques to pave the way for successful clinical applications in cancer patients.

Acknowledgments This work was supported in part by NIH grants (R01DE028351 and R03DE028387) and CURS Summer Scholars to Y. Teng. M. M. Galvis is the federal Brazilian scholarship (FAPESP) awardee.

References

1. Cen P, Ni X, Yang J, Graham DY, Li M (2012) Circulating tumor cells in the diagnosis and management of pancreatic cancer. Biochim Biophys Acta 1826(2):350–356
2. Hyun KA, Jung HI (2014) Advances and critical concerns with the microfluidic enrichments of circulating tumor cells. Lab Chip 14(1):45–56
3. Ashworth TR (1869) A case of cancer in which cells similar to those in the tumors were seen in the blood after death. Australian Med J 14:146–147
4. Cotlar AM, Dubose JJ, Rose DM (2003) History of surgery for breast cancer: radical to the sublime. Curr Surg 60(3):329–337
5. Paget S (1989) The distribution of secondary growths in cancer of the breast. Cancer Metastasis Rev 8(2):98–101
6. Ewing J (1924) Neoplastic diseases, a treatise on tumors. Can Med Assoc J 14(5):466
7. Weiss L (2000) Metastasis of cancer: a conceptual history from antiquity to the 1990s. Cancer Metastasis Rev 19(3–4):I–XI, 193–383
8. Sugarbaker EV (1979) Cancer metastasis: a product of tumor-host interactions. Curr Probl Cancer 3(7):1–59
9. Hart IR, Fidler IJ (1980) Role of organ selectivity in the determination of metastatic patterns of B16 melanoma. Cancer Res 40(7):2281–2287
10. Salgado I, Hopkirk JF, Long RC, Ritchie AC, Ritchie S, Webster DR (1959) Tumour cells in the blood. Can Med Assoc J 81:619–622
11. Alexander RF, Spriggs AI (1960) The differential diagnosis of tumour cells in circulating blood. J Clin Pathol 13:414–424
12. Esmaeilsabzali H, Beischlag TV, Cox ME, Parameswaran AM, Park EJ (2013) Detection and isolation of circulating tumor cells: principles and methods. Biotechnol Adv 31(7):1063–1084
13. Vona G, Sabile A, Louha M, Sitruk V, Romana S, Schutze K et al (2000) Isolation by size of epithelial tumor cells: a new method for the immunomorphological and molecular characterization of circulating tumor cells. Am J Pathol 156(1):57–63
14. Racila E, Euhus D, Weiss AJ, Rao C, McConnell J, Terstappen LW et al (1988) Detection and characterization of carcinoma cells in the blood. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95(8):4589–4594
15. Ferreira MM, Ramani VC, Jeffrey SS (2016) Circulating tumor cell technologies. Mol Oncol 10(3):374–394
16. Nagrath S, Sequist LV, Maheswaran S, Bell DW, Irimia D, Ulkus L et al (2007) Isolation of rare circulating tumour cells in cancer patients by microchip technology. Nature 450(7173):1235–1239
17. Sarioglu AF, Aceto N, Kojic N, Donaldson MC, Zeinali M, Hamza B et al (2015) A microfluidic device for label-free, physical capture of circulating tumor cell clusters. Nat Methods 12(7):685–691
18. Deng G, Herrler M, Burgess D, Manna E, Krag D, Burke JF (2008) Enrichment with anti-cytokeratin alone or combined with anti-EpCAM antibodies significantly increases the sensitivity for circulating tumor cell detection in metastatic breast cancer patients. Breast Cancer Res 10(4):R69. https://doi.org/10.1186/bcr2131
19. World Cancer Report: International Agency for Research on Cancer (2020). https://www.iarc.fr/cards_page/world-cancer-report/
20. Cristofanilli M, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Matera J, Miller MC et al (2004) Circulating tumor cells, disease progression, and survival in metastatic breast cancer. N Engl J Med 351(8):781–791
21. El Zouhairi M, Charabaty A, Pishvaian MJ (2011) Molecularly targeted therapy for metastatic colon cancer: proven treatments and promising new agents. Gastrointest Cancer Res 4(1):15–21
22. Cohen SJ, Punt CJ, Iannotti N, Saidman BH, Sabbath KD, Gabrail NY et al (2008) Relationship of circulating tumor cells to tumor response, progression-free survival, and overall survival in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. J Clin Oncol 26(19):3213–3221
23. Hofman V, Bonnetaud C, Ilie MI, Vielh P, Vignaud JM, Flejou JF et al (2011) Preoperative circulating tumor cell detection using the isolation by size of epithelial tumor cell method for patients with lung cancer is a new prognostic biomarker. Clin Cancer Res 17(4):827–835
24. de Bono JS, Scher HI, Montgomery RB, Parker C, Miller MC, Tissing H et al (2008) Circulating tumor cells predict survival benefit from treatment in metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res 14(19):6302–6309
25. De Giorgi V, Pinzani P, Salvianti F, Panelos J, Paglierani M, Janowska A et al (2010) Application of a filtration- and isolation-by-size technique for the detection of circulating tumor cells in cutaneous melanoma. J Invest Dermatol 130(10):2440–2447
26. Chinen LT, Mello CA, Abdallah EA, Ocea LM, Buim ME, Breve NM et al (2014) Isolation, detection, and immunomorphological characterization of circulating

tumor cells (CTCs) from patients with different types of sarcoma using isolation by size of tumor cells: a window on sarcoma-cell invasion. Onco Targets Ther 7:1609–1617
27. Bueno TBA, Nicolau U, Abdallah E, Silva V, Fonseca V, Calsavara V et al (2019) Prognostic impact of baseline circulating tumor cells (CTCs) detected by the isolation by size of epithelial tumor cells (ISET) in locally advanced head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (LAHNSCC): results of a prospective study. J Clin Oncol 37(15_suppl):6061–6061
28. Langley RR, Fidler IJ (2011) The seed and soil hypothesis revisited--the role of tumor-stroma interactions in metastasis to different organs. Int J Cancer 128(11):2527–2535
29. Leong SP, Tseng WW (2014) Micrometastatic cancer cells in lymph nodes, bone marrow, and blood: clinical significance and biologic implications. CA Cancer J Clin 64(3):195–206
30. Pesta M, Kulda V, Narsanska A, Fichtl J, Topolcan O (2015) May CTC technologies promote better cancer management? EPMA J 6(1):1. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13167-014-0023-x
31. Budd GT, Cristofanilli M, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Borden E, Miller MC et al (2006) Circulating tumor cells versus imaging--predicting overall survival in metastatic breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res 12(21):6403–6409
32. Pantel K, Alix-Panabieres C (2013) Real-time liquid biopsy in cancer patients: fact or fiction? Cancer Res 73(21):6384–6388
33. Onstenk W, de Klaver W, de Wit R, Lolkema M, Foekens J, Sleijfer S (2016) The use of circulating tumor cells in guiding treatment decisions for patients with metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. Cancer Treat Rev 46:42–50
34. Pierga JY, Hajage D, Bachelot T, Delaloge S, Brain E, Campone M et al (2012) High independent prognostic and predictive value of circulating tumor cells compared with serum tumor markers in a large prospective trial in first-line chemotherapy for metastatic breast cancer patients. Ann Oncol 23(3):618–624
35. Hayes DF, Cristofanilli M, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Miller MC et al (2006) Circulating tumor cells at each follow-up time point during therapy of metastatic breast cancer patients predict progression-free and overall survival. Clin Cancer Res 12(14 Pt 1):4218–4224
36. Hayashi N, Nakamura S, Tokuda Y, Shimoda Y, Yagata H, Yoshida A et al (2012) Prognostic value of HER2-positive circulating tumor cells in patients with metastatic breast cancer. Int J Clin Oncol 17(2):96–104
37. Hamilton G, Rath B, Holzer S, Hochmair M (2016) Second-line therapy for small cell lung cancer: exploring the potential role of circulating tumor cells. Transl Lung Cancer Res 5(1):71–77
38. Hou HW, Warkiani ME, Khoo BL, Li ZR, Soo RA, Tan DS et al (2013) Isolation and retrieval of circulating tumor cells using centrifugal forces. Sci Rep 3:1259. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep01259
39. Li J, Gregory SG, Garcia-Blanco MA, Armstrong AJ (2015) Using circulating tumor cells to inform on prostate cancer biology and clinical utility. Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci 52(4):191–210
40. de Wit S, van Dalum G, Lenferink AT, Tibbe AG, Hiltermann TJ, Groen HJ et al (2015) The detection of EpCAM(+) and EpCAM(−) circulating tumor cells. Sci Rep 5:12270. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep12270
41. Chaffer CL, Weinberg RA (2011) A perspective on cancer cell metastasis. Science 331(6024):1559–1564
42. Gorges TM, Pantel K (2013) Circulating tumor cells as therapy-related biomarkers in cancer patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother 62(5):931–939
43. Riethdorf S, Fritsche H, Muller V, Rau T, Schindlbeck C, Rack B et al (2007) Detection of circulating tumor cells in peripheral blood of patients with metastatic breast cancer: a validation study of the CellSearch system. Clin Cancer Res 13(3):920–928
44. Marrinucci D, Bethel K, Kolatkar A, Luttgen MS, Malchiodi M, Baehring F et al (2012) Fluid biopsy in patients with metastatic prostate, pancreatic and breast cancers. Phys Biol 9(1):016003. https://doi.org/10.1088/1478-3975/9/1/016003
45. Hyun KA, Koo GB, Han H, Sohn J, Choi W, Kim SI et al (2016) Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition leads to loss of EpCAM and different physical properties in circulating tumor cells from metastatic breast cancer. Oncotarget 7(17):24677–24687
46. Hyun KA, Kwon K, Han H, Kim SI, Jung HI (2013) Microfluidic flow fractionation device for label-free isolation of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) from breast cancer patients. Biosens Bioelectron 40(1):206–212

10 Telomerase: A Target for Therapeutic Effects of Curcumin in Cancer

Fatemeh Forouzanfar, Muhammed Majeed, Tannaz Jamialahmadi, and Amirhossein Sahebkar

Abstract

Telomerases are attractive targets for development of new anticancer agents. Most *tumors* express the enzyme telomerase that maintains telomere length and thus ensures indefinite cell proliferation, a hallmark of cancer. Curcumin has been shown to be effective against several types of malignancies and has also been shown to have inhibitory effects on telomerase activity. Hence, the aim of this chapter is to review the available investigations of curcumin on telomerase activity. Based on the findings obtained from the different studies here, we conclude that the telomerase inhibitory effects of curcumin are integral to its anticancer activity, and thus curcumin may be useful therapeutically in the cancer field.

Keywords

Telomerase · Curcumin · Cancer · Herbal medicine

F. Forouzanfar
Neuroscience Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Department of Neuroscience, Faculty of Medicine, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

M. Majeed
Sabinsa Corporation, East Windsor, NJ, USA

T. Jamialahmadi
Department of Food Science and Technology, Quchan Branch, Islamic Azad University, Quchan, Iran

Department of Nutrition, Faculty of Medicine, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

A. Sahebkar (✉)
Biotechnology Research Center, Pharmaceutical Technology Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Neurogenic Inflammation Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Polish Mother's Memorial Hospital Research Institute (PMMHRI), Lodz, Poland

10.1 Introduction

Proliferative capacity is one of the distinguishing differences between tumor and normal cells. Normal cells exhibit a limited lifespan and show replicative senescence, while *immortality* is a common characteristic of tumor cells [1]. Reactivation and upregulation of telomerase has been observed in almost 90% of the cancers, and this enzyme is responsible for tumor cell immortalization. Telomeres are the nucleoprotein complexes that are found at the ends of eukaryotic chromosomes. These structures protect the ends

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_10

of chromosomes from exonucleolytic degradation and end-to-end fusions, thereby contributing to genomic stability [2]. The human telomerase enzyme is a DNA polymerase consisting of two subunits known as telomerase reverse transcriptase (hTERT, the catalytic subunit encoded by the *TERT* gene, located on chromosome 5p15.33) and telomerase RNA component (hTERC or hTR, encoded by the *TERC* gene positioned on chromosomal region 3q26) [2, 3]. This ribonucleoprotein complex is responsible for progressive synthesis of the telomeric DNA repeats. In addition, proteins like pontin, reptin, ribonucleoprotein complex subunit 1 (Gar1), H/ACA ribonucleoprotein complex subunit 2 (Nhp2), and telomerase Cajal body protein 1 are also associated with the telomerase core complex and necessary for proper telomerase assembly and recruitment to chromosomes [2].

Throughout history, plants and their constituents have been used in health management [4, 5]. Several studies in animal models, as well as clinical trials in humans, have reported pharmacological effects of medicinal plants, including antibacterial, antifungal, anticancer, antiviral, analgesia, and anti-inflammatory activities [6–9]. Over the past three decades, public interest in natural therapies has surged [10–13]. Notably, the high cost and side effects of many modern pharmaceuticals have encouraged the use of more affordable traditional medicines with potentially fewer side effects [8, 10, 14]. Telomerase inhibitors can be subdivided into those compounds that directly block the enzymatic activity of telomerase and those that downregulate the expression of the hTERT catalytic subunit [15].

Curcumin is a low-molecular-weight, lipophilic, bright yellow polyphenol, extracted from the rhizomes of *Curcuma longa* (turmeric), a member of the Zingiberaceae family. This plant is a perennial rhizomatous herb that is native to tropical Southern Asia but is now widely cultivated in both tropical and subtropical regions throughout the world [16]. *Curcuma longa* has been shown to possess a variety of pharmacological activities in both traditional and modern medicine. Curcumin is extensively used in Asian kitchens as well as for medicinal purposes. Vogel and Pelletier discovered curcumin in 1815 [17–20]. In 1910, Milobedzka and colleagues identified the chemical structure of curcumin as diferuloylmethane or 1,6-heptadiene-3,5-dione-1,7-bis (4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)-(1E,6E) (Fig. 10.1) [20, 21].

Curcumin possesses a wide array of pharmacological effects, with known anti-oxidant, anti-inflammatory, antimicrobial, immunoregulatory, epigenetic-modifying, anti-tumor, antiangiogenic and antimetastatic, chemo-sensitizing, analgesic, hepatoprotective, and anti-thrombotic properties [22–29]. Many of the pharmacological activities and experimental findings on the therapeutic effects of curcumin and curcuminoids have also been confirmed in clinical trials, although the need for further well-designed clinical studies has also been emphasized [30, 31].

In this review, we discuss the available studies relating to the telomerase inhibitory effects of curcumin. The efficacy of curcumin in targeting telomerase in different cancerous cells is also summarized in Table 10.1.

10.2 In Vitro Studies on Telomerase Inhibition

Several studies have documented the anticancer activity of curcumin in vitro. The capacity of curcumin on the regulation of telomerase activity and induction of apoptosis was investigated in the human leukemia cell line K-562. Induction of apoptosis by curcumin is initiated by the release of cytochrome c from mitochondria into the cytosol and is evidenced by an increase in DNA content in the sub-G1 region. Apoptosis was mediated by the activation of caspases 3 and 8, Bcl-2 downregulation, and Bax upregulation. Curcumin suppressed telomerase activity in a dose- and time-dependent manner, the inhibition being due to suppression of translocation of hTERT from the cytosol to the nucleus. Interestingly, the inhibition of telomerase activity by curcumin showed a positive correlation with several parameters of apoptosis [32]. In corroboration with these results, Hsin et al. found that reactive oxygen

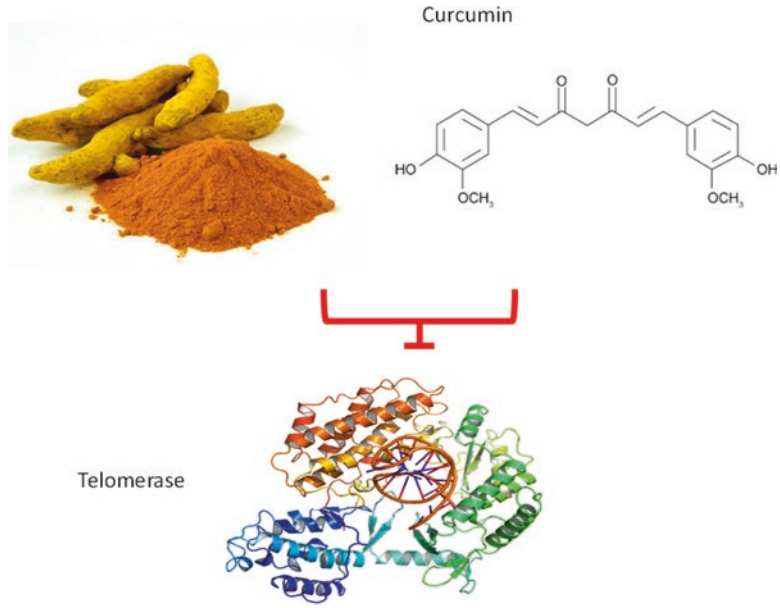


Fig. 10.1 Inhibitory effect of curcumin on telomerase

species (ROS) contribute to the curcumin-mediated telomerase activity inhibition and that Sp1 reduction contributes to hTERT downregulation by curcumin-induced ROS [33].

In a study conducted to investigate the potential of curcumin as an anticancer agent in different cell lines, the effects of curcumin were studied on cell growth and telomerase activity in three human cancer cell lines, Bel7402, HL60, and SGC7901. At concentrations of 1–32 μM, curcumin exhibited concentration-dependent antiproliferative effects on these cell lines in vitro. Anti-tumor effects were observed when curcumin (50–200 mg/kg) was orally administered to nude mice transplanted with the cancer cells. Exposure to 1 μM concentrations of curcumin led to apoptosis of cells as detected by acridine orange/ethidium bromide staining as well as flow cytometric analysis. Quantification of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) products showed that suppression of telomerase activity in extracts of the cells treated with 1 μM of curcumin occurred in a time-dependent manner [34]. Ramachandran et al. also reported an inhibition of telomerase activity in MCF-7 breast cancer cells, due to downregulation of hTERT and mRNA expression of the viral oncogene c-myc [35]. Telomerase activity in MCF-7 cells was 6.9-fold higher than of the levels in human mammary epithelial cells, and a concentration-dependent decrease in telomerase activity following treatment with curcumin was observed. The authors suggested that the inhibition of telomerase activity in MCF-7 cells may have been due to downregulation of hTERT expression. Increasing concentrations of curcumin caused a steady reduction in the level of hTERT mRNA in MCF-7 cells, whereas there was no effect on hTERT and c-myc mRNA levels [35].

Khaw and Hande investigated the antiproliferative activity, DNA damage induction, and telomere-telomerase regulation in human glioblastoma and medulloblastoma cell lines following administration of curcumin. Curcumin treatment decreased cell viability in a dose-dependent manner in both brain tumor cell lines. The telomerase-positive cell lines showed higher sensitivity to curcumin in comparison to normal human fibroblasts. Curcumin LC_{50} concentrations were higher for normal cells (90 μM) in comparison to the telomerase-positive cancer cell lines (30–50 μM), and normal human fibroblasts exhibited greater DNA damage in comparison to the cancer cell lines. In addition, telomerase-positive cell lines displayed significant inhibition of telomerase activity following treatment with curcumin. A long period of treatment with curcumin also resulted in significant telomere short-

Table 10.1 The efficacy of curcumin in cancerous cells targeting telomerase

Curcumin type and dosage	Cancer cell type	Main findings	References
Curcumin-loaded NIPAAm-MAA nanoparticles (10–70 μmol/L)	Calu-6 lung cancer cell line	– Downregulation of telomerase gene expression – Inhibition of cell growth – Increment in the mRNA levels of pinX1 gene	[46]
Nanocapsulated curcumin (0–150 μM)	SW480 colorectal cancer cell line	– Reduction of hTERT gene expression	[48]
Curcumin (0–100 μM)	Human leukemia cell line K-562	– Suppression of telomerase activity – Induction of apoptosis	[32]
Curcumin (1-32 μM)	Human cancer cell lines Bel7402, HL60, and SGC7901	– Suppression of telomerase activity – Antiproliferative effect	[34]
β-Cyclodextrin -curcumin complex (5, 10 and 15 μM)	T47D breast cancer cell line	– Inhibition of telomerase expression – Induction of apoptosis	[50]
Curcumin (0–100 μM)	Human glioblastoma (A172, KNS60, and U251) and medulloblastoma cell line (ONS76)	– Reduction of cell viability – Inhibition of telomerase activity – Significant telomere shortening	[37]
Curcumin (0–100 mM)	Human glioblastoma multiforme cells A172 and medulloblastoma cells ONS76	– Increased cell death and DNA damage – Telomere shortening activity – Reduction in hTERT levels	[38]
Curcumin (3.5 μM)	P388D1 mouse lymphoma cells	– Over expression of TNF-α and IL-1β – Inhibition of the antiapoptotic Bcl-2 and human catalytic subunit hTERT	[56]
PAMAM encapsulating curcumin (0.5–60 μM)	T47D breast cancer cell line	– Antiproliferative effect – Inhibition of telomerase activity	[41]
Curcumin (0, 1, 10, 50 μM)	Human leukemia cell HL-60	– Induction of apoptosis – Inhibition of telomerase activity	[43]
Curcumin (5–100 μM)	T47D breast cancer cell line	– Antiproliferative effect – Inhibition of hTERT gene expression	[45]
Curcumin-loaded NIPAAm-MAA nanoparticles (10–70 μmol/L)	Calu-6 lung cancer cell line	– Elevation of PinX1 gene expression – Downregulation of the telomerase gene	[58]
Curcumin (0–100 mM)	Mammary epithelial (MCF-10A) and breast cancer (MCF-7) cells	– Downregulation of hTERT expression	[36]
β-Cyclodextrin-curcumin (5–100 μM)	T47D breast cancer cells	– Inhibition of telomerase expression	[52]

ening in cancer cell lines. Finally, curcumin reduced the upregulated signaling pathways in cancer cell lines [36].

A study by Khaw et al. showed that curcumin induced a significant increase in cell death and DNA damage in brain tumor cells. Curcumin treatment also resulted in significant telomere shortening in brain tumor cells which was consistent with a decrease in hTERT levels [37].

As telomerase is essential for the continued proliferation of primary and transformed cells, the activation of telomerase could be a definitive step in human carcinogenesis [38]. Crucially, the interaction of the molecular chaperone complex

Hsp90–p23 with the rate-limiting catalytic subunit of telomerase, hTERT, is critical for regulation of the nuclear localization of telomerase, and downregulation of hTERT by curcumin involves dissociating the binding of hTERT with p23 [39].

A study was undertaken to examine the capacity of curcumin to regulate telomerase activity in curcumin-induced apoptosis in P388D1 mouse lymphoma cells. Induction of apoptosis and telomerase activity by curcumin in the P388D1 lymphoma cells was confirmed by enumeration of apoptotic cells, measuring the percentage of DNA fragmentation and quantifying mRNA expression by PCR. The culture supernatant from curcumin-treated P388D1 lymphoma cells contained a higher level of nitric oxide. Furthermore, treatment of the cells with curcumin resulted in overexpression of tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) and interleukin-1 beta (IL-1β) and inhibition of the antiapoptotic Bcl-2 and hTERT when compared to untreated cells [40].

Polyamidoamine (PAMAM) encapsulation of curcumin increased its antiproliferative effect in a T47D cancer cell line. The authors suggested that curcumin exerts an effect on T47D cancer cells through inhibition of telomerase activity and, consequently, cancer cell proliferation was inhibited [1]. The polyamidoaminoid structure of PAMAM is biocompatible and enhanced curcumin uptake, thereby augmenting the cytotoxicity of the treatment [41].

In HL-60 cells treated with curcumin, apoptosis was induced as evidenced by the release of cytochrome c from mitochondria to the cytosol and an increase in the DNA content in the sub-G1 region, as observed in fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis. Upregulation of Bax and downregulation of Bcl-2 was followed by activation of caspases 3 and 8 and degradation of poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP), thereby mediating the apoptosis. Curcumin also inhibited telomerase activity in a concentration-dependent manner, suggesting that the telomerase inhibition by curcumin may be interpreted as an important event that leads to apoptosis [42]. In an elegant study, conducted by Pongsavee et al., a 744ins20 – ter240 BRCA1 frameshift mutation was found to drive oxidative stress. This mutation produced a DNA repair defect, and curcumin treatment could inhibit telomerase function and thereby reduce cancer cell growth [43].

Curcumin and silibinin exerted cytotoxic effects on T47D cells and inhibited telomerase gene expression in time- and dose-dependent manners. The mixture of curcumin and silibinin exhibited a relatively greater inhibitory effect on the growth of T47D cells and hTERT gene expression when compared with the effects of either agent alone [44].

Curcumin-loaded N-isopropylacrylamide-methacrylic acid (NIPAAm-MAA) nanoparticles inhibited the growth of the Calu-6 lung cancer cell line in both a time- and dose-dependent manner, as determined by the 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide (MTT) assay for measurement of cell metabolic activity. In addition, quantitative (Q)-PCR results demonstrated that the expression of the telomerase gene was downregulated as the concentration of curcumin-loaded NIPAAm-MAA nanoparticles increased. In parallel, a trend toward increasing mRNA levels of the PIN2 (TERF1)-interacting telomerase inhibitor 1 (*PINX1*) gene was apparent [45]. It was demonstrated that the NIPAAm-MAA nanoparticles could release the drug in a slightly acidic environment, such as occurs in inflammatory tissues, solid tumors, and intracellular endosomal compartments [46].

The results of the MTT assay showed that in the SW480 colorectal cancer cell line, nanocapsulated curcumin and chrysin (in comparison to free forms of these compounds) had a highly synergistic toxicity effect. Q-PCR analysis showed a significant reduction in hTERT gene expression in SW480 cells treated with nano-curcumin and nano-chrysin in comparison to the expression levels seen in untreated cells [47]. Of note, the telomerase gene has been shown to be overexpressed in cancer cells and is related to hTERT, and high expression has been reported in many colorectal cancer cell lines [47, 48].

The β-cyclodextrin-curcumin complex exerted a cytotoxic effect on the T47D breast cancer cell line, mediated by inhibition of telomerase expression and induction of apoptosis due to enhanced curcumin intake into the cells [49]. This is consis-

tent with reports showing that β-cyclodextrin enhances curcumin delivery via increasing its uptake into cells [50].

In the above-mentioned study by Pongsavee et al., the 744ins20 – ter240 BRCA1 frameshift mutation was found to produce oxidative stress and a DNA repair defect, and curcumin treatment led to inhibition of telomerase function and thereby reduced cancer cell growth [43].

Kazemi-Lomedasht et al. showed that β-cyclodextrin-curcumin resulted in higher cell toxicity in T47D breast cancer cells than did free curcumin. In breast cancer cells treated with cyclodextrin-curcumin, the level of telomerase gene expression was reduced as compared with that of cells treated with free curcumin [51]. Of note, the β-cyclodextrin-curcumin inclusion complex led to improvement in curcumin stability and solubility [52].

10.3 In Vivo Studies

Telomerase was found to be highly expressed in dimethylhydrazine dihydrochloride (DMH)-induced colorectal cancer in rats, and its high activity was associated with increased TERT expression. Telomerase activity was found to be absent, or present at lower levels, in normal tissue. PCR, Q-PCR, Western blot, and immunofluorescence analysis showed that CDK4, CDK2, cyclin D1, and cyclin E were highly expressed in the DMH treatment group. Following the administration of diclofenac and curcumin, telomerase activity was downregulated, and the expression of TERT, CDK4, CDK2, cyclin D1, and cyclin E was diminished. Inhibition of telomerase activity by diclofenac and curcumin was associated with upregulation of the tumor suppressor proteins p51, Rb, and p21, which are known to lead to cell cycle arrest and induction of apoptosis in colorectal cancer [53].

One study suggested that when curcumin is used in combination with cyclophosphamide or paclitaxel, it may have potentiated the anti-tumor effects of these drugs by inhibiting tumor markers like protein kinase C (PKC), telomerase, nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells (NF-kB), and histone deacetylase (HDAC) both in in vitro and in in vivo models of breast cancer [54].

The expression of tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase (TIMP)-1 and TIMP-2 genes was significantly increased in the C57/B16 mouse model of melanoma following treatment with curcumin and chrysin, with the greatest effect being observed in the combination groups and the greatest observed increase being in the nano groups. Curcumin and chrysin treatment significantly decreased the expression of TERT, and mice in nano-treated groups showed a higher decrease in TERT levels compared to the mice in control treatment groups. Furthermore, the expression of matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-2, MMP-9, and TERT genes was significantly reduced in the treatment groups [55].

10.4 Conclusions

Many studies have shown that curcumin possesses antiproliferative and anti-carcinogenic properties. Curcumin is therefore proving to be a promising anticancer agent. Moreover, telomerase activity has become a major target in anticancer research. Telomerase is the critical enzyme in overcoming growth limitations due to telomere dysfunction. The studies presented in the present review suggest that curcumin is a telomerase inhibitor, in addition to initiating apoptosis and promoting killing of cancerous cells, and is a good candidate for cancer therapy. Further investigations of these effects, with particular emphasis on in vivo experiments, are needed to verify the potential use of curcumin and related compounds in cancer treatment and prevention.

Conflict of Interest Muhammed Majeed is the Founder and Chairman of Sabinsa Corporation and Sami Labs Limited. Other authors declare no competing interests.

References

1. Phatak P, Burger A (2007) Telomerase and its potential for therapeutic intervention. Br J Pharmacol 152(7):1003–1011
2. Leão R, Apolónio JD, Lee D, Figueiredo A, Tabori U, Castelo-Branco P (2018) Mechanisms of human telomerase reverse transcriptase (hTERT) regulation: clinical impacts in cancer. J Biomed Sci 25(1):22. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12929-018-0422-8
3. MacNeil DE, Bensoussan HJ, Autexier C (2016) Telomerase regulation from beginning to the end. Genes (Basel) 7(9) pii: E64. https://doi.org/10.3390/genes7090064
4. Li JW-H, Vederas JC (2009) Drug discovery and natural products: end of an era or an endless frontier? Science 325(5937):161–165
5. Forouzanfar F, Bazzaz BSF, Hosseinzadeh H (2014) Black cumin (*Nigella sativa*) and its constituent (thymoquinone): a review on antimicrobial effects. Iran J Basic Med Sci 17(12):929–938
6. Forouzanfar F, Afkhami Goli A, Asadpour E, Ghorbani A, Sadeghnia HR (2013) Protective effect of *Punica granatum* L. against serum/glucose deprivation-induced PC12 cells injury. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2013:716730. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/716730
7. Hosseini A, Forouzanfar F, Rakhshandeh H (2016) Hypnotic effect of *Nepeta glomerulosa* on pentobarbital-induced sleep in mice. Jundishapur J Nat Pharm Prod 11(1):e25063. https://doi.org/10.17795/jjnpp-25063
8. Wang X, Zhang A, Zhou X, Liu Q, Nan Y, Guan Y et al (2016) An integrated chinmedomics strategy for discovery of effective constituents from traditional herbal medicine. Sci Rep 6:18997. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep18997
9. Sadeghnia HR, Shaterzadeh H, Forouzanfar F, Hosseinzadeh H (2017) Neuroprotective effect of safranal, an active ingredient of *Crocus sativus*, in a rat model of transient cerebral ischemia. Folia Neuropathol 55(3):206–213
10. Ekor M (2014) The growing use of herbal medicines: issues relating to adverse reactions and challenges in monitoring safety. Front Pharmacol 4:177. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2013.00177
11. Forouzanfar F, Hosseinzadeh H, Ebrahimzadeh Bideskan A, Sadeghnia HR (2016) Aqueous and ethanolic extracts of *Boswellia serrata* protect against focal cerebral ischemia and reperfusion injury in rats. Phytother Res 30(12):1954–1967
12. Iranshahi M, Sahebkar A, Hosseini ST, Takasaki M, Konoshima T, Tokuda H (2010) Cancer chemopreventive activity of diversin from *Ferula diversivittata* in vitro and in vivo. Phytomedicine 17(3-4):269–273
13. Iranshahi M, Sahebkar A, Takasaki M, Konoshima T, Tokuda H (2009) Cancer chemopreventive activity of the prenylated coumarin, umbelliprenin, in vivo. Eur J Cancer Prev 18(5):412–415
14. Forouzanfar F (2018) Medicinal herbs in the treatment of neuropathic pain: a review. Iranian Iran J Basic Med Sci 21(4):347–358
15. Eitsuka T, Nakagawa K, Kato S, Ito J, Otoki Y, Takasu S et al (2018) Modulation of telomerase activity in cancer cells by dietary compounds: a review. Int J Mol Sci 19(2). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19020478
16. Li S, Yuan W, Deng G, Wang P, Yang P, Aggarwal B (2011) Chemical composition and product quality control of turmeric (*Curcuma longa* L.). Pharmaceutical Crops 2:28–54. https://doi.org/10.2174/2210290601102010028
17. Gupta SC, Patchva S, Aggarwal BB (2013) Therapeutic roles of curcumin: lessons learned from clinical trials. AAPS J 15(1):195–218
18. Prasad S, Tyagi AK, Aggarwal BB (2014) Recent developments in delivery, bioavailability, absorption and metabolism of curcumin: the golden pigment from golden spice. Cancer Res Treat 46(1):2–18
19. Gupta SC, Patchva S, Koh W, Aggarwal BB (2012) Discovery of curcumin, a component of golden spice, and its miraculous biological activities. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol 39(3):283–299
20. Gopinath H, Karthikeyan K (2018) Turmeric: a condiment, cosmetic and cure. Indian J Dermatol Venereol Leprol 84(1):16–21
21. Prasad S, Gupta SC, Tyagi AK, Aggarwal BB (2014) Curcumin, a component of golden spice: from bedside to bench and back. Biotechnol Adv 32(6):1053–1064
22. Abdollahi E, Momtazi AA, Johnston TP, Sahebkar A (2018) Therapeutic effects of curcumin in inflammatory and immune-mediated diseases: a nature-made jack-of-all-trades? J Cell Physiol 233(2):830–848. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcp.25778
23. Mollazadeh H, Cicero AFG, Blesso CN, Pirro M, Majeed M, Sahebkar A (2019) Immune modulation by curcumin: the role of interleukin-10. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 59(1):89–101. https://doi.org/10.1080/10408398.2017.1358139
24. Momtazi AA, Derosa G, Maffioli P, Banach M, Sahebkar A (2016) Role of microRNAs in the therapeutic effects of curcumin in non-cancer diseases. Mol Diagn Ther 20(4):335–345. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40291-016-0202-7
25. Momtazi AA, Sahebkar A (2016) Difluorinated curcumin: A promising curcumin analogue with improved anti-tumor activity and pharmacokinetic profile. Curr Pharm Des 22(28):4386–4397
26. Panahi Y, Kianpour P, Mohtashami R, Jafari R, Simental-Mendía LE, Sahebkar A (2017) Efficacy and safety of phytosomal curcumin in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a randomized controlled trial. Drug Res (Stuttg) 67(4):244–251
27. Rezaee R, Momtazi AA, Monemi A, Sahebkar A (2017) Curcumin: a potentially powerful tool to reverse cisplatin-induced toxicity. Pharmacol Res 117:218–227
28. Sahebkar A (2010) Molecular mechanisms for curcumin benefits against ischemic injury. Fertil

Steril 94(5):e75–e76. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fertnstert.2010.07.1071
29. Shakeri A, Cicero AFG, Panahi Y, Mohajeri M, Sahebkar A (2019) Curcumin: a naturally occurring autophagy modulator. J Cell Physiol 234(5):5643–5654
30. Bachmeier BE, Melchart D (2019) Therapeutic effects of curcumin—from traditional past to present and future clinical applications. Int J Mol Sci 20(15) pii: E3757. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20153757
31. Pagano E, Romano B, Izzo AA, Borrelli F (2018) The clinical efficacy of curcumin-containing nutraceuticals: an overview of systematic reviews. Pharmacol Res 134:79–91
32. Chakraborty S, Ghosh U, Bhattacharyya N, Bhattacharya R, Roy M (2006) Inhibition of telomerase activity and induction of apoptosis by curcumin in K-562 cells. Mutat Res 596(1):81–90
33. Hsin IL, Sheu GT, Chen HH, Chiu LY, Wang HD, Chan HW et al (2010) N-acetyl cysteine mitigates curcumin-mediated telomerase inhibition through rescuing of Sp1 reduction in A549 cells. Mutat Res 688(1):72–77
34. Cui SX, Qu XJ, Xie YY, Zhou L, Nakata M, Makuuchi M et al (2006) Curcumin inhibits telomerase activity in human cancer cell lines. Int J Mol Med 18(2):227–231
35. Ramachandran C, Fonseca HB, Jhabvala P, Escalon EA, Melnick SJ (2002) Curcumin inhibits telomerase activity through human telomerase reverse transcriptase in MCF-7 breast cancer cell line. Cancer Lett 184(1):1–6
36. Khaw AK, HANDE MP (2007) Inhibition of telomerase activity and cell growth by curcumin in human brain tumour cells. AACR Annual Meeting—Apr 14–18, 2007; Los Angeles, CA, USA
37. Khaw AK, Hande MP, Kalthur G, Hande MP (2013) Curcumin inhibits telomerase and induces telomere shortening and apoptosis in brain tumour cells. J Cell Biochem 114(6):1257–1270
38. Hahn WC, Counter CM, Lundberg AS, Beijersbergen RL, Brooks MW, Weinberg RA (1999) Creation of human tumour cells with defined genetic elements. Nature 400(6743):464
39. Lee JH, Chung IK (2010) Curcumin inhibits nuclear localization of telomerase by dissociating the Hsp90 co-chaperone p23 from hTERT. Cancer Lett 290(1):76–86
40. Mishra VK, Kumar A (2009) Curcumin induced cell death and inhibition of telomerase activity in mouse lymphoma P388D1 cells. EXCLI J 8:20–29. https://doi.org/10.17877/DE290R-575
41. Liu D, Hu H, Zhang J, Zhao X, Tang X, Chen D (2011) Drug pH-sensitive release in vitro and targeting ability of polyamidoamine dendrimer complexes for tumor cells. Chem Pharm Bull (Tokyo) 59(1):63–71
42. Mukherjee S, Ghosh U, Bhattacharyya N, Bhattacharya R, Dey S, Roy M (2007) Curcumin-induced apoptosis in human leukemia cell HL-60 is associated with inhibition of telomerase activity. Mol Cell Biochem 297(1-2):31–39
43. Pongsavee M (2017) Effects of 744ins20–ter240 BRCA1 mutation on breast/ovarian carcinogenesis and the role of curcumin in telomerase inhibition. Arch Med Sci Civil Dis 2(1):125–129. https://doi.org/10.5114/amscd.2017.70668
44. Nasiri M, Zarghami N, Koshki KN, Mollazadeh M, Moghaddam MP, Yamchi MR et al (2013) Curcumin and silibinin inhibit telomerase expression in T47D human breast cancer cells. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 14(6):3449–3453
45. Badrzadeh F, Akbarzadeh A, Zarghami N, Yamchi MR, Zeighamian V, Tabatabae FS et al (2014) Comparison between effects of free curcumin and curcumin loaded NIPAAm-MAA nanoparticles on telomerase and PinX1 gene expression in lung cancer cells. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 15(20):8931–8936
46. Tian P, Wu Q, Lian K (2008) Preparation of temperature-and pH-sensitive, stimuli-responsive poly (N-isopropylacrylamide-co-methacrylic acid) nanoparticles. J Appl Polym Sci 108(4):2226–2232. https://doi.org/10.1002/app.27888
47. Bagheri R, Sanaat Z, Zarghami N (2018) Synergistic effect of free and nano-encapsulated Chrysin-Curcumin on inhibition of hTERT gene expression in SW480 colorectal cancer cell line. Drug Res (Stuttg) 68(6):335–343
48. Lotfi-Attari J, Pilehvar-Soltanahmadi Y, Dadashpour M, Alipour S, Farajzadeh R, Javidfar S et al (2017) Co-delivery of curcumin and chrysin by polymeric nanoparticles inhibit synergistically growth and hTERT gene expression in human colorectal cancer cells. Nutr Cancer 69(8):1290–1299
49. Kazemi F, Zaraghami N, Monfaredan A (2011) β-Cyclodextrin-curcumin complex inhibit telomerase gene expression in T47-D breast cancer cell line. Afr J Biotechnol 10(83):19481–19488
50. Yallapu MM, Jaggi M, Chauhan SC (2010) Beta-cyclodextrin-curcumin self-assembly enhances curcumin delivery in prostate cancer cells. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 79(1):113–125
51. Rami A, Zarghami N (2013) Comparison of inhibitory effect of curcumin nanoparticles and free curcumin in human telomerase reverse transcriptase gene expression in breast cancer. Adv Pharm Bull 3(1):127–130
52. Aggarwal BB, Sundaram C, Malani N, Ichikawa H (2007) Curcumin: the Indian solid gold. Adv Exp Med Biol 595:1–75
53. Rana C, Piplani H, Vaish V, Nehru B, Sanyal S (2015) Downregulation of telomerase activity by diclofenac and curcumin is associated with cell cycle arrest and induction of apoptosis in colon cancer. Tumour Biol 36(8):5999–6010
54. Roy M, Mukherjee S, Sarkar R, Biswas J (2011) Curcumin sensitizes chemotherapeutic drugs via modulation of PKC, telomerase, NF-κB and HDAC in breast cancer. Ther Deliv 2(10):1275–1293
55. Tavakoli F, Jahanban-Esfahlan R, Seidi K, Jabbari M, Behzadi R, Pilehvar-Soltanahmadi Y et al (2018)

Effects of nano-encapsulated curcumin-chrysin on telomerase, MMPs and TIMPs gene expression in mouse B16F10 melanoma tumour model. Artif Cells Nanomed Biotechnol 46(Suppl. 2):75–86
56. Mollazade M, Nejati-Koshki K, Akbarzadeh A, Zarghami N, Nasiri M, Jahanban-Esfahlan R et al (2013) PAMAM dendrimers augment inhibitory effects of curcumin on cancer cell proliferation: possible inhibition of telomerase. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 14(11):6925–6928

11 Aspirin as a Potential Geroprotector: Experimental Data and Clinical Evidence

Oleh Lushchak, Veronika Piskovatska, Olha Strilbytska, Iryna Kindrat, Nadya Stefanyshyn, Alexander Koliada, Volodymyr Bubalo, Kenneth B. Storey, and Alexander Vaiserman

Abstract

Aging is a biological process with effects at the molecular, cellular, tissue, organ, system, and organismal levels and is characterized by decline in physical function and higher risks of age-related diseases. The use of anti-aging drugs for disease prevention has become a high priority for science and is a new biomedicine trend. Geroprotectors are compounds which slow aging and increase lifespan of the organism in question. The common painkiller aspirin, a member of the non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) family, is one of the potential geroprotective agents. Aspirin is often used in treatment of mild to moderate pain. It has anti-inflammatory and anti-pyretic properties and acts as an inhibitor of cyclooxygenase which results in inhibition of prostaglandin. Acetylsalicylic acid as an active compound of aspirin also inhibits platelet aggregation and is used in the prevention of arterial and venous thrombosis. Aspirin has shown life-extending effects in numerous model organisms. This chapter reviews the evidence for clinical efficacy of aspirin including cardiovascular disease prevention, anti-cancer effects, and improvement of cognitive function. However, there are some limitations of these therapies, including the risk of excessive bleeding. We have also summarized numerous experimental and analytical data that support health and longevity benefits of aspirin treatment by affecting pro-longevity pathways.

O. Lushchak (✉) · O. Strilbytska · N. Stefanyshyn
Department of Biochemistry and Biotechnology, Vasyl Stefanyk Precarpathian National University, Ivano-Frankivsk, Ukraine
e-mail: oleh.lushchak@pnu.edu.ua

V. Piskovatska
Clinic for Heart Surgery, University clinic of Martin Luther University, Halle, Germany

I. Kindrat
Medical University, Ivano-Frankivsk, Ukraine

A. Koliada · A. Vaiserman
Laboratory of Epigenetics, D.F. Chebotarev Institute of Gerontology, NAMS, Kyiv, Ukraine

V. Bubalo
Laboratory of Experimental Toxicology and Mutagenesis L.I. Medved's Research Center of Preventive Toxicology, Food and Chemical Safety, MHU, Kyiv, Ukraine

K. B. Storey
Department of Biology, Carleton University, Ottawa, Canada

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_11

Keywords

Aging · NSAID · Aspirin · Age-related diseases · Geroscience · Geroprotector

11.1 Introduction

Aging is a process of complex changes in an organism over the time with constant increasing of risks related to the development of pathologies. The slowdown of age-related diseases extends the lifespan and this might be determined at the developmental stage [1] and specific nutrient and nutrient-sensing pathways [2, 3]. Lifespan and age-associated pathologies can be pharmacologically treated with supplements and pharmaceuticals of artificial or natural origins [4–7]. Modern geriatric medicine and geroscience are mainly focused on the supplements and pharmaceuticals, which allow delaying the onset of all age-associated chronic disorders. Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid, ASA) is a non-selective inhibitor of cyclooxygenase (COX), the first synthesized representative of the family of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). Initially discovered as an anti-pyretic, analgesic, and anti-inflammatory drug, aspirin has later proven to have pleiotropic effects, both dependent and independent on its COX-inhibitor properties. Aspirin-like substances derived from salicylate-rich plants have been used for pain and fever relief for many centuries. Various species of willow (*Salix* spp.) were first mentioned in ancient medicinal texts, like the Ebers Papyrus (1550 BC) [8], and the active compound of willow bark was identified in 1832 by French chemist Charles Gerhardt, who attempted to neutralize salicylic acid by buffering it with sodium (sodium salicylate) and acetylchloride to create acetylsalicylic acid. Aspirin was patented on February 27, 1900, by Felix Hoffmann from the Bayer Company. As an anti-platelet agent, aspirin is the most prescribed agent for the prevention and treatment of thrombosis. Moreover, it may act as a calorie restriction mimetic and increase cellular stress responses. Despite its high overall safety profile and a massive body of evidence supporting clinical benefits of aspirin use, substantial risk of side effects, including gastrointestinal bleeding, exists for regular low-dose prescriptions.

11.2 Mechanisms of Action

In 1971 Vane proposed the mechanism of action of the aspirin-like drugs [9]. Anti-inflammatory and anti-platelet properties of aspirin are related to biosynthesis of prostaglandins (PGs). PGs and their derivatives thromboxanes (TXs) play homeostatic functions, such as in inflammatory responses [10]. PGs are synthesized from arachidonic acid via oxidation of fatty acids of membrane lipids. Phospholipases (PLAs) catalyze release of arachidonic acid from the plasma membrane. Arachidonic acid is further metabolized by cyclooxygenase (COX) to PGH2. Synthesis of PGs depends mainly on the activity of COX, which possesses both COX and peroxidase activity and has two isoforms COX1 and COX2 [11]. COX1 and COX2 are encoded by two different genes, although these enzymes share high similarity in amino-acid sequence [12]. COX1 and COX2 have the same enzymatic function participating in biosynthesis of PGH2. PGH2 is further transformed into PGE2, PGI2, PGD2, PGF2α, and TXA2 as a result of the inflammatory enzymatic cascade in the tissues (Fig. 11.1) [13]. Tissue-specific prostaglandins are involved in mediating physiological processes, including vasodilation or vasoconstriction, ovulation, bone metabolism, suppression of gastric acid secretion, inflammatory immune response, regulation of chemotaxis, and endocrine regulation.

The COX enzyme is a target of NSAIDs including aspirin. NSAIDs inhibit the COX-specific active site of the enzyme but have no effect on the peroxidase active site [14]. NSAIDs block the binding of arachidonic acid to the COX enzymes. It was demonstrated that aspirin irreversibly inhibits COX by acetylation of serine (Ser) residues, namely Ser-530 of COX1 and Ser-516 of COX2 (Fig. 11.1). COX1 is expressed in platelets, and acetylation of COX1 by aspirin leads to inhibition

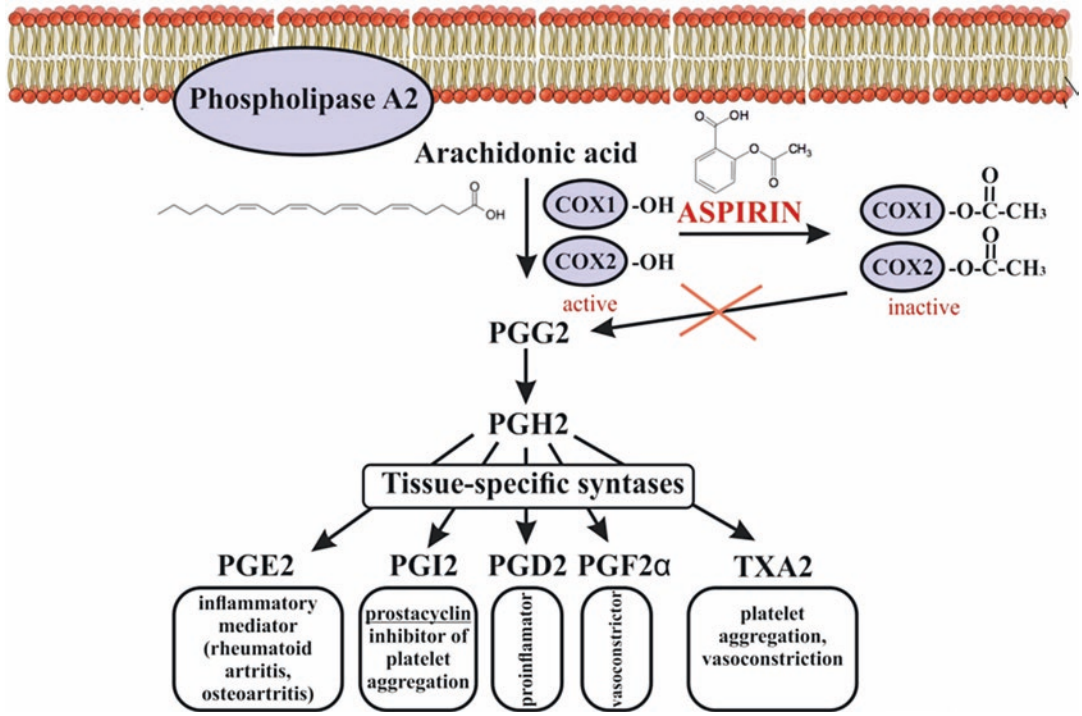


Fig. 11.1 Mechanism of action of aspirin. Aspirin blocks COX1 and COX2 by acetylation of serine residues. Acetylated COX is unable to synthesize PGG2 and subsequently its tissue-specific derivatives

of TXA2 synthesis. TXA2 acts as a vasoconstrictor and potent platelet activator; therefore, aspirin reduces platelet activation and aggregation reducing the risk of thrombosis [15]. COX1 is constitutively expressed in the endoplasmic reticulum of most cells [16]. COX2 is an inducible form, which is upregulated in response to pro-inflammatory stimuli. COX2 is rapidly expressed in several cell types in response to cytokines, growth factors, and pro-inflammatory molecules [17]. Aspirin totally blocks COX1 activity, while COX2 acetylated by aspirin can still convert arachidonic acid to 15-R-hydroxyeicosatetraenoic acid (15-R-HETE) [11]. Decreased production of prostaglandins and TXA2 under aspirin treatment is the basis of both the therapeutic effects and toxicities.

11.3 Lifespan Extension in Model Organisms

Aging is the physiological process that is characterized by loss of normal organ function caused by damage accumulation in cells and tissues [18]. Longevity can be modulated by alterations in age-related genes. Moreover, lifespan might be extended using some drugs. Discovering chemicals that can delay aging and extend lifespan is one of the most promising ways to improve the quality of life in older age. Today, many of the lifespan- and healthspan-extending drugs are effective at relatively low concentrations from 5 to 200 mg/kg of body weight [19]. However, it is important to know that every compound may possess some side effects. Furthermore, many drugs may extend lifespan by the so-called hormetic effect: the conditions in which relatively toxic substances may have beneficial effects.

There is a continuous need of optimal model systems to discover potential anti-aging approaches and evaluate the effects on healthspan. Ideally, a model system should maximally replicate the aging processes in humans, with high conservation of the relevant genes and signaling pathways. More often, researchers use simple model organisms such as nematodes, fruit flies, and rodents. Most studies aimed at investigating anti-aging drugs have been performed by

using invertebrate models, which are considered as useful for investigating human diseases and have been widely exploited for discovering potential anti-aging agents [20–22]. Pathways controlling lifespan and aging are partially conserved in a wide range of species, from yeast to humans [18, 23]. Previously, we have summarized the beneficial lifespan-extending effect of metformin as potential geroprotector for various animal models [7]. In this chapter, we have collected and summarized data obtained in invertebrate and rodent models regarding the anti-aging potential of aspirin.

11.3.1 *Caenorhabditis elegans*

Aspirin has been found to have many beneficial effects on physiological traits and is often used to treat pain and inflammation. Aspirin treatment extended the nematode lifespan and improved stress resistance [24, 25]. The data also suggested that aspirin may act in a dietary restriction-like manner [25]. Furthermore, it reduces the levels of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and activates expression of genes related to the main antioxidant enzymes including catalase, superoxide dismutase, and glutathione-S-transferase [24]. Recently, it was demonstrated that aspirin increases metabolism and regulates germline signaling to activate downstream DAF-12 and DAF-16 to extend lifespan [26]. Aspirin as a salicylic derivative extends the lifespan of *C. elegans* by activating autophagy and the mitochondrial unfolded protein response [27].

Conclusively, drugs and compounds of varied groups and origins have been shown to extend the lifespan of worms by affecting different pathways and mechanisms. However, there is a need to confirm the effects of these treatments in other organisms.

11.3.2 *Drosophila melanogaster*

Invertebrate model systems, including *Drosophila melanogaster*, are essential for better understanding of the genetic pathways that control aging. Furthermore, the fruit fly has proved to be valuable in testing chemical compounds that influence longevity. *Drosophila* possesses complex behavioral phenotypes and several good models of human age-related diseases are available. Furthermore, *Drosophila* experiments can be conducted in demographic cages, which allow researchers to investigate the effects of biodemographic on lifespan.

Aspirin has been found to suppress the aging process via interfering with oxidant production and cytokine response processes and by blocking glycooxidation reactions [28]. Prolonged *Drosophila* lifespan and improved healthspan have been observed under aspirin administration [29]. The lifespan of *D. melanogaster* females was longer and the duration of metamorphosis was prolonged in the experimental groups treated with acetylsalicylic acid, the active agent in aspirin, and acetaldehyde [30]. A recent study discovered the lifespan-extending effect of a set of NSAIDs, including aspirin [31]. These NSAIDs delay the age-dependent decline of locomotor activity and increase stress resistance. The effect of the lifespan increase was associated with decreased fecundity. Depending on the concentration, NSAIDs have demonstrated both anti- and pro-oxidant properties in *Drosophila* tissues [31]. The molecular mechanism of aspirin in this area is still unknown, but it influences the metabolism of amino acids, carbohydrates, and urea.

11.3.3 Rodents

The mouse has developed into the major mammalian model system for the research of compounds with potential lifespan-extending effects. The mouse possesses genetic and physiological similarities to humans, and its genome can be easily manipulated and analyzed. Furthermore, multiple tools, mutants, and inbred strains are available to simulate age-related diseases in the mouse with a high translational potential.

The National Institute on Aging Interventions Testing Program (ITP) tested the impact of some agents, which can potentially extend lifespan, including aspirin [32]. It was demonstrated that

aspirin administration led to increased lifespan of male but not female mice [32]. The detailed mechanism of the lifespan-extending effect in mice is still poorly understood. However, it is known that aspirin triggers protective autophagy in mice and acts as a calorie restriction mimetic [33].

In addition to mice, rats have been extensively used in studies related to aging. Although a study found no direct impact of aspirin supplementation on rat survival, it did normalize blood pressure in rats with a hypertension phenotype [34].

11.4 Health Benefits of Aspirin: Evidence from Clinical Trials

Aspirin was originally developed as an analgesic and anti-pyretic drug, although it is now predominantly used for primary and secondary cardiovascular prevention. However, many of its pleiotropic health effects regarding age-related diseases are still not completely understood [35]. Aspirin might be one of the most appropriate agents as an anti-aging drug due to low costs and simplicity of treatment and through its well-investigated multifaceted properties regarding cardiovascular disease (CVD) and cancer.

11.4.1 Aspirin and CVD Prevention in Elderly

CVDs represent an important health burden for modern society and are the leading cause of death in the older population [36]. In the USA, it has been reported that the percentage of people who have CVD among those aged 60–79 years is approximately 72% and reaches at least 80% in those aged more than 80 years [37, 38]. Because of these numbers and the increase in prevalence of other critical factors such as obesity and diabetes in the aging population, the number of deaths due to CVD in the future might dramatically increase [36, 37, 39].

A convincing body of evidence suggests that aspirin provides a beneficial reduction of CVD mortality and new CVD events [40]. Low-dose aspirin is currently routinely prescribed according to multiple evidence-based guidelines for management of acute vascular events and revascularization procedures as well as for secondary CVD prevention. Currently, nearly 20% of adults in the USA report taking aspirin daily, or every other day, with this number increasing to nearly 50% in those aged 65 years and older [41]. At low doses, aspirin is also widely used to prevent pregnancy-related vascular disorders, such as preeclampsia and intrauterine growth restriction [42].

The anti-platelet effect of aspirin is a result of acetylation of COX1 with subsequent inhibition of TXA2 production. Growing evidence suggests that aspirin-mediated acetylation might confer additional non-COX-dependent benefits in prevention of thrombosis, as well as anti-inflammatory and anti-tumor effects [43, 44].

Anti-platelet effect of ASA allows reduction of the risk of death from ischemic stroke and vascular complications for a wide range of patients, both in primary or secondary prevention settings [45, 46]. Stroke is a leading cause of mortality and disability worldwide [47]. Recently, two large randomized trials found a significant decrease of 7 recurrent ischemic strokes per 1000 patients and a nominally significant reduction of 4 deaths without further stroke per 1000 patients treated with aspirin [48, 49]. Overall, there was a net decrease of 9 per 1000 treated in the risk of further stroke or death in hospital indicating a benefit for acute initiation of aspirin after ischemic stroke [50].

In elderly patients with coronary heart disease (CHD), *angina pectoris* represents the most common cardiovascular disease. Studies have shown that the prevalence of angina rises with increasing age, with a mean age of onset of 62.3 years [51]. ASA is the preferred drug for CHD [52] and it can effectively inhibit vasoconstriction and platelet aggregation by preventing and controlling thrombosis in affected people [53, 54].

Along with *angina pectoris,* peripheral arterial disease (PAD) is another common disorder associated with a high risk of cardiovascular mortality [55]. The major risk factors for PAD are similar to those for coronary and cerebrovascular

disease [56]. The benefit of aspirin as a secondary prevention therapy in patients with atherosclerosis has been demonstrated in patients with prior ischemic stroke or acute myocardial infarction [57].

Clinical decision about prescription of low-dose ASA in primary prevention in elderly people remains complicated and requires careful individual evaluation of the risk-benefit ratio. A recent meta-analysis of nine trials of aspirin for the primary prevention of CVD demonstrated a significant reduction in the risk of myocardial infarction, ischemic stroke, and all-cause mortality in subjects allocated to long-term aspirin use. At the same time aspirin increased the risk of hemorrhagic complications, such as hemorrhagic stroke, major bleedings, and gastrointestinal bleeding. N. Raju et al. showed that this prevention strategy always requires evaluation of the balance between the potential benefit and harm of long-term ASA prescription [58]. High risk of bleeding, especially intracerebral hemorrhage, remains the major concern for different patient cohorts despite potential favorable cardiovascular outcomes and reduction of all-cause mortality. Selection of the correct dose and form of aspirin (coated or buffered), careful consideration of comorbidities and co-medications, and the possible twice-a-day dosing in patients with increased platelet turnover are among the variables that need to be taken into account for safe and effective prescription of aspirin [59, 60].

Implementing pharmacological strategies to decrease cardiovascular risks remains challenging for older patients because of the presence of declining physiological status compared to the younger population [36]. As reported in several papers, the presence of diabetes and obesity can have a strong negative effect on elderly people with CVDs because it can impair daily activity and reduce overall quality of life [37, 39].

11.4.2 Anti-Cancer Effects of Aspirin

A large body of evidence confirms that aspirin can improve overall survival in patients with diagnosed cancer, reducing the risk of cardiovascular events and, in some cases, influencing cancer-related survival and slowing down the rate of metastasis. A meta-analysis, involving 23 randomized controlled trials on low-dose aspirin and non-vascular deaths, reported a significant reduction in cancer deaths after 4 years of aspirin intake [61]. The results of meta-analyses have suggested that aspirin has possible protective effects toward breast [62, 63], prostate [64, 65], pancreatic [66], and gastric cancer [64, 67].

A recent cohort study performed by Loomans-Kropp et al. [39] on a total of 146,152 individuals aged 65 years and older found that aspirin use 3 or more times per week was associated with decreased risk of mortality from all causes (HR, 0.81; 95% CI, 0.80–0.83; $P < 0.001$), any cancer (HR, 0.85; 95% CI, 0.81–0.88; $P < 0.001$), gastrointestinal cancer (HR, 0.75; 95% CI, 0.66–0.84; $P < 0.001$), and colorectal cancer (HR, 0.71; 95% CI, 0.61–0.84; $P < 0.001$) [39].

Protective effects of low-dose ASA against certain cancer types seem to be variable depending on the population and cancer type. A meta-analysis by Hochmuth et al. demonstrated that aspirin can have a protective effect against non-small cell lung cancer [68].

Meta-analyses of trials regarding the potential survival benefits of aspirin in patients with diagnosed cancer often show conflicting results due to variability in research methodologies and the high degree of heterogeneity of the available studies [69, 70]. A meta-analysis of observational studies reported little or no effect of aspirin on breast cancer survival [63]. Another meta-analysis showed a reduction in breast cancer-specific mortality, all-cause mortality, and metastasis among aspirin and NSAID users [71]. However, a recent single retrospective analysis of 1113 women diagnosed with operable breast cancer between 1995 and 2015 showed that ASA use did not appear to alter breast cancer-related survival before their breast cancer diagnosis [70]. Another recently published paper showed that aspirin use was not strongly associated with mortality following breast cancer [72]. These results are in disagreement with a study claiming that improvement in breast cancer survival in aspirin-allocated women were observed only if treatment

was initiated after the cancer diagnosis, while pre-diagnosis treatment did not demonstrate clear benefits [73].

Aspirin intake was inversely related with prostate cancer-specific mortality, according to a meta-analysis by Liu et al. [65]. A systematic review and meta-analysis showed reduced mortality in colon cancer patients receiving aspirin as an adjuvant treatment [74]. It reduced mortality especially in cases of tumors expressing *PIK3CA* (p110α catalytic subunit of PI3K). Possible benefits were also demonstrated for patients with breast and prostate cancer.

In a more recent study, effects of aspirin on men with prostatic cancer (PC) were studied [75]. Daily aspirin use was inversely associated with prostate cancer mortality [HR, 0.59; 95% CI, 0.36–0.96] and case fatality (HR, 0.45; 95% CI, 0.22–0.94) in both populations without distinctions. Another study in men between 40 and 75 years of age concluded that regular aspirin use was associated with a lower risk of lethal PC and its post-diagnostic use was associated with better survival [76]. They used a proportional hazards regression to examine the association between current, past, or no regular use of aspirin (at least twice a week) in relation to lethal (metastatic or fatal) prostatic cancer and found that regular aspirin use was associated with a lower risk of lethal prostate cancer (HR, 0.80; 95% CI, 0.66–0.96). Moreover, post-diagnostic use of aspirin was associated with a lower risk of lethal PC (HR, 0.80; 95% CI, 0.64–1.00) and overall mortality (HR, 0.79; 95% CI, 0.69–0.90) [76].

Across epidemiological studies, the most significant reductions in risk have been observed in gastrointestinal cancer and particularly in case of colorectal cancer [77, 78]. Evidence of chemoprevention even inspired the US Preventive Services Task Force to recommend low-dose aspirin for primary prevention of CVD and colorectal cancer in adults aged 50 to 59 years, having greater than a 10% 10-year risk of CVD and no increased risk of bleeding [79]. Moreover, in the same study, an individualized treatment approach of low-dose aspirin use for the prevention of CVD and colorectal cancer in individuals aged 60 to 69 years was recommended [80]. Although the evidence for aspirin use among individuals 70 years and older remains insufficient [80], a new analysis found that older adults (> 65 years) who regularly took aspirin had a significant reduction in mortality from all causes of cancer compared with individuals who did not take aspirin [39].

A meta-analysis by Ye et al. showed that low-dose (75–325 mg daily), regular (2–7 times per week), long-term (more than 5 years) aspirin intake leads to significant reduction in colorectal cancer risk [81]. Evidence from studies, investigating CVD primary and secondary prevention, suggested that ASA administration reduces incidence of colorectal cancer and related mortality 10 years after treatment initiation [82]. Aspirin provides survival benefits for patients diagnosed with colorectal cancers, but only if administered after the diagnosis. Meta-analyses demonstrate that aspirin is beneficial as a post-diagnosis treatment especially in colorectal tumors overexpressing *COX2* and *PIK3CA* and reduces overall mortality in *PIK3CA* mutated cancers by 29% [83, 84].

Emillson et al. performed a network meta-analysis to explore low-dose aspirin as an alternative to traditional colorectal cancer screening methods (flexible sigmoidoscopy or fecal occult blood test) in reduction of colorectal cancer incidence and mortality [85]. Low-dose aspirin seemed to be as effective as the screening tools in colorectal cancer prevention, with effects more visible for malignancies localized in proximal colon [85].

Aspirin could be used for colorectal cancer prevention in especially vulnerable populations with high genetic risk of cancer, such as Lynch syndrome. This hereditary condition was addressed in the CAPP2 (Cancer Prevention Programme) randomized trial of 861 participants. Patients with Lynch syndrome received 600 mg/day of aspirin or placebo for up to 4 years. Allocation to aspirin resulted in a significant decrease of almost 60% in cancer incidence [86]. Also, aspirin effectively reduced risk of colorectal cancer among *MMR* gene mutation carriers in the Colon Cancer Family Registry [87]. According to the results of a meta-analysis of 15

randomized controlled trials, low-dose aspirin can also be used for secondary chemoprevention in patients with previous diagnosis of colorectal neoplasia [88].

However, not all studies reached same conclusions about post-diagnostic aspirin use and mortality in colorectal cancer. A study carried out on a large Scottish population-based cohort of patients with a diagnosis of colorectal cancer did not find any evidence of a reduction in cancer-specific mortality in aspirin users [89]. Also, in a clinical trial conducted by the Japanese Primary Prevention Project (JPPP) among patients aged 60 to 85 years and presenting with hypertension, dyslipidemia, or diabetes mellitus, low dose of aspirin failed to reduce colorectal cancer incidence or mortality. Surprisingly, this study found that the cancer incidence was significantly higher in the aspirin group than in the no-aspirin group and failed to show preventive effects of aspirin on cancer incidence or mortality during the average study period of 5 years [90]. Several studies (ASCOLT, ASPIRIN, US Aspirin for Breast Cancer (ABC) trial, PIK3CA-based trials, and the Add-Aspirin trial) aimed at exploring the potential role of aspirin as an adjuvant therapeutic agent for colorectal, breast, gastro-esophageal, and prostate cancer are now ongoing. The results of these trials should provide valuable insights about efficacy and safety of aspirin as a treatment in cancer.

Patients with certain types of myeloproliferative neoplasms, like polycythemia vera or essential thrombocythemia, might be at high risk of thrombotic events due to high rate of platelet turnover and rapid emergence of new platelets with unacetylated COX enzymes. Such patients might require tailored, more frequent dosing for efficient prevention of cardiovascular events [91, 92].

Data regarding the anti-cancer effect of aspirin in older adults has been conflicting and uncertain. A multicenter double-blind randomized controlled trial allocated elderly patients, without prior CVD, cognitive deficit, or established disability, to ASA 100 mg/day or placebo and found an increased rate of all-cause mortality in the aspirin group (5.9% vs. 5.2%, $P < 0.05$). This was attributed to the increased risk of cancer in the aspirin-allocated individuals (3.1% vs. 2.3%, $P < 0.05$) [93]. Researchers hypothesize that aspirin might make cancer symptomatic via increased risk of bleeding that is especially pronounced in elderly individuals [91]. A recent meta-analysis combining data from 13 randomized controlled trials and a total of 164,225 participants found no significant difference in cancer incidence between ASA-allocated patients and patients receiving placebo [94].

Anti-cancer effects of ASA are multimodal including COX1 and COX2 inhibition and anti-inflammatory properties, along with mechanisms not related directly to COX inhibition. Rectal mucosal COX2 inhibition is considered crucial in prevention of colorectal neoplasia [79]. Possible targets and pathways implicated in the anti-carcinogenous properties of aspirin include inhibition of IκB kinase β, preventing activation of NF-κB, and inhibition of extracellular-signal-regulated kinase (ERK) and Wnt/β-catenin signaling [95]. Aspirin can also act as a 5′ AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK)-activator, inhibiting downstream activity of the mammalian target of rapamycin complex 1 (mTORC1) [96].

11.4.3 Anti-inflammatory Properties of Aspirin

The anti-inflammatory properties of ASA occur by direct COX-inhibition-mediated mechanisms and indirect modulation of NF-κB pathway, along with inhibition of interleukin (IL)-6 pathways [43]. Limited evidence exists about the role of aspirin in prevention of sepsis, a life-threatening condition that often affects the elderly. A meta-analysis with propensity matching showed 7–12% mortality risk reduction in sepsis patients taking aspirin prior to sepsis onset [97]. Another randomized controlled trial investigating effects of ASA in sepsis patients showed that it was able to induce pro-inflammatory effects in septic monocytes, signifying that patients suffering from sepsis-induced immune deficiency might benefit from aspirin treatment [98].

Inhibition of NF-κB by aspirin might play a significant role in bone health. Inhibition of NF-κB signaling and reduction in the expression of receptor activator of NF-κB ligand can suppress the formation of osteoclasts and potentially prevent bone loss [99]. A recent meta-analysis of observational trials suggests that aspirin use is associated with 17% lower risk of bone fractures and has a modest positive effect on bone mineral density [100].

11.4.4 Aspirin and Cognitive Function

Anti-platelet effects of aspirin are potentially beneficial for neuroprotection via reduction of neuroinflammation and small vascular lesions. The impact of ASA on white matter lesions (WMLs) was evaluated in patients from the Women's Health Initiative Memory Study of Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI). There was no significant difference between the MRI volumes of WMLs among aspirin users and non-users [101]. In patients with Alzheimer's disease, aspirin did not provide any additional therapeutic benefit and conversely increased risk of intracranial bleeding, putting patients at risk of additional cognitive loss [102]. A recent meta-analysis by Veronese et al. polling data from 36,196 patients did not confirm a protective effect of aspirin against cognitive decline in older age [103]. Low-dose aspirin was neither associated with significantly better global cognition nor delayed the onset of dementia or cognitive impairment. The results of ASPREE (ASPirin in Reducing Events in the Elderly) trial, assessing role of aspirin in maintenance of disability-free and dementia-free life in a healthy population of elderly people, did not show favorable effects of aspirin if administered at an earlier age or continued for a longer period of time [93]. In particular, the study showed that primary end points of death, dementia, or physical disability occurred in 921 participants in the aspirin group (21.5 events per 1000 person-years) and in 914 individuals in the placebo group (21.2 events per 1000 person-years). The between-group difference was not significant (HR, 1.01; 95% CI, 0.92–1.11; $P = 0.79$).

11.5 Adverse Effects of Aspirin

Despite a promising portfolio of pleiotropic effects, long-term use of aspirin is associated with certain risks. The aim of this section is to give an update about the critical use of aspirin in association with the appearance of adverse effects in vulnerable populations of patients including the elderly, patients with comorbidities, and those taking multiple medications. Several conditions associated with aspirin hypersensitivity including Reye's syndrome and aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease are rare and difficult to diagnose and manage at the clinical level [104]. Aspirin poisoning is another overlooked problem, and this is associated with substantial morbidity and mortality. In the USA, about 20,000 patients per year are admitted with salicylate poisoning [105].

11.5.1 Aspirin and Risk of Bleedings

Data from both observational studies and randomized controlled trials are important to assess risks associated with administration of low-dose aspirin and to identify the primary factors associated with their reported outcomes [106]. Evidence shows that the risk for gastrointestinal bleeding with and without aspirin use increases with age [107, 108]. NSAID therapy combined with aspirin approximately quadruples the risk for serious gastrointestinal bleeding compared to the risk with aspirin alone [60, 109].

A recent review of randomized controlled trials and observational studies investigating the bleeding risk with aspirin therapy identified age and *Helicobacter pylori* infection as factors that may increase the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding [110]. The incidence of major bleeding events and the absolute risk of bleeding in individuals receiving low-dose aspirin increased with age [111]. These results are in agreement with a meta-analysis of randomized trials by the Antithrombotic Treatment Trialists' (ATT) collaboration that identified age as an important predictor of the risk of bleeding associated with low-dose aspirin, with an approximate doubling of the absolute risk of bleeding with low-dose aspirin for every 10-year increase in age [112].

Moreover, in elderly people, higher doses of aspirin do not appear to confer additional benefits but increase toxicities [108]. Overall, the rates of gastrointestinal complications increase steeply beyond the age of 70 years and fatality rates show a similar trend [113]. Since a limited number of elderly persons have been included in previous primary prevention trials, the risk-benefit balance of aspirin on increased risk of bleeding and CVDs in this age group is still uncertain [114, 115]. A confirmation that in elderly populations the risk of CVD and increased risk of bleeding are higher than in younger populations [116] comes from a meta-analysis review published by McNeill et al. [93]. In their primary analysis of the "Aspirin in Reducing Events in the Elderly" (ASPREE) trial, they investigated the use of aspirin in older people without history of CVD to see whether or not the health benefits outweighed the risks. They first showed that daily use of low-dose aspirin did not prolong disability free-survival among the elderly and, secondly, it did not prevent the effect of aspirin on CVDs and bleeding. Indeed, there was no significant difference between groups in the rate of disability-free survival (HR, 1.01; 95% CI, 0.92–1.11), but when they analyzed the effects on CVDs, aspirin increased the risk of major hemorrhage [117]. They found 8.6 events per 1000 people per year in the aspirin group versus 6.2 per 1000 in the placebo group (HR, 1.38; 95% CI, 1.18–1.62). Researchers concluded that for elderly people without known CVD, regular low-dose aspirin does not only prolong disability-free survival or reduce the risk of CVD but puts them at higher risk of having a major hemorrhage and higher mortality from other causes [118]. In conclusion, the use of low-dose aspirin as a primary prevention strategy in older adults resulted in a significantly higher risk of major hemorrhage and did not result in a significantly lower risk of CVD than placebo [117].

11.5.2 Low-Dose Aspirin on Intracranial Hemorrhage (ICH) and Cerebral Microbleeds

Hemorrhagic stroke, although rare, is one of the most serious and potentially fatal aspirin side effects. Estimates suggest a relative increase of 32–36% in hemorrhagic strokes in aspirin users from a baseline rate of 0.03% per year [107]. A meta-analysis of a randomized clinical trial of a group with a dose of aspirin of 270 mg per day calculated an average absolute risk increase in ICH of 12 events per 10,000 persons [119]. In subjects with ICH who had been taking regularly moderate doses of aspirin immediately before the onset of stroke, one study observed poor short-term outcomes and increased mortality, probably attributable to rapid enlargement of intracerebral hematomas [120]. The study showed that a 3-month mortality of the 208 identified subjects with ICH was 33% with a risk factor for death at the onset of ICH of 2.5 (relative risks [RR], 2.5; 95% CI, 1.3–4.6; $P = 0.004$) [120]. In comparison, the estimated absolute risk reduction in myocardial infarction was 137 events per 10,000 persons and 39 events per 10,000 persons in ischemic stroke [119].

In agreement with previous results, Garcia-Rodriguez et al. reported increased ICH risks in patients taking daily aspirin [121]. They showed that the overall risk of ICH was increased by approximately 40% with long-term low-dose aspirin, which is similar to the estimates from randomized trials, although not consistently reported in all studies [117]. Interestingly, they also found that in low-dose aspirin users, the absolute risk of bleeding, but not the RR for bleeding compared with non-users, increased with age [60].

Aspirin has been linked to an increased risk of cerebral microbleeds in the form of dark hole patches in an MRI study [122]. This study was conducted in a population-based sample of 1062

persons from a non-dementia longitudinal cohort, with an age range of 60 years and older. Compared with placebo, cerebral microbleeds were more prevalent among users of platelet aggregation inhibitors (adjusted odds ratio [OR], 1.71; 95% CI, 1.21–2.41) while lobar microbleeds were more prevalent among aspirin users (adjusted OR compared with non-users, 2.70; 95% CI, 1.45–5.04) [121].

11.5.3 Adverse Effects of Aspirin in Elderly Patients Having Surgical Procedures

Elderly patients have the highest postoperative mortality and morbidity rate in the adult surgical population. The use of low-dose aspirin before surgeries can cause prolonged bleeding after operations for up to 10 days [123]. However, clinical decisions to stop aspirin therapy before surgery are challenging and considered a key risk factor in patients with coronary stents [124, 125]. Patients might face either the risk of cardiovascular thromboembolic complications in case of therapy cessation or the risk of hemorrhagic surgical complication in case of the therapy continuation [126–128].

To make these decisions even more difficult, mixed results have been found in studies of elderly patients undergoing surgical procedures after use of aspirin. In high-risk patients aged over 70 years, a controlled trial showed that low-dose aspirin reduced the risk of major cardiac events without increasing bleeding complications [129].

Conversely, a study of 6499 people undergoing elective surgery found that 30 patients required reoperations to control bleeding [124]. Among these patients, 20 had diffuse bleeding while 10 had bleeding from a specific site. Diffuse bleeding was associated with the preoperative use of aspirin alone or in combination with other NSAIDs in 19 of the 20 patients with diffuse bleeding.

The adverse effects of aspirin in patients having surgical procedures were also reviewed in two meta-analyses by Kwok and Loke [130]. The hemorrhagic adverse effects of aspirin therapy in patients were first evaluated during surgical revascularization of coronary artery disease [131] and then with use of aspirin in cutaneous surgery. Meta-analysis results showed that bleeding was increased in groups treated with aspirin (RR, 2.32; 95% CI, 1.31–4.08; $P < 0.01$). The authors concluded that patients who receive aspirin within 7 days of surgery were at higher risk of blood loss [129].

Regarding the risk of postoperative bleeding and complications in dermatological surgery when aspirin was in use, studies also reported mixed results [132–134]. A meta-analysis of 4 prospective studies and 2 retrospective studies with a total of 1373 patients reported that aspirin or NSAIDs were associated with increased risk of moderate to severe complications compared to controls (OR, 2.0; 95% CI, 0.97–4.13; $P = 0.06$) and this risk was greater with warfarin than aspirin [132–134].

11.5.4 Aspirin and Potential Drug–Drug Interactions

Aspirin can interact with other medications, potentially altering their effects or increasing the risk of adverse events [135–137]. A total of 315 drugs are known to interact with aspirin but the most common of these are other NSAIDs, such as diclofenac, ibuprofen, indomethacin, and naproxen. Co-administration of these medications with aspirin leads to increased risk of gastrointestinal bleeding [137].

Aspirin competes for cytochrome P450 metabolism with other agents metabolized via this system. Methotrexate, an immunosuppressant and anti-proliferative agent, is widely used in chronic autoimmune diseases and cancer [137–139]. Aspirin acting on cytochrome P450 can reduce hepatic clearance of methotrexate, resulting in high circulating plasma levels of methotrexate and potential toxicity [137, 138].

The combination of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and aspirin has been associated with increased risk of bleeding [137, 140]. Yuet et al. advised that patients on SSRIs

are 40% more likely to develop severe gastrointestinal bleeding, especially if they are taking NSAIDs such as aspirin [141]. Another study showed that SSRIs interact with other NSAIDs such as ibuprofen and naproxen, as well as vitamin K antagonist anticoagulants such as warfarin and the anti-platelet medication clopidogrel [142]. If aspirin is taken with warfarin, it can reduce the anticoagulant effects of the latter and increase the risk of bleeding [137, 141, 142].

11.6 Conclusions and Future Directions

Aspirin remains a cornerstone of primary cardiovascular prevention in high-risk individuals and as anti-platelet treatment of acute vascular events and secondary prevention of CVDs. Apart from thrombosis prevention, beneficial effects of aspirin may include reduction of all-cause mortality, risks of cancer, and bone fractures. As a classical non-selective COX inhibitor, aspirin exerts anti-inflammatory, analgesic, and anti-pyretic effects. Inhibition of COX in platelets reduces aggregative properties of platelets and thereby prevents vascular thrombosis. Apart from COX-mediated effects, aspirin possesses the properties of a calorie restriction mimetic, which has been widely studied in model organisms. In model animals, aspirin significantly extended lifespan in *C. elegans*, fruit fly, and mice. Anti-cancer effects of aspirin are mediated through inhibition of IκB kinase β, ERK, and reduction of NF-κB and Wnt/β-catenin signaling. Aspirin also acts as AMPK activator, contributing to inhibition of mTORC1 signaling. A few ongoing trials are currently in progress to evaluate the potential role of aspirin as an adjuvant treatment for colorectal, breast, gastro-esophageal, and prostate cancer.

All these effects should be carefully weighed with substantial risk of bleedings, caused by the non-selective COX-inhibitory activity of aspirin. Patients of older age, particularly smokers and patients with poorly controlled blood pressure, are at high risk of major extracranial bleedings and hemorrhagic stroke. The majority of clinical recommendations for primary prevention do not include routine prescription of aspirin to patients older than 70 years and to patients of any age with high bleeding risk. Factors, substantially increasing the bleeding risk and precluding the use of aspirin, include previous history of gastrointestinal bleeding or peptic ulcer disease, bleeding from other sites, thrombocytopenia, coagulopathy, and chronic kidney disease. Combination of aspirin with other NSAIDs and corticosteroids also contributes to increased risk of hemorrhagic complications, while concurrent use of proton-pump inhibitors and statins may provide a protective effect. Given both these potential positive and negative effects of aspirin therapeutics, further research is required to assess both the risks and benefits in specific disease cases and guided by individualized medicine principles.

Acknowledgments This work was partially supported by the Ministry of Education and Science of Ukraine (no. 0117U006426), National Research Foundation of Ukraine (no. 2020.02/0118) and a Discovery grant from the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council of Canada (no. 6793).

References

1. Vaiserman A, Koliada A, Lushchak O (2018) Developmental programming of aging trajectory. Ageing Res Rev 47:105–122
2. Lushchak O, Strilbytska O, Piskovatska V, Storey KB, Koliada A, Vaiserman A (2017) The role of the TOR pathway in mediating the link between nutrition and longevity. Mech Ageing Dev 164:127–138
3. Lushchak O, Strilbytska OM, Yurkevych I, Vaiserman AM, Storey KB (2019) Implications of amino acid sensing and dietary protein to the aging process. Exp Gerontol 115:69–78
4. Vaiserman AM, Lushchak OV, Koliada AK (2016) Anti-aging pharmacology: promises and pitfalls. Ageing Res Rev 31:9–35
5. Vaiserman A, Lushchak O (2017) Implementation of longevity-promoting supplements and medications in public health practice: achievements, challenges and future perspectives. J Transl Med 15(1):160. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12967-017-1259-8
6. Lushchak O, Strilbytska O, Koliada A, Zayachkivska A, Burdyliuk N, Yurkevych I, Storey KB, Vaiserman A (2020) Nanodelivery of phytobioactive compounds for treating aging-associated disorders. Geroscience 42(1):117–139
7. Piskovatska V, Stefanyshyn N, Storey KB, Vaiserman AM, Lushchak O (2019a) Metformin as a geroprotector: experimental and clinical evidence. Biogerontology 20(1):33–48

8. Dragos D, Gilca M, Gaman L, Vlad A, Iosif L, Stoian I et al. (2017) Phytomedicine in joint disorders. Nutrients 9(1). pii: E70. doi: https://doi.org/10.3390/nu9010070
9. Vane JR (1971) Inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis as a mechanism of action for aspirin-like drugs. Nat New Biol 231(25):232–235
10. Ricciotti E, FitzGerald GA (2011) Prostaglandins and inflammation. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 31(5):986–1000
11. Smith WL, DeWitt DL, Garavito RM (2000) Cyclooxygenases: structural, cellular, and molecular biology. Annu Rev Biochem 69:145–182
12. Mengle-Gaw LJ, Schwartz BD (2002) Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors: promise or peril? Mediat Inflamm 11(5):275–286
13. Smyth EM, Grosser T, Wang M, Yu Y, FitzGerald GA (2009) Prostanoids in health and disease. J Lipid Res 50(Suppl):S423–S428
14. Loll PJ, Picot D, Garavito RM (1995) The structural basis of aspirin activity inferred from the crystal structure of inactivated prostaglandin H2 synthase. Nat Struct Biol 2:637–643
15. Chiang N, Serhan CN (2004) Aspirin triggers formation of anti-inflammatory mediators: new mechanism for an old drug. Discov Med 4(24):470–475
16. Awtry EH, Loscalzo J (2000) Aspirin. Circulation 101(10):1206–1218
17. Bartels AL, Leenders KL (2010) Cyclooxygenase and neuroinflammation in Parkinson's disease neurodegeneration. Curr Neuropharmacol 8(1):62–68
18. Fontana L, Partridge L, Longo VD (2010) Extending healthy life span--from yeast to humans. Science 328(5976):321–326
19. Hayashi S, McMahon AP (2002) Efficient recombination in diverse tissues by a tamoxifen-inducible form of Cre: a tool for temporally regulated gene activation/inactivation in the mouse. Dev Biol 244(2):305–318
20. Markaki M, Tavernarakis N (2010) Modeling human diseases in *Caenorhabditis elegans*. Biotechnol J 5(12):1261–1276
21. Millburn GH, Crosby MA, Gramates LS, Tweedie S, FlyBase Consortium (2016) FlyBase portals to human disease research using *Drosophila* models. Dis Model Mech 9(3):245–252
22. Ugur B, Chen K, Bellen HJ (2016) *Drosophila* tools and assays for the study of human diseases. Dis Model Mech 9(3):235–244
23. Bitto A, Wang AM, Bennett CF, Kaeberlein M (2015) Biochemical genetic pathways that modulate aging in multiple species. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 5(11) pii: a025114. https://doi.org/10.1101/cshperspect.a025114
24. Ayyadevara S, Bharill P, Dandapat A, Hu C, Khaidakov M, Mitra S et al (2013) Aspirin inhibits oxidant stress, reduces age-associated functional declines, and extends lifespan of *Caenorhabditis elegans*. Antioxid Redox Signal 18(5):481–490
25. Wan QL, Zheng SQ, Wu GS, Luo HR (2013) Aspirin extends the lifespan of *Caenorhabditis elegans* via AMPK and DAF-16/FOXO in dietary restriction pathway. Exp Gerontol 48:499–506. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.exger.2013.02.020
26. Huang XZ, Chen Y, Wu J, Zhang X, Wu CC, Zhang CY et al (2017) Aspirin and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs use reduce gastric cancer risk: a dose-response meta-analysis. Oncotarget 8(3):4781–4795. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.13591
27. Shamalnasab M, Gravel SP, St-Pierre J, Breton L, Jäger S, Aguilaniu H (2018) A salicylic acid derivative extends the lifespan of *Caenorhabditis elegans* by activating autophagy and the mitochondrial unfolded protein response. Aging Cell 17(6):e12830. https://doi.org/10.1111/acel.12830
28. Phillips T, Leeuwenburgh C (2004) Lifelong aspirin supplementation as a means to extending life span. Rejuvenation Res 7(4):243–251. https://doi.org/10.1089/rej.2004.7.243
29. Song C, Zhu C, Wu Q, Qi J, Gao Y, Zhang Z et al (2017) Metabolome analysis of effect of aspirin on *Drosophila* lifespan extension. Exp Gerontol 95:54–62
30. Keser D, Karataş A (2012) Effects of aspirin and acetaldehyde on longevity and metamorphosis duration of *Drosophila melanogaster*. Fresenius Environ Bulletin 21(9):2758–2765
31. Danilov A, Shaposhnikov M, Shevchenko O, Zemskaya N, Zhavoronkov A, Moskalev A (2015) Influence of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on *Drosophila melanogaster* longevity. Oncotarget 6(23):19428–19444
32. Strong R, Miller RA, Astle CM, Floyd RA, Flurkey K, Hensley KL et al (2008) Nordihydroguaiaretic acid and aspirin increase lifespan of genetically heterogeneous male mice. Aging Cell 7(5):641–650. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1474-9726.2008.00414.x
33. Pietrocola F, Castoldi F, Maiuri MC, Kroemer G (2018) Aspirin-another caloric-restriction mimetic. Autophagy 14(7):1162–1163
34. Tuttle RS, Yager J, Northrup N (1988) Age and the antihypertensive effect of aspirin in rats. Br J Pharmacol 94(3):755–758
35. Desborough MJR, Keeling DM (2017) The aspirin story—from willow to wonder drug. Br J Haematol 177(5):674–683
36. Sirois C, Couture J, Grégoire JP (2012) Acetylsalicylic acid for primary prevention of cardiovascular diseases in older patients with diabetes: do the benefits overcome the risks? Ther Adv Drug Saf 3(5):213–226
37. Yazdanyar A, Newman AB (2009) The burden of cardiovascular disease in the elderly: morbidity, mortality, and costs. Clin Geriatr Med 25(4):563–577. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cger.2009.07.007
38. Mainous AG, Tanner RJ, Shorr RI, Limacher MC (2014) Use of aspirin for primary and secondary cardiovascular disease prevention in the United States, 2011–2012. J Am Heart Assoc 3(4) pii: e000989. https://doi.org/10.1161/JAHA.114.000989

39. Loomans-Kropp HA, Pinsky P, Cao Y, Chan AT, Umar A (2019) Association of aspirin use with mortality risk among older adult participants in the prostate, lung, colorectal, and ovarian cancer screening trial. JAMA Netw Open 2(12):e1916729. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2019.16729
40. Brotons C, Benamouzig R, Filipiak KJ, Limmroth V, Borghi C (2015) A systematic review of aspirin in primary prevention: is it time for a new approach? Am J Cardiovasc Drugs 15(2):113–133
41. Ittaman SV, VanWormer JJ, Rezkalla SH (2014) The role of aspirin in the prevention of cardiovascular disease. Clin Med Res 12(3-4):147–154
42. Atallah A, Lecarpentier E, Goffinet F, Doret-Dion M, Gaucherand P, Tsatsaris V (2017) Aspirin for prevention of preeclampsia. Drugs 77(17):1819–1831
43. Ornelas A, Zacharias-Millward N, Menter DG, Davis JS, Lichtenberger L, Hawke D et al (2017) Beyond COX-1: the effects of aspirin on platelet biology and potential mechanisms of chemoprevention. Cancer Metastasis Rev 36(2):289–303
44. Warner TD, Nylander S, Whatling C (2011) Anti-platelet therapy: cyclo-oxygenase inhibition and the use of aspirin with particular regard to dual anti-platelet therapy. Brit J Clin Pharmacol 72(4):619–633
45. Hackam DG, Spence JD (2019) Antiplatelet therapy in ischemic stroke and transient ischemic attack. Stroke 50(3):773–778
46. Kheiri B, Simpson TF, Osman M, Golwala H, Radaideh Q, Dalouk K et al (2020) Meta-analysis of secondary prevention of cryptogenic stroke. Cardiovasc Revasc Med. pii: S1553-8389(20)30025-7. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.carrev.2020.01.016
47. Feigin VL, Roth GA, Naghavi M, Parmar P, Krishnamurthi R, Chugh S et al (2016) Global burden of stroke and risk factors in 188 countries, during 1990–2013: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2013. Lancet Neurol 15(9):913–924
48. Anon (1997) CAST: randomised placebo-controlled trial of early aspirin use in 20,000 patients with acute ischaemic stroke. CAST (Chinese Acute Stroke Trial) Collaborative Group. Lancet 349(9066):1641–1649
49. Anon (1997) The International Stroke Trial (IST): a randomised trial of aspirin, subcutaneous heparin, both, or neither among 19435 patients with acute ischaemic stroke. Lancet 349:1569–1581
50. Chen ZM, Sandercock P, Pan HC, Counsell C, Collins R, Liu LS et al (2000) Indications for early aspirin use in acute ischemic stroke: a combined analysis of 40 000 randomized patients from the Chinese acute stroke trial and the international stroke trial. On behalf of the CAST and IST collaborative groups. Stroke 31(6):1240–1249
51. Boden WE, O'Rourke RA, Teo KK, Hartigan PM, Maron DJ, Kostuk WJ et al (2007) Optimal medical therapy with or without PCI for stable coronary disease. N Engl J Med 356(15):1503–1516
52. Rousan TA, Mathew ST, Thadani U (2017) Drug therapy for stable angina pectoris. Drugs 77(3):265–284
53. Van Diepen S, Fuster V, Verma S, Hamza TH, Siami FS, Goodman SG et al (2017) Dual antiplatelet therapy versus aspirin monotherapy in diabetics with multivessel disease undergoing CABG: FREEDOM insights. J Am Coll Cardiol 69:119–127
54. Bavry AA, Gong Y, Handberg EM, Cooper-DeHoff RM, Pepine CJ (2015) Impact of aspirin according to type of stable coronary artery disease: insights from a large international cohort. Am J Med 128:137–143
55. Singh P, Harper Y, Oliphant CS, Morsy M, Skelton M, Askari R et al (2017) Peripheral interventions and antiplatelet therapy: role in current practice. World J Cardiol 9(7):583–593
56. Hess CN, Hiatt WR (2018) Antithrombotic therapy for peripheral artery disease in 2018. JAMA 319(22):2329–2330
57. Mahmoud AN, Elgendy AY, Rambarat C, Mahtta D, Elgendy IY, Bavry AA (2017) Efficacy and safety of aspirin in patients with peripheral vascular disease: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. PLoS One 12(4):e0175283. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0175283
58. Raju N, Sobieraj-Teague M, Bosch J, Eikelboom JW (2016) Updated meta-analysis of aspirin in primary prevention of cardiovascular disease. Am J Med 129(5):e35–e36. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjmed.2015.10.046
59. McQuaid KR, Laine L (2006) Systematic review and meta-analysis of adverse events of low-dose aspirin and clopidogrel in randomized controlled trials. Am J Med 119(8):624–638. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amjmed.2005.10.039
60. Sorensen HT, Mellemkjaer L, Blot WJ, Nielsen GL, Steffensen FH, McLaughlin JK et al (2000) Risk of upper gastrointestinal bleeding associated with use of low-dose aspirin. Am J Gastroenterol 95(9):2218–2224
61. Mills EJ, Wu P, Alberton M, Kanters S, Lanas A, Lester R (2012) Low-dose aspirin and cancer mortality: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Am J Med 125(6):560–567
62. Lu L, Shi L, Zeng J, Wen Z (2017) Aspirin as a potential modality for the chemoprevention of breast cancer: a dose-response meta-analysis of cohort studies from 857,831 participants. Oncotarget 8(25):40389–40401
63. Zhong S, Chen L, Zhang X, Yu D, Tang J, Zhao J (2015) Aspirin use and risk of breast cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev 24(11):1645–1655
64. Huang TB, Yan Y, Guo ZF, Zhang XL, Liu H, Geng J et al (2014) Aspirin use and the risk of prostate cancer: a meta-analysis of 24 epidemiologic studies. Int Urol Nephrol 46(9):1715–1728

65. Liu Y, Chen JQ, Xie L, Wang J, Li T, He Y et al (2014) Effect of aspirin and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on prostate cancer incidence and mortality: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Med 12:55. https://doi.org/10.1186/1741-7015-12-55
66. Zhang YP, Wan YD, Sun YL, Li J, Zhu RT (2015) Aspirin might reduce the incidence of pancreatic cancer: a meta-analysis of observational studies. Sci Rep 5:15460. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep15460
67. Kong P, Wu R, Liu X, Liu J, Chen S, Ye M et al (2016) The effects of anti-inflammatory drug treatment in gastric cancer prevention: an update of a meta-analysis. J Cancer 7(15):2247–2257
68. Hochmuth F, Jochem M, Schlattmann P (2016) Meta-analysis of aspirin use and risk of lung cancer shows notable results. Eur J Cancer Prev 25(4):259–268
69. Elwood PC, Pickering JE, Morgan G, Galante J, Weightman AL, Morris D et al (2018) Systematic review update of observational studies further supports aspirin role in cancer treatment: time to share evidence and decision-making with patients? PLoS One 13(9):e0203957. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0203957
70. Williams AD, Li YR, So A, Steel L, Carrigan E, Ro V et al (2018) The impact of aspirin use on breast cancer subtype and clinical course. J Surg Res 230:71–79
71. Chen WY, Holmes MD (2017) Role of aspirin in breast cancer survival. Curr Oncol Rep 19(7):48. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11912-017-0605-6
72. Wang T, Parada H, McClain KM, Bradshaw PT, Terry MB, Teitelbaum SL et al (2018) Pre-diagnostic aspirin use and mortality after breast cancer. Cancer Causes Control 29(4–5):417–425
73. XZi H, Gao P, Sun JX, Song YX, Tsai CC, Liu J et al (2015) Aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs after but not before diagnosis are associated with improved breast cancer survival: a meta-analysis. Cancer Causes Control 26:589–600
74. Elwood PC, Morgan G, Pickering JE, Galante J, Weightman AL, Morris D et al (2016) Aspirin in the treatment of cancer: reductions in metastatic spread and in mortality: a systematic review and meta-analyses of published studies. PLoS One 11(4):e0152402. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0152402
75. Hurwitz LM, Joshu CE, Barber JR, Prizment AE, Vitolins MZ, Jones MR et al (2019) Aspirin and non-aspirin NSAID use and prostate cancer incidence, mortality, and case fatality in the atherosclerosis risk in communities study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev 28(3):563–569
76. Downer MK, Allard CB, Preston MA, Wilson KM, Kenfield SA, Chan JM et al (2019) Aspirin use and lethal prostate cancer in the health professionals follow-up study. Eur Urol Oncol 2(2):126–134
77. Cuzick J (2017) Preventive therapy for cancer. Lancet Oncol 18(8):e472–e482. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30536-3
78. Rothwell PM, Wilson M, Elwin CE, Norrving B, Algra A, Warlow CP et al (2010) Long-term effect of aspirin on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality: 20-year follow-up of five randomised trials. Lancet 376(9754):1741–1750
79. Patrignani P, Patrono C (2016) Aspirin and cancer. J Am Coll Cardiol 68(9):967–976
80. Bibbins-Domingo K, Preventive Services Task Force US (2016) Aspirin use for the primary prevention of cardiovascular disease and colorectal cancer: US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. Ann Intern Med 164(12):836–845
81. Ye X, Fu J, Yang Y, Chen S (2013) Dose–risk and duration–risk relationships between aspirin and colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of published cohort studies. PLoS One 8(2):e57578. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0057578
82. Chubak J, Whitlock EP, Williams SB, Kamineni A, Burda BU, Buist DS et al (2016) Aspirin for the prevention of cancer incidence and mortality: systematic evidence reviews for the U.S. preventive services task force. Ann Intern Med 164:814–825
83. Li P, Wu H, Zhang H, Shi Y, Xu J, Ye Y et al (2015) Aspirin use after diagnosis but not prediagnosis improves established colorectal cancer survival: a meta-analysis. Gut 64(9):1419–1425
84. Paleari L, Puntoni M, Clavarezza M, DeCensi M, Cuzick J, DeCensi A (2016) PIK3CA mutation, aspirin use after diagnosis and survival of colorectal cancer. A systematic review and meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 28(5):317–326
85. Emilsson L, Holme O, Bretthauer M, Cook NR, Buring JE, Loberg M et al (2017) Systematic review with meta-analysis: the comparative effectiveness of aspirin vs. screening for colorectal cancer prevention. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 45:193–204
86. Burn J, Gerdes AM, Macrae F, Mecklin JP, Moeslein G, Olschwang S et al (2011) Long-term effect of aspirin on cancer risk in carriers of hereditary colorectal cancer: an analysis from the CAPP2 randomised controlled trial. Lancet 378(9809):2081–2087
87. Ait Ouakrim D, Dashti SG, Chau R, Buchanan DD, Clendenning M, Rosty C et al (2015) Aspirin, ibuprofen, and the risk of colorectal cancer in lynch syndrome. J Natl Cancer Inst 107(9) pii: djv170. https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/djv170
88. Dulai PS, Singh S, Marquez E, Khera R, Prokop LJ, Limburg PJ et al (2016) Chemoprevention of colorectal cancer in individuals with previous colorectal neoplasia: systematic review and network meta-analysis. BMJ 355:i6188. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.i6188
89. Gray RT, Coleman HG, Hughes C, Murray LJ, Cardwell CR (2018) Low-dose aspirin use and survival in colorectal cancer: results from a population-based cohort study. BMC Cancer 18(1):228. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12885-018-4142-y
90. Yokoyama K, Ishizuka N, Uemura N, Mizokami Y, Hiraishi H, Murata M et al (2018) Effects of

daily aspirin on cancer incidence and mortality in the elderly Japanese. Res Pract Thromb Haemost 2(2):274–281
91. Walker J, Cattaneo M, Badimon L, Agnelli G, Chan AT, Lanas A et al (2020) Highlights from the 2019 International Aspirin Foundation Scientific Conference, Rome, 28 June 2019: benefits and risks of antithrombotic therapy for cardiovascular disease prevention. Ecancermedicalscience 14:998. https://doi.org/10.3332/ecancer.2020.998
92. Hultcrantz M, Björkholm M, Dickman PW, Landgren O, Derolf ÅR, Kristinsson SY et al (2018) Risk for arterial and venous thrombosis in patients with myeloproliferative neoplasms: a population-based cohort study. Ann Intern Med 168(5):317–325
93. McNeil JJ, Nelson MR, Woods RL, Lockery JE, Wolfe R, Reid CM et al (2018) Effect of aspirin on all-cause mortality in the healthy elderly. N Engl J Med 379(16):1519–1528
94. Zheng SL, Roddick AJ (2019) Association of aspirin use for primary prevention with cardiovascular events and bleeding events: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 321(3):277–287
95. Alfonso L, Ai G, Spitale RC, Bhat GJ (2014) Molecular targets of aspirin and cancer prevention. Br J Cancer 111(1):61-67
96. Din FV, Valanciute A, Houde VP, Zibrova D, Green KA, Sakamoto K et al (2012) Aspirin inhibits mTOR signaling, activates AMP-activated protein kinase, and induces autophagy in colorectal cancer cells. Gastroenterology 142(7):1504–1515.e3
97. Trauer J, Muhi S, McBryde ES, Al Harbi SA, Arabi YM, Boyle AJ et al (2017) Quantifying the effects of prior acetyl-salicylic acid on sepsis-related deaths: an individual patient data meta-analysis using propensity matching. Crit Care Med 45(11):1871–1879
98. Leijte GP, Kiers D, van der Heijden W, Jansen A, Gerretsen J, Boerrigter V et al (2019) Treatment with acetylsalicylic acid reverses endotoxin tolerance in humans in vivo: a randomized placebo-controlled study. Crit Care Med 47(4):508–516
99. Chin KY (2017) A review on the relationship between aspirin and bone health. J Osteoporos 2017:3710959. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/3710959
100. Barker AL, Soh SE, Sanders KM, Pasco J, Khosla S, Ebeling PR et al (2020) Aspirin and fracture risk: a systematic review and exploratory meta-analysis of observational studies. BMJ Open 10(2):e026876. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2018-026876
101. Holcombe A, Ammann E, Espeland MA, Kelley BJ, Manson JE, Wallace R et al (2017) Chronic use of aspirin and total white matter lesion volume: results from the women's health initiative memory study of magnetic resonance imaging study. J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis 26(10):2128–2136
102. Thoonsen H, Richard E, Bentham P, Gray R, van Geloven N, De Haan RJ et al (2010) Aspirin in Alzheimer's disease: increased risk of intracerebral hemorrhage: cause for concern? Stroke 41(11):2690–2692
103. Veronese N, Stubbs B, Maggi S, Thompson T, Schofield P, Muller C et al (2017) Low-dose aspirin use and cognitive function in older age: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Am Geriatr Soc 65(8):1763–1768
104. Kennedy JL, Stoner AN, Borish L (2016) Aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease: prevalence, diagnosis, treatment, and considerations for the future. Am J Rhinol Allergy 30(6):407–413
105. Shively RM, Hoffman RS, Manini AF (2017) Acute salicylate poisoning: risk factors for severe outcome. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 55(3):175–180
106. Straube S, Tramèr MR, Moore RA, Derry S, McQuay HJ (2009) Mortality with upper gastrointestinal bleeding and perforation: effects of time and NSAID use. BMC Gastroenterol 5:9–41. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-230X-9-41
107. Hernández-Díaz S, García Rodríguez LA (2006) Cardioprotective aspirin users and their excess risk of upper gastrointestinal complications. BMC Med 4:22. https://doi.org/10.1186/1741-7015-4-22
108. Hernández-Díaz S, Rodríguez LA (2002) Incidence of serious upper gastrointestinal bleeding/perforation in the general population: review of epidemiologic studies. J Clin Epidemiol 55:157–163
109. Delaney JA, Opatrny L, Brophy JM, Suissa S (2007) Drug–drug interactions between antithrombotic medications and the risk of gastrointestinal bleeding. CMAJ 177(4):347–351
110. Thorat MA (2016) Individualised benefit-harm balance of aspirin as primary prevention measure—a good proof-of-concept, but could have been better. BMC Med 14(1):101. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12916-016-0648-9
111. Walker J, Robinson J, Stewart J, Jacob S (2007) Does enteric-coated aspirin result in a lower incidence of gastrointestinal complications compared to normal aspirin? Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg 6:519–522. https://doi.org/10.1510/icvts.2007.155788
112. Antithrombotic Trialists' (ATT) Collaboration, Baigent C, Blackwell L, Collins R, Emberson J, Godwin J et al (2009) Aspirin in the primary and secondary prevention of vascular disease: collaborative meta-analysis of individual participant data from randomised trials. Lancet 373(9678):1849–1860
113. Kelly JP, Kaufman DW, Jurgelon JM, Sheehan J, Koff RS, Shapiro S (1996) Risk of aspirin-associated major upper-gastrointestinal bleeding with enteric-coated or buffered product. Lancet 348(9039):1413–1416
114. Nelson MR, Liew D, Bertram M, Vos T (2005) Epidemiological modelling of routine use of low dose aspirin for the primary prevention of coronary heart disease and stroke in those aged > or =70. BMJ 330(7503):1306. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.38456.676806.8F
115. Nelson MR, Reid CM, Ames DA, Beilin LJ, Donnan GA et al (2008) Feasibility of conducting a primary prevention trial of low-dose aspirin for major

adverse cardiovascular events in older people in Australia: results from the ASPirin in Reducing Events in the Elderly (ASPREE) pilot study. Med J Aust 189(2):105–109
116. Konturek PC, Kania J, Hahn EG, Konturek JW (2006) Ascorbic acid attenuates aspirin-induced gastric damage: role of inducible nitric oxide synthase. J Physiol Pharmacol 57:125–136
117. De Berardis G, Lucisano G, D'Ettorre A, Pellegrini F, Lepore V, Tognoni G, Nicolucci A (2012) Association of aspirin use with major bleeding in patients with and without diabetes. JAMA 307(21):2286–2294
118. Saito Y, Okada S, Ogawa H, Soejima H, Sakuma M, Nakayama M et al (2017) Low-dose aspirin for primary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: 10-year follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. Circulation 135(7):659–670. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.116.025760
119. He J, Whelton PK, Vu B, Klag MJ (1998) Aspirin and risk of hemorrhagic stroke: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. JAMA 280(22):1930–1935
120. Saloheimo P, Ahonen M, Juvela S, Pyhtinen J, Savolainen ER, Hillbom M (2006) Regular aspirin-use preceding the onset of primary intracerebral hemorrhage is an independent predictor for death. Stroke 37(1):129–133
121. Garcia Rodriguez LA, Gaist D, Morton J, Cookson C, Gonzalez-Perez A (2013) Antithrombotic drugs and risk of hemorrhagic stroke in the general population. Neurology 81(6):566–574
122. Vernooij MW, Haag MD, van der Lugt A, Hofman A, Krestin GP, Stricker BH et al (2009) Use of antithrombotic drugs and the presence of cerebral microbleeds: the Rotterdam Scan Study. Arch Neurol 66(6):714–720
123. Jin F, Chung F (2001) Minimizing perioperative adverse events in the elderly. Br J Anaesth 87(4):608–624
124. Scher KS (1996) Unplanned reoperation for bleeding. Am Surg 62(1):52–55
125. Albaladejo P, Marret E, Samama CM, Collet JP, Abhay K, Loutrel O et al (2011) Non-cardiac surgery in patients with coronary stents: the RECO study. Heart 97:1566–1572
126. Devereaux PJ, Mrkobrada M, Sessler DI, Leslie K, Alonso-Coello P, Kurz A et al (2008) A meta-analysis of complications attributed to anticoagulation among patients following cutaneous surgery. Dermatol Surg 34(2):160–164
127. Plümer L, Seiffert M, Punke MA, Kersten JF, Blankenberg S, Zöllner C et al (2017) Aspirin before elective surgery-stop or continue? Dtsch Arztebl Int 114(27–28):473–480
128. Jang CY, Kwak DK, Kim DH, Lee HM, Hwang JH, Yoo JH (2019) Perioperative antiplatelet in elderly patients aged over 70 years treated with proximal femur fracture: continue or discontinue? BMC Musculoskelet Disord 20(1):124. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12891-019-2504-5
129. Oscarsson A, Gupta A, Fredrikson M, Järhult J, Nyström M, Pettersson E et al (2010) To continue or discontinue aspirin in the perioperative period: a randomized, controlled clinical trial. Br J Anaesth 104(3):305–312
130. Kwok CS, Loke YK (2010) Critical overview on the benefits and harms of aspirin. Pharmaceuticals (Basel) 3(5):1491–1506
131. Alghamdi AA, Moussa F, Fremes SE (2007) Does the use of preoperative aspirin increase the risk of bleeding in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting surgery? Systematic review and meta-analysis. J Card Surg 22(3):247–256
132. Alcalay J (2001) Cutaneous surgery in patients receiving warfarin therapy. Dermatol Surg 27:756–758
133. Syed S, Adams BB, Liao W, Pipitone M, Gloster H (2004) A prospective assessment of bleeding and international normalized ratio in warfarin-anticoagulated patients having cutaneous surgery. J Am Acad Dermtol 51:955–957
134. Kargi E, Babuccu O, Hosnuter M, Babuccu B, Altinyazar C (2002) Complications of minor cutaneous surgery in patients under anticoagulant treatment. Aesthet Plast Surg 26:483–485
135. Dinakaran D, Sergi CM (2018) Co-ingestion of aspirin and acetaminophen promoting fulminant liver failure: a critical review of Reye syndrome in the current perspective at the dawn of the 21st century. Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol 45(2):117–121
136. Gurbel P, Tantry U, Weisman S (2019) A narrative review of the cardiovascular risks associated with concomitant aspirin and NSAID use. J Thromb Thrombolysis 47(1):16–30
137. Russo NW, Petrucci G, Rocca B (2016) Aspirin, stroke and drug-drug interactions. Vasc Pharmacol 87:14–22
138. Colebatch AN, Marks JL, van der Heijde DM, Edwards CJ (2012) Safety of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and/or paracetamol in people receiving methotrexate for inflammatory arthritis: a Cochrane systematic review. J Rheumatol Suppl 90:62–73
139. Hersh EV, Pinto A, Moore PA (2007) Adverse drug interactions involving common prescription and over-the-counter analgesic agents. Clin Ther 29(Suppl):2477–2497
140. Mort JR, Aparasu RR, Baer RK (2006) Interaction between selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs: review of the literature. Pharmacotherapy 26(9):1307–1313
141. Yuet WC, Derasari D, Sivoravong J, Mason D, Jann M (2019) Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor use and risk of gastrointestinal and intracranial bleeding. J Am Osteopath Assoc 119(2):102–111
142. Miners JO (1989) Drug interactions involving aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid) and salicylic acid. Clin Pharmacokinet 17(5):327–344

Targeting Stem Cells in Chronic Inflammatory Diseases

12

Mari van de Vyver, Yigael S. L. Powrie, and Carine Smith

Abstract

Mesenchymal stem cell (MSC) dysfunction is a serious complication in ageing and age-related inflammatory diseases such as type 2 diabetes mellitus. Inflammation and oxidative stress-induced cellular senescence alter the immunomodulatory ability of MSCs and hamper their pro-regenerative function, which in turn leads to an increase in disease severity, maladaptive tissue damage and the development of comorbidities. Targeting stem/progenitor cells to restore their function and/or protect them against impairment could thus improve healing outcomes and significantly enhance the quality of life for diabetic patients. This review discusses the dysregulation of MSCs' immunomodulatory capacity in the context of diabetes mellitus and focuses on intervention strategies aimed at MSC rejuvenation. Research pertaining to the potential therapeutic use of either pharmacological agents (NFκB antagonists), natural products (phytomedicine) or biological agents (exosomes, probiotics) to improve MSC function is discussed and an overview of the most pertinent methodological considerations given. Based on in vitro studies, numerous anti-inflammatory agents, antioxidants and biological agents show tremendous potential to revitalise MSCs. An integrated systems approach and a thorough understanding of complete disease pathology are however required to identify feasible candidates for in vivo targeting of MSCs.

Keywords

Mesenchymal stem cells · Type 2 diabetes · Accelerated ageing · Probiotic · Antioxidant · Exosome · Extracellular vesicles

Mari van de Vyver and Carine Smith contributed equally to this work.

M. van de Vyver (✉)
Department of Medicine, Faculty of Medicine & Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University, Cape Town, South Africa
e-mail: vandevyverm@sun.ac.za

Y. S. L. Powrie
Department of Medicine, Faculty of Medicine & Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University, Cape Town, South Africa

Department of Physiological Sciences, Science Faculty, Stellenbosch University, Stellenbosch, South Africa

C. Smith
Department of Physiological Sciences, Science Faculty, Stellenbosch University, Stellenbosch, South Africa

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_12

12.1 Introduction

Ageing is often associated with the clinical onset of a plethora of different chronic diseases, such as cardiovascular disease, neurodegenerative disease, cancer and type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM). Although unique in terms of disease-specific triggers, the progression of these conditions is significantly exacerbated by chronic systemic inflammation and oxidative stress-induced cellular dysfunction [1, 2]. These two underlying conditions are prominent in both normal ageing and the accelerated ageing commonly reported to result from chronic psychological stress and/or metabolic dysregulation [3, 4].

Given the multi-faceted nature of many ageing-associated chronic diseases and the complexity involved in their management, addressing the common characteristic of inflammation may contribute significantly towards treatment—either preventatively or therapeutically—for many of these diseases. Considering the inherent nature of mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) to respond to their environment and to counter dysregulation in order to restore homeostasis [5], an assessment of the feasibility to target MSCs in the treatment of age-related chronic inflammatory disorders is warranted. Although a large body of evidence exists in support of anti-inflammatory or antioxidant supplementation, especially in the phytomedicine sphere, significant limitations, such as poor transfer of preclinical results into human models [6–8] and risk of toxicity [9], are slowing the progress towards a generally applicable anti-inflammatory strategy.

In this review, we will focus on DM as chronic inflammatory disease and discuss the most relevant stem cell pathology in the context of DM-associated inflammation. We will provide an overview of methodological considerations and discuss research pertaining to therapeutic strategies targeting MSCs.

12.2 Mesenchymal Stem Cells

MSC dysfunction is a severe and often overlooked complication of numerous chronic degenerative, metabolic and inflammatory disorders [10–12]. MSCs mainly reside in bone marrow and have very specific characteristics which researchers use as criteria for identification. These include the expression of cluster of differentiation (CD) markers ($CD90^+$, $CD105^+$, $CD73^+$, $CD45^-$, $CD34^-$, $CD14^-$, $CD11b^-$, $CD79alpha^-$, $CD19^-$, $HLA\text{-}DR^-$), fibroblast-like morphology, multilineage differentiation capacity (osteogenic, adipogenic, chondrogenic) and ex vivo plastic adherence [13]. Despite sharing these characteristics, there can be various MSC subtypes with distinct functional preferences (immunomodulatory, growth promoting, pro-angiogenic, pro-regenerative) within a single population of cells residing in the same niche [14]. In addition to the bone marrow-resident MSCs, various stem/progenitor cells with mesenchymal properties have also been identified in perivascular and avascular niches (skin, pancreas, heart, lungs, kidneys, adipose tissue, muscle, cartilage, tendon, teeth) throughout the body [15]. Given the heterogeneous nature of MSCs, other than their tissue of origin, consistent distinction between various subtypes within a single population of cells remains challenging.

Under normal/healthy circumstances, MSCs play an important role in immune surveillance and the maintenance of tissue homeostasis [5]. Their self-renewal capacity and ability to mount a paracrine response upon injury (stimulation by microenvironmental cues) form part of the body's innate repair system. The tissue of origin and subtype influence the multifunctional properties of these cells, with bone marrow MSCs having the greatest capacity for immunomodulation [16–18]. Physico-chemical and structural changes within the niche microenvironment activate MSCs and trigger immunomodulatory and pro-regenerative paracrine signalling [19–21]. This is mediated through direct cell-to-cell contact (mitochondrial transfer), cytokine/chemokine/growth factor secretion and/or microvesicle/exosome (containing lipids, miRNAs and RNA as cargo) release [22].

However, due to their longevity, MSCs (as other stem/progenitor cells) are vulnerable to the accumulation of cellular and DNA damage, leading to stem cell depletion and/or senescence [23–25]. The evidence in support of allostatic stem

cell depletion with age is undeniable and this ultimately results in failure of endogenous repair mechanisms [26, 27]. The age-related replicative senescence of MSCs mainly involves genomic instability and telomere attrition [11, 28–30]. Independent of chronological ageing, in vitro studies suggest that persistent inflammation and oxidative stress (characteristic of chronic disease) can accelerate telomere shortening (without repeated cell cycles being a confounding factor) and cause cellular defects that lead to premature senescence [11, 30–32]. This has been confirmed in MSCs derived from DM animals, in which DNA damage, mitochondrial fragmentation and hyperactivation of the nuclear factor kappa B (NFκB) inflammatory signalling pathway are prominent [12]. These cellular defects alter MSCs' immunomodulatory ability and hamper their pro-regenerative function, which in turn leads to an increase in disease severity and the development of comorbidities [12]. For example, Xu et al. demonstrated that intraperitoneal transplantation of (radiation-induced) senescent adipose-tissue-derived MSCs into healthy young mice resulted in physical dysfunction and significantly shortened the life-span and overall health of these animals [33], demonstrating the cardinal importance of MSC health. Furthermore, in line with an exacerbating effect of accelerated ageing, the authors further indicated that these negative effects of transplanted senescent cells were exacerbated in mice with underlying metabolic disturbances [33]. These effects were not related to tumour formation, and the study provided proof-of-concept evidence that oral administration of senolytic agents could alleviate some of the age-related diseases that developed in recipient animals, as evident in the selective elimination of senescent cells in tissue explants and a 65% reduction in mortality rate [33]. Targeting stem/progenitor cells to restore their function and/or protect them against ageing-associated impairment should thus be part of therapeutic strategies in inflammatory conditions with underlying metabolic disturbances, such as DM.

Currently, approximately 9.3% (463 million people) of the world's population is estimated to have DM, of which up to 25% suffer from debilitating comorbidities such as retinopathy and non-healing ulcers [34, 35]. Rejuvenating MSCs in these patients could thus improve healing outcomes and significantly enhance their quality of life. In order to design treatment strategies targeting MSCs, it is necessary to fully understand the dysregulatory effects of disease aetiology on stem cell function.

12.3 Dysregulation of MSCs' Immunomodulatory Properties

Inflammation is the body's first defence mechanism against invading pathogens, and phagocytic inflammatory cells (neutrophils, macrophages) play an essential role in removing cellular debris to prepare injured tissues for repair/regeneration. Unresolved inflammation can however cause autoimmunity, accelerate ageing and hamper the progression of healing.

Depending on the activating signal, the functional plasticity of MSCs allows them to take on either a pro-inflammatory (MSC1) or anti-inflammatory (MSC2) phenotype [5, 36]. Danger response signals such as Toll-like receptor (TLR)-4 ligands or bacterial lipopolysaccharides (LPS) that are usually present following an infection have been shown to induce a pro-inflammatory phenotype (MSC1) in MSCs under standard culture conditions [36]. Co-culture experiments further demonstrate that MSC1s release chemokines (macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-1α, MIP1β, regulated upon activation normal T cell expressed and presumably secreted (RANTES), chemokine C-X-C motif ligand (CXCL)-9 and CXCL10) to recruit immune cells (T-lymphocytes, neutrophils, macrophages) or to induce T-cell effector responses through antigen presentation [5, 36, 37].

On the other hand, in the presence of an inflammatory microenvironment (high levels of tumour necrosis factor alpha (TNFα), interferon gamma (IFNγ) and interleukin (IL)6), MSCs take on an anti-inflammatory phenotype (MSC2) to protect tissues against maladaptive damage and promote regeneration. MSC2s have been shown

to suppress effector T-cell activation/proliferation through the release of soluble factors such as indolamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO), prostaglandin E2 (PGE2), nitric oxide (NO), transforming growth factor (TGFβ) and hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) or by modulating the function of regulatory T cells [5, 37, 38]. In addition to suppressing activation of Th1, Th2 and Th17 cells, MSCs also inhibit the release of IFN-γ and IL17 from these effector cells whilst promoting the release of anti-inflammatory IL10 from regulatory T cells [37]. MSC2s furthermore promote the resolution of inflammation by suppressing the respiratory burst of neutrophils [39–42] and by inducing a phenotype switch in macrophages from phagocytic (M1) towards pro-regenerative (M2) [43–48]. Thus, in order to mediate repair, the sensitivity and responsiveness of MSCs to changes in their microenvironment is pivotal (Fig. 12.1a).

Indeed, the literature provides significant evidence of maladaptive MSC regulation in the context of ageing and metabolic dysregulation. Upon pro-inflammatory activation, these dysfunctional/senescent MSCs deviate from their counter-responsive nature and amplify inflammatory signals instead of exerting anti-inflammatory immunosuppressive effects [12, 49, 50] (Fig. 12.1b). The repressive effect of MSCs specifically on neutrophils and macrophages is thought to be dependent on functional IL6 signalling [46, 51, 52]. Phillips et al. [46] recently demonstrated that in the presence of pro-inflammatory signals (IFN-γ and IL1β), MSCs released high levels of NO, IL6 and PGE2 that in turn upregulated the expression of M2 macrophage-related genes, promoted IL10 release and suppressed TNFα secretion in macrophages. The authors further demonstrated that co-culture of MSCs with IL6Rα-deficient macrophages was unable to repress the M1 macrophage phenotype in the presence of inflammatory cytokines, suggesting that IL6 signalling is an essential trigger of MSC-mediated M2 macrophage polarisation. This interpretation was supported by Yin et al. [51], who indicated that in vitro blocking of IL6 signalling using siRNA abrogated allogeneic MSCs' ability to suppress M1 macrophage activation in both in vivo (T2DM mice with β-cell dysfunction) and in vitro co-culture (THP-1 cells) models [51]. It is thus not surprising that IL6 deficiency and subsequent dysregulation of IL6/signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT)-3 signalling on molecular level in dysfunctional diabetic MSCs resulted in the skewing of the immunomodulatory properties of these cells [49]. Previous studies done by our group have demonstrated an increased pro-inflammatory gene expression (MIP1α, MIP1β, macrophage chemotactic protein (MCP)-5, CD40, IL23, IκBα) profile at baseline [49] and excessive TNFα release upon stimulation with wound fluid [50] in diabetic MSCs when compared to healthy control counterparts.

In addition to an altered secretome, diabetic MSCs also have an impaired proliferation capacity [53, 54]. This is consistent with the literature indicating that senescence-associated low-grade inflammation (SALI) is a prominent characteristic of cellular senescence and that the senescence-associated secretory phenotype (SASP) of stem cells impacts the biological processes of surrounding tissues [31, 55]. In the context of chronic disease-associated accelerated ageing, the composition of the SASP will however also likely be dependent on the specific stem cell type affected and the disease-specific causes that had induced premature senescence in these cells. Preventative measures and strategies to rejuvenate senescent MSCs should thus take the underlying pathogenesis into account.

12.4 Methodological Considerations in the Interpretation of Intervention Strategy Outcomes

The most relevant studies that have investigated the efficacy of various therapeutic agents to either protect or rejuvenate MSCs in the context of DM are presented in Table 12.1. However, to be able to accurately interpret the outcome of these studies, the following methodological considerations should be noted.

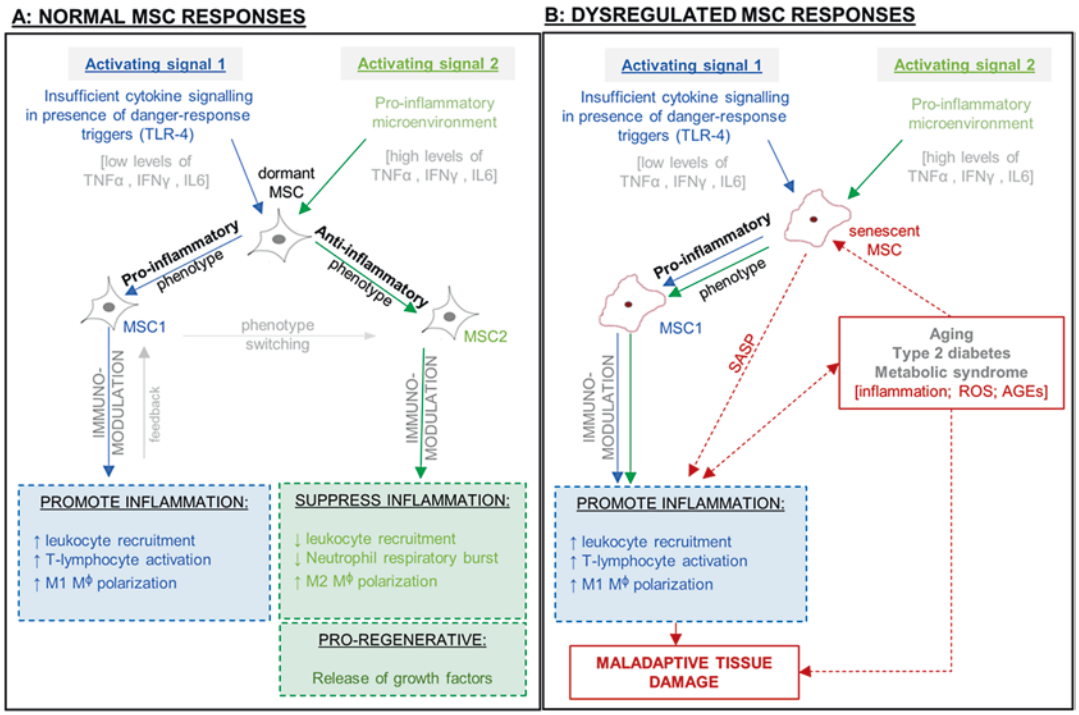


Fig. 12.1 Overview of immunomodulatory responses of (**a**) healthy MSCs under normal circumstances and (**b**) senescent MSCs in age-related type 2 diabetes mellitus. (**a**) Under normal circumstances, in the absence of pro-inflammatory cytokines, healthy MSCs respond to danger triggers such as TLR4 by taking on a pro-inflammatory phenotype (MSC1). These pro-inflammatory MSC1s promote inflammation by increasing leucocyte recruitment, T-lymphocyte activation and polarisation of macrophages to a pro-inflammatory/phagocytic phenotype (M1) (*activating signal 1, blue arrows*). As the microenvironment becomes more pro-inflammatory, the high levels of cytokines trigger the MSC1s to switch to an anti-inflammatory phenotype (MSC2) to restore homeostasis. In the presence of a pro-inflammatory microenvironment (*activating signal 2, green arrows*), healthy MSCs take on an anti-inflammatory phenotype (MSC2) that suppress inflammation by downregulating leucocyte recruitment, inhibiting the respiratory burst of neutrophils and promoting polarisation of macrophages to an anti-inflammatory/pro-regenerative phenotype (M2). MSC2s also release various growth factors to promote regeneration. (**b**) Senescent diabetic MSCs are desensitised to pro-inflammatory signals (dysregulated feedback). Both activating signals (*blue and green*) induce MSCs to take on a pro-inflammatory phenotype (MSC1). The senescent MSCs furthermore have a senescence-associated secretory phenotype (SASP) and, together with the pathogenesis of diabetes (oxidative stress (ROS), advanced glycation end products (AGEs)) further amplify inflammation that ultimately leads to maladaptive tissue damage (*red arrows*)

To date very few randomised controlled trials have been performed that focus on the long-term beneficial effects of supplementation to prevent the development of comorbidities and microvascular complications in DM patients. The evidence supporting the potential beneficial effects of supplements is mainly based on animal studies with various methods for inducing DM: high-fat diet (prediabetes), genetic mutation (ob/ob and db/db strains) and streptozotocin administration (type 1 DM)—each of which has its own advantages and disadvantages. Nonetheless, these ex vivo studies demonstrate that preconditioning or pre-treatment of diabetic MSCs with various agents can be used to optimise/improve cellular function prior to their use in cell therapy (Table 12.1). Whilst several of these studies report positive data, their focus has been mainly on mechanisms of MSC rejuvenation. However, there is a paucity of information available on the effectiveness of supplements to prevent the functional decline of MSCs over a prolonged period

Table 12.1 Overview of studies: preconditioning as strategy to improve MSC function in the context of DM

Stem cell type	Disease model (stem cell pathogenesis)	Intervention	Study design	Outcome: MSC function	Outcome: post-transplantation	Ref
NFκB blocking						
Bone marrow MSCs	Mouse: Non-obese diabetic (NOD)	SN50 (p65 inhibitor)	*Ex vivo:* Viability, proliferation, apoptosis with and without blocking of NFκB signalling	*NFκB inhibition:* ↑ proliferation, ↑ colony forming, ↓ apoptosis **REJUVENATE**	N/A	[69]
Bone marrow MSCs	Rats: Diabetic (Goto-Kakizaki) vs. wild-type (Wistar)	NFκB suppression through BMAL1 overexpression	*Ex vivo:* Osteogenesis, viability, colony-forming, senescence with and without BMAL1 overexpression or inhibition	*NFκB suppression:* ↑ osteogenesis, ↓ osteoclastic induction *BMAL1 overexpression:* Restore homeostasis of bone metabolism **REJUVENATE**	N/A	[70]
Antioxidants & anti-inflammatory agents						
Bone marrow MSCs	Mouse: Obesity-type 2 DM (ob/ob) vs. wild-type (C57BL/6 J)	NAC + AAP	*Ex vivo:* Paracrine response upon stimulation with wound fluid with and without preconditioning	*Preconditioning:* ↓ excessive TNFα release and ↑ IL10 in the presence of wound fluid **REJUVENATE**	*Application:* Wound healing (not transplanted)	[50]
Bone marrow MSCs	Mouse: Obesity-type 2 DM (ob/ob) vs. wild-type (C57BL/6 J)	NAC + AAP	*Ex vivo:* Viability, proliferation, migration with and without preconditioning Stimulation with wound fluid	*Preconditioning:*↑ ex vivo viability and protected MSCs against the toxicity of chronic wound fluid Could not fully restore proliferation capacity **REJUVENATE**	*Application:* Wound healing (not transplanted)	[54]
Bone marrow MSCs	Mouse: Diabetes (STZ-induced type 1 DM) vs. wild-type (C57BL/6 J)	NAC	**Hydrogen peroxide**-induced in vitro injury	*Preconditioning:* ↑ upregulate pro-survival genes, ↓ apoptosis, ↑ viability, ↓ senescence, ↓ oxidative stress **PROTECT**	N/A	[56]
ADSCs (human)	N/A	NAC + AAP	**Hydrogen peroxide**-induced in vitro injury	*Preconditioning:*↓ ROS generation, ↑ stabilise mitochondrial membrane potential, ↓ mitochondrial fragmentation, ↓ apoptosis **PROTECT**	N/A	[73]

Bone marrow MSCs (rat)	N/A	NAC	**Hydrogen peroxide**-induced in vitro injury	*Preconditioning:* ↑ GSH levels, ↓ROS, ↓ apoptosis, ↓ senescence **PROTECT**	*Application*: Rat femur defects – collagen-sponge + pre-treated MSCs, ↑ bone formation	[74]
Bone marrow MSCs	Mouse: Diabetic (db/db) vs. wild-type (C57BL/6 J)	NAC Nox4 siRNA	*In vivo:* Transplantation of diabetic MSCs (db/db) into wild-type C57BL/6 mice with hindlimb ischaemic insult *Ex vivo*: Pre-treatment of MSCs from db/db mice with NAC or NOX4 siRNA	*Preconditioning:* ↓ oxidative stress, ↓ adipogenic differentiation, ↑ endothelial differentiation **REJUVENATE**	*Application*: Post-ischaemic neovascularisation (hindlimb ischaemia)	[113]
Bone marrow MSCs (human)	N/A	Astragaloside IV (AS-IV)	**High-glucose** (25 nM) culture conditions	*Preconditioning:*↑ proliferation, ↓ TLR4 expression, ↓ NFκB p65 translocation, ↑ MMP2 expression **PROTECT**	N/A	[79]
ADSCs	Rat: Wistar (STZ-induced type 1 DM)	RSV	*Ex vivo*: Viability with and without preconditioning *In vivo*: Autologous ADSC transplantation with and without preconditioning	*Preconditioning*: ↑ expression of p-Akt, ↑ viability **REJUVENATE**	*Application:* Pancreatic damage (↑ pancreas function, ↓ blood glucose levels)	[77]
ADSCs	Rat: Wistar (STZ-induced type 1 DM)	RSV	*Ex vivo*: Viability under **high-glucose** culture conditions with and without preconditioning *In vivo*: Autologous ADSC transplantation with and without preconditioning	*Preconditioning:* ↑ viability, ↑ IGF secretion **REJUVENATE**	*Application*: DM liver damage (↓ fibrosis)	[114]
Bone marrow MSCs (wild-type mouse)	N/A	Phytocannabinoids: THCV, CBD, CBG, CBDA, CBGA	**Palmitate** treatment to induce insulin resistance	*Preconditioning:* ↑ colony-forming capacity, ↑ viability (CBD, CBDA,CBGA,THCV), ↑ adipogenesis (CBG, CBD) **PROTECT**	N/A	[78]

(continued)

Table 12.1 (continued)

Stem cell type	Disease model (stem cell pathogenesis)	Intervention	Study design	Outcome: MSC function	Outcome: post-transplantation	Ref
Bone marrow MSCs	N/A	EGF + Curcumin	*Ex vivo*: Culture MSCs in the presence or absence of curcumin + EGF polymeric matrix *In vivo:* MSCs + curcumin + EGF bandage used to treat full thickness diabetic skin wound	*Preconditioning:* ↑ expression of Oct3/4, Sox2, and Nanog, ↑ viability **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application*: Wound healing (↑ wound closure, ↑ granulation tissue formation)	[83]
Bone marrow MSCs	Rats: Sprague Dawley (high-fat diet vs. normal diet, STZ-induced type 1DM)	Curcumin	*Ex vivo:* Culture MSCs in the presence of diabetic serum with or without preconditioning *In vivo:* Scaffold with curcumin-releasing microspheres + MSCs	*Preconditioning:* ↑ viability, ↑ migration, ↓ ROS, ↑ osteogenic differentiation **REJUVENATE**	Application: Bone defects (↑ bone formation)	[87]
Bone marrow MSCs	Rats: Sprague Dawley (STZ-induced type 1 DM) vs. wild-type	Oxytocin or curcumin or carvedilol or rosuvastatin	*Ex vivo*: Viability, proliferation, angiogenic capacity with and without preconditioning *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into myocardial infarction	*Oxytocin preconditioning*: ↑ proliferation, ↑ tube formation, ↑ KLF2 expression, ↑ angiogenesis **REJUVENATE**	*Application*: Myocardial infarction (↑ cardiac function, ↓ fibrosis)	[115]
MSC (cell line)	N/A	Salidroside	*In vitro:* **High-glucose** (25 nM) cultures with or without preconditioning *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into full thickness diabetic skin wounds	*Preconditioning:* ↑ survival, ↓ ROS, ↑ HO-1, ↑ FGF2, ↑ HGF, ↑ migration **PROTECT/OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* Type 1 DM wounds in mice (↑ healing)	[116]
Other factors						
Bone marrow MSCs	Mouse: C57BL6/J (STZ-induced type 1 DM)	IGF1 + FGF2	*Ex vivo:* Anoxic and **high-glucose** culture (to mimic diabetic heart microenvironment) with and without preconditioning	*Preconditioning:* ↑ SOD activity, ↓ apoptosis, ↑ angiogenic potential, ↑ chemotactic mobility **REJUVENATE**	N/A	[117]
ADSCs (human)	N/A	Hyaluronic acid + butyric acid + retinoic acid	*Ex vivo:* Angiogenesis, angiogenic gene expression *In vivo:* Transplantation of co-cultured ADSCs + pancreatic islets	*Preconditioning:* ↑ VEGF, ↑KDR, ↑HGF **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* Type 1 DM rats (↑ engraftment, ↑ glycaemic control, ↑ vascularisation)	[118]
Bone marrow MSCs (mouse)	N/A	SDF1α	*Ex vivo:* Viability, migration with and without preconditioning *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into type 1 DM mice	*Preconditioning:* ↑ proliferation, ↑ migration **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* Type 1 DM rats (↑ homing to pancreas, ↑ pancreatic islet structure)	[119]

ADSCs (human)	N/A	SDF1α	*Ex vivo:* Hypoxic and serum-depleted culture conditions *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditions ADSCs into type 1 DM mouse wounds	*Preconditioning:* ↓ apoptosis, ↑ viability **PROTECT/ OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* Type 1 DM mouse wounds (↑ healing)	[120]
Bone marrow MSCs (rat)	N/A	Fluoxetine	*Ex vivo*: Viability, angiogenesis, neural marker expression *In vivo*: Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into type DM rats with neuropathy	*Preconditioning:* ↑ viability, ↑ paracrine activity (↑ BDNF, ↑ VEGF), ↑ immunomodulation (↑IL10, ↓ IL1β) **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application*: Type 1 DM rats diabetic neuropathy (↑ neuronal histomorphology)	[121]
Bone marrow MSCs	N/A	Melatonin	*Ex vivo:* Proliferation with and without preconditioning *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into type 1 DM rats	*Preconditioning:* ↑ proliferation, ↑ SOD enzyme, ↑ IL10, ↑ beclin 1 **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* Type 1 DM rats nephropathy (↑ kidney function)	[122]
MSCs (cell line)	N/A	EPO Rapamycin	*In vitro:* **High-glucose** (25 nM) cultures with and without preconditioning *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into type 1 DM mice	*EPO Preconditioning:* ↑ VEGF, ↑ proliferation, ↑ migration, ↓ TNFα **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* Type 1 DM mouse wounds (↑ angiogenesis)	[123]
ADSCs (cell line)	N/A	Metformin	*In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned ADSCs into high-fat diet induced mice	N/A **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application:* High-fat diet induced mice (↑ glucose metabolism, ↓ dyslipidaemia)	[124]
Bone marrow MSCs	N/A	Deferoxamine	*In vitro:* Chemotaxis with and without preconditioning *In vivo:* Transplantation of preconditioned MSCs into type 1 DM rats	*Preconditioning*: ↑ HIF1α, ↑ CXCR4, ↑ MMP2/9, ↑ migration **OPTIMISE FUNCTION**	*Application*: Type 1 DM rat (↑ homing to pancreas)	[125]

The table includes studies that have used preconditioning with a specific pharmacological or natural agent (not biologicals) to either restore the function of impaired diabetic MSCs (rejuvenate) or to improve the function of MSCs in the context of DM. **Abbreviations:** AAP, ascorbic acid 2-phosphate; ADSCs, adipose tissue-derived stem cells; BDNF, brain-derived neurotrophic factor; BMAL1, brain and muscle ARNT-like 1; DM, diabetes mellitus; EGF, epidermal growth factor; EPO, erythropoietin; FGF, fibroblast growth factor; GSH, glutathione; HGF, hepatocyte growth factor; HIF1α, hypoxia-inducible factor 1 alpha; HO-1, heme oxygenase-1; IGF, insulin-like growth factor; IL, interleukin; KLF2, Krüppel-like factor 2; MSCs, mesenchymal stem cells; MMP, metalloprotease; N/A, not applicable; NAC, N-acetylcysteine; NFκB, nuclear factor kappa B; NOD, non-obese diabetic; ROS, reactive oxygen species; RSV, resveratrol; SDF1α, stromal-derived factor 1 alpha; SOD, superoxide dismutase; STZ, streptozotocin; TLR4, Toll-like receptor 4; TNFα, tumour necrosis factor alpha; VEGF, vascular endothelial growth factor

and demonstrated using in vivo models. For the most part, the evidence supporting the protective effects of supplementation is based on in vitro models with acute supraphysiological onslaughts using various MSC types, but without the presence of any underlying disease.

DM is a complex disorder, the pathogenesis of which involves the accumulation of advanced glycation end products (AGEs), generation of excessive reactive oxygen species (ROS) and persistent inflammation. The combination of these leads to DNA damage, mitochondrial fragmentation, defects in cellular membrane repair and senescence in bone marrow MSCs [12, 56–58]. Intervention strategies (other than proper glycaemic control) should thus focus on counteracting all of these elements. It is however very difficult to simulate the DM microenvironment in culture to investigate the potential protective effects of therapeutic agents.

High-glucose (25 mM) culture conditions are often used to simulate hyperglycaemia and have been shown to effectively induce oxidative stress and pro-inflammatory signalling in various MSC cultures [59–61]. The responses of different MSC types to these conditions have been inconsistent and do not always represent the endogenous characteristics of diabetic MSCs. Adipose tissue-derived MSCs (also known as ADSCs) seem to retain their characteristics and stemness under high-glucose culture conditions [60, 62], whereas DM patient-derived ADSCs have impaired viability, proliferation and an altered secretome [58]. Bone marrow-derived MSCs are however more sensitive to glucose toxicity. Despite an improved growth rate, a reduction in stemness, increased apoptosis/senescence and impaired multilineage differentiation capacity are evident in bone marrow and nucleus pulposus (vertebral disc)-derived MSCs in hyperglycaemic cultures [59, 63, 64]. In contrast, other studies show that despite limiting the osteogenic differentiation capacity, high-glucose culture conditions have a limited impact on proliferation and stemness of compact bone-derived MSCs [65]. It is thus important to note the MSCs' tissue of origin when interpreting data, especially since the various MSC subtypes have different propensities for immunomodulation. It is also noteworthy that these high-glucose culture models involve acute hyperglycaemia exposure in isolation, whilst failing to consider the dyslipidaemia that is prominent in the metabolic dysfunctional DM patient.

The phytomedicine studies that do focus on metabolic dysregulation have mainly been on targeting ADSCs for the purpose of developing anti-obesity treatments. In these studies, researchers aim to reduce the proliferation of ADSCs and limit adipogenic differentiation [8, 66–68]. This strategy is however not without risk, since interfering with the body's natural fat storage capacity can lead to ectopic lipid accumulation in a variety of tissues. The aim should rather be on preventing senescence and SASP (the excessive release of release of pro-inflammatory cytokines) to limit adipocyte hypertrophy and M1 macrophage accumulation in adipose tissue. Very few studies however focus on strategies to improve the immunomodulatory capacity of endogenous ADSCs.

The following sections will discuss the limited data available on the most promising potential intervention strategies targeting MSCs.

12.5 Interventions

12.5.1 Pharmacological Blocking of NFκB Signalling

Various in vitro studies have demonstrated the potential benefit of different NFκB antagonists in the rejuvenation of diabetic MSCs by counteracting the hyperactivation of the NFκB signalling pathway. Gu et al. [69] indicated that the proliferation and colony-forming capacity of impaired bone marrow MSCs derived from non-obese diabetic mice could be restored by treating the cells with a NFκB p65 inhibitor to attenuate the aberrant activation of p65 and downstream p53/p21 signalling. In the context of impaired bone healing in DM, inhibition of NFκB has been shown to restore the osteogenic differentiation potential of MSCs [70] and to reinstate their ability to resolve inflammation through TGFβ release and subsequent M2-macrophage polarisation (tamoxifen-

induced inhibition of NFκB) [71]. Given the important role of normal NFκB signalling in maintaining tissue homeostasis, permanent inhibition thereof in vivo might cause serious adverse effects, as illustrated in a study by Zhang et al. [72]. The authors attempted to protect mice against age-associated metabolic dysregulation by blocking NFκB signalling in skeletal muscle (IκBα overexpression), and although it protected aged animals against insulin resistance, it was detrimental to muscle function. There was however no underlying pathology associated with excessive NFκB activation in these animals, and it is unclear if similar unwanted effects will be evident with tissue-specific NFκB inhibition in DM mice.

Given the risk of adverse effects, anti-inflammatory agents that suppress NFκB signalling—but do not completely block its activity—might be a safer and more feasible option. To date the most promising agents in this category seem to be potent antioxidants which also have anti-inflammatory properties. Numerous in vitro studies performed on MSCs have indicated the protective effects of antioxidants such as N-acetylcysteine (NAC) and ascorbic acid-2-phosphate (AAP) against acute hydrogen peroxide-induced oxidative damage [56, 73, 74]. In support of these findings, our group demonstrated that a combination of NAC/AAP treatment can improve the ex vivo viability of diabetic bone marrow-derived MSCs and the release of anti-inflammatory cytokines, although it could not restore the proliferation capacity of severely impaired MSCs [50, 54]. This suggests that although these antioxidants can partially rejuvenate diabetic MSCs, they hold more promise as protective agents (preventative supplements) against the functional decline of MSCs in patients to limit disease progression—a potential benefit which warrants further investigation. Similarly, there are numerous natural antioxidants and anti-inflammatory agents in the phytomedicine sphere that hold therapeutic promise.

12.5.2 Natural Antioxidants and/or Anti-inflammatory Agents

Various natural products are commonly used as daily antioxidant supplements, some of which (such as the polyphenol anthocyanidins, resveratrol and phytocannabinoids) have been shown to modulate the functional properties of MSCs [75–78]. Similarly, traditional Chinese phytomedicines (specifically astragaloside IV—the active ingredient in the leguminous herb *Astragalus membranaceus*) have been reported to restore the proliferative capacity of DM patient-derived MSCs under hyperglycaemic culture conditions by decreasing TLR4 expression upstream of NFκB signalling [79]. Unfortunately, despite these positive results, very few of these products have been subjected to in-depth (or in vivo) investigation to elucidate specific mechanisms of action involved, and even less information is available in the context of age-associated inflammatory conditions. A comprehensive review of each of these products is not within the scope of this review. Rather, we will discuss only one natural antioxidant (the polyphenol curcumin)—one of the very few which have been extensively reported on—to illustrate the potential benefits of natural antioxidants specifically on MSC function.

In the context of obesity-associated inflammation, curcumin was recently reported to inhibit adipogenic differentiation of human bone marrow MSCs *via* downregulation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR)-γ signalling [80]. PPAR-γ is known to direct differentiation of cells towards pro-inflammatory phenotypes [81], suggesting that curcumin may facilitate a relatively more anti-inflammatory phenotype in MSCs. In line with this and being highly relevant given our discussion in the previous section, curcumin was also reported to block NFκB signalling in gastric cancer-derived MSCs [82]. These mechanistic studies are supported by demonstrated in vivo benefit. For example, very recently, enhanced diabetic wound healing was

reported after topical application of a bandage containing bone marrow MSCs, epidermal growth factor (EGF) and curcumin in a DM rat model [83]. This is in line with a recent review of human clinical studies in the context of curcumin supplementation, where it was concluded that curcumin may have beneficial action in the context of obesity, metabolic syndrome, DM as well as other chronic inflammatory conditions [84]. Together, these studies suggest that at least some of the beneficial outcomes ascribed to curcumin may be *via* its facilitation of an anti-inflammatory phenotype in MSCs.

A limiting factor when it comes to translating these pre-clinical findings into human models may at least in part be due to the poor absorption and bioavailability of plant products such as curcumin [85, 86]. However, with the advances being made in nanoscience and controlled drug delivery systems, these limitations may soon be overcome. A relatively recent study demonstrated superior MSC-dependent bone repair in DM rats when the repair scaffold was loaded with curcumin, with even more enhanced repair when curcumin was delivered using PLGA microspheres to optimise delivery. Most relevant to the current topic, curcumin delivered in this way was shown to exert protective effects on bone marrow MSCs under DM conditions *via* upregulation of the endogenous Kelch-like ECH-associated protein 1 (Keap1)/nuclear factor erythroid-2-related factor-2 (Nrf2)/heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1) antioxidant signalling pathway and inhibition of ROS secretion by MSCs [87].

The importance of using suitable delivery systems when targeting stem cells with natural antioxidants is clear from the literature. Several groups have however described a risk for pro-oxidant toxicity [9, 88–90] after treatment with high doses of antioxidants to account for low bioavailability. In the context of stem cells specifically, the well-published antioxidant polyphenol resveratrol was recently shown to affect human bone marrow MSC differentiation at low concentrations by mimicking insulin activity in differentiation media—however, high doses of resveratrol resulted in lipid accumulation in both osteogenic and adipogenic media [91]. Furthermore, undifferentiated neuronal stem/progenitor cells were illustrated to have increased sensitivity to antioxidant (ascorbic acid)-driven DNA damage than differentiated cells [92]. This suggests that the risk for pro-oxidant effect is also an important consideration at the level of MSCs. Taken together it is thus clear that although phytomedicines hold tremendous promise as supplements, their use is not without risk, especially since there is limited data available on their mechanisms of action and long-term safety.

12.5.3 Biological Agents

12.5.3.1 Microvesicles and Exosomes

MSC-derived extracellular vesicles—which include both microvesicles (size: 100–1000 nm) and exosomes (size: 30–100 nm)—are thought to play a crucial role in the paracrine signalling of MSCs over long distances [93]. Although the study of exosomes in the context of regenerative medicine and immunomodulation is a relatively young research niche, a fair number of reports exist and have contributed to our understanding of how MSCs may remotely affect regenerative processes. To date the majority of research in this area has been focused on the potential use of allogeneic exosome preparations for transplantation purposes. The use of exosomes instead of intact allogeneic MSCs for therapeutic application holds numerous advantages such as high stability, standardisation and ease of in vivo delivery, as well as decreased risk of unanticipated effects.

In a recent review, Casado-Diaz et al. [94] concluded that transplantation of MSC-derived exosomes resulted in faster and more optimal healing of diabetic and age-associated skin ulcers by modulating inflammation (most notably *via* suppression of IL1β and TNFα) and reducing scar formation (suppression of TGFβ) [94]. The cargoes within these extracellular vesicles are however crucial to ensure optimal target effects. In-depth sequencing studies are attempting to elucidate specific exosome constituents of importance whilst others focus on engineering exosome content for a greater therapeutic effect. For example, ADSC-derived exosomes containing

high concentrations of the circular RNA (circRNA), *mmu_circ_0000250*, were recently shown to promote wound healing in diabetic mice to a greater extent than exosomes with a low concentration of this specific circRNA. The mechanisms of action were thought to be related to upregulation of sirtuin-1 expression and absorption of miR-128-3p to promote angiogenesis and suppress apoptosis [95, 96]. Similarly, injecting exosomes containing the long noncoding RNA H19 (*lncRNA H19*) into diabetic foot ulcers in a mouse model limited inflammation *via* upregulation of the phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) protein and, by doing so, promoted healing [97]. Of specific interest, Liu et al. [98] demonstrated that highly purified extracellular vesicles derived from human induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) were able to alleviate the ageing phenotype of senescent MSCs by reducing intracellular ROS production through delivery of peroxiredoxin antioxidant enzymes. Together, these reports highlight the potential of exosome therapy in the context of age-related chronic inflammatory diseases.

The choice of stem/progenitor cells from which to prepare exosomes for therapeutic intervention is however an important consideration since ageing- or disease-linked maladaptation can extend to the extracellular vesicles and alter their content. A comparison of bone marrow MSC-exosome preparations derived from either healthy or type 1 DM rats indicated that diabetic MSC-exosomes have an impaired ability to promote bone repair [99]. Similarly, pancreas-derived MSCs were implicated in the secretion of exosomes carrying the auto-immune antigen/trigger causing diabetes in non-obese diabetic (NOD) mice [100]. These exosomes could transfer the diabetogenic phenotype to healthy mice, which elucidates the caution that should be exercised in the choice or preparation of MSC-derived exosomes. On a more positive note, preconditioning of MSCs with LPS resulted in exosomes with a greater capacity to induce an anti-inflammatory macrophage phenotype (M2) and upregulated the expression of anti-inflammatory cytokines [101], confirming that exosome manipulation for therapeutic benefit may indeed be possible.

12.5.3.2 Probiotics: An Emerging Therapeutic Hope?

A very novel area of research with potential therapeutic application is MSC-microbe interactions. It was recently shown that canine ADSCs assume a pro-inflammatory phenotype in response to direct contact (either cell surface binding or host cell invasion) with the pathogen *Salmonella typhimurium* as well as the commonly known probiotic *Lactobacillus acidophilus* [102]. More specifically, microbial exposure upregulated gene expression of inflammatory mediators, IL6, IL8 and cyclooxygenase 2 (COX2) and increased secretion of IL6, IL8 and PGE2, without affecting markers indicative of humoral immune activation (major histocompatibility complex (MHC)-II, CD80, CD86, CD1). The study further demonstrated that chemotactic migration of ADSCs in a Matrigel-transwell system was inhibited by the pathogen, but not the probiotic. This chapter provided mechanistic evidence for the pro-inflammatory role of MSCs in situations where systemic inflammation is insufficient (as discussed and illustrated in this review), as well as qualifying the claim for "immune-boosting" effects often made for probiotics. The same study further reported that it was possible to tolerise the ADSCs by pre-exposure to these microbes, to result in a dampened inflammatory response to subsequent microbial exposure. Importantly, neither the pathogen nor the probiotic resulted in either cell death, degeneration or compromised proliferation in the ADSCs [102]. In support of this study, other reports are emerging that provide indirect proof of the potential low-risk therapeutic benefits of probiotics at the level of MSCs. Preconditioning of gingival MSCs with the *Lactobacillus reuteri* secretome (rich in the specific active reuterin) has been shown to improve their migration, proliferative and osteogenic differentiation capacity, which in turn resulted in significantly faster wound healing (full thickness gingival wounds). A parallel in vitro experiment on these gingival MSCs revealed that the probiotic exerted its effect *via* activation of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K)/Akt pathway to increase β-catenin-dependent upregulation of TGFβ and metalloprotease (MMP)-1 expression

[103]. The PI3K/Akt pathway is central to chronic inflammatory disease pathology, but the significance of these findings remains to be evaluated in suitable models of inflammatory pathology.

Similar to the findings above but more relevant to DM, murine skin-derived precursor cells (SKPs) (which have the ability to differentiate into the mesenchymal lineages in vivo) [104] were very recently reported to exhibit improved proliferation and self-renewal capacity after exposure to the secretome of the commensal lactic acid bacterium *Enterococcus faecium* L-15 [105]. Of interest to the topic of DM, the survival of this specific probiotic bacterium in the gut is disrupted *via* competitive inhibition by *Enterococcus faecalis* [106], which grows relatively more abundantly as part of the gut dysbiosis characterising diabetes [107] and is commonly implicated in wound infection in diabetic foot ulcers [108, 109]. Current probiotic treatment in DM is however focused on the genera *Lactobaccillus* and *Bifidobacteria*, as *E. faecium* does not affect glucose metabolism (although it has positive effects on lipid profile) [110]. This relative unavailability of *E. faecium* in DM may, at least in part, contribute to the poorer MSC performance seen in diabetic wound healing—and may be corrected with probiotic conditioning of diabetic MSCs. More research in this context is clearly warranted.

The studies discussed up to this point, although encouraging, have been limited to experimental models and, importantly, have been conducted in the absence of inflammatory or stem cell pathology. To our knowledge, reports of direct benefits of probiotics on MSCs in the context of chronic inflammatory disease do not yet exist. However, in the context of tenofovir-associated osteoporosis (mouse model), bone-derived MSC proliferation and osteogenic capacity were rescued after supplementation with the probiotic *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG [111], providing some support for successful translation of these data to conditions of pathology.

12.6 Conclusion

From our search of the literature, it is clear that targeted stem cell therapy using either pharmacological agents, natural products or biological agents, at least in the context of chronic inflammatory disease, is still in its infancy. The above sections do however clearly suggest potential for the use of supplements and/or biologicals to target MSCs in the context of chronic inflammatory disease such as DM. It also highlights the importance of an integrated systems approach and thorough understanding of complete disease pathology, in order to identify feasible candidates. Finally, in terms of patient safety, recent advances in technology—such as MSC extracellular vesicle isolation, or the synthesis and purification of probiotic peptides *via* homologous expression systems [112]—will enable (low-risk) cell-free treatments specifically designed to address very specific targets on pathological MSCs.

Acknowledgments MV is supported by the National Research Foundation (NRF) and the South African Medical Research Council (self-initiated research grant).

References

1. Furman D, Campisi J, Verdin E, Carrera-Bastos P, Targ S, Franceschi C et al (2019) Chronic inflammation in the etiology of disease across the life span. Nat Med 25:1822–1832
2. Zuo L, Prather ER, Stetskiv M, Garrison DE, Meade JR, Peace TI et al (2019) Inflammaging and oxidative stress in human diseases: from molecular mechanisms to novel treatments. Int J Mol Sci 20(18):4472. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20184472
3. Burton DGA, Faragher RGA (2018) Obesity and type-2 diabetes as inducers of premature cellular senescence and ageing. Biogerontology 19:447–459
4. Powrie YSL, Smith C (2018) Central intracrine DHEA synthesis in ageing-related neuroinflammation and neurodegeneration: therapeutic potential? J Neuroinflammation 15:289. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12974-018-1324-0
5. Bernardo ME, Fibbe WE (2013) Mesenchymal stromal cells: sensors and switchers of inflammation. Cell Stem Cell 13:392–402

6. Bracken MB (2009) Why animal studies are often poor predictors of human reactions to exposure. J R Soc Med 102:120–122
7. Smith C (2018) Natural antioxidants in prevention of accelerated ageing: a departure from conventional paradigms required. J Physiol Biochem 74:549–558
8. Fernández-Quintela A, Carpéné C, Fernández M, Aguirre L, Milton-Laskibar I, Contreras J et al (2016) Anti-obesity effects of resveratrol: comparison between animal models and humans. J Physiol Biochem 73:417–429
9. Cásedas G, Bennett AC, González-Burgos E, Gómez-Serranillos MP, López V, Smith C (2019) Polyphenol-associated oxidative stress and inflammation in a model of LPS-induced inflammation in glial cells: do we know enough for responsible compounding? Inflammopharmacology 27:189–197
10. Niesler CU, Van de Vyver M, Myburgh KH (2019) Cellular regenerative therapy for acquired non-congenital musculoskeletal disorders. S Afr Med J 109:58–63
11. Pérez LM, de Lucas B, Gálvez BG (2018) Unhealthy stem cells: when health conditions upset stem cell properties. Cell Physiol Biochem 46:1999–2016
12. van de Vyver M (2017) Intrinsic mesenchymal stem cell dysfunction in diabetes mellitus: implications for autologous cell therapy. Stem Cells Dev 26:1042–1053
13. Dominici M, Le Blanc K, Mueller I, Slaper-Cortenbach I, Marini F, al KD (2006) Minimal criteria for defining multipotent mesenchymal stromal cells. The International Society for Cellular Therapy position statement. Cytotherapy 8:315–317
14. Phinney DG (2007) Biochemical heterogeneity of mesenchymal stem cell populations: clues to their therapeutic efficacy. Cell Cycle 6:2884–2889
15. Fitzsimmons REB, Mazurek MS, Soos A, Simmons CA (2018) Mesenchymal stromal/stem cells in regenerative medicine and tissue engineering. Stem Cells Int 2018:8031718. https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/8031718
16. El-Sayed M, El-Feky MA, El-Amir MI, Hasan AS, Tag-Adeen M, Urata Y et al (2019) Immunomodulatory effect of mesenchymal stem cells: cell origin and cell quality variations. Mol Biol Rep 46:1157–1165
17. Im GI (2017) Bone marrow-derived stem/stromal cells and adipose tissue-derived stem/stromal cells: their comparative efficacies and synergistic effects. J Biomed Mater Res A 105:2640–2648
18. Mohamed-Ahmed S, Fristad I, Lie SA, Suliman S, Mustafa K, Vindenes H et al (2018) Adipose-derived and bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells: a donor-matched comparison. Stem Cell Res Ther 9:168. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-018-0914-1
19. Ahmed M, Ffrench-Constant C (2016) Extracellular matrix regulation of stem cell behavior. Curr Stem Cell Rep 2:197–206
20. Keung AJ, Kumar S, Schaffer DV (2010) Presentation counts: microenvironmental regulation of stem cells by biophysical and material cues. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 26:533–556. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-cellbio-100109-104042
21. Li D, Zhou J, Chowdhury F, Cheng J, Wang N, Wang F (2011) Role of mechanical factors in fate decisions of stem cells. Regen Med 6:229–240
22. Spees JL, Lee RH, Gregory CA (2016) Mechanisms of mesenchymal stem/stromal cell function. Stem Cell Res Ther 7:125. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-016-0363-7
23. Yun MH (2015) Changes in regenerative capacity through lifespan. Int J Mol Sci 16:25392–25432
24. Vono R, Jover Garcia E, Spinetti G, Madeddu P (2018) Oxidative stress in mesenchymal stem cell senescence: regulation by coding and noncoding RNAs. Antioxid Redox Signal 29:864–879
25. Li Y, Wu Q, Wang Y, Li L, Bu H, Bao J (2017) Senescence of mesenchymal stem cells (Review). Int J Mol Med 39:775–782
26. Duscher D, Rennert RC, Januszyk M, Anghel E, Maan ZN, Whittam AJ et al (2014) Aging disrupts cell subpopulation dynamics and diminishes the function of mesenchymal stem cells. Sci Rep 4:7144. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep07144
27. Khong SML, Lee M, Kosaric N, Khong DM, Dong Y, Hopfner U et al (2019) Single-cell transcriptomics of human mesenchymal stem cells reveal age-related cellular subpopulation depletion and impaired regenerative function. Stem Cells 37:240–246
28. Fathi E, Charoudeh HN, Sanaat Z, Farahzadi R (2019) Telomere shortening as a hallmark of stem cell senescence. Stem Cell Investig 6:7. https://doi.org/10.21037/sci.2019.02.04
29. He L, Zheng Y, Wan Y, Song J (2014) A shorter telomere is the key factor in preventing cultured human mesenchymal stem cells from senescence escape. Histochem Cell Biol 142:257–267
30. Brandl A, Meyer M, Bechmann V, Nerlich M, Angele P (2011) Oxidative stress induces senescence in human mesenchymal stem cells. Exp Cell Res 317:1541–1547
31. Wang L, Yu X, Liu JP (2017) Telomere damage response and low-grade inflammation. Adv Exp Med Biol 1024:213–224
32. Zhang J, Rane G, Dai X, Shanmugam MK, Arfuso F, Samy RP et al (2016) Ageing and the telomere connection: an intimate relationship with inflammation. Ageing Res Rev 25:55–69
33. Xu M, Pirtskhalava T, Farr JN, Weigand BM, Palmer AK, Weivoda MM et al (2018) Senolytics improve physical function and increase lifespan in old age. Nat Med 24:1246–1256
34. Pérez-Panero AJ, Ruiz-Muñoz M, Cuesta-Vargas AI, Gónzalez-Sánchez M (2019) Prevention, assessment, diagnosis and management of diabetic foot based on clinical practice guidelines: a systematic review. Medicine (Baltimore) 98:e16877. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000016877
35. Saeedi P, Petersohn I, Salpea P, Saeedi P, Basit A, Besançon S et al (2019) Global and regional diabe-

tes prevalence estimates for 2019 and projections for 2030 and 2045: results from the international diabetes federation diabetes Atlas, 9th edition. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 157:107843. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabres.2019.107843
36. Waterman RS, Tomchuck SL, Henkle SL, Betancourt AM (2010) A new mesenchymal stem cell (MSC) paradigm: polarization into a pro-inflammatory MSC1 or an Immunosuppressive MSC2 phenotype. PLoS One 5:e10088. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0010088
37. Duffy MM, Ritter T, Ceredig R, Griffin MD (2011) Mesenchymal stem cell effects on T-cell effector pathways. Stem Cell Res Ther 2:34. https://doi.org/10.1186/scrt75
38. Haddad R, Saldanha-Araujo F (2014) Mechanisms of T-cell immunosuppression by mesenchymal stromal cells: what do we know so far? Biomed Res Int 2014:216806. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/216806
39. Abbasi A, Froushani SMA, Delirezh N, Mostafaei A (2018) Caffeine alters the effects of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells on neutrophils. Adv Clin Exp Med 27:463–468
40. Espinosa G, Plaza A, Schenffeldt A, Alarcón P, Gajardo G, Uberti B et al (2020) Equine bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stromal cells inhibit reactive oxygen species production by neutrophils. Vet Immunol Immunopathol 221:109975. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.vetimm.2019.109975
41. Mittal SK, Mashaghi A, Amouzegar A, Li M, Foulsham W, Sahu SK et al (2018) Mesenchymal stromal cells inhibit neutrophil effector functions in a murine model of ocular inflammation. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 59:1191–1198
42. Mumaw JL, Schmiedt CW, Breidling S, Sigmund A, Norton NA, Thoreson M et al (2015) Feline mesenchymal stem cells and supernatant inhibit reactive oxygen species production in cultured feline neutrophils. Res Vet Sci 103:60–69
43. Cho D-I, Kim MR, Jeong H, Jeong HC, Jeong MH, Yoon SH et al (2014) Mesenchymal stem cells reciprocally regulate the M1/M2 balance in mouse bone marrow-derived macrophages. Exp Mol Med 46:e70. https://doi.org/10.1038/emm.2013.135
44. Kruger MJ, Conradie MM, Conradie M, van de Vyver M (2018) ADSC-conditioned media elicit an ex vivo anti-inflammatory macrophage response. J Mol Endocrinol 61:173–184
45. Li D, Wang C, Chi C, Wang Y, Zhao J, Fang J et al (2016) Bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells inhibit lipopolysaccharide-induced inflammatory reactions in macrophages and endothelial cells. Mediat Inflamm 2016:2631439. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/2631439
46. Philipp D, Suhr L, Wahlers T, Choi YH, Paunel-Görgülü A (2018) Preconditioning of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells highly strengthens their potential to promote IL-6-dependent M2b polarization. Stem Cell Res Ther 9:286. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-018-1039-2
47. Takizawa N, Okubo N, Kamo M, Chosa N, Mikami T, Suzuki K et al (2017) Bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells propagate immunosuppressive/anti-inflammatory macrophages in cell-to-cell contact-independent and -dependent manners under hypoxic culture. Exp Cell Res 358:411–420
48. Zheng YH, Deng YY, Lai W, Zheng SY, Bian HN, Liu ZA et al (2018) Effect of bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells on the polarization of macrophages. Mol Med Rep 17:4449–4459
49. van de Vyver M, Niesler C, Myburgh KH, Ferris WF (2016) Delayed wound healing and dysregulation of IL6/STAT3 signalling in MSCs derived from pre-diabetic obese mice. Mol Cell Endocrinol 426:1–10
50. Mehrbani Azar Y, Green R, Niesler CU, van de Vyver M (2018) Antioxidant preconditioning improves the paracrine responsiveness of bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells to diabetic wound fluid. Stem Cells Dev 27(23):1646–1657
51. Yin Y, Hao H, Cheng Y, Zang L, Liu J, Gao J et al (2018) Human umbilical cord-derived mesenchymal stem cells direct macrophage polarization to alleviate pancreatic islets dysfunction in type 2 diabetic mice. Cell Death Dis 9:760. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41419-018-0801-9
52. Raffaghello L, Bianchi G, Bertolotto M, Montecucco F, Busca A, Dallegri F et al (2008) Human mesenchymal stem cells inhibit neutrophil apoptosis: a model for neutrophil preservation in the bone marrow niche. Stem Cells 26:151–162
53. Mehrbani Azar Y, Kruger MJ, de Swardt D, Maartens M, Seboko AM, Ferris WF et al (2020) Model for studying the effects of chronic metabolic disease on endogenous bone marrow stem cell populations. Methods Mol Biol 2138:119–134
54. Mehrbani Azar Y, Niesler CU, van de Vyver M (2020) Ex vivo antioxidant preconditioning improves the survival rate of bone marrow stem cells in the presence of wound fluid. Wound Repair Regen 28(4):506–516. https://doi.org/10.1111/wrr.12815. [Epub ahead of print]
55. Borodkina AV, Deryabin PI, Giukova AA, Nikolsky NN (2018) "Social Life" of senescent cells: what is SASP and why study it? Acta Nat 10:4–14
56. Ali F, Khan M, Khan SN, Riazuddin S (2016) N-Acetyl cysteine protects diabetic mouse derived mesenchymal stem cells from hydrogen-peroxide-induced injury: a novel hypothesis for autologous stem cell transplantation. J Chin Med Assoc 79:122–129
57. Kong C-M, Subramanian A, Biswas A, Stunkel W, Chong YS, Bongso A et al (2019) Changes in stemness properties, differentiation potential, oxidative stress, senescence and mitochondrial function in Wharton's Jelly stem cells of umbilical cords of mothers with gestational diabetes mellitus. Stem Cell Rev Rep 15:415–426
58. Alicka M, Major P, Wysocki M, Marycz K (2019) Adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells isolated from patients with Type 2 diabetes show reduced "Stemness" through an altered secretome profile,

impaired anti-oxidative protection, and mitochondrial dynamics deterioration. J Clin Med 8(6) pii: E765. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcm80607655
59. Chang TC, Hsu MF, Wu KK (2015) High glucose induces bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cell senescence by upregulating autophagy. PLoS One 10:e0126537. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0126537
60. Cheng NC, Hsieh TY, Lai HS, Young TH (2016) High glucose-induced reactive oxygen species generation promotes stemness in human adipose-derived stem cells. Cytotherapy 18:371–383
61. Oh JY, Choi GE, Lee HJ, Jung YH, Ko SH, Chae CW et al (2018) High glucose-induced reactive oxygen species stimulates human mesenchymal stem cell migration through snail and EZH2-dependent E-cadherin repression. Cell Physiol Biochem 46:1749–1767
62. Dhanasekaran M, Indumathi S, Rajkumar JS, Sudarsanam D (2013) Effect of high glucose on extensive culturing of mesenchymal stem cells derived from subcutaneous fat, omentum fat and bone marrow. Cell Biochem Funct 31:20–29
63. Liu Y, Li Y, Nan LP, Wang F, Zhou SF, Wang JC et al (2020) The effect of high glucose on the biological characteristics of nucleus pulposus-derived mesenchymal stem cells. Cell Biochem Funct 38(2):130–140
64. Wang J, Wang B, Li Y, Wang D, Lingling E, Bai Y et al (2013) High glucose inhibits osteogenic differentiation through the BMP signaling pathway in bone mesenchymal stem cells in mice. EXCLI J 12:584–597
65. Al-Qarakhli AMA, Yusop N, Waddington RJ, Moseley R (2019) Effects of high glucose conditions on the expansion and differentiation capabilities of mesenchymal stromal cells derived from rat endosteal niche. BMC Mol Cell Biol 20:51. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12860-019-0235-y
66. Lin W-C, Shih P-H, Wang W, Wu CH, Hsia SM, Wang HJ et al (2015) Inhibitory effects of high stability fucoxanthin on palmitic acid-induced lipid accumulation in human adipose-derived stem cells through modulation of long non-coding RNA. Food Funct 6:2215–2223
67. Carpéné C, Pejenaute H, Del Moral R, Boulet N, Hijona E, Andrade F et al (2018) The dietary antioxidant piceatannol inhibits adipogenesis of human adipose mesenchymal stem cells and limits glucose transport and lipogenic activities in adipocytes. Int J Mol Sci 19(7) pii: E2081. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms19072081
68. Hong W, Park J, Yun W, Kang PJ, Son D, Jang J et al (2018) Inhibitory effect of celastrol on adipogenic differentiation of human adipose-derived stem cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 507:236–241
69. Gu Z, Jiang J, Xia Y, Yue X, Yan M, Tao T et al (2013) p21 is associated with the proliferation and apoptosis of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells from non-obese diabetic mice. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes 121:607–613
70. Li X, Liu N, Gu B, Hu W, Li Y, Guo B et al (2018) BMAL1 regulates balance of osteogenic-osteoclastic function of bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells in type 2 diabetes mellitus through the NF-κB pathway. Mol Biol Rep 45:1691–1704
71. Ko KI, Syverson AL, Kralik RM, Choi J, DerGarabedian BP, Chen C et al (2019) Diabetes-induced NF-κB dysregulation in skeletal stem cells prevents resolution of inflammation. Diabetes 68:2095–2106
72. Zhang N, Valentine JM, Zhou Y, Li ME, Zhang Y, Bhattacharya A et al (2017) Sustained NFκB inhibition improves insulin sensitivity but is detrimental to muscle health. Aging Cell 16:847–858
73. Li CJ, Sun LY, Pang CY (2015) Synergistic protection of N-acetylcysteine and ascorbic acid 2-phosphate on human mesenchymal stem cells against mitoptosis, necroptosis and apoptosis. Sci Rep 5:9819. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep09819
74. Watanabe J, Yamada M, Niibe K, Zhang M, Kondo T, Ishibashi M et al (2018) Preconditioning of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells with N-acetyl-L-cysteine enhances bone regeneration via reinforced resistance to oxidative stress. Biomaterials 185:25–38
75. Saulite L, Jekabsons K, Klavins M, Muceniece R, Riekstina U (2019) Effects of malvidin, cyanidin and delphinidin on human adipose mesenchymal stem cell differentiation into adipocytes, chondrocytes and osteocytes. Phytomedicine 53:86–95
76. Hu C, Li L (2019) The application of resveratrol to mesenchymal stromal cell-based regenerative medicine. Stem Cell Res Ther 10:307. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-019-1412-9
77. Chen TS, Kuo CH, Day CH, Pan LF, Chen RJ, Chen BC et al (2019) Resveratrol increases stem cell function in the treatment of damaged pancreas. J Cell Physiol 234:20443–20452
78. Fellous T, De Maio F, Kalkan H, Carannante B, Boccella S, Petrosino S et al (2020) Phytocannabinoids promote viability and functional adipogenesis of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells through different molecular targets. Biochem Pharmacol 175:113859. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcp.2020.113859
79. Li M, Yu L, She T, Gan Y, Liu F, Hu Z et al (2012) Astragaloside IV attenuates Toll-like receptor 4 expression via NF-κB pathway under high glucose condition in mesenchymal stem cells. Eur J Pharmacol 696:203–209
80. Wang T, Yan R, Xu X, Li X, Cao L, Gao L et al (2019) Curcumin represses adipogenic differentiation of human bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells via inhibiting Kruppel-like factor 15 expression. Acta Histochem 121:253–259
81. Martin H (2010) Role of PPAR-gamma in inflammation. Prospects for therapeutic intervention by food components. Mutat Res 690:57–63
82. Huang F, Yao Y, Wu J, Liu Q, Zhang J, Pu X et al (2017) Curcumin inhibits gastric cancer-derived mesenchymal stem cells mediated angiogenesis by

regulating NF-κB/VEGF signaling. Am J Transl Res 9:5538–5547
83. Mohanty C, Pradhan J (2020) A human epidermal growth factor-curcumin bandage bioconjugate loaded with mesenchymal stem cell for in vivo diabetic wound healing. Mater Sci Eng C Mater Biol Appl 111:110751. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.msec.2020.110751
84. Mantzorou M, Pavlidou E, Vasios G, Tsagalioti E, Giaginis C (2018) Effects of curcumin consumption on human chronic diseases: a narrative review of the most recent clinical data. Phytother Res 32:957–975
85. Campbell MS, Ouyang A, Krishnakumar IM, Charnigo RJ, Westgate PM, Fleenor BS (2019) Influence of enhanced bioavailable curcumin on obesity-associated cardiovascular disease risk factors and arterial function: a double-blinded, randomized, controlled trial. Nutrition 62:135–139
86. Gorabi AM, Kiaie N, Hajighasemi S, Jamialahmadi T, Majeed M, Sahebkar A (2019) The effect of curcumin on the differentiation of mesenchymal stem cells into mesodermal lineage. Molecules 24:22). pii: E4029. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules24224029
87. Li Y, Zhang ZZ (2018) Sustained curcumin release from PLGA microspheres improves bone formation under diabetic conditions by inhibiting the reactive oxygen species production. Drug Des Devel Ther 12:1453–1466
88. Bennett AC, Van Camp A, López V, Smith C (2018) *Sceletium tortuosum* may delay chronic disease progression via alkaloid-dependent antioxidant or anti-inflammatory action. J Physiol Biochem 74:539–547
89. Jun T, Liancai Z, Bochu W (2007) Effects of Quercetin on DNA damage induced by copper ion. Int J Pharmacol 3:19–26
90. Liu ZQ (2014) Antioxidants may not always be beneficial to health. Nutrition 30:131–133
91. Caldarelli I, Speranza MC, Bencivenga D, Tramontano A, Borgia A, Pirozzi AV et al (2015) Resveratrol mimics insulin activity in the adipogenic commitment of human bone marrow mesenchymal stromal cells. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 60:60–72
92. Kim TJ, Byun JS, Kwon HS, Kim DY (2018) Cellular toxicity driven by high-dose vitamin C on normal and cancer stem cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 497:347–353. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2018.02.083
93. Phinney DG, Pittenger MF (2017) Concise review: MSC-derived exosomes for cell-free therapy. Stem Cells 35:851–858
94. Casado-Díaz A, Quesada-Gómez JM, Dorado G (2020) Extracellular vesicles derived from Mesenchymal Stem Cells (MSC) in regenerative medicine: applications in skin wound healing. Front Bioeng Biotechnol 8:146. https://doi.org/10.3389/fbioe.2020.00146
95. Shi R, Jin Y, Hu W, Lian W, Cao C, Han S et al (2020) Exosomes derived from mmu_circ_0000250-modified ADSCs promote wound healing in diabetic mice by inducing miR-128-3p/SIRT1 mediated autophagy. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 318(5):C848–C856
96. Qiang L, Sample A, Liu H, Wu X, He YY (2017) Epidermal SIRT1 regulates inflammation, cell migration, and wound healing. Sci Rep 7:14110. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-14371-3
97. Li B, Luan S, Chen J, Zhou Y, Wang T, Li Z et al (2020) The MSC-derived exosomal lncRNA H19 promotes wound healing in diabetic foot ulcers by upregulating PTEN via MicroRNA-152-3p. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids 19:814–826
98. Liu S, Mahairaki V, Bai H, Ding Z, Li J, Witwer KW et al (2019) Highly purified human extracellular vesicles produced by stem cells alleviate aging cellular phenotypes of senescent human cells. Stem Cells 37:779–790
99. Zhu Y, Jia Y, Wang Y, Xu J, Chai Y (2019) Impaired bone regenerative effect of exosomes derived from bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells in Type 1 diabetes. Stem Cells Transl Med 8:593–605
100. Rahman MJ, Regn D, Bashratyan R, Dai YD (2014) Exosomes released by islet-derived mesenchymal stem cells trigger autoimmune responses in NOD mice. Diabetes 63:1008–1020
101. Ti D, Hao H, Tong C, Liu J, Dong L, Zheng J et al (2015) LPS-preconditioned mesenchymal stromal cells modify macrophage polarization for resolution of chronic inflammation via exosome-shuttled let-7b. J Transl Med 13:308. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12967-015-0642-6
102. Kol A, Foutouhi S, Walker NJ, Kong NT, Weimer BC, Borjesson DL (2014) Gastrointestinal microbes interact with canine adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells in vitro and enhance immunomodulatory functions. Stem Cells Dev 23:1831–1843
103. Han N, Jia L, Su Y, Du J, Guo L, Luo Z et al (2019) *Lactobacillus reuteri* extracts promoted wound healing via PI3K/AKT/β-catenin/TGFβ1 pathway. Stem Cell Res Ther 10:243. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-019-1324-8
104. Kang HK, Min S-K, Jung SY, Jung K, Jang DH, Kim OB et al (2011) The potential of mouse skin-derived precursors to differentiate into mesenchymal and neural lineages and their application to osteogenic induction in vivo. Int J Mol Med 28:1001–1011
105. Kim K, Park S, Kim H, Min S, Ku S, Seo J et al (2020) *Enterococcus faecium* L-15 extract enhances the self-renewal and proliferation of mouse skin-derived precursor cells. Probiotics Antimicrob Proteins. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12602-020-09635-w
106. Kommineni S, Bretl DJ, Lam V, Chakraborty R, Hayward M, Simpson P et al (2015) Bacteriocin production augments niche competition by enterococci in the mammalian gastrointestinal tract. Nature 526:719–722
107. Weiss GA, Hennet T (2017) Mechanisms and consequences of intestinal dysbiosis. Cell Mol Life Sci 74:2959–2977
108. Uçkay I, Pires D, Agostinho A, Guanziroli N, Öztürk M, Bartolone P et al (2017) Enterococci in orthopaedic infections: who is at risk getting infected? J Infect 75:309–314
109. Anvarinejad M, Pouladfar G, Japoni A et al (2016) Diabetic foot infections: antibiotic susceptibility pat-

terns and determination of antibiotic cross-resistance in clinical isolates of enterococcus species during 2012–2014 in Shiraz, Iran. Arch Pediatr Infect Dis 5. https://doi.org/10.5812/pedinfect.37680
110. Bordalo Tonucci L, Dos Santos KMO, De Luces Fortes Ferreira CL et al (2017) Gut microbiota and probiotics: focus on diabetes mellitus. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr 57:2296–2309
111. Liu H, Gu R, Li W, Xue J, Z1 C, Wei Q et al (2019) Probiotics protect against tenofovir-induced mandibular bone loss in mice by rescuing mandible-derived mesenchymal stem cell proliferation and osteogenic differentiation. J Oral Rehabil. https://doi.org/10.1111/joor.12840
112. Van Staden ADP, Faure LM, Vermeulen RR, Dicks LMT, Smith C et al (2019) Functional expression of GFP-fused class I lanthipeptides in *Escherichia coli*. ACS Synth Biol 8:2220–2227
113. Yan J, Tie G, Wang S, Messina KE, DiDato S, Guo S et al (2012) Type 2 diabetes restricts multipotency of mesenchymal stem cells and impairs their capacity to augment postischemic neovascularization in db/db mice. J Am Heart Assoc 1:e002238. https://doi.org/10.1161/JAHA.112.002238
114. Chen TS, Ju DT, Day CH, Yeh YL, Chen RJ, Viswanadha VP et al (2019) Protective effect of autologous transplantation of resveratrol preconditioned adipose-derived stem cells in the treatment of diabetic liver dysfunction in rat model. J Tissue Eng Regen Med 13:1629–1640
115. Kim YS, Kwon JS, Hong MH, Kang WS, Jeong HY, Kang HJ et al (2013) Restoration of angiogenic capacity of diabetes-insulted mesenchymal stem cells by oxytocin. BMC Cell Biol 14:38. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2121-14-38
116. Ariyanti AD, Zhang J, Marcelina O, Nugrahaningrum DA, Wang G, Kasim V et al (2019) Salidroside-pretreated mesenchymal stem cells enhance diabetic wound healing by promoting paracrine function and survival of mesenchymal stem cells under hyperglycemia. Stem Cells Transl Med 8:404–414
117. Khan M, Akhtar S, Mohsin S, N Khan S, Riazuddin S (2011) Growth factor preconditioning increases the function of diabetes-impaired mesenchymal stem cells. Stem Cells Dev 20:67–75
118. Cavallari G, Olivi E, Bianchi F et al (2012) Mesenchymal stem cells and islet cotransplantation in diabetic rats: improved islet graft revascularization and function by human adipose tissue-derived stem cells preconditioned with natural molecules. Cell Transplant 21:2771–2781. https://doi.org/10.3727/096368912X637046
119. Gholami Farashah MS, Pasbakhsh P, Omidi A et al (2019) Preconditioning with SDF-1 improves therapeutic outcomes of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stromal cells in a mouse model of STZ-induced diabetes. Avicenna J Med Biotechnol 11:35–42
120. Li Q, Guo Y, Chen F, Liu J, Jin P (2016) Stromal cell-derived factor-1 promotes human adipose tissue-derived stem cell survival and chronic wound healing. Exp Ther Med 12:45–50
121. Abdelrahman SA, Samak MA, Shalaby SM (2018) Fluoxetine pretreatment enhances neurogenic, angiogenic and immunomodulatory effects of MSCs on experimentally induced diabetic neuropathy. Cell Tissue Res 374:83–97
122. Rashed LA, Elattar S, Eltablawy N, Ashour H, Mahmoud LM, El-Esawy Y et al (2018) Mesenchymal stem cells pretreated with melatonin ameliorate kidney functions in a rat model of diabetic nephropathy. Biochem Cell Biol 96:564–571
123. Lu H, Wu X, Wang Z, Li L, Chen W, Yang M et al (2016) Erythropoietin-activated mesenchymal stem cells promote healing ulcers by improving microenvironment. J Surg Res 205:464–473
124. Shree N, Bhonde RR (2016) Metformin preconditioned adipose derived mesenchymal stem cells is a better option for the reversal of diabetes upon transplantation. Biomed Pharmacother 84:1662–1667
125. Najafi R, Sharifi AM (2013) Deferoxamine preconditioning potentiates mesenchymal stem cell homing in vitro and in streptozotocin-diabetic rats. Expert Opin Biol Ther 13:959–972

13 Therapeutic Strategies and Nano-Drug Delivery Applications in Management of Aging Alzheimer's Disease

Thuy Trang Nguyen, Tuong Kha Vo, and Giau Van Vo

Abstract

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a neurodegenerative disorder in which the death of brain cells causes memory loss and cognitive decline. Existing drugs only suppress symptoms or delay further deterioration but do not address the cause of the disease. In spite of screening numerous drug candidates against various molecular targets of AD, only a few candidates, such as acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, are currently utilized as an effective clinical therapy. Currently, nano-based therapies can make a difference, providing new therapeutic options by helping drugs to cross the blood-brain barrier and enter the brain more effectively. The main aim of this review was to highlight advances in research on the development of nano-based therapeutics for improved treatment of AD.

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease · Nanotherapeutic · Molecular targets · Oxidative stress · CNS

13.1 Introduction

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a progressive neurodegenerative disease that involves loss of memory, thinking, and reasoning and several behavioral characteristics in elderly people. Approximately 47 million people suffer from dementia worldwide. This figure is anticipated to increase to more than 131 million by 2050 [1]. A complex of insoluble accumulations of beta amyloid protein (Aβ) plaques and tau neurofibrillary tangles in the brain suggests that these play a role in the pathology of AD [2–5]. However, the precise mechanism of how Aβ potentiates pathogenesis in AD is still not completely understood [6–9], while a vast number of studies on the

T. T. Nguyen
Faculty of Pharmacy, Ho Chi Minh City University of Technology (HUTECH), Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam

T. K. Vo
Vietnam Sports Hospital, Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, Hanoi, Vietnam

G. V. Vo (✉)
Department of Industrial and Environmental Engineering, Gachon University, Seongnam-si, South Korea

Department of Bionano Technology, Gachon University, Seongnam-si, South Korea

School of Medicine, Vietnam National University Ho Chi Minh City, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_13

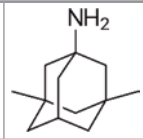
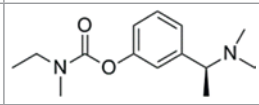
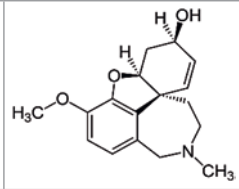
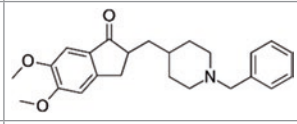
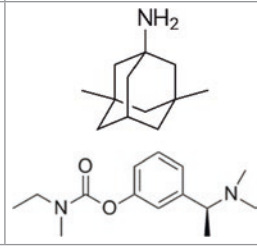
presence of crosstalk between Aβ and many molecular signaling pathways have been done. Therefore, strategies for early detection as well as treatment of AD are among the most challenging and timely areas in modern medicine.

Currently, the most common strategies aim to treat AD through cholinesterase inhibitors and N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonists. So far, memantine, donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine are the only drugs in use which have obtained Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval for treatment of AD (Table 13.1). However, these drugs only have marginal effects on reducing disease symptoms or in delaying further deterioration, as they do not target the underlying pathology [10].

In addition, the blood-brain barrier (BBB) is a formidable gatekeeper which prevents materials from the blood from entering the brain. However, the BBB is semi-permeable as it allows some materials to cross, but prevents others from traversing it. The development of nanotechnology aims to overcome this problem through tethering of AD drugs to surface-modified nanoparticles (NPs). Nanomedical approaches provide new therapeutic options by helping drugs to enter the brain, thereby facilitating targeting of the direct cause of the disease. Crossing the brain-cerebrospinal fluid barrier requires specific targeting ligands, which should be smaller and more stable than conventional approaches.

To cross the BBB and deliver a drug into the brain, various alternative strategies are required to effectively target Aβ production, aggregation, and clearance, as well as tau phosphorylation and assembly into neurofibrillary tangles [11, 12]. These include lipidic, polymeric, inorganic, and other types of NPs. Nanoparticle development marks a crucial step in development of nano-based drug delivery systems for direct targeting of pathological processes in the relevant tissues. In order to raise awareness for

Table 13.1 FDA-approved drugs for AD treatment

Generic name	Chemical structure	Brand name	Stage of AD approved	Principally targeted
Memantine		Namenda	Moderate to severe	NMDA receptor antagonist
Rivastigmine		Exelon	Mild to moderate	Acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase inhibitor
Galantamine		Razadyne	Mild to moderate	
Donepezil		Aricept	All stages	Selective acetylcholinesterase inhibitor
Memantine + donepezil		Namzaric	Moderate to severe	Combined action

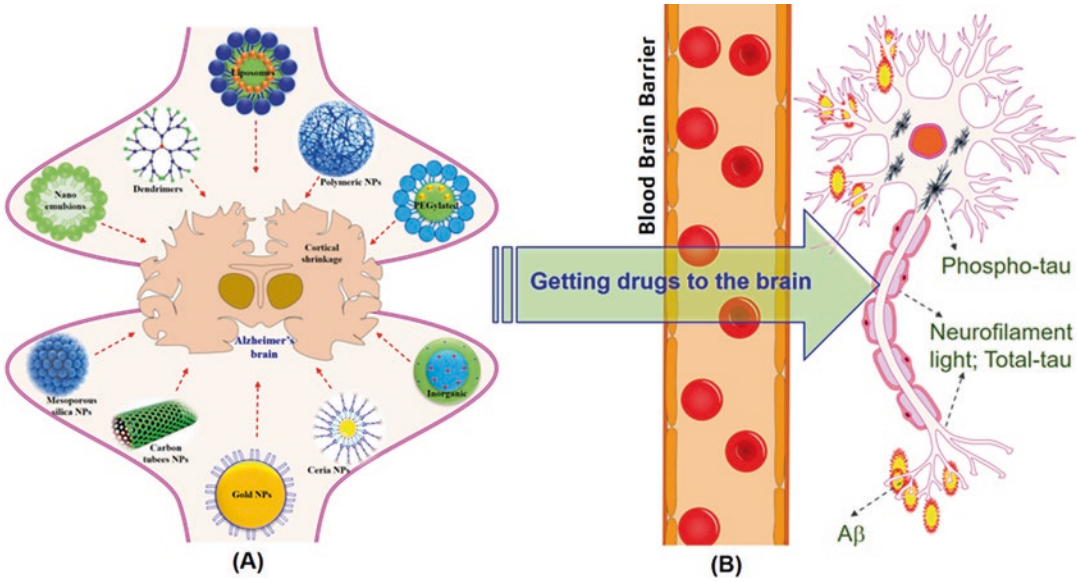


Fig. 13.1 Current approach to the treatment of Alzheimer's disease using nanocarriers

the potential of nanomedicine in combating AD, the current review highlights the most recent advances on production and testing of nano-based strategies for AD treatment (Fig. 13.1a).

13.2 Targeting the Amyloid Cascade

Aβ fibrillar formation and plaque clearance are considered to be the primary target in the treatment of AD pathogenesis based on the amyloid cascade hypothesis. Due to high binding affinity toward the $A\beta_{1-42}$ peptide (the "sticky" form of Aβ which leads to plaque formation), several lipid-based NPs have been developed as potential treatments. Gobbi et al. developed a liposome functionalized with phosphatidic acid and cardiolipin to effectively target the $A\beta_{1-42}$ form of Aβ with high affinity [13]. Intraperitoneal injection of this molecule resulted in decreased levels of Aβ in the brains of the APP/PS1 transgenic mice, a widely used model of AD [14]. Another study used curcumin-loaded nanospheres and found decreased Aβ load in the brains and an amelioration of the memory deficits in an AD mouse model [15]. Recently, a dopamine-melatonin nanocomposite (DM-NC) was developed that could be activated to release the melatonin cargo by a near-infrared and photothermal effect [16]. This led to inhibition of Aβ nucleation, self-seeding, and propagation as well as disruption of preformed Aβ fibers in neuroblastoma cells and in the brains of an AD mouse model. In addition, Karthivashan et al. reported on the development of NP-functionalized monoclonal antibodies that could target Aβ fibril formation [17]. Another study used an antibody-coated NP to effectively target cerebrovascular Aβ in the Tg2576 mouse model of AD [18]. In addition, several approaches using organic molecules to coat inorganic nanoparticles have been used to target Aβ cascades in AD. Another study managed to enhance drug delivery across the BBB using a molecular Trojan horse such as a transferrin receptor-MAb [19], and lipoprotein bodies have also been developed which can deliver biomaterials to targeted sites within the brain for diseases such as AD [20].

13.3 Nanomaterials Against Amyloid Diseases

Amyloid fibrils have good affinity for nanoparticles (NPs) through residue coordination. Therefore, drug-based NPs have an intrinsic propensity for binding to amyloid proteins. This effect is controlled by competitive protein-protein versus protein-NP interactions. If protein-NP interaction dominates, then Aβ fibrillation is either accelerated or inhibited [21, 22]. For example, gold (Au)-NPs are a typical nanomaterial that interacts with amyloid proteins based on the nature of their surface ligands. Citrate- and polyethylene glycol (PEG)-conjugated Au-NPs accelerated the fibrillation of Aβ, resulting from the conformational changes in pancreatic islet amyloid polypeptide (IAPP) induced by the Au-NPs, from random coils to α-helices and then to β-sheets [23]. However, when the size of PEG was increased to 3000 Da, the distance between the Au-NP surface and IAPP was increased, thus diminishing the acceleration effect [21]. Similarly, changing the concentration of NPs can induce different effects on amyloid fibrillization. Lago et al. demonstrated that cationic polystyrene NPs accelerated the Aβ fibrillization at lower concentrations but inhibited the fibrillization at higher concentrations [24]. This effect was explained on the basis of a balance between fibrillization of free peptides in the solution versus surface-assisted nucleation and then fibrillization. In addition, curcumin-capped Au-NPs were found to inhibit Aβ fibrillization [25] and cadmium telluride (CdTe)-NPs interacted with Aβ via multiple binding sites to inhibit the peptide fibrillization [26]. Another study showed that the hydrophobic surface of single-walled carbon nanotubes (CNTs) induced deposition of Aβ on their surface in a non-amyloid form [27].

In further studies of carbon-based nanomaterials, graphene quantum dots (GQDs) have been tested in amyloidosis due to their small size, hydrophobic nature, and strong binding with amyloid proteins [28]. Through a combination of hydrophobic interaction, H-bonding, salt bridging, and π-stacking, GQDs were found to inhibit Aβ formation in in vitro and in vivo models due to its conversion from α-helices and β-hairpins to random coils. A number of in vivo studies have tested nanomaterials in amyloid disease. These include polymeric NPs ligated with the lysine-leucine-valine-phenylalanine-phenylalanine (KLVFF) peptide that targeted Aβ and cleared the latter from the brain of an AD mouse model [29]. This amino acid sequence corresponds to the Aβ16-20 region which plays a critical role in generation of Aβ fibrils. In addition, lipoprotein-based NPs crafted from apolipoprotein E3 demonstrated cross-talk ability with Aβ and bound and cleared Aβ monomers from transgenic AD mice [30]. All of these approaches faced the challenge of overcoming the complexity of in vivo environments that could render NPs ineffective against amyloidosis. Another major challenge is the lack of suitable animal model systems with translational potential. Therapeutic modalities that show efficacy in mouse models have largely failed to show similar results in human clinical trials [31]. The pathology of amyloid diseases is related to aging and therefore involves multiple pathophysiological pathways. It remains a challenge to establish such translational animal models reflecting the variety of pathophysiological pathways involved in the onset and progression of amyloid-related diseases [32]. NPs offer an opportunity to overcome such problems with their ability to transport bioactive molecules across the BBB thereby reducing toxicity and improving therapeutic efficacy through targeting of the relevant tissues (Fig. 13.1b) [33, 34].

13.4 Nanotechnologies for AD Treatment

13.4.1 Targeting Androgen and Estrogen NPs

The gonadal steroids including estrogens and androgens play a critical role in central nervous system (CNS) development and function [35]. To decrease the risk of AD, estrogen treatment can promote the growth and survival of cholinergic neurons and significantly reduce cerebral amy-

loid deposition [36]. Estradiol-encapsulated PLGA NPs have been used as an alternative approach to prevent AD syndrome [37, 38]. Also, an active anti-progesterone compound, mifepristone (11β-[4-dimethylamino]phenyl-17β-hydroxy-17[propynyl]estra-4,9-dien-3-one), was found to slow down the progression of cognitive decline in AD patients because of its mechanism related to P-glycoprotein (P-gp) transporter-mediated efflux of Aβ [39]. In addition, encapsulation of mifepristone within poly(ethylene glycol)-block-poly(lactide) (PEG-b-PLA) NPs enabled evaluation of the increase in drug bioavailability after oral administration [40]. The use of nano-delivery systems offers a means of overcoming high-dosage requirements that are normally due to poor pharmacokinetics associated with the conventional drug delivery systems [41]. With advancements in technology, the carrier techniques offer additional functionalities such as specific molecular targeting enabling higher efficiencies. For these reasons, the use of NPs as drug delivery systems has been studied in different diseases [42].

Localized drug release has received considerable attention, due to the non-invasive character, reduction of side effects, and improved control over bio-distribution [43]. This has been achieved due to the smaller size of nanomaterials (typically ranging from one to several hundred nanometers) compared with other delivery systems, as well as appropriate charge and a higher surface-volume ratio [43, 44]. In the case of the neuronal system, the BBB is one of the major challenges due to its highly selective semipermeable border that separates the circulating blood from the brain and extracellular fluid in the CNS [45, 46]. With molecular weights less than 400 Da and sizes below 100 nm, the particulates lipophilic nature allows them to pass easily through the BBB through diffusion mechanisms [47]. In addition, the various nanotechnology-based approaches meet this demand by improving efficacy and sustained release of the entrapped drug. Such effects have now been demonstrated in many studies involving use of nanomaterials as drug delivery systems [38, 48–61] (Table 13.2).

13.4.2 Polymeric Nanoparticles

Encapsulation of active compounds, such as perfumes, in polymeric microcapsules is the current method of choice for protection from aggressive environments and sustained release in consumer goods. Although polymeric shells provide robust encapsulation, they do present some drawbacks, like a poor deposition on targeted substrates and a release mechanism restricted to mechanical force [62, 63]. The lactic-co-glycolic acid (PLGA) form of NPs is an example of this for pharmaceutical applications [63]. In addition, a PLGA-block-PEG has been conjugated with triphenylphosphonium (TPP) to form PLGA-b-PEG-TPP in targeting inflammation as an AD treatment [64, 65]. Biodegradable PLGA NPs have also been found to have neuroprotective effects in treatment of AD [66], and coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10)-loaded PLGA NPs have been employed to minimize the cytotoxicity of Aβ and rescued memory in an AD mouse model [67]. In addition, HDL-associated α-tocopherol treated with lipophilic compounds has been shown to be efficiently and selectively taken up in the brain in AD studies [68], and enhanced delivery of plasma apolipoprotein A-I via manipulation of HDL transcytosis has been developed as a treatment for brain disorders [69–71]. Also, specific ligands and antibodies have been conjugated into solid lipid NPs and demonstrated in both in vitro and in vivo studies to reduce Aβ aggregation [72–76].

13.4.3 Inorganic Nanoparticles

Considering the rapidly aging population and the resulting increase in the incidence of dementia, there is an urgent need to address the risk presented by this disease. One way is through the use of NPs that can effectively deliver their therapeutic cargo directly to the brain. Once in the brain, NPs can have major effects, such as amelioration of harmful reactive oxygen species (ROS) activity and reduction of Aβ aggregation behavior as occurs in AD pathophysiology [77]. Some biocompatible NPs have been developed

Table 13.2 Representative NPs for Alzheimer's disease studies

Nanoparticle form	Size (nm)	Structure	Properties	AD targeted	Example
Liposomal	10–100	Spherical vesicles	Biodegradability	Aβ, cholinergic dysfunction	mApoE [48] H102 [49] XO4 [50]
Chitosan	<70	Modified polysaccharides	Biocompatibility Biodegradability	ACh	Tacrine [51] GH [52] Piperine [53]
Synthetic polymeric	100–300	PLGA, PEG	Solubility Permeability	Aβ Tau Estrogen	Estradiol [38] RVG29 [54] D-peptide [55] siRNA [56] shRNA [54]
Gold	1–100	Metal-NPs	Low cytotoxicity	Aβ Tau ACh	Tau-mab [57]
Magnetic	<70	Metal-NPs	Metal-ion chelators	Aβ Tau ROS	TPP [58]
Carbon nanotubes	1–100	Allotropes of carbon	Advanced thermal conductivity and cell penetration	Aβ ACh ROS	Ach [59]
Carbon dots	1–10	Tunable zero-dimension	Photoluminescence Biocompatibility Nontoxicity	Aβ ACh	Transferrin [60]
Curcumin	<100	Natural	Polyphenolic antioxidant, ROS scavenger	Aβ Tau	[61]

and suggested to have therapeutic potential, such as biopolymers, chitosan, gelatin, polymers, and metal-NPs [78]. Many novel agents for minimizing Aβ aggregation and delaying Aβ fibrillation have been developed as monomers [79], gold carriers [80], a magnetic core [81], carbon-based NPs [60, 82, 83], and graphene oxide sheets [82]. For example, a report showed that graphene oxide (GO)/Au-NPs disrupted Aβ aggregation and cytotoxicity in vitro [84] and nano-metallo-supramolecular complexes were found to suppress Aβ-induced biosynthesis of heme and iron uptake in PC12 cells [85]. Quantum dots (QDs), which are colloidal fluorescent semiconductor nanocrystals with a diameter of 3–30 nm, have been used to treat AD by targeting mitochondrial dysfunction [86]. The inhibitor dihydrolipoic acid (DHLA) has been conjugated with QDs which inhibited $A\beta_{1-42}$ fibrillation with rapid kinetics [87].

A novel approach using molybdenum disulfide (MoS2)-NPs was developed and applied to prevent Aβ aggregation and destabilize Aβ fibrils in vivo [88]. In addition, ceric oxide (CeO_2)-NPs have been considered as recyclable ROS scavengers due to their shuttling capacity between Ce^{3+} and Ce^{4+} oxidation states [89, 90]. Therefore, these CeO_2-NPs could be a potential therapeutic candidate for treating mitochondrial oxidative-stress-induced damage in AD. Another study used nasal application of titanium oxide (TiO_2)-NPs as a model of neurotoxicity in mice and found decreased activities of glutathione peroxidase, catalase, and superoxide dismutase [91]. This latter system could be used as a model for the screening of compounds that can delay or ameliorate oxidative damage in the brain. Table 13.3 shows a number of potential NP-based delivery systems to treat various pathophysiological effects observed in Alzheimer's disease [92–104].

Table 13.3 Potential nanoparticle-based delivery systems to treat Alzheimer's disease

Nanoparticle material	Targeting ligand	Bioactive molecule	Particle size (nm)	Zeta potential (mV)	Model	Pharmacological effect	Reference
Nano-LP (DSPC + CH)	TrF-mAb + PEG	Curcumin	110 ± 6		Cell	Retardation of Aβ aggregation	[92]
LP (SPG + CH)	Phosphatidic acid/ cardiolipin	Modulate tau phosphorylation and glycogen synthase kinase 3 activities	102 ± 2	−25.06 ± 1.5	APP/PS1 transgenic mice injection over 3 weeks	Reduced Aβ peptide	[14]
Retro-inverso peptide inhibitor nanoparticles	RI-OR2-TAT + maleimide-PEG	Inhibitors of aggregation of the Alzheimer's Aβ peptide	131 ± 43		APP_{SWE} transgenic mice	Inhibited formation of Aβ oligomers and fibrils in vitro	[93]
Iron oxide	DSPE-PEG-NHS + Congo Red	H_2O_2-responsive therapy of Alzheimer's disease	250–350		APPswe/PS1dE9 transgenic mice	Interfered with Aβ aggregation and neurotoxicity	[94]
Chitosan	Transferrin receptor antibody PEG	Z-DEVD-FMK (caspase-3 inhibitor)	650 ± 2	20 ± 4	Mouse 2-h MCAO and 24-h reperfusion	Decreased infarct volume, neurological deficit, and caspase-3 activity	[95]
Chitosan	Transferrin receptor antibody	Z-DEVD-FMK and bFGF	747 ± 42		Mouse 2-h MCAO and 24-h reperfusion	Decreased infarct volume, increased motor function deficit scores, 3-h therapeutic window	[96]
Cationic bovine serum albumin	PEG	Tanshinone IIA	114 ± 14	−17.8 ± 1.6	Rat 2-h MCAO and 24-h reperfusion	Decreased infarct volume, neurological deficit, neutrophil infiltration, and neuronal apoptosis	[97, 98]
Lipidic (squalene)		Adenosine	120	−25 ± 4	Mouse 2-h MCAO and 22-h reperfusion 24 h of permanent MCAO	Decreased infarct volume, increased neurological deficit scores	[99]
PLA	B6 peptide (transferrin substitute PEG)	NAPVSIPQ (NAP: neuroprotective peptide)	118.3 ± 7.8	−22.65 ± 0.5	Mice injected with aggregated $AB_{1\text{-}40}$	Enhanced drug uptake in brain, ameliorated learning impairments, cholinergic disruption, and loss of hippocampal neurons	[100]
PBCA	Polysorbate 80	NGF	250 ± 30		Rats with an acute scopolamine-induced amnesia	Reversed scopolamine-induced amnesia and improved recognition and memory	[101]

(continued)

Table 13.3 (continued)

Nanoparticle material	Targeting ligand	Bioactive molecule	Particle size (nm)	Zeta potential (mV)	Model	Pharmacological effect	Reference
PLGA	Trimethylated chitosan	Coenzyme-Q10	150	20	APP/PS1 transgenic mice	Enhanced uptake to brain area (cortex, paracele, third ventricle, and choroid plexus epithelium	[102]
BCA	Polysorbate 80	Amyloid affinity drug ^{125}I clioquinol	50 ± 5		APP/PS1 transgenic mice model, mice injected with aggregated $A\beta_{42}$ peptide	High specificity for Aβ plaques both in intro and in vivo, more located at brain region and uptake of NPs in AD mouse models, in addition to promising delivery vehicle in vivo for SPECT or PET imaging	[103]
Carboxyl-conjugated Au-NPs (negative charged)		Aβ fibrillization and alter preformed Aβ fibrils	~30	−38		Disrupted Aβ fibrillation and fragmented the fibrils already formed	[104]

DSPC 1,2-distearoyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphocholine, *CH* cholesterol, *TrF-mAb* anti-transferrin monoclonal antibody, *LP* lyposome, *DSPE-PEG-NHS* 1,2-dioleoyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanolamine-n-[poly(ethylene glycol)]-hydroxy succinamide, *bFGF* basic fibroblast growth factor, *DVD-FMK* N-benzyloxycarbonyl-Asp(OMe)-Glu(OMe)-Val-Asp(OMe)-fluoromethyl ketone, *MCAO* middle cerebral artery occlusion, *BCA* n-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate, *PEG* poly(ethylene glycol), *NGF* nerve growth factor, *PBCA* poly(n-butyl cyanoacrylate); *PET* photon emission tomography, *PLA* poly(lactic acid), *PLGA* poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid), *SPECT* single photo emission computerized tomography

13.4.4 Mitochondrial Targeting

Mitochondria are vital organelles involved in cell survival and maintenance, which play a central role in energy production and important processes such as apoptosis [105]. Therefore, they have been recognized as a potential therapeutic target in multiple disorders, such as AD. Mitochondrial dysfunction has been shown to trigger AD pathology due to formation of Aβ plaques and neurofibrillary tangles [106]. The findings of other studies have suggested that mitochondrial dysfunction contributed to synaptic abnormalities and neuronal degeneration in AD [107, 108]. Additionally, mitochondrial dysfunction is known to be one of the earliest events in AD [108–110]. In addition, post-mortem brain studies have shown that Aβ accumulates in the mitochondria of AD patients [111–113].

Notably there are likely common mechanisms that link mitochondria and autophagy dysfunction in AD such as aging, immune dysfunction, and others [114–117]. Among common antioxidants, the mitochondrial respiratory chain molecule CoQ10 is known as a potential treatment against excessive ROS production and has been suggested as a potential treatment in AD in both in vitro and in vivo studies [118–120]. Although the molecule is relatively safe and well-tolerated, there have been no published clinical trials of CoQ10 in AD [119]. Studies have shown that the benzoquinone idebenone, which targets mitochondria, inhibited Aβ-induced neurotoxicity in both in vitro and in vivo studies [121, 122]. In addition, other antioxidants such as lipoic acid, vitamins C and E, and glutathione (GSH) have also been investigated in clinical studies of mild cognitive impairment and AD [123–125]. Thus far, lipoic acid has been shown to prevent the decline of cognitive processes in AD patients [126, 127].

Another possibility is to use lipophilic cations such as triphenylphosphonium (TPP) to target mitochondria directly [128] (Fig. 13.2). One study conjugated TEMPOL to the TPP cation to produce MitoTEMPOL. This accumulated in energized mitochondria where it was reduced by direct reaction with mitochondrial ubiquinol. The authors described this as a way of using mitochondria-targeted compounds to modulate the mitochondrial CoQ10 pool in vivo [129].

13.5 Targets for Future Drugs

Aβ is the chief component of plaques, one hallmark of Alzheimer's disease. We now have a detailed understanding of how this protein fragment is cleaved from the amyloid precursor protein (APP) and how the toxic $A\beta_{1\text{-}42}$ fragment is generated. Researchers have therefore attempted to develop new medications aimed at almost every point in the APP processing pathway, including blocking activity of the processing enzymes β- and γ-secretase, blockade of plaque formation, and use of antibodies against Aβ plaques to clear these from the brain [130].

Other treatments are aimed at preventing the tau protein from collapsing and twisting into tangles that destroy neuronal signaling [131, 132]. AADvac1 is a vaccine that stimulates the body's immune system to attack the toxic form of the tau protein [133]. Initial results have shown that 98.2% of participants who were given the vaccine generated antibodies to the tau protein and there were no differences in adverse events between the treatment and control groups. Furthermore, several biomarkers known to be altered in AD showed trends [134], which suggested that AADvac1 may slow disease progression. In line with this, AADvac1 treatment led to positive changes in some cognitive endpoints. Other new treatments target inflammation which appears to be a root cause of the disease [135].

13.6 Conclusion, Challenges, and Future Perspectives

Current pharmacologic research in AD focuses principally on the development of disease-modifying drugs that can slow or prevent AD progression [136]. Advances in the appropriate design and fabrication of NPs can effectively overcome conventional neurotherapeutic hurdles such as oral and gastric barriers, as well as that of

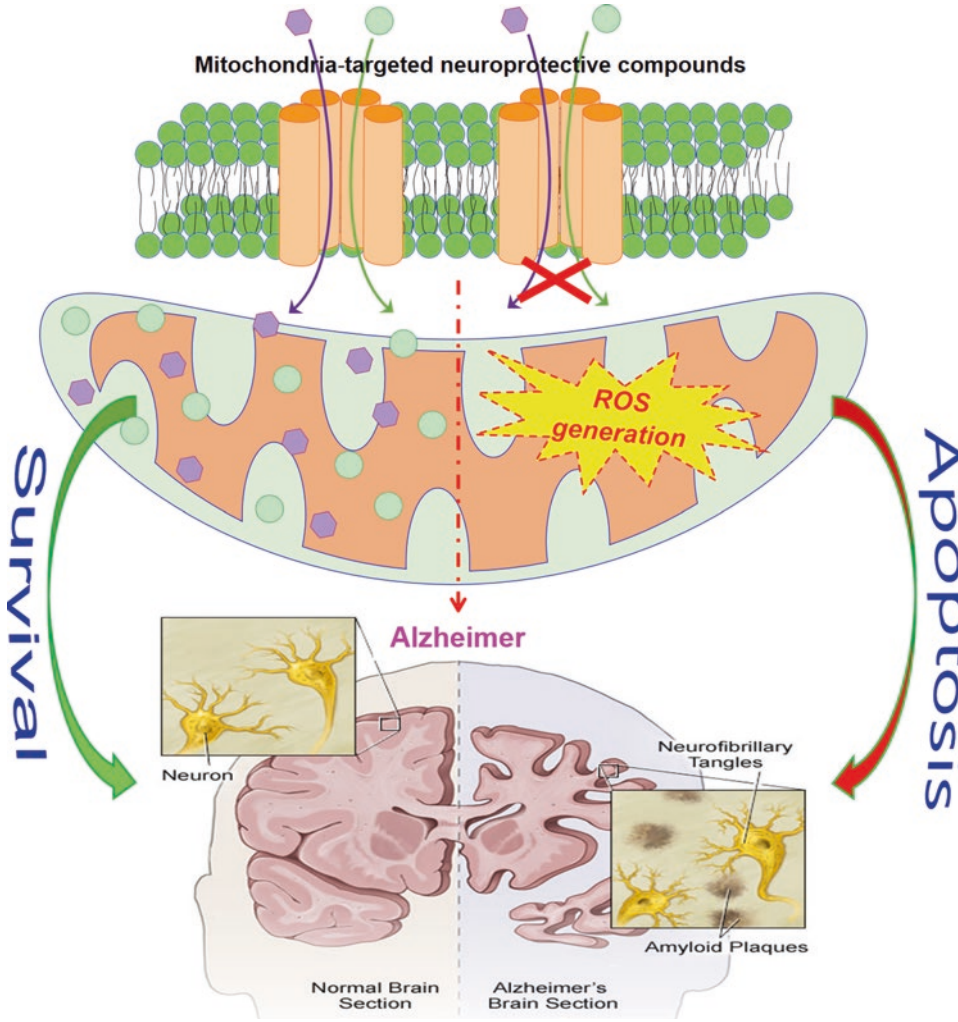


Fig. 13.2 Targeting mitochondrial metabolism

the BBB in the delivery of drug candidates to their intended site of action in biological systems. Alternatively, several studies have revealed that NPs can effectively cross the BBB and exert inhibitory effects. Other polymeric NPs have also been found to have enhanced targeting and efficacy at specific pH values and temperatures [137]. This requires suitability of size, shape, and charge, as well as the correct surface properties of the appropriate biocompatible nanocarrier in targetting the appropriate site or mechanism of action.

Another potenital avenue involves the use of mitochondria-targeted therapeutic interventions that could be translated from in vitro and in vivo studies to human clinical trials. Potential treatments in the future include the use of devices to infuse neurotrophic factors, such as growth factors, to ameliorate AD symptoms and disease progression. It is now clear that Aβ deposition, tau neurofibrillary tangles, and neuroinflammation are involved in the pathophysiology of AD and the generation of toxic forms of Aβ and tau oligomers appear to be precipitating steps in the disease process [138]. Therefore targeting targeting these forms of the molecules with NP-functionalized monoclonal antibodies might lead to greater success in clinical studies. Finally,

more studies are required on the pharmacokinetic and pharmaco-dynamic profiles of the released drugs prior to translation into clinical studies. Hence, an evaluation of the safety and efficacy of suitable NPs through human clinical trials should be performed to identify the most promising cost-effective AD therapeutics for future use. This work should provide the required systematic knowledge to develop optimal NPs targeting specific AD pathologies and pave the way to improved therapeutic options for individuals suffering from this debilitating neurodegenerative disoder.

Funding This research was supported by a National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) grant, awarded by the Korean government (Ministry of Education, Science and Technology, no. NRF-2019R1G1A109740012).

Conflict of Interest The authors declare that there is no conflict of interest.

References

1. Reitz C, Brayne C, Mayeux R (2011) Epidemiology of Alzheimer disease. Nat Rev Neurol 7:137–152
2. Cummings JL (2004) Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 351:56–67
3. Jakob-Roetne R, Jacobsen H (2009) Alzheimer's disease: from pathology to therapeutic approaches. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 48:3030–3059
4. Nguyen TT, Ta QTH, Nguyen TTD, Le TT, Vo VG (2020) Role of insulin resistance in the Alzheimer's disease progression. Neurochem Res. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11064-020-03031-0. [Epub ahead of print]
5. Nguyen TT, Ta QTH, Nguyen TKO, Nguyen TTD, Giau VV (2020) Type 3 diabetes and its role implications in Alzheimer's disease. Int J Mol Sci 21(9):E3165. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21093165
6. Querfurth HW, LaFerla FM (2010) Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 362:329–344
7. Huang Y, Mucke L (2012) Alzheimer mechanisms and therapeutic strategies. Cell 148:1204–1222
8. Tu S, Okamoto S, Lipton SA, Xu H (2014) Oligomeric Abeta-induced synaptic dysfunction in Alzheimer's disease. Mol Neurodegener 9:48. https://doi.org/10.1186/1750-1326-9-48
9. Kamenetz F, Tomita T, Hsieh H, Seabrook G, Borchelt D, Iwatsubo T et al (2003) APP processing and synaptic function. Neuron 37:925–937
10. Nguyen TT, Giau VV, Vo TK (2017) Current advances in transdermal delivery of drugs for Alzheimer's disease. Indian J Pharmacol 49:145–154
11. Becker RE, Greig NH, Giacobini E (2008) Why do so many drugs for Alzheimer's disease fail in development? Time for new methods and new practices? J Alzheimers Dis 15:303–325
12. Parveen S, Sahoo SK (2006) Nanomedicine: clinical applications of polyethylene glycol conjugated proteins and drugs. Clin Pharmacokinet 45:965–988
13. Gobbi M, Re F, Canovi M, Beeg M, Gregori M, Sesana S et al (2010) Lipid-based nanoparticles with high binding affinity for amyloid-beta1-42 peptide. Biomaterials 31:6519–6529
14. Ordonez-Gutierrez L, Re F, Bereczki E, Ioja E, Gregori M, Andersen AJ et al (2015) Repeated intraperitoneal injections of liposomes containing phosphatidic acid and cardiolipin reduce amyloid-beta levels in APP/PS1 transgenic mice. Nanomedicine 11:421–430
15. Huo X, Zhang Y, Jin X, Li Y (2010) A novel synthesis of selenium nanoparticles encapsulated PLGA nanospheres with curcumin molecules for the inhibition of Amyloid β aggregation in Alzheimer's disease. J Photochem Photobiol B 190:98–102
16. Srivastava AK, Roy Choudhury S, Karmakar S (2020) Near-infrared responsive dopamine/melatonin-derived nanocomposites abrogating in situ Amyloid β nucleation, propagation, and ameliorate neuronal functions. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 12(5):5658–5670
17. Karthivashan G, Ganesan P, Park S-Y, Kim J-S, Choi D-K (2018) Therapeutic strategies and nano-drug delivery applications in management of ageing Alzheimer's disease. Drug Deliv 25:307–320
18. Poduslo JF, Hultman KL, Curran GL, Preboske GM, Chamberlain R, Marjańska M et al (2011) Targeting vascular amyloid in arterioles of Alzheimer disease transgenic mice with amyloid beta protein antibody-coated nanoparticles. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 70:653–661
19. Pardridge WM (2015) Blood-brain barrier drug delivery of IgG fusion proteins with a transferrin receptor monoclonal antibody. Expert Opin Drug Deliv 12:207–222
20. Liu CC, Liu CC, Kanekiyo T, Xu H, Bu G (2013) Apolipoprotein E and Alzheimer disease: risk, mechanisms and therapy. Nat Rev Neurol 9:106–118
21. Javed I, He J, Kakinen A, Faridi A, Yang W, Davis TP et al (2019) Probing the aggregation and immune response of human islet amyloid polypeptides with ligand-stabilized gold nanoparticles. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 11:10462–10471
22. Gladytz A, Abel B, Risselada HJ (2016) Gold-induced fibril growth: the mechanism of surface-facilitated amyloid aggregation. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 55:11242–11246
23. Wang S-T, Lin Y, Todorova N, Xu Y, Mazo M, Rana S et al (2017) Facet-dependent interactions of islet amyloid polypeptide with gold nanoparticles: implications for fibril formation and peptide-induced lipid membrane disruption. Chem Mater 29:1550–1560

24. Cabaleiro-Lago C, Quinlan-Pluck F, Lynch I, Dawson KA, Linse S (2010) Dual effect of amino modified polystyrene nanoparticles on Amyloid β protein fibrillation. ACS Chem Neurosci 1:279–287
25. Palmal S, Maity AR, Singh BK, Basu S, Jana NR, Jana NR (2017) Inhibition of amyloid fibril growth and dissolution of amyloid fibrils by curcumin-gold nanoparticles. Chemistry 20:6184–6191
26. Yoo SI, Yang M, Brender JR, Subramanian V, Sun K, Joo NE et al (2011) Inhibition of amyloid peptide fibrillation by inorganic nanoparticles: functional similarities with proteins. Angew Chem Int Ed Engl 50:5110–5115
27. Luo J, Warmlander SK, Yu CH, Muhammad K, Graslund A, Pieter Abrahams J (2014) The Abeta peptide forms non-amyloid fibrils in the presence of carbon nanotubes. Nanoscale 6:6720–6726
28. Wang M, Sun Y, Cao X, Peng G, Javed I, Kakinen A et al (2018) Graphene quantum dots against human IAPP aggregation and toxicity in vivo. Nanoscale 10:19995–20006
29. Pederzoli F, Ruozi B, Duskey J, Hagmeyer S, Sauer AK, Grabrucker S et al (2019) Nanomedicine against Aβ aggregation by β-sheet breaker peptide delivery: in vitro evidence. Pharmaceutics 11(11):572. https://doi.org/10.3390/pharmaceutics11110572
30. Song Q, Huang M, Yao L, Wang X, Gu X, Chen J et al (2014) Lipoprotein-based nanoparticles rescue the memory loss of mice with Alzheimer's disease by accelerating the clearance of amyloid-beta. ACS Nano 8:2345–2359
31. Reardon S (2018) Frustrated Alzheimer's researchers seek better lab mice. Nature 563:611–612
32. Xu P, Gullotti E, Tong L, Highley CB, Errabelli DR, Hasan T et al (2009) Intracellular drug delivery by poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) nanoparticles, revisited. Mol Pharm 6:190–201
33. Nazem A, Mansoori GA (2008) Nanotechnology solutions for Alzheimer's disease: advances in research tools, diagnostic methods and therapeutic agents. J Alzheimers Dis 13:199–223
34. Modi G, Pillay V, Choonara YE (2010) Advances in the treatment of neurodegenerative disorders employing nanotechnology. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1184:154–172
35. Pike CJ, Carroll JC, Rosario ER, Barron AM (2009) Protective actions of sex steroid hormones in Alzheimer's disease. Front Neuroendocrinol 30:239–258
36. Amtul Z, Wang L, Westaway D, Rozmahel RF (2010) Neuroprotective mechanism conferred by 17β-estradiol on the biochemical basis of Alzheimer's disease. Neuroscience 169:781–786
37. Mittal G, Sahana DK, Bhardwaj V, Ravi Kumar MN (2007) Estradiol loaded PLGA nanoparticles for oral administration: effect of polymer molecular weight and copolymer composition on release behavior in vitro and in vivo. J Control Rel 119:77–85
38. Mittal G, Carswell H, Brett R, Currie S, Kumar MN (2011) Development and evaluation of polymer nanoparticles for oral delivery of estradiol to rat brain in a model of Alzheimer's pathology. J Control Rel 150:220–228
39. Lam FC, Liu R, Lu P, Shapiro AB, Renoir JM, Sharom FJ et al (2001) beta-Amyloid efflux mediated by p-glycoprotein. J Neurochem 76:1121–1128
40. He W, Horn SW, Hussain MD (2007) Improved bioavailability of orally administered mifepristone from PLGA nanoparticles. Int J Pharm 334:173–178
41. Mudshinge SR, Deore AB, Patil S, Bhalgat CM (2011) Nanoparticles: emerging carriers for drug delivery. Saudi Pharm J 19(3):129–141
42. Faraji AH, Wipf P (2009) Nanoparticles in cellular drug delivery. Bioorg Med Chem 17:2950–2962
43. Singh R, Lillard JW Jr (2009) Nanoparticle-based targeted drug delivery. Exp Mol Pathol 86:215–223
44. Zaman M, Ahmad E, Qadeer A, Rabbani G, Khan RH (2014) Nanoparticles in relation to peptide and protein aggregation. Int J Nanomed 9:899–912
45. Misra A, Ganesh S, Shahiwala A, Shah SP (2003) Drug delivery to the central nervous system: a review. J Pharm Pharm Sci 6:252–273
46. Pavan B, Dalpiaz A, Ciliberti N, Biondi C, Manfredini S, Vertuani S (2008) Progress in drug delivery to the central nervous system by the prodrug approach. Molecules 13:1035–1065
47. Pajouhesh H, Lenz GR (2005) Medicinal chemical properties of successful central nervous system drugs. NeuroRx 2:541–553
48. Balducci C, Mancini S, Minniti S, La Vitola P, Zotti M, Sancini G et al (2014) Multifunctional liposomes reduce brain beta-amyloid burden and ameliorate memory impairment in Alzheimer's disease mouse models. J Neurosci 34:14022–14031
49. Zheng X, Shao X, Zhang C, Tan Y, Liu Q, Wan X et al (2015) Intranasal H102 peptide-loaded liposomes for brain delivery to treat Alzheimer's disease. Pharm Res 32:3837–3849
50. Tanifum EA, Dasgupta I, Srivastava M, Bhavane RC, Sun L, Berridge J et al (2012) Intravenous delivery of targeted liposomes to Amyloid-β pathology in APP/PSEN1 transgenic mice. PLoS One 7(10):e48515. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0048515
51. Wilson B, Samanta MK, Santhi K, Sampath Kumar KP, Ramasamy M, Suresh B (2009) Significant delivery of tacrine into the brain using magnetic chitosan microparticles for treating Alzheimer's disease. J Neurosci Methods 177:427–443
52. Bhattacharya S, Haertel C, Maelicke A, Montag D (2014) Galantamine slows down plaque formation and behavioral decline in the 5XFAD mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One 9(2):e89454. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0089454
53. Elnaggar YS, Etman SM, Abdelmonsif DA, Abdallah OY (2015) Intranasal piperine-loaded chitosan nanoparticles as brain-targeted therapy in Alzheimer's disease: optimization, biological efficacy, and potential toxicity. J Pharm Sci 104:3544–3556

54. Liu Y, An S, Li J, Kuang Y, He X, Guo Y et al (2016) Brain-targeted co-delivery of therapeutic gene and peptide by multifunctional nanoparticles in Alzheimer's disease mice. Biomaterials 80:33–45
55. Brunden KR, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VM (2009) Advances in tau-focused drug discovery for Alzheimer's disease and related tauopathies. Nat Rev Drug Discov 8:783–793
56. Gao Y, Chen L, Zhang Z, Chen Y, Li Y (2011) Reversal of multidrug resistance by reduction-sensitive linear cationic click polymer/iMDR1-pDNA complex nanoparticles. Biomaterials 32:1738–1747
57. Wang C, Wang J, Liu D, Wang Z (2010) Gold nanoparticle-based colorimetric sensor for studying the interactions of beta-amyloid peptide with metallic ions. Talanta 80:1626–1631
58. Kwon HJ, Cha MY, Kim D, Kim DK, Soh M, Shin K et al (2016) Mitochondria-targeting ceria nanoparticles as antioxidants for Alzheimer's disease. ACS Nano 10:2860–2870
59. Han X, Jing Z, Wu W, Zou B, Peng Z, Ren P et al (2017) Biocompatible and blood-brain barrier permeable carbon dots for inhibition of Abeta fibrillation and toxicity, and BACE1 activity. Nanoscale 9:12862–12866
60. Li H, Luo Y, Derreumaux P, Wei G (2011) Carbon nanotube inhibits the formation of β-sheet-rich oligomers of the Alzheimer's Amyloid-β(16-22) peptide. Biophys J 101:2267–2276
61. Rao EV, Sudheer P (2011) Revisiting curcumin chemistry. Part I: A new strategy for the synthesis of curcuminoids. Indian J Pharm Sci 73:262–270
62. Lu JM, Wang X, Marin-Muller C, Wang H, Lin PH, Yao Q et al (2009) Current advances in research and clinical applications of PLGA-based nanotechnology. Expert Rev Mol Diagn 9:325–334
63. Zhao L, Wu C, Lin K, Chang J (2012) The effect of poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA) coating on the mechanical, biodegradable, bioactive properties and drug release of porous calcium silicate scaffolds. Biomed Mater Eng 22:289–300
64. Marrache S, Dhar S (2012) Engineering of blended nanoparticle platform for delivery of mitochondria-acting therapeutics. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:16288–16293
65. Tiwari SK, Agarwal S, Seth B, Yadav A, Nair S, Bhatnagar P et al (2014) Curcumin-loaded nanoparticles potently induce adult neurogenesis and reverse cognitive deficits in Alzheimer's disease model via canonical Wnt/beta-catenin pathway. ACS Nano 8:76–103
66. Aalinkeel R, Kutscher HL, Singh A, Cwiklinski K, Khechen N, Schwartz SA et al (2018) Neuroprotective effects of a biodegradable poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid)-ginsenoside Rg3 nanoformulation: a potential nanotherapy for Alzheimer's disease? J Drug Target 26:182–193
67. Luo Q, Lin YX, Yang PP, Wang Y, Qi GB, Qiao ZY et al (2018) A self-destructive nanosweeper that captures and clears amyloid β-peptides. Nat Commun 9(1):1802. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-018-04255-z
68. de Boer AG, van der Sandt IC, Gaillard PJ (2003) The role of drug transporters at the blood-brain barrier. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 43:629–656
69. Fung KY, Wang C, Nyegaard S, Heit B, Fairn GD, Lee WL (2017) SR-BI mediated transcytosis of HDL in brain microvascular endothelial cells is independent of Caveolin, Clathrin, and PDZK1. Front Physiol 8:841. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphys.2017.00841
70. Choi HJ, Seo EH, Yi D, Sohn BK, Choe YM, Byun MS et al (2016) Amyloid-independent amnestic mild cognitive impairment and serum Apolipoprotein A1 levels. Am J Geriatr Psychiatry 24:144–153l
71. Robert J, Stukas S, Button E, Cheng WH, Lee M, Fan J et al (2016) Reconstituted high-density lipoproteins acutely reduce soluble brain Abeta levels in symptomatic APP/PS1 mice. Biochim Biophys Acta 1862:1027–1036
72. Grillone A, Riva ER, Mondini A, Forte C, Calucci L, Innocenti C et al (2015) Active targeting of sorafenib: preparation, characterization, and in vitro testing of drug-loaded magnetic solid lipid nanoparticles. Adv Healthc Mater 4:1681–1690
73. Xiang SD, Wilson K, Day S, Fuchsberger M, Plebanski M (2013) Methods of effective conjugation of antigens to nanoparticles as non-inflammatory vaccine carriers. Methods 60:232–241
74. Vedagiri A, Thangarajan S (2016) Mitigating effect of chrysin loaded solid lipid nanoparticles against Amyloid β25–35 induced oxidative stress in rat hippocampal region: an efficient formulation approach for Alzheimer's disease. Neuropeptides 58:111–125
75. Zhang E, Zhang C, Su Y, Cheng T, Shi C (2011) Newly developed strategies for multifunctional mitochondria-targeted agents in cancer therapy. Drug Discov Today 16:140–146
76. Picone P, Bondi ML, Montana G, Bruno A, Pitarresi G, Giammona G et al (2009) Ferulic acid inhibits oxidative stress and cell death induced by Ab oligomers: improved delivery by solid lipid nanoparticles. Free Radic Res 43:1133–1145
77. Wolfe MS (2002) Therapeutic strategies for Alzheimer's disease. Nat Rev Drug Discov 1:859–866
78. Reznickova A, Novotna Z, Kvitek O, Kolska Z, Svorcik V (2015) Gold, silver and carbon nanoparticles grafted on activated polymers for biomedical applications. J Nanosci Nanotechnol 15:10053–10073
79. Laurent S, Ejtehadi MR, Rezaei M, Kehoe PG, Mahmoudi M (2012) Interdisciplinary challenges and promising theranostic effects of nanoscience in Alzheimer's disease. RSC Adv 2:5008–5033
80. Choi I, Lee LP (2013) Rapid detection of Aβ aggregation and inhibition by dual functions of gold nanoplasmic particles: catalytic activator and optical reporter. ACS Nano 7:6268–6277

81. Mahmoudi M, Quinlan-Pluck F, Monopoli MP, Sheibani S, Vali H, Dawson KA et al (2013) Influence of the physiochemical properties of superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticles on amyloid beta protein fibrillation in solution. ACS Chem Neurosci 4:475–485
82. Mahmoudi M, Akhavan O, Ghavami M, Rezaee F, Ghiasi SM (2012) Graphene oxide strongly inhibits amyloid beta fibrillation. Nanoscale 4:7322–7325
83. He X-P, Deng Q, Cai L, Wang CZ, Zang Y, Li J et al (2014) Fluorogenic resveratrol-confined graphene oxide for economic and rapid detection of Alzheimer's disease. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 6:5379–5382
84. Bin Y, Li X, He Y, Chen S, Xiang J (2013) Amyloid-beta peptide (1-42) aggregation induced by copper ions under acidic conditions. Acta Biochim Biophys Sin Shanghai 45:570–577
85. Li M, Zhao C, Duan T, Ren J, Qu X (2014) New insights into Alzheimer's disease amyloid inhibition: nanosized metallo-supramolecular complexes suppress aβ-induced biosynthesis of heme and iron uptake in PC12 cells. Adv Healthc Mater 3:832–836
86. Fanizza E, Iacobazzi RM, Laquintana V, Valente G, Caliandro G, Striccoli M et al (2016) Highly selective luminescent nanostructures for mitochondrial imaging and targeting. Nanoscale 8:3350–3361
87. Thakur G, Micic M, Yang Y, Li W, Movia D, Giordani S et al (2011) conjugated quantum dots inhibit the Amyloid β (1–42) fibrillation process. Int J Alzheimers Dis 2011:502386. https://doi.org/10.4061/2011/502386
88. Han Q, Cai S, Yang L, Wang X, Qi C, Yang R et al (2017) Molybdenum disulfide nanoparticles as multifunctional inhibitors against Alzheimer's disease. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 9:21116–21123
89. Karakoti A, Singh S, Dowding JM, Seal S, Self WT (2010) Redox-active radical scavenging nanomaterials. Chem Soc Rev 39:4422–4432
90. Celardo I, Pedersen JZ, Traversa E, Ghibelli L (2011) Pharmacological potential of cerium oxide nanoparticles. Nanoscale 3:1411–1420
91. Jeon YM, Park SK, Lee MY (2011) Toxicoproteomic identification of TiO2 nanoparticle-induced protein expression changes in mouse brain. Anim Cells Syst 15:107–114
92. Mourtas S, Lazar AN, Markoutsa E, Duyckaerts C, Antimisiaris SG (2014) Multifunctional nanoliposomes with curcumin-lipid derivative and brain targeting functionality with potential applications for Alzheimer disease. Eur J Med Chem 80:175–183
93. Gregori M, Taylor M, Salvati E, Re F, Mancini S, Balducci C et al (2017) Retro-inverso peptide inhibitor nanoparticles as potent inhibitors of aggregation of the Alzheimer's Abeta peptide. Nanomedicine 13:723–732
94. Hu B, Dai F, Fan Z, Ma G, Tang Q, Zhang X (2015) Nanotheranostics: Congo Red/Rutin-MNPs with enhanced magnetic resonance imaging and H_2O_2-responsive therapy of Alzheimer's disease in APPswe/PS1dE9 transgenic mice. Adv Mater 27:5499–5505
95. Karatas H, Aktas Y, Gursoy-Ozdemir Y, Bodur E, Yemisci M, Caban S et al (2009) A nanomedicine transports a peptide caspase-3 inhibitor across the blood-brain barrier and provides neuroprotection. J Neurosci 29:13761–13769
96. Yemisci M, Caban S, Gursoy-Ozdemir Y, Lule S, Novoa-Carballal R, Riguera R et al (2015) Systemically administered brain-targeted nanoparticles transport peptides across the blood-brain barrier and provide neuroprotection. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 35:469–475
97. Liu X, Ye M, An C, Pan L, Ji L (2013) The effect of cationic albumin-conjugated PEGylated tanshinone IIA nanoparticles on neuronal signal pathways and neuroprotection in cerebral ischemia. Biomaterials 34:6893–6905
98. Liu X, An C, Jin P, Liu X, Wang L (2013) Protective effects of cationic bovine serum albumin-conjugated PEGylated tanshinone IIA nanoparticles on cerebral ischemia. Biomaterials 34:817–830
99. Gaudin A, Yemisci M, Eroglu H, Lepetre-Mouelhi S, Turkoglu OF, Dönmez-Demir B et al (2014) Squalenoyl adenosine nanoparticles provide neuroprotection after stroke and spinal cord injury. Nat Nanotechnol 9:1054–1062
100. Liu Z, Gao X, Kang T, Jiang M, Miao D, Gu G et al (2013) B6 peptide-modified PEG-PLA nanoparticles for enhanced brain delivery of neuroprotective peptide. Bioconjug Chem 24:997–1007
101. Kurakhmaeva KB, Djindjikhashvili IA, Petrov VE, Balabanyan VU, Voronina TA, Trofimov SS et al (2009) Brain targeting of nerve growth factor using poly(butyl cyanoacrylate) nanoparticles. J Drug Target 17:564–574
102. Wang ZH, Wang ZY, Sun CS, Wang CY, Jiang TY, Wang SL (2010) Trimethylated chitosan-conjugated PLGA nanoparticles for the delivery of drugs to the brain. Biomaterials 31:908–915
103. Kulkarni PV, Roney CA, Antich PP, Bonte FJ, Raghu AV, Aminabhavi TM (2010) Quinoline-n-butylcyanoacrylate-based nanoparticles for brain targeting for the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. Wiley Interdiscip Rev Nanomed Nanobiotechnol 2:35–47
104. Liao YH, Chang YJ, Yoshiike Y, Chang YC, Chen YR (2012) Negatively charged gold nanoparticles inhibit Alzheimer's amyloid-beta fibrillization, induce fibril dissociation, and mitigate neurotoxicity. Small 8:3631–3639
105. Tramutola A, Lanzillotta C, Perluigi M, Butterfield DA (2017) Oxidative stress, protein modification and Alzheimer disease. Brain Res Bull 133:88–96
106. Cardoso SM, Santana I, Swerdlow RH, Oliveira CR (2004) Mitochondria dysfunction of Alzheimer's disease cybrids enhances Abeta toxicity. J Neurochem 89:1417–1426
107. Eckert A, Hauptmann S, Scherping I, Rhein V, Müller-Spahn F, Götz J et al (2008) Soluble beta-

amyloid leads to mitochondrial defects in amyloid precursor protein and tau transgenic mice. Neurodegener Dis 5:157–159
108. Rhein V, Baysang G, Rao S, Meier F, Bonert A, Müller-Spahn F et al (2009) Amyloid-beta leads to impaired cellular respiration, energy production and mitochondrial electron chain complex activities in human neuroblastoma cells. Cell Mol Neurobiol 29:1063–1071
109. Hauptmann S, Scherping I, Drose S, Brandt U, Schulz KL, Jendrach M et al (2009) Mitochondrial dysfunction: an early event in Alzheimer pathology accumulates with age in AD transgenic mice. Neurobiol Aging 30:1574–1586
110. Du H, Guo L, Yan S, Sosunov AA, McKhann GM, ShiDu Yan S (2010) Early deficits in synaptic mitochondria in an Alzheimer's disease mouse model. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:18670–18675
111. Lustbader JW, Cirilli M, Lin C, Xu HW, Takuma K, Wang N et al (2004) ABAD directly links Aß to mitochondrial toxicity in Alzheimer's disease. Science 304:448–452
112. Caspersen C, Wang N, Yao J, Sosunov A, Chen X, Lustbader JW et al (2005) Mitochondrial Abeta: a potential focal point for neuronal metabolic dysfunction in Alzheimer's disease. FASEB J 19:2040–2041
113. Hansson Petersen CA, Alikhani N, Behbahani H, Wiehager B, Pavlov PF, Alafuzoff I et al (2008) The amyloid beta-peptide is imported into mitochondria via the TOM import machinery and localized to mitochondrial cristae. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:13145–13150
114. Kovacic P, Somanathan R (2010) Biomechanisms of nanoparticles (toxicants, antioxidants and therapeutics): electron transfer and reactive oxygen species. J Nanosci Nanotechnol 10:7919–7930
115. Manczak M, Mao P, Calkins MJ, Cornea A, Reddy AP, Murphy MP et al (2010) Mitochondria-targeted antioxidants protect against amyloid-beta toxicity in Alzheimer's disease neurons. J Alzheimers Dis 20(Suppl 2):S609–S631
116. Gruber J, Fong S, Chen CB, Yoong S, Pastorin G, Schaffer S et al (2013) Mitochondria-targeted antioxidants and metabolic modulators as pharmacological interventions to slow ageing. Biotechnol Adv 31:563–592
117. Van Giau V, An SSA, Hulme JP (2018) Mitochondrial therapeutic interventions in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurol Sci 395:62–70
118. Choi H, Park HH, Koh SH, Choi NY, Yu HJ, Park J et al (2012) Coenzyme Q10 protects against amyloid beta-induced neuronal cell death by inhibiting oxidative stress and activating the P13K pathway. Neurotoxicology 33:85–90
119. Young AJ, Johnson S, Steffens DC, Doraiswamy PM (2007) Coenzyme Q10: a review of its promise as a neuroprotectant. CNS Spectr 12:62–68
120. Horvath R, Schneiderat P, Schoser BG, Gempel K, Neuen-Jacob E, Plöger H et al (2006) Coenzyme Q10 deficiency and isolated myopathy. Neurology 66:253–255
121. Weyer G, Babej-Dolle RM, Hadler D, Hofmann S, Herrmann WM (1997) A controlled study of 2 doses of idebenone in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Neuropsychobiology 36:73–82
122. Yamada Y, Nakamura K, Abe J, Hyodo M, Haga S, Ozaki M et al (2015) Mitochondrial delivery of Coenzyme Q10 via systemic administration using a MITO-Porter prevents ischemia/reperfusion injury in the mouse liver. J Control Release 213:86–95
123. Yaffe K, Clemons TE, McBee WL, Lindblad AS (2004) Impact of antioxidants, zinc, and copper on cognition in the elderly: a randomized, controlled trial. Neurology 63(9):1705–1707
124. Kang JH, Cook N, Manson J, Je B, Grodstein F (2006) A randomized trial of vitamin E supplementation and cognitive function in women. Arch Intern Med 166:2462–2468
125. Kryscio RJ, Abner EL, Caban-Holt A, Lovell M, Goodman P, Darke AK et al (2017) Association of antioxidant supplement use and dementia in the prevention of Alzheimer's disease by vitamin E and selenium trial (PREADViSE). JAMA Neurol 74:567–573
126. Hager K, Kenklies M, McAfoose J, Engel J, Munch G (2007) Alpha-lipoic acid as a new treatment option for Alzheimer's disease—a 48 months follow-up analysis. J Neural Transm Suppl:189–193
127. Shinto L, Quinn J, Montine T, Dodge HH, Woodward W, Baldauf-Wagner S et al (2014) A randomized placebo-controlled pilot trial of omega-3 fatty acids and alpha lipoic acid in Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 38:111–120
128. Murphy MP (2008) Targeting lipophilic cations to mitochondria. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA): Bioenergetics 1777:1028–1031
129. Trnka J, Blaikie FH, Smith RAJ, Murphy MP (2008) A mitochondria-targeted nitroxide is reduced to its hydroxylamine by ubiquinol in mitochondria. Free Radic Biol Med 44:1406–1419
130. Huang LK, Chao SP, Hu CJ (2020) Clinical trials of new drugs for Alzheimer disease. J Biomed Sci 27(1):18. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12929-019-0609-7
131. Mietelska-Porowska A, Wasik U, Goras M, Filipek A, Niewiadomska G (2014) Tau protein modifications and interactions: their role in function and dysfunction. Int J Mol Sci 15:4671–4713
132. Congdon EE, Sigurdsson EM (2018) Tau-targeting therapies for Alzheimer disease. Nat Rev Neurol 14:399–415
133. Novak P, Schmidt R, Kontsekova E, Zilka N, Kovacech B, Skrabana R et al (2017) Safety and immunogenicity of the tau vaccine AADvac1 in patients with Alzheimer's disease: a randomised,

double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 1 trial. Lancet Neurol 16:123–134
134. Nguyen TT, Ta QTH, Nguyen TKO, Nguyen TTD, Vo VG (2020) Role of body-fluid biomarkers in Alzheimer's disease diagnosis. Diagnostics (Basel) 10(5):E326. https://doi.org/10.3390/diagnostics10050326
135. Bagyinszky E, Giau VV, Shim K, Suk K, An SSA, Kim S (2017) Role of inflammatory molecules in the Alzheimer's disease progression and diagnosis. J Neurol Sci 376:242–254
136. Cummings J, Lee G, Ritter A, Sabbagh M, Zhong K (2019) Alzheimer's disease drug development pipeline: 2019. Alzheimers Dement (N Y) 5:272–293
137. Barua S, Mitragotri S (2014) Challenges associated with penetration of nanoparticles across cell and tissue barriers: a review of current status and future prospects. Nano Today 9:223–243
138. Guest FL, Rahmoune H, Guest PC (2020) Early diagnosis and targeted treatment strategy for improved therapeutic outcomes in Alzheimer's disease. Adv Exp Med Biol 1260:175–191

14

Psychometric Evaluation of Stress in 17,414 Critical Care Unit Nurses: Effects of Age, Gender, and Working Conditions

Mohammad Asghari Jafarabadi, Amir Vahedian-Azimi, Farshid Rahimibashar, Paul C. Guest, Leila Karimi, and Amirhossein Sahebkar

Abstract

Recent events regarding the COVID-19 pandemic have demonstrated the importance of healthcare workers around the world and the stressful working conditions that are often associated with their profession. The severity of stress can be influenced by a number of factors such as age, seniority gender, family status, and position in the wards. Thus, it is important to monitor signs of stress and other psychiatric symptoms in order to understand the mediating factors and guide appropriate interventions. Here, we describe a cross-sectional study of 17,414 nurses from 31 Iranian cities carried out from 2011 to 2015, using a 22-item tool of work stressors. The tool examined interactive, managerial, and situational domains and the main objective was to identify the main background variables associated with the stress of nurses in critical care settings.

Keywords

Psychometric · Stress measure · Nurse · Age · Gender · Iran

M. A. Jafarabadi
Road Traffic Injury Research Center, Tabriz University of Medical Sciences, Tabriz, Iran

Department of Biostatistics and Epidemiology, Faculty of Medicine, Zanjan University of Medical Sciences, Zanjan, Iran

A. Vahedian-Azimi (✉)
Trauma Research Center, Nursing Faculty, Baqiyatallah University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

F. Rahimibashar
Department of Anesthesiology and Critical Care, School of Medicine, Hamadan University of Medical Sciences, Hamadan, Iran

P. C. Guest
Laboratory of Neuroproteomics, Department of Biochemistry and Tissue Biology, Institute of Biology, University of Campinas (UNICAMP), Campinas, Brazil

L. Karimi
Behavioral Sciences Research Center, Nursing Faculty, Baqiyatallah University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran

A. Sahebkar (✉)
Biotechnology Research Center, Pharmaceutical Technology Institute, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Neurogenic Inflammation Research Center, Mashhad University of Medical Sciences, Mashhad, Iran

Polish Mother's Memorial Hospital Research Institute (PMMHRI), Lodz, Poland

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_14

14.1 Introduction

Nursing is a job with a high level of stress, especially in critical care units (CCUs), including intensive care units [1, 2]. Occupational stress in the healthcare area is associated with specific situations, such as problems with co-workers, conflicts, double shifts, pressure from superiors according to the individual's perception, changes in occupation, and coping with emergency situations. Among the healthcare professionals, nurses often suffer from the consequences of occupational stress, showing problems such as dissatisfaction with work, burnout syndrome, and absenteeism [2–4].

This situation has come more into the public eye with the COVID-19 outbreak, which has now spread to more than 200 countries and territories worldwide [5]. Healthcare workers who are directly involved in the diagnosis, treatment, and care of patients with this deadly virus are at high risk of both physical and mental harm. The widespread media coverage and increasing number of cases and deaths, along with the overwhelming workload, inadequate supply of personal protective equipment, and current lack of effective treatments, can contribute to the mental health effects on these key workers. Previous studies on the severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) outbreak in 2002–2003 reported detrimental psychological effects in healthcare workers on the front lines [6–10]. Similar effects on healthcare workers were reported during and in the aftermath of the Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS) outbreak which began in 2012 [11–14].

One factor that can affect stress and anxiety levels is age. Epidemiologic surveys of the general population have found that anxiety disorders occur more frequently in younger adults compared with older individuals [15, 16]. Conversely, depression occurs more often in older adults compared to the younger population [17, 18]. Working in CCUs has also been positively associated with greater stress levels. The crucial responsibilities of nurses in critical and intensive care include the operation of sophisticated technologies and fast decision-making, which can be affected by excessive workload, different management styles and skills, professional disagreements, and the emotions involved in caring [19–22]. Such characteristics and conditions can lead to both emotional and mental stress for nurses working in CCUs, and this can lead to an inability to cope and cessation of work [1]. Therefore, it is important to develop and apply tools to aid in assessing the stress levels of CCU nurses.

To understand the stressors and the means of their resolution, several studies have been conducted. Although different tools have been developed for this purpose, a major point that has been omitted in most of these is social and environmental differences in different hospitals and different social and cultural environments [19–21]. An instrument to adequately measure stress and which incorporates these factors is of prime interest in public health research.

In order to investigate the stressors of nurses in special sectors in Iran, we carried out a comprehensive study across Iran to assess the impact of culture, facilities, access to services, and types of patients in relation to nurses' stress levels. We used a partial least square (PLS) approach for psychometric evaluation of a stress scale among 17,414 nurses across 31 Iranian cities. Our main objective was to provide a system for assessing the mental health of nurses and other healthcare workers during the continuing COVID-19 crisis and future pandemics.

14.2 Methods

14.2.1 Design, Setting, and Procedures

The details on methodology of this study have been reported elsewhere [1]. Briefly, a cross-sectional study was conducted in 31 Iranian cities during the period between January 1, 2011, and December 1, 2015. A multistage cluster random sampling scheme was used to collect all data. In a second stage, ten hospitals were selected randomly as clusters in each city. In the final stage, 5 hospitals with more than 100 working nurses in CCUs were selected through a cluster random

sampling scheme. In 5 of the cities, the hospitals had fewer than 100 critical care nurses, in which case all 10 hospitals were selected. The participants who were (1) aged >18 years, (2) registered nurses, (3) working in the intensive care unit (ICU), and (4) willing to participate in the study were included and those who were not available to complete the questionnaire were excluded. The eligible and consenting nurses completed the two-part survey including the demographic and work stressor variables, which typically took place over 10–15 min.

14.2.2 Ethical Considerations

The study was approved by the institutional review board at Baqiyatallah University of Medical Sciences (Tehran, Iran). The ethical issues were reviewed and approved by ethical committee of each hospital. Since the research presented no more than minimal risk of harm to participants and involved no procedures for which written consent is normally required outside the research context, the principle of implied consent was adopted. This meant that by completion of the survey instrument, the participant demonstrated their willful consent to participate after the purpose of the study was explained to them. The participants were free to take part, to refuse, or to withdraw from the study at any time, and confidentiality of personal data was guaranteed to them. Although Iranian medical ethics laws (http://mehr.tums.ac.ir/Codes.aspx) do not specifically address this topic, it is in accordance with other international ethics codes and laws including the US Federal Code of Regulations (45 CFR 46.117c). All parts of the study were reviewed and reported according to the Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology statement [23].

14.2.3 Sample Size

The sample size determination process was reported elsewhere [1, 22], considering 95% confidence level and 90% power and taking into account the main outcome of relations between background variables and stress. A total of 17,414 nurses took part in the study. This sample size was higher than the minimal requirement sample size to conduct PLS confirmatory factor analysis (PLS-CFA) that assumes ten times the largest number of structural paths directed at a particular construct in the structural model [24].

14.2.4 Measurements

The measurements used in this study consisted of demographic/background variables and work stressor items. In the first part, the demographic/background variables involved age, gender, marital status, number of children, body mass index (BMI), education level, years of critical care nursing experience, shift schedule, frequency of working holidays, and ratio of nurses to patients and hospital. A 22-item tool of work stressors was administered (Table 14.1) as reported previously [1, 22]. This list was

Table 14.1 Stressful situations scale with 22 items

1. Dealing with patient's pain and suffering
2. Family presence
3. Heavy workload
4. Relatives' reaction
5. Time pressure
6. Communicating bad news
7. The necessity of having continual readiness for emergency procedures
8. Death & dying
9. Staff shortage
10. Non-nursing tasks
11. Patients' reactions
12. Physician not available
13. Instability of patient's clinical condition
14. Lack of resources
15. Working extra hours
16. Physicians' demands
17. Decision-making
18. Unpleasant tasks
19. Shift rotation
20. Poor cooperation in dialysis, CCU, and ICU
21. Poor cooperation & communication in other depts.
22. Disproportionate between salary and job hardness

CCU critical care unit, *ICU* intensive care unit

extracted in nursing working environments in CCU wards, categorized and prioritized qualitatively and quantitatively. The items were quantitatively prioritized by three panels of experts with the output from each step used as the input for the next step, to arrive at a final list. A qualitative analysis consisted of unstructured interviews administered utilizing content analysis, and the categories of nursing job stressors were extracted. Finally, the items in the quantitative and qualitative parts were merged, and the scale was derived and validated in a 3-classic-round Delphi technique [25].

The expert panel consisted of five psychiatric nurses, one psychologist, one psychiatrist, five ICU nurses, five CCU nurses, five dialysis unit nurses, three intensivists, three cardiologists, three nephrologists, and five ICU administrators. After the sessions, the Kendall's k agreement coefficient test was 0.89 which indicated a good agreement [26].

The final scale consisted of three subscales: (1) interactive and communicative (items 1, 2, 4, 11, 20, and 21), (2) managerial and administrative (items 3, 9, 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 19, and 22), and (3) exclusive and situational (items 5, 6, 7, 8, 13, 17, and 18). Items assessing work stressors were rated on a five-point Likert-type scale ranging from "1: causes me no stress" to "5: causes me extreme stress." The total score of the scale was calculated by sum over the items and the scores on subscales were calculated by sum over the items on that subscale. The total scores ranged from 22 to 110 with higher scores indicating higher stress.

The content validity of the scale was assessed both quantitatively and qualitatively by the expert panel. In the quantitative part, the content validity index (CVI) and content validity ratio (CVR) were calculated based on a designed form consisting of questions relating to the relatedness, simplicity, and clarity using a four-point ranking scale. In the qualitative part, the experts had some recommendations on modification of some words, sentences, and/or structure of the items which were implemented and the scale was finalized accordingly.

Based on the results of a pilot study [1, 22], the threshold for significant stress was set at 67, with higher values being indicative of the highest stress levels. This cutoff was derived using both qualitative and quantitative assessments, with the latter conducted by receiver operating characteristic curve analysis (results not shown).

14.2.5 Statistical Analyses

Statistical analysis was conducted using STATA (ver.13) (StataCorp LLC, College Station, TX, USA) and SmartPLS (ver. 3.2.8) (https://www.smartpls.com) software and *P*-values <0.05 were considered as significant in all analyses. Normality of the numeric variables was checked by the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test and data were expressed as mean (SD) and median (min-max) for the numeric normal and non-normal variables, respectively, and frequency (%) for categorical variables.

PLS-CFA was used to assess the construct validity of the scale, by PLS structural equation modeling (PLS-SEM). A second order PLS-CFA was fitted to the data. In the first step of the model, three subscales of interactive, managerial, and situational stress comprised the items, and, in the second step, the stress scale comprised the three subscales. PLS-SEM lacks a fitting index of the chi-square-based model to assess the theoretical model adjustment with collected data, unlike *covariance*-based SEM (CV-SEM), which depends on the *predictive nature* of *PLS*. Therefore, fitting the indices in this approach was associated with assessment of *model adequacy in prediction of dependent variables* [27]. To modify this and reaching an adequate model, all items with loadings less than 0.5 were removed from the model one at a time, and the indices assessed. This process continued until the model achieved a suitable reliability and validity.

To test the reliability of reflective measurement model, we assessed three indices: Cronbach's alpha, composite reliability or Dillon-Goldstein's p, and communality. For

Cronbach's alpha, values higher than 0.7 indicated acceptable reliability, and alpha values between 0.6 and 0.7 were acceptable for exploratory models. Also, composite reliability was utilized to evaluate internal reliability of constructs, wherein reliability was not calculated absolutely but in regard to their correlation with each other. Composite reliability values higher than 0.7 indicated suitable internal consistency of the measurement model and values lower than 0.6 showed lack of reliability.

The reflective measurement model was homogeneous if the absolute value of a loading factor corresponding with a construct in the model was at least 0.7, equal to a communality of 0.5 (0.7*0.7) [28]. To assess the validity of the reflective measurement model, we checked both convergent validity and discriminant validity. For convergent validity, average variance extracted (AVE) was used which indicates shared average variance between every construct with its indices. This shows the correlation of an index with itself with higher correlation reflecting a better fit. Discriminant validity measures the ability of the reflective measurement model for discrimination in the model [24]. AVE values higher than 0.5 showed acceptable convergent validity and discriminant validity was acceptable when the AVE for every construct was more than the shared variance between that construct and others (i.e., the square of the correlation coefficient between constructs) [29, 30].

Using *goodness* of *fit* (*GOF*) criteria, we assessed the general fit of the model. GOF is the square root of multiplying the "average coefficient of determination" by the "average communality index of construct" [31]. Wetzels et al. introduced the values of 0.01, 0.25, and 0.36 for weak, middle, and strong *GOF* of a general model [32]. The R squared values indicate the coefficient of determination, with values of 0.19, 0.33, and 0.67 indicating weak, middle, and good prediction ability [33].

Next, the relationship between total stress scores and the PLS-indicated components with background variables was modeled using generalized estimating equations (GEE). The model was built in a multivariate manner and included the explanatory variables of gender, education level, marital status, working shift, patient-to-nurse ratio, collaboration, supportive supervisor, working in holiday, ICU type, ICU system, age (years), clinical experience (years), BMI (kg/m^2), children (number), and ICU beds (number). The compound symmetry covariance structure took into account the structure introduced by the 31 cities. The categorical variables were entered in the model as indicators. Regression coefficients and their standard error were estimated.

14.3 Results

From 21,767 administered surveys, 17,414 cases returned valid surveys with a confidence interval (CI) = 79.5–80.5%. The surveys were completed in ICUs (n = 370), coronary care units (n = 240), and dialysis units (n = 180) at 180 educational and private hospitals. The details on demographic characteristics of the participants are provided elsewhere [1]. Briefly, the mean age of participants was 29 years (SD = 5.4; range = 21–43 years), 31% of the participants were male, and the ratios of patients to nurses were 3, 2, and 1 for 5.4%, 10.2%, and 84.4%, respectively. The mean job experience of the participants was 16.5 years (SD = 6.4; range = 4–27 years). The mean stress score was 69.2 out of 100 points (SD = 3.2; range = 62–84). Approximately 71% (95% CI = 70.3–71.7%) exceed the cutoff score of 67 for significant stress.

14.3.1 Content Validity

Based on the opinion of 36 experts in the field, an impact score > 1.5, CVI values >0.75, and CVR > 0.42 confirmed face validity and content validity of the items in this instrument (Table 14.2). For the qualitative analysis, required modifications were made according to the integrated experts' opinions.

Table 14.2 Face and content validity of the instrument

	Value
Face validity (impact score)	2.09–4.67
Content validity (CVR)	0.42–0.68
Content validity (CVI)	0.63–0.93

14.3.2 Construct Validity

A second-order PLS-SEM was fitted. In the first step, three subscales of interactive, managerial, and situational stress comprised the items, and in the second step, the stress scale comprised the subscales. The initial model (Fig. 14.1) was modified by iteratively removing each single item (with <0.5 lowest loadings). In the modified model (Fig. 14.2), the reliability and validity of the model and the adequacy were assessed. The model showed adequate fit ($R^2 = 0.77$, 0.83, and 0.63 for interactive, managerial, and situational subscales) indicating middle to good predictive ability of the subscales. This suggested a generally suitable fit of the CFA-PLS model (GOF = 0.642 > 0.36). In addition, path coefficients relating items to the subscales and those relating subscales to the stressful total scale were all significant ($P < 0.05$).

14.3.3 Reliability

For stability reliability, composite reliability, and internal consistency reliability, indices with values >0.7 confirmed the reliability of the instrument (Table 14.3). Cronbach's alphas for all subscales were in the range of 0.63–0.79, indicating suitable internal consistency reliability of the indices. For the total scale, the Cronbach's alpha was 0.85, indicating a good level of internal consistency of the stress scale (Table 14.3). The values of composite reliability for all constructs were also >0.7, which indicated suitable internal consistency of the constructs (Table 14.3).

14.3.4 Convergent Validity

The AVE value for all subscales was higher than 0.5, indicating suitable convergent validity (Table 14.3).

14.3.5 Discriminate Validity (the Fornell-Larcker Criterion)

Application of the Fornell and Larcker method showed that the model had acceptable divergent validity as the values of the principle diameter (i.e., the correlation among the subscales by itself) were higher than the correlations between a variable and other variables (Table 14.4), indicating the discriminate validity of the instrument [30].

14.3.6 Relationship Between Stress Components and Background Variables

The results of GEE on assessment of the relationship between total stress scores and PLS-indicated components with background variables are given in Table 14.5. The results were significantly higher for males, higher education levels, and separated or widowed individuals. Also the finding indicated significantly higher interactive, managerial, and total stress in rotation working shift and significantly lower scores of situational stress in rotation working shifts. High-level collaboration was associated with significantly lower stress scores, and supportive supervisor was associated with significantly lower interactive and total stress scores. Working in holidays was associated with significantly higher managerial stress. Age, clinical experience years, and number of children had an inverse relationship with stress.

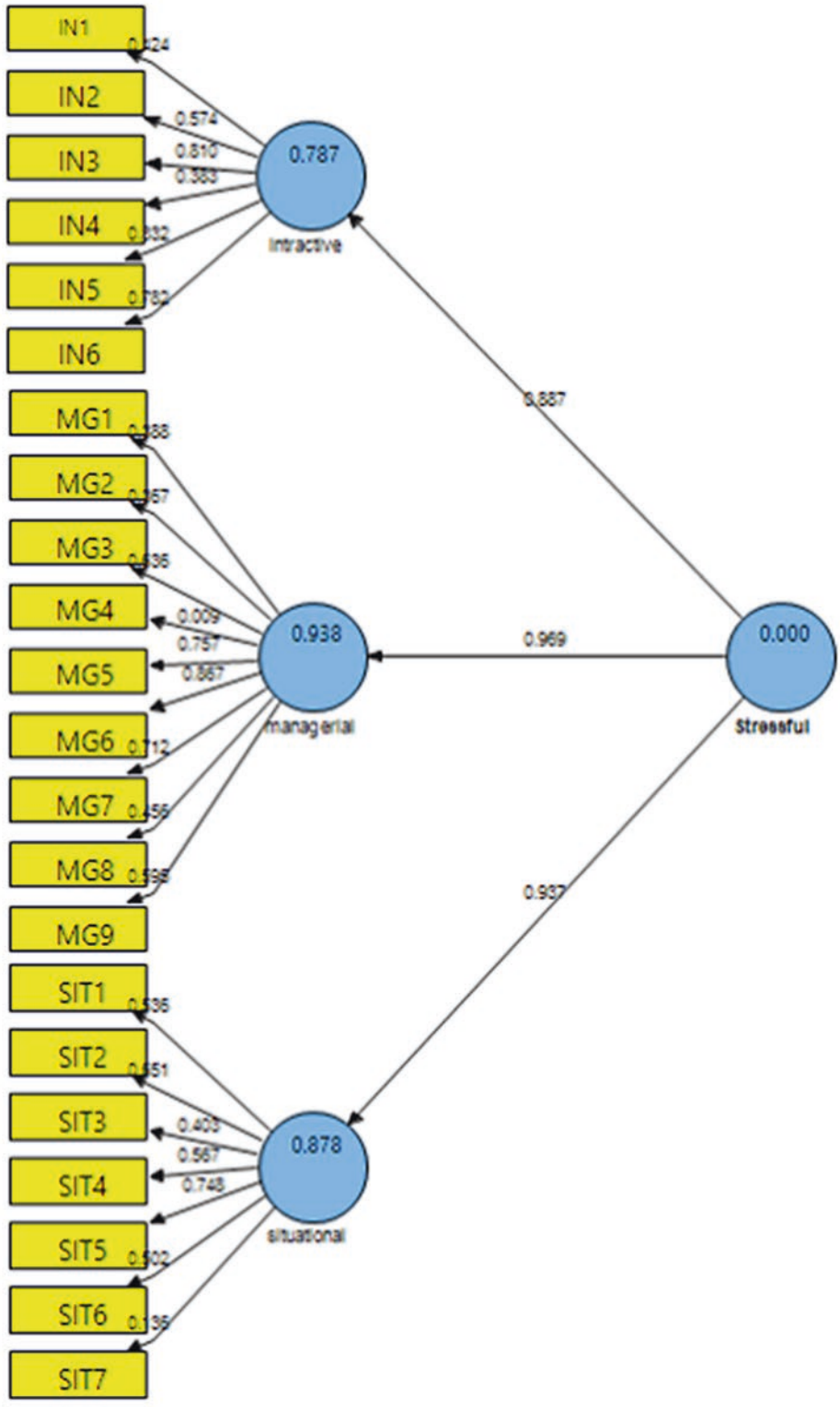


Fig. 14.1 Outer loadings for initial second-order PLS-SEM for stress scale

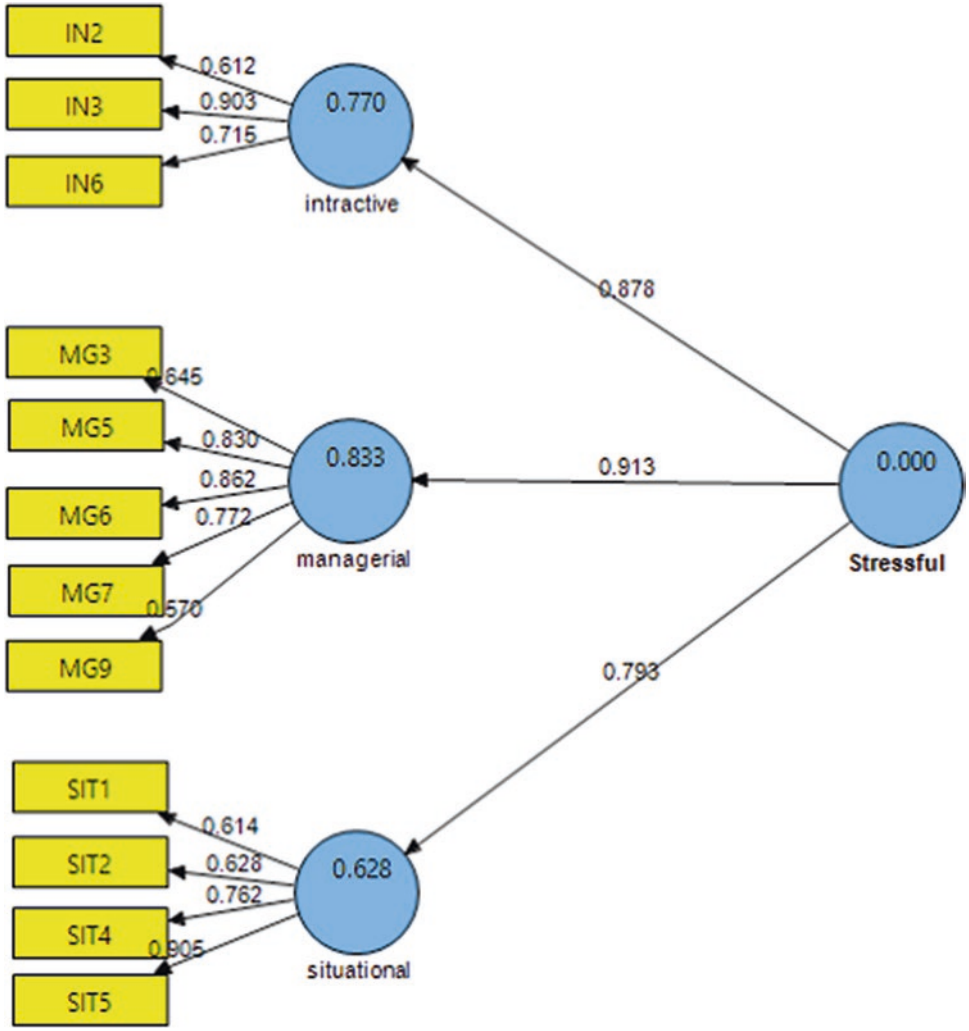


Fig. 14.2 Outer loadings for modified s*econd-order PLS-SEM* for stress scale. *All paths were significant ($P < 0.05$)

Table 14.3 Stability, composite reliability, internal consistency reliability, and average variance extracted of the instrument

Reliability	Stability (test–retest)	Composite reliability	Internal consistency (Cronbach's alpha)	Average variance extracted
Stressful	0.87	0.850	0.890	–
Interactive	0.81	0.793	0.632	0.567
Managerial	0.88	0.859	0.794	0.554
Situational	0.84	0.822	0.713	0.543

14.4 Discussion

This study has described the use of the working nurses stress scale in critical care units and confirmed its reliability and validity in Iran based on a PLS-SEM approach. This is the first time that such a tool has been developed with a sufficiently large sample size across different hos-

Table 14.4 Discriminate validity (Fornell-Larcker criterion) of the instrument based on latent variable correlations

	Interactive	Managerial	Situational
Interactive	**0.760**		
Managerial	0.727	**0.744**	
Situational	0.589	0.544	**0.736**

pital units in Iran, in accordance with Iranian culture. The face and content validities of the scale were confirmed by the opinions of a panel of experts. The construct validity was also satisfied by the PLS method. The model had a good level of adequacy and high coefficient of determination values. All item-subscale and subscale-scale relationships were statistically significant. The Fornell-Larcker criterion and AVE assessments indicated that the convergent validity and discriminant validity of the measure were satisfied. The test-retest reliability, internal consistency reliability, and composite reliability were also at satisfactory level for subscales and whole scales.

It is important to mention that we used the PLS approach of SEM, and not a covariance-based method, since PLS has minimal requirements on measurement scales, sample sizes, and residual distributions. In addition, the PLS approach focuses on maximizing the variance of the dependent variables explained by the independent variables and thereby avoids the problems of inadmissible solutions and factor indeterminacy associated with a covariance-based approach [34]. The algorithm involved in the PLS approach comprises a series of ordinary least squares equations and, therefore, identification is not a problem for recursive models. In addition, second-order PLS procedures were used in this study, which can be estimated by the standard PLS algorithm [24]. Finally, PLS is considered a better approach for clarifying complex relationships [34, 35]. PLS assumes consistency of the parameter estimates and this was satisfied in our study considering the large sample size. Standard errors need to be estimated in PLS through resampling procedures such as jackknifing or bootstrapping, and p-values of coefficients can be estimated by the jackknife method resulting from a blindfolded resampling technique [36].

The application of the tool developed here revealed that age, gender, education, marital status, working shift, system collaboration and support difference, working experience, and child number were significantly associated with stress levels of critical care nurses in Iranian hospitals, supporting the discriminant validity of the scales and subscales. Previous instruments designed for stress evaluation of nurses have been conducted in different countries, although these were limited with respect to the type of hospital ward and sample size. The most established and widely used tool designed for measuring the frequency and major sources of stress experienced by nurses on hospital units is the Nursing Stress Scale (NSS), which uses a 34-item, 4-point Likert scale [37].

The results of the current scale showed consistency with previous studies [38], and the high Cronbach's alpha (0.85) revealed a good level of internal consistency, confirming its reliability as an instrument for assessment of stress in Iranian nurses. The final version of this tool included 22 items in 3 domains: *interactive and communicative* (6 items), *managerial and administrative* (9 items), and *exclusive and situational* (7 items) subscales. In previous studies, job stressors for nurses were categorized into six broad domains: (1) intrinsic job characteristics; (2) organizational roles; (3) work relationships; (4) career growth issues; (5) organizational factors including climate, structure, and culture; and (6) the home-work interface. All six of these components are included in three domains of the instrument developed in the present study. This resulted in the present instrument having fewer items than previous tools. We suggest that the use of lower numbers of items increases the willingness of participants to the tool.

The items of the first subscales (interactive and communicative) include dealing with patients' pain and suffering, family presence, relatives reactions, patients' reactions, poor cooperation in the intensive care unit, and poor cooperation and communication in other departments. These items are in line with other studies which found that poor relationships with individuals from other

Table 14.5 Results of GEE model to assess relationship between the stress components with background variables

Variables	Interactive score			Managerial score			Situational score			Total score		
	B	SE	*P*-value	B	SE	*P*-value	B	SE	*P*-value	B	SE	*P*-value
Gender (male)	**0.95**	**0.09**	**<0.01**	**1.16**	**0.13**	**<0.01**	**0.77**	**0.14**	**<0.01**	**1.55**	**0.10**	**<0.01**
Education level												
Associate	**−0.91**	**0.33**	**0.01**	**−1.61**	**<0.01**	**<0.01**	NA	NA	NA	**−1.57**	**0.58**	**0.01**
Baccalaureate	−0.21	0.33	0.51	**0.16**	**<0.01**	**<0.01**	NA	NA	NA	−0.43	0.58	0.46
Master	**0.71**	**0.33**	**0.03**	**0.97**	**<0.01**	**<0.01**	NA	NA	NA	−0.15	0.58	0.80
PhD	**Referent**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Marital status												
Not married	0.32	0.94	0.73	**−0.49**	**<0.01**	**<0.01**	−0.05	1.73	0.98	0.05	0.66	0.94
Married	−0.11	0.93	0.91	**−1.33**	**<0.01**	**<0.01**	−0.53	1.72	0.76	−0.34	0.65	0.60
Separated or widowed	**Referent**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Working shift												
Morning	−0.06	0.05	0.22	**−0.15**	**0.07**	**0.04**	**0.28**	**0.08**	**<0.01**	**−0.20**	**0.07**	**<0.01**
Evening	**−0.21**	**0.05**	**<0.01**	**−0.51**	**0.07**	**<0.01**	**0.54**	**0.08**	**<0.01**	**−0.39**	**0.07**	**<0.01**
Night	**−0.17**	**0.05**	**<0.01**	**−0.17**	**0.08**	**0.03**	**0.67**	**0.08**	**<0.01**	**−0.73**	**0.06**	**<0.01**
Rotation	**Referent**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Patient-to-nurse ratio												
One	−0.18	0.93	0.84	−0.31	1.29	0.81	−0.42	1.71	0.80	−0.26	0.65	0.69
Two	−0.11	0.11	0.32	−0.17	0.16	0.29	−0.33	0.18	0.07	−0.06	0.13	0.66
Three	**Referent**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Collaboration												
low	**3.12**	**0.04**	**<0.01**	**2.56**	**0.04**	**<0.01**	**5.75**	**0.04**	**<0.01**	**2.17**	**0.06**	**<0.01**
moderate	**5.40**	**0.04**	**<0.01**	**4.64**	**0.06**	**<0.01**	**2.32**	**0.07**	**<0.01**	**1.23**	**0.06**	**<0.01**
high	**Referent**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Supportive supervisor (yes)	**−0.20**	**0.08**	**0.01**	0.22	0.12	0.07	<0.01	0.13	0.97	**−0.20**	**0.09**	**0.02**

Working In holiday days (yes)	−0.08	0.08	0.33	**0.07**	**<0.01**	**<0.01**	−0.01	0.14	0.97	−0.03	0.11	0.81
ICU types												
Surgical	−0.01	0.07	0.94	−0.07	0.11	0.54	0.04	0.12	0.75	**−0.31**	**0.09**	**<0.01**
Medical	−0.01	0.07	0.92	0.03	0.10	0.76	−0.01	0.11	0.95	−0.02	0.09	0.85
Toxicological	−0.02	0.08	0.81	0.00	0.12	0.98	0.04	0.14	0.78	0.13	0.10	0.23
Neurology	0.00	0.09	0.96	0.00	0.13	0.98	−0.02	0.14	0.88	−0.07	0.11	0.52
Trauma	0.14	0.08	0.10	−0.03	0.12	0.82	0.03	0.14	0.83	0.07	0.11	0.51
Adult mixed	0.00	0.09	0.98	0.13	0.14	0.36	0.18	0.15	0.24	0.12	0.12	0.31
Pediatric	0.01	0.09	0.89	0.03	0.13	0.85	−0.01	0.15	0.95	−0.04	0.11	0.69
Neonatal	−0.04	0.09	0.69	0.02	0.13	0.87	−0.01	0.15	0.94	−0.02	0.11	0.85
Pediatric and neonatal mixed	0.07	0.10	0.47	−0.06	0.15	0.67	−0.05	0.16	0.74	−0.07	0.13	0.60
Coronary	0.07	0.06	0.30	−0.04	0.10	0.65	−0.02	0.11	0.83	0.05	0.08	0.58
Dialysis	**Referent**	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
ICU system (semi-close)	0.06	0.05	0.23	0.07	0.07	0.31	0.08	0.08	0.34	0.10	0.06	0.11
Age (yrs)	**−0.09**	**0.01**	**<0.01**	−0.03	0.01	0.05	−0.02	0.01	0.11	**−0.08**	**0.01**	**<0.01**
Clinical experience (yrs)	−0.02	0.01	**0.01**	**−0.08**	**0.01**	**<0.01**	**−0.05**	**0.01**	**<0.01**	**−0.14**	**0.01**	**<0.01**
BMI (kg/m²)	0.00	0.00	0.55	−0.01	0.01	0.13	0.00	0.01	0.88	0.00	0.00	0.78
Children (number)	0.01	0.02	0.52	−0.03	0.03	0.36	−0.01	0.03	0.83	**−0.06**	**0.02**	**0.02**
ICU bed (number)	−0.01	0.01	0.40	0.00	0.01	0.93	0.00	0.01	0.98	0.00	0.01	0.75

GEE generalized estimating equation, *B* regression coefficient, *SE*, standard error
NA not applicable in the GEE model

professions may lead to lower levels of confidence and higher stress levels and better relationships with other professions [39]. In addition, exposures to pain, suffering, and traumatic life events that nurses experience on a daily basis can contribute to stress [40]. Similarly, another study showed that the least stressful subscale was inadequate preparation to deal with emotional needs of patients and families (feeling inadequately prepared to help with the emotional needs of patients and their families), and factors of the intense emotional support needed for patients and families are another burden of stress placed on nurses [41].

Studies have shown that an individual nurse may behave differently in their perception of stress. The results of the previous study [1] showed that age, marital status, working shift, and years of experience of nurses had significant associations with levels of stress. However, sex, education, and BMI showed no significant association with stress level. Similarly, Li et al. showed that gender and education were not linked with stress but marital status did show a significant effect [42]. In addition, Chang et al. concluded that education, marital status, and number of children did not have a significant association with the level of stress [43].

Similar to our findings about decision-making power in the subset of exclusive and situational subscale and physician dependency in the subset of managerial and administrative subscale, Kang et al. found that lack of autonomy and independency in making decisions was frequently stressful for staff nurses in clinical area [43]. The majority of staff nurses sometimes felt unable to make decisions and powerless to change unsatisfactorily situations. Workload and staff shortage were two other aspects of the managerial and administrative subscale, similar to the findings of a tool developed to assess nurse stress in Saudi Arabia [44]. Another study showed that staff nurses did not always utilize their training and experience despite the fact that some felt inadequately trained or equipped for their job [45]. Transition programs specifically designed to bridge the gap between the academic and service setting and prepare nurses to utilize critical thinking skills in management of acutely ill patients are therefore likely to be important to ensure nurses have sufficient confidence to deal with the degree of autonomy they are required to demonstrate.

The strengths of this study were the use of multistage random sampling methods and the consideration of different nurse groups in different wards and the large sample size across 31 cities in Iran. This resulted in a sample size significantly greater than the minimal requirement to conduct the PLS-CFA. There was a robust correlation between the level of stress and social and cultural status. The construct validity showed that stress scale items were grouped under three components which may provide greater incentive to participants in completion of the study compared with other studies on stress scale development that used components on the scale ranging from four to seven components [46–49]. This is supported by the finding that most of the above studies identified three major components linked with stress among nurses (lack of adequate staffing, dealing with difficult patients, and high workload). The large sample size of this investigation resulted in a higher response rate (about 80%) as compared to other studies (about 55.1 and 76.2%) [50, 51].

A potential limitation of the present tool relates to the fact that it was developed to assess stress of nurses in critical care units in Iran. Thus, it is not necessarily generalizable for assessment of nurses in healthcare institutions in other countries. Moreover, there are some aspects of the Iranian healthcare system that limit the generalizability of the findings. For example, most academic and tertiary care ICUs in the USA are closed systems and those in Iran are generally semi-closed or open units. We did not collect data on individual nurse's psychiatric symptoms or diagnoses. We also did not collect data on workplace violence or lateral hostilities.

14.5 Conclusion

The study demonstrated a valid and reliable scale to assess stress-related factors in the home and workplace for nurses. As the tool is short and simple to use, it is convenient for assessment of

nurses in critical care units. Further studies applying this developed tool are recommended to further elucidate the dimensions of stress in Iranian nurses, with the overall aim of improving working conditions for these critical workers in healthcare. Finally, this approach should be translated for use in other countries and cultures affected by the current COVID-19 outbreak. As a second wave of COVID-19 or outbreaks of further viruses can occur, such a response becomes even more critical to protect our healthcare professionals working on the frontlines.

Acknowledgement The authors would like to thanks the guidance and advice from the Clinical Research Development Unit of Baqiyatallah Hospital.

References

1. Vahedian-Azimi A, Hajiesmaeili M, Kangasniemi M, Fornés-Vives J, Hunsucker RL, Rahimibashar F et al (2019) Effects of stress on critical care nurses: a national cross-sectional study. J Intensive Care Med 34(4):311–322
2. Salmon G, Morehead A (2019) Posttraumatic stress syndrome and implications for practice in critical care nurses. Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am 31(4):517–526
3. Mealer M, Jones J, Meek P (2017) Factors affecting resilience and development of posttraumatic stress disorder in critical care nurses. Am J Crit Care 26(3):184–192
4. Tirgari B, Azizzadeh Forouzi M, Ebrahimpour M (2019) Relationship between posttraumatic stress disorder and compassion satisfaction, compassion fatigue, and Burnout in Iranian psychiatric nurses. J Psychosoc Nurs Ment Health Serv 57(3):39–47
5. https://coronavirus.jhu.edu/map.html
6. Maunder R, Hunter J, Vincent L et al (2003) The immediate psychological and occupational impact of the 2003 SARS outbreak in a teaching hospital. CMAJ 168(10)
7. Bai Y, Lin CC, Lin CY, Chen JY, Chue CM, Chou P (2004) Survey of stress reactions among health care workers involved with the SARS outbreak. Psychiatr Serv 55(9):1055–1057
8. Chua SE, Cheung V, Cheung C et al (2004) Psychological effects of the SARS outbreak in Hong Kong on high-risk health care workers. Can J Psychiatr 49(6):391–393
9. Koh D, Lim MK, Chia SE, Ko SM, Qian F, Ng V et al (2005) Risk perception and impact of Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) on work and personal lives of healthcare workers in Singapore what can we learn? Med Care 43(7):676–682
10. Lee AM, Wong JG, McAlonan GM, Cheung V, Cheung C, Sham PC et al (2007) Stress and psychological distress among SARS survivors 1 year after the outbreak. Can J Psychiatr 52(4):233–240
11. Khalid I, Khalid TJ, Qabajah MR, Barnard AG, Qushmaq IA (2016) Healthcare workers emotions, perceived stressors and coping strategies during a MERS-CoV outbreak. Clin Med Res 14(1):7–14
12. Bukhari EE, Temsah MH, Aleyadhy AA, Alrabiaa AA, Alhboob AA, Jamal AA (2016) Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus (MERS-CoV) outbreak perceptions of risk and stress evaluation in nurses. J Infect Dev Ctries 10(8):845–850
13. Abolfotouh MA, AlQarni AA, Al-Ghamdi SM, Salam M, Al-Assiri MH, Balkhy HH (2017) An assessment of the level of concern among hospital-based health-care workers regarding MERS outbreaks in Saudi Arabia. BMC Infect Dis 17(1):4. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12879-016-2096-8
14. Alsubaie S, Hani Temsah M, Al-Eyadhy AA, Gossady I, Hasan GM, Al-Rabiaah A et al (2019) Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus epidemic impact on healthcare workers' risk perceptions, work and personal lives. J Infect Dev Ctries 13(10):920–926
15. Tuohy A, Knussen C, Wrennall MJ (2005) Effects of age on symptoms of anxiety and depression in a sample of retired police officers. Psychol Aging 20(2):202–210
16. Blazer D, George LK, Hughes D (1991) Generalised anxiety disorder. In: Robins LN, Regier DA (eds) Psychiatric disorders in America: the epidemiological catchment area study. The Free Press, New York, NY, pp 180–203. ISBN 10: 0029265711
17. Bunce D, Handley R, Gaines SO Jr (2008) Depression, anxiety, and within-person variability in adults aged 18–85 years. Psychol Aging 23(4):848–858
18. https://www.nia.nih.gov/health/depression-and-older-adults
19. Happell B, Reid-Searl K, Dwyer T, Caperchione CM, Gaskin CJ, Burke KJ (2013) How nurses cope with occupational stress outside their workplaces. Collegian 20(3):195–199
20. Pisaniello SL, Winefield HR, Delfabbro PH (2012) The influence of emotional labour and emotional work on the occupational health and wellbeing of South Australian hospital nurses. J Vocational Behav 80(3):579–591
21. Rickard G, Lenthall S, Dollard M, Opie T, Knight S, Dunn S et al (2012) Organisational intervention to reduce occupational stress and turnover in hospital nurses in the Northern Territory, Australia. Collegian 19(4):211–221
22. Hashemian SMR, Farzanegan B, Fathi M, Ardehali SH, Vahedian-Azimi A, Asghari-Jafarabadi M et al (2015) Stress among Iranian nurses in critical wards. Iran Red Crescent Med J 17(6):e22612. https://doi.org/10.5812/ircmj.22612v2
23. Von Elm E, Altman DG, Egger M, Pocock SJ, Gøtzsche PC, Vandenbroucke JP (2007) The Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology

(STROBE) statement: guidelines for reporting observational studies. Ann Intern Med 147(8):573–577
24. Hair JF, Black WC, Babin BJ, Anderson RE (2014) Multivariate data analysis. Pearson Education Limited, London. ISBN 10:1-292-02190-X
25. Hasson F, Keeney S, McKenna H (2000) Research guidelines for the Delphi survey technique. J Adv Nurs 32:1008–1015
26. Abdi H (2007) Kendall rank correlation. In: Salkind NJ (ed) Encyclopedia of measurement and statistics. Sage Publications, Inc., Thousand Oaks, CA. ISBN-10: 1412916119
27. Lipid and Blood Pressure Meta-analysis Collaboration (LBPMC) Group, Serban C, Sahebkar A, Mikhailidis DP, Ursoniu S et al (2015) Impact of statin therapy on coronary plaque composition: a systematic review and meta-analysis of virtual histology intravascular ultrasound studies. BMC Med 13:229. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12916-015-0459-4
28. Holland BA (2001) A comprehensive model for assessing service-learning and community-university partnerships. New Direct Higher Educ 2001(114):51–60
29. Farrell AM (2010) Insufficient discriminant validity: a comment on Bove, Pervan, Beatty, and Shiu (2009). J Business Res 63(3):324–327
30. Henseler J, Ringle CM, Sinkovics RR (2009) The use of partial least squares path modeling in international marketing. In: Cavusgil T, Sinkovics RR, Ghauri PN (eds) New challenges to international marketing. Emerald Group Publishing Limited, Bingley, UK, pp 277–319. ISBN-10: 1848554680
31. Tenenhaus M, Vinzi VE, Chatelin YM, Lauro C (2005) PLS path modeling. Comput Stat Data Anal 48(1):159–205
32. Wetzels M, Odekerken-Schröder G, Van Oppen C (2009) Using PLS path modeling for assessing hierarchical construct models: guidelines and empirical illustration. MIS Quart 33:177–195
33. Chin WW (1998) The partial least squares approach for structural equation modeling. In: Marcoulides GA (ed) Modern methods for business research. Lawrence Erlbaum Associates Publishers, Mahwah, NJ, pp 295–336. ASIN: B00LKMQO4I
34. Fornell C, Bookstein FL (1982) Two structural equation models: LISREL and PLS applied to consumer exit-voice theory. J Mark Res 19(4):440–452
35. Fornell C, Lorange P, Roos J (1990) The cooperative venture formation process: a latent variable structural modeling approach. Manag Sci 36(10):1246–1255
36. Lohmöller JB (1984) LVPLS 1.6 program manual: latent variables path analysis with partial least-squares estimation; mit 2 Disketten Version 1.8: Zentralarchiv für empirische Sozialforschung. https://books.google.co.uk/books/about/LVPLS_1_6_program_manual.html?id=uAbOcQAACAAJ&redir_esc=y
37. Gray-Toft P, Anderson JG (1981) The nursing stress scale: development of an instrument. J Behav Assess 3(1):11–23
38. Souza ACD, Alexandre NMC, Guirardello EDB (2017) Psychometric properties in instruments evaluation of reliability and validity. Epidemiol Serv Saude 26(3):649–569
39. Jordan TR, Khubchandani J, Wiblishauser M (2016) The impact of perceived stress and coping adequacy on the health of nurses: a pilot investigation. Nurs Res Pract 2016:5843256. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/5843256
40. Cohen-Katz J, Wiley SD, Capuano T, Baker DM, Shapiro S (2005) The effects of mindfulness-based stress reduction on nurse stress and burnout, Part II: a quantitative and qualitative study. Holist Nurs Pract 19(1):26–35
41. Kamal SM, Al-Dhshan M, Abu-Salameh K, Abuadas F, Hassan M (2012) The effect of nurses' perceived job related stressors on job satisfaction in Taif governmental hospitals in Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. J Am Sci 8(3):119–125
42. Li J, Yang W, Cho SI (2006) Gender differences in job strain, effort-reward imbalance, and health functioning among Chinese physicians. Soc Sci Med 62(5):1066–1077
43. Kang MG, Koh SB, Cha BS, Park JK, Baik SK, Chang SJ (2005) Job stress and cardiovascular risk factors in male workers. Prev Med 40(5):583–588
44. Zaghloul AA (2008) Developing and validating a tool to assess nurse stress. J Egypt Public Health Assoc 83(3):223–227
45. Halfer D (2007) A magnetic strategy for new graduate nurses. Nurs Econ 25(1):6–11, 3; quiz 12
46. Motzer SA, Hertig V (2004) Stress, stress response, and health. Nurs Clin North Am 39(1):1–17
47. Nayeri ND, Negarandeh R, Vaismoradi M, Ahmadi F, Faghihzadeh S (2009) Burnout and productivity among Iranian nurses. Nurs Health Sci 11(3):263–270
48. Rego AC, Araujo Filho I, Damasceno BP, Egito ES, Silveira IA, Brandao-Neto J et al (2007) Simvastatin improves the healing of infected skin wounds of rats. Acta Cir Bras 22(Suppl 1):57–63
49. Oyeleye O, Hanson P, O'Connor N, Dunn D (2013) Relationship of workplace incivility, stress, and burnout on nurses' turnover intentions and psychological empowerment. J Nurs Adm 43(10):536–542
50. Kakemam E, Raeissi P, Raoofi S, Soltani A, Sokhanvar M, Visentin D et al (2019) Occupational stress and associated risk factors among nurses: a cross-sectional study. Contemp Nurse 55(2–3):237–249
51. Tran TTT, Nguyen NB, Luong MA, Bui THA, Phan TD, Ngo TH et al (2019) Stress, anxiety and depression in clinical nurses in Vietnam: a cross-sectional survey and cluster analysis. Int J Ment Health Syst 13:3. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13033-018-0257-4

15 Targeting Age-Related Neurodegenerative Diseases by AAV-Mediated Gene Therapy

Umut Cagin

Abstract

Age-related neurodegenerative diseases have detrimental consequences on health of many patients and result in mortality. The current treatment options are limited and usually fail to correct the underlying pathology. AAV-based gene therapies have proved to be safe based on the data available on clinical trials for several monogenic diseases. Therefore, such therapies can pave the way to treat neurodegenerative diseases likes Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease (PD), and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS). Here, the advantages of AAV-based gene therapies are discussed with emphasis on efforts of developing novel capsids with superior therapeutic efficacy. Furthermore, the results of clinical trials on AD, PD, and ALS are summarized.

Keywords

Neurodegenerative diseases · Neurodegeneration gene therapy · Central nervous system · CNS · AAV · Capsid

U. Cagin (✉)
INTEGRARE, Genethon, Inserm, Univ Evry, Université Paris-Saclay, Evry, France
e-mail: ucagin@genethon.fr

15.1 Introduction

Neuronal networks are complex systems which require efficient communication between neuronal cells to maintain vital activities of the body. Neurodegeneration is a process which involves accumulation of dysfunctional molecules, proteins, and organelles, which progressively damage neuronal cells and result in neuronal cell death [1]. Neurodegenerative diseases are commonly observed in the aged population with detrimental consequences on quality of life and higher risks of death. The limited regenerative potential of neurons makes neurodegenerative diseases difficult to treat. Many widely observed neurodegenerative diseases are caused by genetic mutations, but epigenetic events are also observed in Parkinson's disease (reviewed by Pavlou et al. [2]) and have also been recently reported to occur in Alzheimer's disease [3, 4].

Commonly observed neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease (PD), and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) have common dysregulated processes such as mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress [5]. In line with this, approaches ameliorating mitochondrial dysfunction have been shown to have beneficial effects in various animal models of neurodegenerative diseases [6–9]. Importantly, one of the commonly observed pathological features of neurodegenerative diseases is

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_15

the accumulation of misfolded protein aggregates, which have toxic effects and thereby cause neuronal cell death [1]. In AD, the toxic accumulation of amyloid-β (Aβ) and tau has been observed [10]. On the other hand, α-synuclein aggregates mainly occur in PD but can also be observed in AD [11]. Huntington's disease is a monogenic condition that occurs due to aggregation of the huntingtin protein via an expanded CAG repeat region [12]. These observations further suggest the possibility of targeting autophagy to reduce protein aggregation as a novel therapeutic avenue for neurodegenerative diseases [8, 13, 14].

Most of the drugs in common use for these disorders have limited efficacy due to low permeability of the blood-brain barrier (BBB). A study published in 2019 by Cummings and colleagues reported 132 agents currently being investigated in clinical trials for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease [15]. Unfortunately, many clinical trials for Alzheimer's disease have failed at different stages of clinical development [16]. The current treatment options can reduce some of the symptoms experienced by the patient; however, many drugs do not target the underlying pathology and are therefore not curative. Although these drugs can have some beneficial effects for the everyday life of the patient, novel therapeutic strategies are needed. On the contrary, gene therapy has the potential to target and correct the underlying pathological mechanisms and ultimately treat the root cause of a disease. One promising avenue is the use of adeno-associated virus (AAV) vectors as a delivery system for the genes of interest. The current challenges include, but are not limited to, the correct choice of delivery route, optimization of the gene expression cassette, and efficient expression in the desired cell type or brain region [17]. Delivery routes widely performed at the moment include intraparenchymal, intrathecal, intracerebroventricular, subpial, and intravenous injection [18]. It is important to note that other central nervous system (CNS) delivery routes are also under development. A recent study showed safe delivery of the gene cargo to the cisterna magna region of the brain for treatment of Tay-Sachs disease [19].

This review aims to summarize the advances in the AAV-based gene therapy in the context of neurodegenerative diseases as a novel and promising therapeutic avenue. The advantages and the current challenges of AAV-based gene therapy are also explained. Following this, the recent progress in choosing the most optimal AAV serotype for CNS transduction and designing therapeutically superior viral capsids for better neuronal targeting is discussed. Finally, examples of novel therapeutic options that have been entered into clinical trials using AAV-based gene therapy for AD, PD, and ALS are summarized and compared.

15.2 AAV-Based Gene Therapy

Gene therapy serves as a promising option for a one-time permanent treatment for genetic diseases. In short, gene therapy can be used to either silence the expression of a disease-causing gene, to modify a mutation (by gene editing), or simply to deliver an un-mutated copy of the mutated gene, simply known as gene replacement [20]. Viral vector-mediated gene therapy using different types of viruses including lentivirus, adenovirus, herpes simplex virus, vaccinia virus, and adeno-associated virus (AAV) can serve as vehicles for this purposes [21].

Thanks to the advances in vector biology and genetic engineering, AAV-based gene therapies are currently more than an investigation tool and are used as treatment options in the clinic. To date, many patients with detrimental diseases have been injected with AAVs with no major adverse events observed, highlighting the safety aspects of these treatments [22]. In particular "gene replacement" strategies have shown high success rates in cases of monogenic diseases. Several clinical trials targeting diseases such as hemophilia A [23], hemophilia B [24–26], retinal disorders [27–29], and spinal muscular atrophy (SMA) [30] have proved AAVs as safe and efficient therapeutic tools.

AAV is from the *Parvoviridae* family with a genome that contains four non-structural Rep proteins, three capsid proteins (VP1, VP2, and

VP3), and the assembly-activating protein (AAP) [31, 32]. AAVs have particular advantages making them ideal for in vivo gene transfer such as having a low risk of insertional mutagenesis. Generation of recombinant AAVs by elimination of all open reading frames (ORFs) makes them replication-defective thereby rendering them safe to use. This further allows cargo sizes of approximately 4.7 kb. Efficient production of AAVs with high yield and purity is an important factor for gene therapy as this can have a significant impact on the transduction efficiency [33]. The most commonly used approach is the triple-transfection method which is based on co-transfection with three plasmids: (1) the transgene of interest flanked by inverted terminal repeats (ITRs), (2) rep and cap genes for packaging, and (3) adenoviral helper genes [34]. For more detailed information on AAV production and purification, refer to Ayuso et al. [35].

The 4.7-kb cargo limit of AAVs is a limiting factor for delivery of large genes; therefore, alternative strategies such as production of oversized vectors and dual vectors are currently used to overcome this. Production of oversized AAVs can result in heterogeneous vector preparations and can affect transduction efficiency [36, 37]. On the other hand, dual-vector strategy is based on splitting the transgene into two (head and tail), and co-transfection therefore results in reassembly of the full-length expression cassette [38]. The therapeutic potential of this strategy has been proven via gene delivery to the retina [39, 40] and in a mouse model of Stargardt disease [41]. Furthermore, the dual AAV approach has shown positive results in muscle diseases such as dysferlinopathy [42–44] and Duchenne muscular dystrophy [45].

Progress in investigational and clinical AAV-based research and therapy increased following the discovery and characterization of 13 AAV serotypes and over 100 AAV variants from different species [46, 47]. The infectivity and specificity of these AAV serotypes depends heavily on cell type-specific receptors and co-receptors, although a universal multi-serotype receptor (AAVR) for AAV infection has been described [48]. Recently, GRP108, a member of the G protein-coupled receptor family, was characterized as a novel AAV entry factor conserved between mouse and humans [49]. Although this receptor was shown to affect the transduction of more than 20 divergent AAVs, the transduction of AAV5 was unaffected in a GRP108 knockout model [49].

The potential limitation of AAV-based gene therapy is not only limited to the size of the expression cassette, but transgene potency and vector genome persistence are other factors which can influence the outcome of the therapy [50]. Other than the vector genome and the expression cassette, another challenge can arise from the viral capsid. For example, a $CD8^+$ T-cell response to AAV capsids in humans was demonstrated by Mingozzi and colleagues which highlights that their modulation is important to achieve sustained AAV-mediated gene transfer [51]. Vector administration to seropositive patients and also to patients requiring re-administration usually limits the population size which can be treated by AAVs. Therefore, ongoing efforts are aimed at modulating AAV immunogenicity to allow vector re-administration using such approaches as tolerogenic rapamycin nanoparticles [52]. Furthermore, two recent studies described methodologies such as immunoadsorption and the use of AAV-specific plasmapheresis columns which can ultimately make vector re-administration possible [53, 54]. The importance of AAV immunogenicity for successful gene transfer in humans is reviewed elsewhere [55]. In the context of CNS gene delivery, achieving high specificity and efficacy is probably the current major challenge. Therefore capsid choice has vital importance for therapeutic efficacy. For this purpose, the following section summarizes the pre-clinical development of AAV capsids for gene delivery to the CNS.

15.3 Optimizing AAV Capsids for Efficient CNS Transduction

One of the advantages of AAV-based gene transfer is the availability of different AAV serotypes with specific tissue tropism [56]. In this aspect,

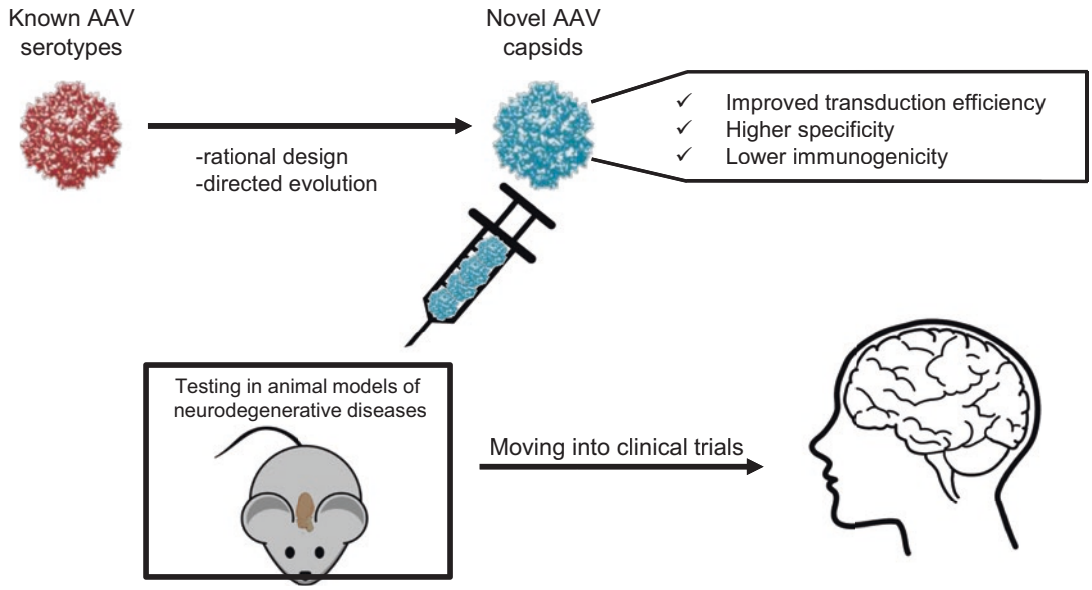


Fig. 15.1 Development of novel AAV capsids with superior CNS transduction. Current attempts have focused on rational design or directed evolution to develop capsids with better specificity, improved transduction efficiency, and lower immunogenicity. The therapeutic potential of candidate capsids can be tested on animal models of neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease). Novel capsids with superior therapeutic efficacy will potentially be used in clinical trials for improved treatment of patients suffering with such neurodegenerative disorders

AAV capsids with efficient CNS transduction can serve as valuable tools for the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. Deeper investigations in AAV vector biology have resulted in advances in capsid discovery and engineering aiming for those with better tissue targeting and low genotoxicity and immunogenicity, created either by rational design or directed evolution [57]. Capsids with better therapeutic indices not only result in better delivery but can also reduce the optimal therapeutic dosage, thereby lowering potential immunogenicity as well as production costs (Fig. 15.1). Capsid-specific immune responses have been documented in both in pre-clinical and clinical trials. This includes the invaluable work of Nathwani and colleagues in this area for the treatment of hemophilia B [24, 25, 51, 58, 59].

Several AAV serotypes have been used to target and express the gene of interest in various cell types of the CNS. For example, AAV2, a widely used serotype in clinical trials, can target cerebral vascular endothelial cells [60]. In the last 15–20 years, many comparative studies have been performed in order to search for optimal AAV vectors for CNS-targeted gene therapy in mice [61–63], cats [64], dogs [65], and macaques [66] as models. Foust and colleagues showed that AAV9 can target both neurons and astrocytes in mice [67]. Importantly, AAV9 has been shown to have wider CNS expression possibilities including areas such as the substantia nigra, hippocampus, cerebellum, motor cortex, and cervical spinal cord following neonatal intracerebroventricular injection [68]. Although AAV9 has many advantages, due to questions on translatability to non-human primates [69] and immune responses [70], innovative novel AAV serotypes have been developed with higher therapeutic efficacy and lower immunogenicity.

Interestingly, modifications have not only focused on AAV9 but also using AAV2 due to its proven clinical safety in clinical trials. Heparan sulfate proteoglycan (HSPG) receptors are responsible for entry of AAV2 although other capable receptors have been characterized recently. A modified version of AAV2 incapable of binding to HSPGs, AAV2-HBKO, was shown to have an enhanced transduction efficacy depend-

ing on the route of administration [71]. Furthermore, Choudhury and colleagues created AAV-AS by inserting a poly-alanine peptide to the N-terminus of VP2 capsid protein which resulted in higher transduction in the spinal cord and cerebellum with particularly efficient targeting of striatal neurons in mice [72]. The same group also performed a single round of in vivo selection to characterize novel capsids with superior CNS transduction properties. This led to identification of AAV-B1 as an efficient transducer in multiple areas of the CNS and also in muscle, β-cell, pulmonary alveoli, and retinal vasculature in mice [73]. Another study generated and characterized AAV-S and AAV-F novel capsids with efficient CNS transduction [74]. Importantly, AAV-F had a 65-fold higher expression in astrocytes and 171-fold higher expression in neurons compared to the parental AAV9 vector [74].

One of the most important works in this field was performed using a cre-dependent evolution approach which led to generation of an AAV9 capsid mutant, AAV-PHP.B, with enhanced CNS transduction efficiency [75]. In mice, AAV-PHP.B can pass the BBB and transduce CNS cells at 40-fold higher levels than AAV9 due to the presence of a 7-amino acid insertion in the VP1 capsid protein [75]. However, a comparative study between AAV9 and AAV-PHP.B showed that intravenous injection did not result in enhanced efficacy in marmoset brain [76]. A later study by Hordeaux and colleagues showed that the CNS transduction efficiency of AAV-PHP.B in mice is limited to the C57BL/6Jbackground [77]. It is important to note that there are reports suggesting AAV-PHP.B has differential expression distributions in mice and non-human primates [78]. Interestingly, Liguore and colleagues observed a broad cortical and spinal transduction in 1–2-year-old rhesus macaques after intrathecal administration, although intravascular administration resulted in low transduction [78]. Regardless of these observations, it is worth noting that AAV-PHP.B-GBA1 treatment of A53T a-synuclein Parkinsonism mouse model led to reduced synucleinopathy and recovered behavior, highlighting the potential use of this vector for treatment of neurodegenerative diseases [79].

15.4 AAV-Based Gene Therapy for AD, PD, and ALS: Highlights from the Clinic

15.4.1 Alzheimer's Disease (AD)

AD is one of the most commonly observed age-related neurodegenerative diseases characterized by progressive degeneration of neurons and synapses in the cerebral cortex [80]. Although full mechanistic understanding is missing, neuroinflammation and mitochondrial defects are two factors which can contribute to disease pathology [9, 81]. There have been some successful attempts at reducing neuroinflammation in animal models of Alzheimer's disease, although the results have thus far not been translated to the clinic [82]. Additionally, AAV-mediated expression of CD74 showed beneficial effects by binding to the amyloid precursor protein, therefore inhibiting Aβ production [83].

One of the clinical trials (NCT00876863) aimed at stopping degeneration of the nucleus basalis region in the basal forebrain via delivery of nerve growth factor (NGF). Unfortunately, the stereotactically guided intracerebral injections of AAV2-NGF showed no effect highlighting the need of more accurate targeting [84]. A post-mortem analysis performed following this clinical trial demonstrated a need for improved vector delivery in order to achieve the full potential of the AAV2-NGF treatment [85]. Another therapeutic avenue which made progress in the clinic took advantage of the therapeutic potential of one of the apolipoprotein E (APOE) alleles, specifically APOE2. It has been reported that AAV-mediated delivery of APOE2 in a mouse model resulted in reduction in brain amyloid pathology [86]. Following this, the AAVrh.10hAPOE2-HA vector was tested using several delivery routes in non-human primates, and intracisternal delivery was shown to be the most optimal to deliver APOE2 to the CNS [87].

This approach is currently being tested in the clinic (NCT03634007).

15.4.2 Parkinson's Disease (PD)

Developing therapeutic drugs for the treatment of Parkinson's disease has been challenging, and many attempts resulted in failure, which has shifted the trend toward drug repurposing [88]. Importantly, gene therapy-based clinical trials for the treatment of Parkinson's disease showed promising results although there is room for improved therapeutic efficacy. The use of non-human primate models of Parkinson's disease has been instrumental in the pre-clinical development of gene therapy approaches for Parkinson's disease and helped candidate therapies to move into the clinical testing stage [89]. The current approaches for the treatment of Parkinson's disease can be classified into three groups: (i) enhancing dopamine synthesis, (ii) delivering trophic factors, and (iii) neuromodulation [90]. Below, some of the results obtained from clinical trials are summarized.

The most commonly used method for the enhancement of dopamine synthesis is the delivery of L-amino acid decarboxylase (AADC), an enzyme responsible for dopamine synthesis, using AAV2. Intra-putamen infusion of AAV2. hAADC was shown to be well tolerated with some beneficial effects in two studies [91, 92]. Following these attempts, a new clinical trial (NCT03065192) is currently ongoing using real-time magnetic resonance imaging as a read-out, with an estimated completion date of end of 2021. It is worth highlighting that a recent phase 1 study which used varying doses of AADC1 in an AAV2 vector saw clinical improvements in 3 cohorts of 15 patients [93]. Additionally, there are have been attempts to deliver multiple genes involved in dopamine synthesis, specifically AADC, tyrosine hydroxylase (TH), and GTP cyclohydrolase 1 (GCH1), using lentiviral vectors to enable increased production of endogenous dopamine. These approaches have been clinically evaluated primarily by Palfi and colleagues and followed by studies optimizing the expression cassette for better therapeutic efficacy [94–96].

For delivery of neurotrophic factors to enhance neuronal survival, glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) and neurturin (NRTN, a homologue of GDNF) have been tested. Several early clinical trials using protein infusion showed positive effects; however, this showed limited efficacy, possibly due to limited tissue spread [97, 98]. However, delivery of growth factors by gene therapy may result in a more continuous supply of protein and better tissue spread. A currently clinical trial (NCT01621581) aims to test this idea by putaminal injections of an AAV2-GDNF vector. Delivery of NRTN via AAV systems has also been tested in clinical trials with some beneficial effects, although full recovery of the disease pathology was not observed [99–101].

Another approach involved the use of AAV2-mediated delivery of glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD), which showed some clinical benefits [102, 103]. This treatment was aimed at neuromodulation by transformation of glutamatergic neurons to GABAergic neurons to increase the proportion of inhibitory neurons in subthalamic nucleus. Although more extensive trials are needed, the results of the above studies have shown that AAV-GAD treatment can have beneficial effects for Parkinson's disease patients. The following articles can be consulted for a more detailed analysis and discussion reporting the pre-clinical and clinical progress of gene therapy approaches for Parkinson's disease [90, 104].

15.4.3 Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)

ALS is the most common motor neuron disease which results in paralysis and premature death, with no current cure [105, 106]. However, there have been some pre-clinical studies which have shown progress, aimed at silencing and reducing the expression of superoxide dismutase 1 (SOD1) as a potential treatment. AAV9-mediated silencing of SOD1 by a short hairpin RNA (shRNA) approach was found to slow disease progression

and extend survival in a mouse model of inherited ALS [107], and these studies are ongoing [108]. Similarly, both AAV9 and AAV.rh10 have been used by different groups for testing the therapeutic efficacy of silencing SOD1 by using microRNA approaches [109–111]. Importantly, this latter approach has been shown to be safe and efficacious in cynomolgus macaques [112]. Biferi and colleagues reported an AAVrh10-based approach to deliver anti-sense sequences embedded in U7 small nuclear RNA to successfully silence SOD1 that increased survival in SOD1-G93A mice [113]. Silencing strategies for ALS are also in pre-clinical development for targeting C9orf72 (a hexanucleotide expansion in chromosome 9 which causes ALS) using RNAi-based gene therapy [114, 115]. There have also been attempts for increasing neuroprotection by AAV-mediated expression of neurotrophic factors such as brain-derived growth factor (BDNF), glia-derived growth factor (GDNF), insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1), and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) [116].

Various AAV capsids such as AAV6, AAV9, and AAV.rh10 have been used in pre-clinical studies as potential ALS treatment approaches [117]. The work of Cappella and colleagues can be consulted for a more detailed report for summarizing various aspects of this work [118].

15.5 Conclusions

Advances in genetic engineering have resulted in rapid progression in many areas of biomedical sciences, including gene therapy. To this end, AAVs have been used in pre-clinical studies of a variety of diseases with promising safety and efficacy profiles. This review has focused on the use of AAVs as promising therapeutic tools in age-related neurodegenerative diseases, for which current treatment options are limited and far from effective. To date, many pre-clinical studies using model organisms have shown beneficial effects of AAV-mediated treatments in this area, and ongoing efforts in capsid engineering may result in development of vectors with improved therapeutic indices. Furthermore, recently completed and ongoing clinical trials may help the scientific and medsical communities in the design of new strategies for targeting the underlying pathologies of neurodegenerative diseases.

Funding This work has been supported by Marie Skłodowska-Curie Actions – Individual Fellowships (MSCA-IF) grant agreement no. 797144 (to U.C.).

References

1. Kurtishi A, Rosen B, Patil KS, Alves GW, Moller SG (2019) Cellular proteostasis in neurodegeneration. Mol Neurobiol 56(5):3676–3689
2. Pavlou MAS, Outeiro TF (2017) Epigenetics in Parkinson's disease. Adv Exp Med Biol 978:363–390
3. Burchfield JS, Li Q, Wang HY, Wang RF (2015) JMJD3 as an epigenetic regulator in development and disease. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 67:148–157
4. Li P, Marshall L, Oh G, Jakubowski JL, Groot D, He Y et al (2019) Epigenetic dysregulation of enhancers in neurons is associated with Alzheimer's disease pathology and cognitive symptoms. Nat Commun 10(1):2246. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-10101-7
5. Lin MT, Beal MF (2006) Mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress in neurodegenerative diseases. Nature 443(7113):787–795
6. Cagin U, Duncan OF, Gatt AP, Dionne MS, Sweeney ST, Bateman JM (2015) Mitochondrial retrograde signaling regulates neuronal function. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112(44):E6000–E6009
7. Casajus Pelegay E, Puzzo F, Yilmazer A, Cagin U (2019) Targeting mitochondrial defects to increase longevity in animal models of neurodegenerative diseases. Adv Exp Med Biol 1134:89–110
8. Kumar A, Dhawan A, Kadam A, Shinde A (2018) Autophagy and mitochondria: targets in neurodegenerative disorders. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 17(9):696–705
9. Onyango IG (2018) Modulation of mitochondrial bioenergetics as a therapeutic strategy in Alzheimer's disease. Neural Regen Res 13(1):19–25
10. Selkoe DJ, Hardy J (2016) The amyloid hypothesis of Alzheimer's disease at 25 years. EMBO Mol Med 8(6):595–608
11. Wong YC, Krainc D (2017) α-synuclein toxicity in neurodegeneration: mechanism and therapeutic strategies. Nat Med 23(2):1–13
12. Ghosh R, Tabrizi SJ (2018) Clinical features of Huntington's disease. Adv Exp Med Biol 1049:1–28
13. Cristofani R, Crippa V, Rusmini P, Cicardi ME, Meroni M, Licata NV et al (2017) Inhibition of retrograde transport modulates misfolded protein

accumulation and clearance in motoneuron diseases. Autophagy 13(8):1280–1303
14. Ariosa AR, Klionsky DJ (2016) Autophagy core machinery: overcoming spatial barriers in neurons. J Mol Med (Berl) 94(11):1217–1227
15. Cummings J, Lee G, Ritter A, Sabbagh M, Zhong K (2019) Alzheimer's disease drug development pipeline: 2019. Alzheimers Dement (N Y) 5:272–293
16. Anderson RM, Hadjichrysanthou C, Evans S, Wong MM (2017) Why do so many clinical trials of therapies for Alzheimer's disease fail? Lancet 390(10110):2327–2329
17. Hudry E, Vandenberghe LH (2019) Therapeutic AAV gene transfer to the nervous system: a clinical reality. Neuron 101(5):839–862
18. Deverman BE, Ravina BM, Bankiewicz KS, Paul SM, Sah DWY (2018) Gene therapy for neurological disorders: progress and prospects. Nat Rev Drug Discov 17(9):641–659
19. Taghian T, Marosfoi MG, Puri AS, Cataltepe OI, King RM, Diffie EB et al (2020) A safe and reliable technique for CNS delivery of AAV vectors in the Cisterna Magna. Mol Ther 28(2):411–421
20. Wang D, Gao G (2014) State-of-the-art human gene therapy: Part II. Gene therapy strategies and clinical applications. Discov Med 18(98):151–161
21. Kotterman MA, Chalberg TW, Schaffer DV (2015) Viral vectors for gene therapy: translational and clinical outlook. Annu Rev Biomed Eng 17:63–89
22. Mingozzi F, High KA (2011) Therapeutic in vivo gene transfer for genetic disease using AAV: progress and challenges. Nat Rev Genet 12(5):341–355
23. Rangarajan S, Walsh L, Lester W, Perry D, Madan B, Laffan M et al (2017) AAV5-Factor VIII gene transfer in severe Hemophilia A. N Engl J Med 377(26):2519–2530
24. Nathwani AC, Tuddenham EG, Rangarajan S, Rosales C, McIntosh J, Linch DC et al (2011) Adenovirus-associated virus vector-mediated gene transfer in hemophilia B. N Engl J Med 365(25):2357–2365
25. Nathwani AC, Reiss UM, Tuddenham EG, Rosales C, Chowdary P, McIntosh J et al (2014) Long-term safety and efficacy of factor IX gene therapy in hemophilia B. N Engl J Med 371(21):1994–2004
26. George LA, Sullivan SK, Giermasz A, Rasko JEJ, Samelson-Jones BJ, Ducore J et al (2017) Hemophilia B gene therapy with a high-specific-activity Factor IX variant. N Engl J Med 377(23):2215–2227
27. Maguire AM, Simonelli F, Pierce EA, Pugh EN Jr, Mingozzi F, Bennicelli J, Banfi S, Marshall KA, Testa F, Surace EM et al (2008) Safety and efficacy of gene transfer for Leber's congenital amaurosis. N Engl J Med 358(21):2240–2248
28. Bainbridge JW, Smith AJ, Barker SS, Robbie S, Henderson R, Balaggan K et al (2008) Effect of gene therapy on visual function in Leber's congenital amaurosis. N Engl J Med 358(21):2231–2239
29. Bainbridge JW, Mehat MS, Sundaram V, Robbie SJ, Barker SE, Ripamonti C et al (2015) Long-term effect of gene therapy on Leber's congenital amaurosis. N Engl J Med 372(20):1887–1897
30. Mendell JR, Al-Zaidy S, Shell R, Arnold WD, Rodino-Klapac LR, Prior TW et al (2017) Single-dose gene-replacement therapy for spinal muscular atrophy. N Engl J Med 377(18):1713–1722
31. Balakrishnan B, Jayandharan GR (2014) Basic biology of adeno-associated virus (AAV) vectors used in gene therapy. Curr Gene Ther 14(2):86–100
32. Sonntag F, Schmidt K, Kleinschmidt JA (2010) A viral assembly factor promotes AAV2 capsid formation in the nucleolus. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(22):10220–10225
33. Ayuso E, Mingozzi F, Montane J, Leon X, Anguela XM, Haurigot V et al (2010) High AAV vector purity results in serotype- and tissue-independent enhancement of transduction efficiency. Gene Ther 17(4):503–510
34. Wright JF (2008) Manufacturing and characterizing AAV-based vectors for use in clinical studies. Gene Ther 15(11):840–848
35. Ayuso E, Mingozzi F, Bosch F (2010) Production, purification and characterization of adeno-associated vectors. Curr Gene Ther 10(6):423–436
36. Dong B, Nakai H, Xiao W (2010) Characterization of genome integrity for oversized recombinant AAV vector. Mol Ther 18(1):87–92
37. Wu Z, Yang H, Colosi P (2010) Effect of genome size on AAV vector packaging. Mol Ther 18(1):80–86
38. Ghosh A, Duan D (2007) Expanding adeno-associated viral vector capacity: a tale of two vectors. Biotechnol Genet Eng Rev 24:165–177
39. Trapani I, Colella P, Sommella A, Iodice C, Cesi G, de Simone S et al (2014) Effective delivery of large genes to the retina by dual AAV vectors. EMBO Mol Med 6(2):194–211
40. Colella P, Trapani I, Cesi G, Sommella A, Manfredi A, Puppo A et al (2014) Efficient gene delivery to the cone-enriched pig retina by dual AAV vectors. Gene Ther 21(4):450–456
41. Trapani I, Toriello E, de Simone S, Colella P, Iodice C, Polishchuk EV et al (2015) Improved dual AAV vectors with reduced expression of truncated proteins are safe and effective in the retina of a mouse model of Stargardt disease. Hum Mol Genet 24(23):6811–6825
42. Lostal W, Bartoli M, Bourg N, Roudaut C, Bentaib A, Miyake K et al (2010) Efficient recovery of dysferlin deficiency by dual adeno-associated vector-mediated gene transfer. Hum Mol Genet 19(10):1897–1907
43. Sondergaard PC, Griffin DA, Pozsgai ER, Johnson RW, Grose WE, Heller KN et al (2015) AAV. Dysferlin overlap vectors restore function in dysferlinopathy animal models. Ann Clin Transl Neurol 2(3):256–270
44. Potter RA, Griffin DA, Sondergaard PC, Johnson RW, Pozsgai ER, Heller KN et al (2018) Systemic delivery of dysferlin overlap vectors provides long-term gene expression and functional improvement for dysferlinopathy. Hum Gene Ther 29(7):749–762

45. Kodippili K, Hakim CH, Pan X, Yang HT, Yue Y, Zhang Y et al (2018) Dual AAV gene therapy for duchenne muscular dystrophy with a 7-kb mini-dystrophin gene in the canine model. Hum Gene Ther 29(3):299–311
46. Gao G, Vandenberghe LH, Wilson JM (2005) New recombinant serotypes of AAV vectors. Curr Gene Ther 5(3):285–297
47. Asokan A, Schaffer DV, Samulski RJ (2012) The AAV vector toolkit: poised at the clinical crossroads. Mol Ther 20(4):699–708
48. Pillay S, Meyer NL, Puschnik AS, Davulcu O, Diep J, Ishikawa Y et al (2016) An essential receptor for adeno-associated virus infection. Nature 530(7588):108–112
49. Dudek AM, Zabaleta N, Zinn E, Pillay S, Zengel J, Porter C et al (2020) GPR108 is a highly conserved AAV entry factor. Mol Ther 28(2):367–381
50. Colella P, Ronzitti G, Mingozzi F (2018) Emerging issues in AAV-mediated in vivo gene therapy. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 8:87–104
51. Mingozzi F, Maus MV, Hui DJ, Sabatino DE, Murphy SL, Rasko JE et al (2007) CD8(+) T-cell responses to adeno-associated virus capsid in humans. Nat Med 13(4):419–422
52. Meliani A, Boisgerault F, Hardet R, Marmier S, Collaud F, Ronzitti G et al (2018) Antigen-selective modulation of AAV immunogenicity with tolerogenic rapamycin nanoparticles enables successful vector re-administration. Nat Commun 9(1):4098. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-018-06621-3
53. Salas D, Kwikkers KL, Zabaleta N, Bazo A, Petry H, van Deventer SJ et al (2019) Immunoadsorption enables successful rAAV5-mediated repeated hepatic gene delivery in nonhuman primates. Blood Adv 3(17):2632–2641
54. Bertin B, Veron P, Leborgne C, Deschamps JY, Moullec S, Fromes Y et al (2020) Capsid-specific removal of circulating antibodies to adeno-associated virus vectors. Sci Rep 10(1):864. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-57893-z
55. Verdera HC, Kuranda K, Mingozzi F (2020) AAV Vector immunogenicity in humans: a long journey to successful gene transfer. Mol Ther 28(3):723–746
56. Auricchio A, Kobinger G, Anand V, Hildinger M, O'Connor E, Maguire AM et al (2001) Exchange of surface proteins impacts on viral vector cellular specificity and transduction characteristics: the retina as a model. Hum Mol Genet 10(26):3075–3081
57. Grimm D, Buning H (2017) Small but increasingly mighty: latest advances in AAV vector research, design, and evolution. Hum Gene Ther 28(11):1075–1086
58. Manno CS, Pierce GF, Arruda VR, Glader B, Ragni M, Rasko JJ et al (2006) Successful transduction of liver in hemophilia by AAV-Factor IX and limitations imposed by the host immune response. Nat Med 12(3):342–347
59. Mingozzi F, Meulenberg JJ, Hui DJ, Basner-Tschakarjan E, Hasbrouck NC, Edmonson SA et al (2009) AAV-1-mediated gene transfer to skeletal muscle in humans results in dose-dependent activation of capsid-specific T cells. Blood 114(10):2077–2086
60. Chen YH, Chang M, Davidson BL (2009) Molecular signatures of disease brain endothelia provide new sites for CNS-directed enzyme therapy. Nat Med 15(10):1215–1218
61. Burger C, Gorbatyuk OS, Velardo MJ, Peden CS, Williams P, Zolotukhin S et al (2004) Recombinant AAV viral vectors pseudotyped with viral capsids from serotypes 1, 2, and 5 display differential efficiency and cell tropism after delivery to different regions of the central nervous system. Mol Ther 10(2):302–317
62. Taymans JM, Vandenberghe LH, Haute CV, Thiry I, Deroose CM, Mortelmans L et al (2007) Comparative analysis of adeno-associated viral vector serotypes 1, 2, 5, 7, and 8 in mouse brain. Hum Gene Ther 18(3):195–206
63. Aschauer DF, Kreuz S, Rumpel S (2013) Analysis of transduction efficiency, tropism and axonal transport of AAV serotypes 1, 2, 5, 6, 8 and 9 in the mouse brain. PLoS One 8(9):e76310. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0076310
64. Vite CH, Passini MA, Haskins ME, Wolfe JH (2003) Adeno-associated virus vector-mediated transduction in the cat brain. Gene Ther 10(22):1874–1881
65. Swain GP, Prociuk M, Bagel JH, O'Donnell P, Berger K, Drobatz K et al (2014) Adeno-associated virus serotypes 9 and rh10 mediate strong neuronal transduction of the dog brain. Gene Ther 21(1):28–36
66. Watakabe A, Ohtsuka M, Kinoshita M, Takaji M, Isa K, Mizukami H et al (2015) Comparative analyses of adeno-associated viral vector serotypes 1, 2, 5, 8 and 9 in marmoset, mouse and macaque cerebral cortex. Neurosci Res 93:144–157
67. Foust KD, Nurre E, Montgomery CL, Hernandez A, Chan CM, Kaspar BK (2009) Intravascular AAV9 preferentially targets neonatal neurons and adult astrocytes. Nat Biotechnol 27(1):59–65
68. McLean JR, Smith GA, Rocha EM, Hayes MA, Beagan JA, Hallett PJ et al (2014) Widespread neuron-specific transgene expression in brain and spinal cord following synapsin promoter-driven AAV9 neonatal intracerebroventricular injection. Neurosci Lett 576:73–78
69. Gray SJ, Matagne V, Bachaboina L, Yadav S, Ojeda SR, Samulski RJ (2011) Preclinical differences of intravascular AAV9 delivery to neurons and glia: a comparative study of adult mice and nonhuman primates. Mol Ther 19(6):1058–1069
70. Boutin S, Monteilhet V, Veron P, Leborgne C, Benveniste O, Montus MF et al (2010) Prevalence of serum IgG and neutralizing factors against adeno-associated virus (AAV) types 1, 2, 5, 6, 8, and 9 in the healthy population: implications for gene therapy using AAV vectors. Hum Gene Ther 21(6):704–712
71. Naidoo J, Stanek LM, Ohno K, Trewman S, Samaranch L, Hadaczek P et al (2018) extensive

transduction and enhanced spread of a modified AAV2 Capsid in the non-human primate CNS. Mol Ther 26(10):2418–2430
72. Choudhury SR, Harris AF, Cabral DJ, Keeler AM, Sapp E, Ferreira JS et al (2016) Widespread central nervous system gene transfer and silencing after systemic delivery of novel AAV-AS vector. Mol Ther 24(4):726–735
73. Choudhury SR, Fitzpatrick Z, Harris AF, Maitland SA, Ferreira JS, Zhang Y et al (2016) In vivo selection yields AAV-B1 Capsid for central nervous system and muscle gene therapy. Mol Ther 24(7):1247–1257
74. Hanlon KS, Meltzer JC, Buzhdygan T, Cheng MJ, Sena-Esteves M, Bennett RE et al (2019) Selection of an efficient AAV vector for robust CNS transgene expression. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 15:320–332
75. Deverman BE, Pravdo PL, Simpson BP, Kumar SR, Chan KY, Banerjee A et al (2016) Cre-dependent selection yields AAV variants for widespread gene transfer to the adult brain. Nat Biotechnol 34(2):204–209
76. Matsuzaki Y, Konno A, Mochizuki R, Shinohara Y, Nitta K, Okada Y et al (2018) Intravenous administration of the adeno-associated virus-PHP.B capsid fails to upregulate transduction efficiency in the marmoset brain. Neurosci Lett 665:182–188
77. Hordeaux J, Wang Q, Katz N, Buza EL, Bell P, Wilson JM (2018) The neurotropic properties of AAV-PHP.B are limited to C57BL/6J Mice. Mol Ther 26(3):664–668
78. Liguore WA, Domire JS, Button D, Wang Y, Dufour BD, Srinivasan S et al (2019) AAV-PHP.B Administration results in a differential pattern of CNS biodistribution in non-human primates compared with mice. Mol Ther 27(11):2018–2037
79. Morabito G, Giannelli SG, Ordazzo G, Bido S, Castoldi V, Indrigo M et al (2017) AAV-PHP.B--Mediated global-scale expression in the mouse nervous system enables GBA1 gene therapy for wide protection from synucleinopathy. Mol Ther 25(12):2727–2742
80. Ballard C, Gauthier S, Corbett A, Brayne C, Aarsland D, Jones E (2011) Alzheimer's disease. Lancet 377(9770):1019–1031
81. Heppner FL, Ransohoff RM, Becher B (2015) Immune attack: the role of inflammation in Alzheimer disease. Nat Rev Neurosci 16(6):358–372
82. Alves S, Churlaud G, Audrain M, Michaelsen-Preusse K, Fol R, Souchet B et al (2017) Interleukin-2 improves amyloid pathology, synaptic failure and memory in Alzheimer's disease mice. Brain 140(3):826–842
83. Kiyota T, Zhang G, Morrison CM, Bosch ME, Weir RA, Lu Y et al (2015) AAV2/1 CD74 Gene transfer reduces beta-amyloidosis and improves learning and memory in a mouse model of Alzheime's disease. Mol Ther 23(11):1712–1721
84. Rafii MS, Tuszynski MH, Thomas RG, Barba D, Brewer JB, Team ANS et al (2018) Adeno-associated viral vector (serotype 2)-nerve growth factor for patients with Alzheimer disease: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA Neurol 75(7):834–841
85. Castle MJ, Baltanas FC, Kovacs I, Nagahara AH, Barba D, Tuszynski MH (2020) Postmortem analysis in a clinical trial of AAV2-NGF gene therapy for Alzheimer's disease identifies a need for improved vector delivery. Hum Gene Ther 31(7–8):415–422
86. Zhao L, Gottesdiener AJ, Parmar M, Li M, Kaminsky SM, Chiuchiolo MJ et al (2016) Intracerebral adeno-associated virus gene delivery of apolipoprotein E2 markedly reduces brain amyloid pathology in Alzheimer's disease mouse models. Neurobiol Aging 44:159–117
87. Rosenberg JB, Kaplitt MG, De BP, Chen A, Flagiello T, Salami C et al (2018) AAVrh.10-Mediated APOE2 central nervous system gene therapy for APOE4-associated Alzheimer's disease. Hum Gene Ther Clin Dev 29(1):24–47
88. Athauda D, Foltynie T (2018) Drug repurposing in Parkinson's disease. CNS Drugs 32(8):747–761
89. Pignataro D, Sucunza D, Rico AJ, Dopeso-Reyes IG, Roda E, Rodriguez-Perez AI et al (2018) Gene therapy approaches in the non-human primate model of Parkinson's disease. J Neural Transm (Vienna) 125(3):575–589
90. Hitti FL, Yang AI, Gonzalez-Alegre P, Baltuch GH (2019) Human gene therapy approaches for the treatment of Parkinson's disease: an overview of current and completed clinical trials. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 66:16–24
91. Mittermeyer G, Christine CW, Rosenbluth KH, Baker SL, Starr P, Larson P et al (2012) Long-term evaluation of a phase 1 study of AADC gene therapy for Parkinson's disease. Hum Gene Ther 23(4):377–381
92. Eberling JL, Jagust WJ, Christine CW, Starr P, Larson P, Bankiewicz KS et al (2008) Results from a phase I safety trial of hAADC gene therapy for Parkinson disease. Neurology 70(21):1980–1983
93. Christine CW, Bankiewicz KS, Van Laar AD, Richardson RM, Ravina B, Kells AP et al (2019) Magnetic resonance imaging-guided phase 1 trial of putaminal AADC gene therapy for Parkinson's disease. Ann Neurol 85(5):704–714
94. Palfi S, Gurruchaga JM, Ralph GS, Lepetit H, Lavisse S, Buttery PC et al (2014) Long-term safety and tolerability of ProSavin, a lentiviral vector-based gene therapy for Parkinson's disease: a dose escalation, open-label, phase 1/2 trial. Lancet 383(9923):1138–1146
95. Stewart HJ, Ralph GS, Fong-Wong L, Strickland I, McCloskey L, Barnes L et al (2016) Optimizing transgene configuration and protein fusions to maximize dopamine production for the gene therapy of Parkinson's disease. Hum Gene Ther Clin Dev 27(3):100–110
96. Badin RA, Binley K, Van Camp N, Jan C, Gourlay J, Robert C et al (2019) Gene therapy for Parkinson's disease: preclinical evaluation of optimally config-

ured TH:CH1 fusion for maximal dopamine synthesis. Mol Ther Methods Clin Dev 14:206–216
97. Lang AE, Gill S, Patel NK, Lozano A, Nutt JG, Penn R et al (2006) Randomized controlled trial of intraputamenal glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor infusion in Parkinson disease. Ann Neurol 59(3):459–466
98. Nutt JG, Burchiel KJ, Comella CL, Jankovic J, Lang AE, Laws ER Jr et al (2003) Randomized, double-blind trial of glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF) in PD. Neurology 60(1):69–73
99. Marks WJ Jr, Ostrem JL, Verhagen L, Starr PA, Larson PS, Bakay RA et al (2008) Safety and tolerability of intraputaminal delivery of CERE-120 (adeno-associated virus serotype 2-neurturin) to patients with idiopathic Parkinson's disease: an open-label, phase I trial. Lancet Neurol 7(5):400–408
100. Marks WJ Jr, Bartus RT, Siffert J, Davis CS, Lozano A, Boulis N et al (2010) Gene delivery of AAV2-neurturin for Parkinson's disease: a double-blind, randomised, controlled trial. Lancet Neurol 9(12):1164–1172
101. Warren Olanow C, Bartus RT, Baumann TL, Factor S, Boulis N, Stacy M et al (2015) Gene delivery of neurturin to putamen and substantia nigra in Parkinson disease: a double-blind, randomized, controlled trial. Ann Neurol 78(2):248–257
102. LeWitt PA, Rezai AR, Leehey MA, Ojemann SG, Flaherty AW, Eskandar EN et al (2011) AAV2-GAD gene therapy for advanced Parkinson's disease: a double-blind, sham-surgery controlled, randomised trial. Lancet Neurol 10(4):309–319
103. Niethammer M, Tang CC, LeWitt PA, Rezai AR, Leehey MA, Ojemann SG et al (2017) Long-term follow-up of a randomized AAV2-GAD gene therapy trial for Parkinson's disease. JCI Insight 2(7):e90133. https://doi.org/10.1172/jci.insight.90133
104. Axelsen TM, Woldbye DPD (2018) Gene therapy for Parkinson's disease, an update. J Parkinsons Dis 8(2):195–215
105. Kiernan MC, Vucic S, Cheah BC, Turner MR, Eisen A, Hardiman O et al (2011) Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Lancet 377(9769):942–955
106. Statland JM, Barohn RJ, McVey AL, Katz JS, Dimachkie MM (2015) Patterns of weakness, classification of motor neuron disease, and clinical diagnosis of sporadic amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Neurol Clin 33(4):735–748
107. Foust KD, Salazar DL, Likhite S, Ferraiuolo L, Ditsworth D, Ilieva H et al (2013) Therapeutic AAV9-mediated suppression of mutant SOD1 slows disease progression and extends survival in models of inherited ALS. Mol Ther 21(12):2148–2159
108. Iannitti T, Scarrott JM, Likhite S, Coldicott IRP, Lewis KE, Heath PR et al (2018) Translating SOD1 gene silencing toward the clinic: a highly efficacious, off-target-free, and biomarker-supported strategy for fALS. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids 12:75–88
109. Wang H, Yang B, Qiu L, Yang C, Kramer J, Su Q et al (2014) Widespread spinal cord transduction by intrathecal injection of rAAV delivers efficacious RNAi therapy for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Hum Mol Genet 23(3):668–681
110. Borel F, Gernoux G, Cardozo B, Metterville JP, Toro Cabrera GC, Song L et al (2016) Therapeutic rAAVrh10 mediated SOD1 silencing in adult SOD1(G93A) mice and nonhuman primates. Hum Gene Ther 27(1):19–31
111. Stoica L, Todeasa SH, Cabrera GT, Salameh JS, ElMallah MK, Mueller C et al (2016) Adeno-associated virus-delivered artificial microRNA extends survival and delays paralysis in an amyotrophic lateral sclerosis mouse model. Ann Neurol 79(4):687–700
112. Borel F, Gernoux G, Sun H, Stock R, Blackwood M, Brown RH Jr et al (2018) Safe and effective superoxide dismutase 1 silencing using artificial microRNA in macaques. Sci Transl Med 10(465):eaau6414. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.aau6414
113. Biferi MG, Cohen-Tannoudji M, Cappelletto A, Giroux B, Roda M, Astord S et al (2017) A new AAV10-U7-mediated gene therapy prolongs survival and restores function in an ALS mouse model. Mol Ther 25(9):2038–2052
114. Martier R, Liefhebber JM, Garcia-Osta A, Miniarikova J, Cuadrado-Tejedor M, Espelosin M et al (2019) Targeting RNA-mediated toxicity in C9orf72 ALS and/or FTD by RNAi-based gene therapy. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids 16:26–37
115. Martier R, Liefhebber JM, Miniarikova J, van der Zon T, Snapper J, Kolder I et al (2019) Artificial microRNAs targeting C9orf72 can reduce accumulation of intra-nuclear transcripts in ALS and FTD patients. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids 14:593–608
116. McEachin ZT, Donsante A, Boulis N (2016) Gene therapy for the treatment of neurological disorders: amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Methods Mol Biol 1382:399–408
117. Stoica L, Sena-Esteves M (2016) Adeno associated viral vector delivered RNAi for gene therapy of SOD1 amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Front Mol Neurosci 9:56. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnmol.2016.00056
118. Cappella M, Ciotti C, Cohen-Tannoudji M, Biferi MG (2019) Gene therapy for ALS-A perspective. Int J Mol Sci 20(18):4388. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20184388

16 Is Adipose Tissue the Fountain of Youth? The Impact of Adipose Stem Cell Aging on Metabolic Homeostasis, Longevity, and Cell-Based Therapies

Hanél Sadie-Van Gijsen

Abstract

Aging is driven by four interlinked processes: (1) low-grade sterile inflammation; (2) macromolecular and organelle dysfunction, including DNA damage, telomere erosion, and mitochondrial dysfunction; (3) stem cell dysfunction; and (4) an accumulation of senescent cells in tissues. Adipose tissue is not immune to the effects of time, and all four of these processes contribute to a decline of adipose tissue function with advanced age. This decline is associated with an increase in metabolic disorders. Conversely, optimally functioning adipose tissue generates signals that promote longevity. As tissue-resident progenitor cells that actively participate in adipose tissue homeostasis and dysregulation, adipose stem cells (ASCs) have emerged as a key feature in the relationship between age and adipose tissue function. This review will give a mechanistic overview of the myriad ways in which age affects ASC function and, conversely, how ASC function contribute to healthspan and lifespan. A central mediator in this relationship is the degree of resilience of ASCs to maintain stemness into advanced age and the consequent preservation of adipose tissue function, in particular subcutaneous fat. The last sections of this review will discuss therapeutic options that target senescent ASCs to extend healthspan and lifespan, as well as ASC-based therapies that can be used to treat age-related pathologies, and collectively, these therapeutic applications may transform the way we age.

Keywords

Adipose stem cells · Aging · Longevity · Senescence · Cell-based therapy

16.1 Introduction

Prolonged survival is a product of our "protected aging" in the absence of predation or exposure. As there was historically no evolutionary pressure to survive beyond reproductive age, there was also no pressure to select for genetic mechanisms that would preserve tissue homeostasis in advanced age [1]. As a result, aging is a major risk factor for a host of chronic diseases that affects organs and tissues throughout the body,

H. Sadie-Van Gijsen (✉)
Centre for Cardiometabolic Research in Africa (CARMA), Division of Medical Physiology, Department of Biomedical Sciences, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Stellenbosch University, Tygerberg Campus, Parow, South Africa
e-mail: hsadie@sun.ac.za

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_16

including diabetes, cardiovascular disease, osteoporosis, dementia, and physical frailty (reviewed in [2]). In young organisms, tissue-resident stem cells contribute to general tissue maintenance and repair after injury, but these stem cells deteriorate with age and lose their capacity to perform these functions, resulting in a gradual erosion of tissue function [1].

The four processes that drive biological aging are (1) low-grade sterile inflammation (in other words, inflammation not stimulated by pathogens); (2) macromolecular and organelle dysfunction, including DNA damage, telomere erosion, and mitochondrial dysfunction; (3) stem cell dysfunction; and (4) an accumulation of senescent cells (reviewed in [2]). These processes are intricately linked, and factors that target or promote one of these processes are likely to impact the others as well. All four of these processes occur within adipose tissue, and collectively they bring about age-related adipose tissue dysfunction through a multitude of molecular mechanisms and pathways, as will be discussed in this review.

Fat mass peaks around middle age and is subsequently lost during advanced aging in humans and in animal models (reviewed in [3–5]). However, this often constitutes a loss of total fat mass, while the total percentage body fat remains constant or even increases, as a result of loss of lean muscle mass and the redistribution of fat mass to non-adipose sites such as muscle and liver [4, 5]. With age, there is also a redistribution of fat mass from subcutaneous (SAT) to abdominal visceral depots (VAT) [5, 6]. SAT is usually the biggest adipose depot in the body, with up to fourfold greater volume than VAT [7], although this may be impacted by gender and is obviously affected by visceral obesity. Increased VAT is associated with an adverse metabolic risk profile and predisposes individuals to developing metabolic syndrome [8, 9], and therefore the age-related increase in VAT may form a crucial part of the mechanism underlying the well-documented age-associated increase in metabolic disorders (reviewed in [5, 10]). Correspondingly, increased VAT is associated with reduced lifespan, independent of total body adiposity [11–13].

Apart from adipocytes, adipose tissue contains a significant fraction of non-fat cells, collectively called the stromal-vascular fraction (SVF). This fraction includes endothelial cells, fibroblasts, and macrophages but also contains the tissue-resident preadipocyte progenitors called adipose stem cells (ASCs) [14, 15]. ASCs are a subset of mesenchymal stromal cells (MSCs) and express typical MSC cell surface markers, such as CD73, CD90, and CD105, but not hematopoietic or endothelial markers (reviewed in [16]). ASCs from SAT and VAT (scASCs and vASCs, respectively) are fundamentally different and can be used in cell culture to study adipose depot-specific biological responses and molecular mechanisms [16]. Adipogenesis, the process whereby ASCs differentiate into mature adipocytes, involves profound functional alterations in these cells, including morphological changes, intracellular lipid accumulation, the acquiring of insulin sensitivity, and the production of secreted factors, including adipokines (reviewed in [17]). Adipogenesis is under transcriptional control of master regulators such as C/EBPβ, C/EBPα, and PPARγ2 [18, 19].

A dominant function of adipose tissue is to incorporate cytotoxic free fatty acids into neutral triglycerides within intracellular lipid droplets. Nutrient availability varies widely, and adipose tissue, especially SAT, needs to respond to these variations by maintaining expandability. Fat mass expansion in response to nutrient excess can occur via either adipocyte hyperplasia (an increase in cell numbers) or adipocyte hypertrophy (an increase in cell size). However, adipocyte hypertrophy can have pathological consequences, including hypoxia and inflammation, while adipocyte hyperplasia, which is driven by the differentiation of ASCs into new adipocytes, is metabolically more favourable [16, 20].

Adipose tissue is at the nexus of various (patho)physiological processes, including aging, metabolic homeostasis, and inflammation. As will be discussed below, aging and adipose tissue actually exist within a reciprocal relationship: chronological aging affects adipose tissue function, and adipose tissue dysfunction in turn drives biological aging, loss of function, and reduced

lifespan, while optimal adipose tissue function is associated with longevity. This review will discuss the reciprocal relationship between aging and adipose tissue on a mechanistic level, paying particular attention to the role of ASCs in this relationship. ASCs not only serve as a reservoir of newly formed adipocytes but also actively contribute to the function and dysfunction of adipose tissue [16], and it is therefore not surprising that ASCs have emerged as central mediators of the role of adipose tissue during aging and metabolic disease. However, ASCs have also become extremely popular within the arena of regenerative medicine and stem cell-based therapies, and therefore the final sections of this review will discuss the implications of aging and metabolic dysfunction on the applicability of ASCs for therapeutic purposes.

16.2 The Effects of Chronological Aging on ASC Biology and Function

Both the birth of new adipocytes from ASCs and the lipid turnover within these adipocytes diminish with age, even in relatively young adults (23–38 years old), indicative of functional decline with age [21]. Adipocyte hypertrophy, a marker of impaired adipogenesis [16, 22], was also found to increase with age, independent of body mass index (BMI) [23]. Hypertrophied adipocytes promote a pro-inflammatory milieu within adipose tissue (reviewed in [16, 22]) and may therefore play a causal role in the age-associated increase in adipose tissue inflammation that will be discussed in detail below. However, due to the embedded and scattered nature of ASCs within adipose tissue, mechanistic studies focusing specifically on ASCs in vivo are virtually impossible with currently available technology. Consequently, the effects of physiological parameters such as aging on ASC biology and function are more effectively studied in an in vivo/ex vivo experimental set-up [24], where ASCs from different in vivo backgrounds are isolated and manipulated in primary cell culture ex vivo. Such studies have provided a wealth of mechanistic information on the impact of aging on ASCs. Many studies have found that aging decreases the ex vivo replicative capacity and adipogenic potential of rodent and human ASCs [3, 25–30], and the mechanisms involved will be discussed in more detail in the following sections. However, not all studies are in agreement, as discussed elsewhere [16]. A possible explanation for these discrepancies may lie in the unclear definitions and inconsistent application of age brackets referring to middle age and old age in humans and the corresponding age brackets in mouse and rat models. Specifically, many of the studies on "old" human ASCs discussed below examined cells from individuals younger than 60 years old, while many countries in the world have an average life expectancy of over 80 years of age [31]. As a result, our understanding of ASC (dys)function in truly advanced human age is limited, and most of the available mechanistic knowledge was derived from animal studies. The sections below will discuss findings in animal and human ASCs, detailing the effects of donor age on ex vivo ASC function on a molecular level.

16.2.1 Age-Induced ASC Senescence

16.2.1.1 Senescence Mechanisms: A Brief Overview

Senescence can be simplistically defined as irreversible cell cycle arrest, but actually involves complex molecular consequences for the cell itself and for the environment in which the cell resides. ASCs acquire features of senescence during aging, but whether senescence underpins all of the age-related dysfunctions of ASCs is not clear, as the relative contributions of the various senescence-associated pathways and mechanisms have not been well described in aging ASCs. However, our limited understanding of senescence in ASCs has to be viewed within the context of established senescence mechanisms in other cells. Many excellent publications have given exhaustive mechanistic descriptions of senescence pathways [32–40], mostly from work performed in senescent fibroblasts, and it is not within the scope of this review to recount those

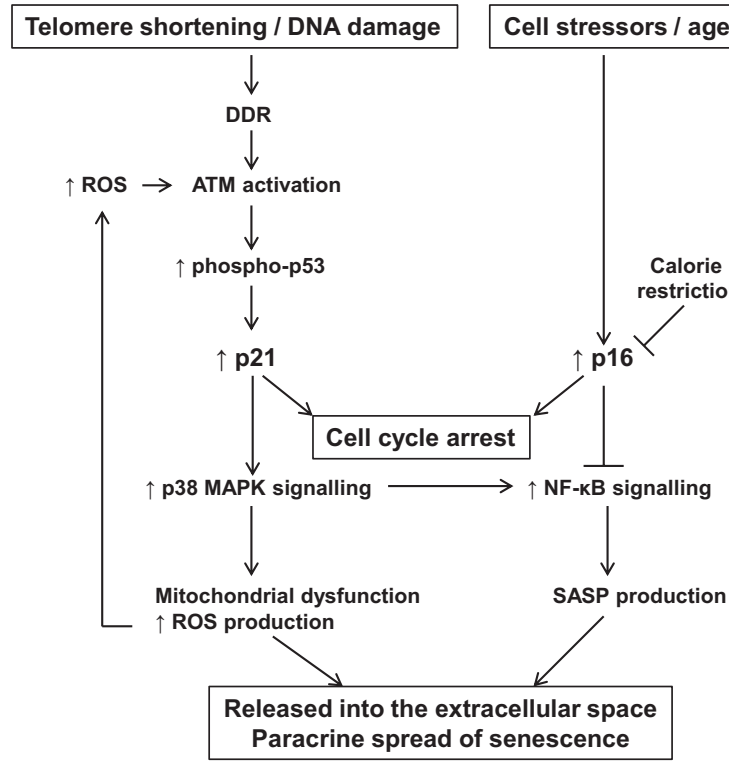


Fig. 16.1 A highly simplified overview of mechanisms and signalling pathways involved in cellular senescence. More detailed information on the individual signalling pathways and molecular connections can be found in Refs. [32–41, 43, 49–59]

descriptions. The tumor-suppressive role of senescence will also not be discussed here. However, a few highlights and salient points on senescence in aging non-cancerous cells will be presented in the following paragraphs and in Fig. 16.1.

The ends of chromosomes are capped by repetitive DNA sequences called telomeres, but telomere repeats are lost during successive cell divisions due to incomplete replication by DNA polymerases. Critical telomere shortening results in chromosomal instability and loss of cell viability. To compensate for telomere erosion and to extend cellular lifespan, new telomeres are added through the action of telomerase enzymes (reviewed in [41]). Beyond the embryonic stages, mammalian telomerase expression is restricted to proliferating cells such as progenitor cells and cancer cells [42]. The maintenance of telomere length may be essential to retain proliferative capacity, especially in adult stem cells [43], as shortened telomeres are regarded as a main trigger of replicative senescence [41]. In non-adipose tissues, the tissue-resident stem cells have the longest telomeres, but these telomeres also shorten with age, suggesting that telomere shortening may contribute to stem cell dysfunction with age [44–46]. Correspondingly, human ASCs possess telomerase activity [47] but also exhibit telomere shortening with age [48].

Senescence is a state of replicative arrest which can be triggered by critical telomere shortening or other forms of DNA damage, or by other cellular stressors independent of DNA damage [33]. Telomere attrition can be accelerated by extrinsic factors such as reactive oxygen species (ROS) [49, 50], suggesting that telomere damage may be a trigger for the onset of premature senescence in response to oxidative stress. Short/damaged telomeres or DNA double-stranded breaks (DSBs) trigger a DNA damage response (DDR) (reviewed in [32, 33, 37]), activating ATM (ataxia telangiectasia mutated) protein kinase which blocks cell cycle progression through the phosphorylation and stabilization of the tumor suppressor p53 and the subsequent transcriptional

upregulation of the cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitor p21 (CIP1) [37, 51]. ATM can also be directly activated by ROS such as H_2O_2 in the absence of DNA damage [51], providing another mechanistic link between oxidative stress and senescence. Long-term activation of p21 promotes mitochondrial dysfunction and increased ROS production through complex p38 MAPK-dependent signalling, resulting in a sustained DDR-ROS feedback loop and the establishment of deep irreversible senescence [34]. Elevated intracellular ROS is therefore both a cause and a consequence of senescence (reviewed in [40]). The diffusion of ROS molecules such as H_2O_2 and nitric oxide (NO) across cell membranes can also induce oxidative DNA damage and senescence in neighboring cells [52, 53].

Deep irreversible senescence is established over a number of days and is characterized by extensive chromatin remodelling and upregulation of genes encoding for secreted factors such as chemokines, cytokines, growth factors, and proteases, especially matrix metalloproteases (MMPs). Combined, these factors constitute the pro-inflammatory senescence-associated secretory phenotype (SASP) that disrupts tissue homeostasis [34, 37, 54]. The SASP is a key feature that distinguishes senescent cells from all other non-proliferating cells. Although the list of potential SASP factors is long, inflammatory factors such as interleukin-6 (IL-6), IL-8, monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1/CCL-2), and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) feature prominently in the SASP of several cell-types, while it is unclear whether tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) should be considered a SASP factor [54]. Master regulators of SASP production include NF-κB and p38 MAPK [35, 54, 55].

The cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitor p16 (Ink4A) arrests cell cycle progression at G1 [56], but p16 upregulation has to be sustained over days before it can induce senescence [57]. Expression of p16 can be upregulated by a variety of cellular stressors to trigger stress-induced premature senescence (SIPS) (reviewed in [58]), but p16 is also upregulated with age, which likely plays a crucial mechanistic role in the age-related decline of replicative potential of adult stem cells [33, 57]. Conversely, p16 upregulation in some tissues can be delayed by calorie restriction [59], which enhances longevity (see Sect. 16.3). p16 does not appear to promote SASP production and may paradoxically inhibit SASP production through the blunting of NF-κB signalling [35].

It can therefore be concluded that the impact of senescent cells within tissues is twofold: (1) senescent progenitor cells are inherently dysfunctional and cannot participate in tissue repair and homeostasis, and (2) through the production and release of SASP factors and ROS, this dysfunction is spread through the tissue microenvironment, inducing senescence in neighboring progenitor cells and creating a tissue-level chronic inflammatory state that has additional deleterious effects on tissue function [37].

16.2.1.2 Markers of Senescence

A commonly used marker to identify individual senescent cells within tissues or among other cells in cell culture is staining for senescence-associated beta-galactosidase (SA-β-gal) activity, although increased β-gal staining is not always a conclusive indicator of senescence (reviewed in [33]). Most studies therefore measure a selection of senescence markers, such as upregulated p53, p21, and p16 (Fig. 16.1), or increased numbers of DNA damage foci that contain γ-phosphorylated forms of the histone H2AX (γH2AX) [60]. By utilizing these markers, it has been demonstrated that senescent cells accumulate within many tissues with age and also specifically at sites of age-related pathology (reviewed in [33, 37]).

16.2.1.3 Characterization of Age-Associated Senescence in ASCs

Some comparisons between young and old human ASCs have demonstrated an age-associated loss of ex vivo replicative potential and adipogenic potential with aging [28–30], although findings from several other studies are not in agreement, in particular with regard to the impact of age on adipogenic potential [61–66]. More recent studies [29, 30, 61–66] have also started to map the impact of age on the expression of senescence markers in human and rodent

Table 16.1 Summary of findings on the effects of age on ex vivo ASC function and expression of senescence markers

Species, depot	Age groups	Effects of age	Reference
Human, SAT	Young: 27 ± 1 y Old: 71 ± 2 y	↓ Proliferation ↓ Adipogenesis ↑ TNFα release from SAT	[28]
Human (women only), orbital fat pad	Young: 20–38 y Old: 50–67 y	↓ Adipocyte size ↓ Frequency of ASCs ↑ Population doubling time ↑ Senescent cells (β-gal staining, p53, p21) ↓ Adipogenesis, ↓PPARγ2	[29]
Human (women only), abdominal SAT	Young: 23.8 ± 0.4 y Old: 57.6 ± 0.9 y	↓ Proliferation, ↓ plastic adherence ↓ Viability, ↑ apoptosis ↑ Senescence (p53, p21, p16) ↑ Pro-inflammatory gene expression ↓ Adipogenesis, ↓ PPARγ	[30]
Human, chest SAT	Children: < 13 y Young adult: < 30 y Old: > 60y	↓ Frequency of ASCs ↑ Senescence (β-gal, p21) ↑ ROS production ↓ Migration potential Delayed, but not impaired adipogenic response	[61]
Human, SAT	Young: < 40 y Old: > 50 y	↓ Frequency of ASCs ↑ Population doubling time ↑ Senescence (β-gal, p16, p21) ↓ SOD activity = adipogenesis	[62]
Human, SAT	Young: 20–29 y Old (1): 50–60 y Old (2): 60–69 y Old (3): 70–79 y	↓ Replicative potential ↑ Population doubling time Non-linear changes in senescence markers (p53, p21) = β-gal staining ↑ Adipogenesis ↑ ROS production, ↓SOD activity	[63, 64]
Mouse (depot unclear)	Young: 6–7 mo Old: 28–31 mo	↓ Proliferation ↑ Senescence (β-gal, p21) ↑ SASP production (IL-6, MCP-1)	[65]
Rat, SAT	Young: 1 mo Old: 24 mo	↑ Senescence (β-gal, p16) ↑ ROS production ↓ Adipogenesis	[66]

Abbreviations and symbols: *β-gal* β-galactosidase staining, *mo* month, *ROS* reactive oxygen species, *SAT* subcutaneous adipose tissue, *SOD* superoxide dismutase, *TNFα* tumor necrosis factor alpha, *y* year, ↑ increase, ↓ decrease; = no change

ASCs. The results of these studies are summarized in Table 16.1.

Most of the studies cited in Table 16.1 demonstrated an age-associated increase in a variety of senescence markers (β-gal, p53, p21, and p16) in human and rodent ASCs, but these changes were not always associated with decreased adipogenic potential. However, age-associated increases in intracellular ROS [63, 64, 66] and decreased superoxide dismutase (SOD) activity [62–64] were reported in several studies, suggesting a failure of anti-oxidant defense mechanisms with increasing age. Notably, scASCs from aged rats were also found to be more sensitive to functional impairment by extracellular ROS than their younger counterparts [67], and the combined findings of these studies [62–64, 66, 67] suggest an age-associated loss in the capability of ASCs to prevent or compensate for oxidative stress.

Genomic instability in adult stem cells may increase during aging, but this remains to be fully characterized [68]. In their comparison of orbital fat ASCs from young (17–25 years) and

older women (50–59 years), Zhang et al. [68] reported that there was no difference in γH2AX levels, a marker of DNA DSBs, between the two groups and that DSB repair pathways were not impaired in older ASCs. However, the efficiency of the base excision repair (BER) pathway was reduced in old ASCs, which resulted in increased sensitivity to ROS damage [68]. In contrast to these findings, scASC cultures from old men (±71 years) exhibited increased levels of γH2AX, together with loss of the proliferation marker Ki67 and higher numbers of β-gal-positive cells than that of younger men (±31 years) [69]. Cultures of perirenal ASCs from very old (30 months) rats also had higher numbers of senescent cells, higher γH2AX levels, and decreased Ki67 expression [69]. Similarly, scASCs from elderly people with atherosclerosis exhibited increased levels of γH2AX, compared to ASCs from younger counterparts [70]. Combined, these studies show that age negatively impacts genomic integrity in ASCs, but that the nature of the DNA damage may be determined by the extent of aging and may possibly be influenced by the adipose tissue depot.

Many studies investigating the mechanisms of cellular senescence have utilized senescent fibroblasts. However, fibroblasts are terminally differentiated and post-mitotic, and therefore cellular aging processes in these cells may be different from those in adult stem cells such as ASCs that maintain some degree of turnover [21, 71, 72]. Therefore, findings on senescence mechanisms in fibroblasts might not be applicable to ASCs. Correspondingly, Shan et al. [73] showed that aged human scASCs did not share a gene expression profile with senescent fibroblasts and other senescent cells and that the transcriptome of aging ASCs is more stable than in other senescent cells. Expression of genes promoting cell cycle progression and protein translation initiation was found to be maintained in old ASCs, but not in other senescent cells, and this may form part of a mechanism whereby ASCs could maintain their "stemness" and support adipose tissue function into old age.

16.2.2 Downregulation of the Adipogenic Gene Program

Even though a loss of adipogenic potential does not always occur with age in ASCs (Table 16.1), it has been shown in rat epididymal ASCs that age has considerable negative effects on the adipogenic gene program [25–27], specifically the expression and activity of the C/EBP family of transcription factors that play an integral role in modulating adipogenesis [74]. These age-related changes culminate in impaired adipogenesis, as shown in Fig. 16.2. A major upstream mediator of changes in this pathway is CUG triplet repeat-binding protein-1 (CUGBP1), which was increased in rat ASCs with age and which has also been shown to increase the translation of p21 in senescent fibroblasts [75], and although this has not been demonstrated in ASCs, it provides a possible molecular connection between ASC senescence and the loss of adipogenic capacity during organismal aging.

16.2.3 Age, Senescence, and Inflammation in ASCs

Aging is associated with chronic low-grade systemic inflammation (reviewed in [54]). Within adipose tissue, the production of pro-inflammatory factors such as IL-6 [76] and TNFα [28] also increases with age. ASCs themselves may be a major source of adipose tissue inflammatory mediators during aging, contributing to the local inflammatory state, but they are also profoundly affected by paracrine inflammation. The conditioned media from aged rat ASCs was found to contain higher levels of TNFα than that of young ASCs and inhibited adipogenesis in young ASCs, demonstrating the paracrine effects of ASC-secreted factors [27] and providing evidence that pro-inflammatory ASCs could suppress adipogenesis in neighboring cells in vivo. In particular, TNFα inhibits adipogenesis through a variety of mechanisms [26, 77, 78], shown in Fig. 16.3, and pro-inflammatory macrophages within adipose tissue may also inhibit adipogenesis through their secretome [79].

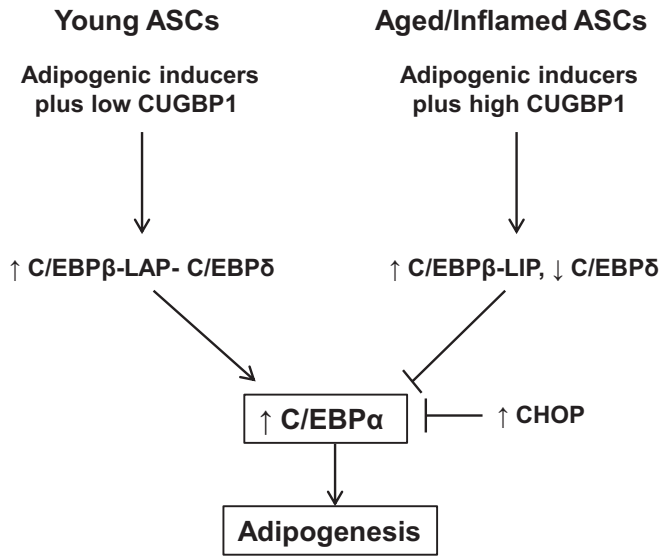


Fig. 16.2 Downregulation of adipogenesis by age or inflammation via changes in the signalling cascade involving C/EBP proteins. C/EBPα is a major pro-adipogenic factor, but while C/EBPα mRNA levels in undifferentiated ASCs do not differ with age, the adipogenesis-related induction of C/EBPα expression is blunted with increased age. During optimal adipogenesis, C/EBPα expression is induced by the full-length C/EBPβ-LAP (C/EBPβ-liver activating protein) in cooperation with C/EBPδ [74]. However, in old rat ASCs, C/EBPβ protein expression during adipogenic induction shifts from the full-length LAP isoform to the truncated dominant-negative LIP (liver inhibitory protein) isoform. CUG triplet repeat-binding protein-1 (CUGBP1) is upregulated in rat ASCs with age, binds to C/EBPβ mRNA, and preferentially increases the translation of C/EBPβ-LIP over C/EBPβ-LAP. Furthermore, expression of C/EBPδ, the heterodimeric partner of C/EBPβ-LAP, is downregulated in aged ASCs, while C/EBP homologous protein 10 (CHOP), an inhibitory heterodimeric partner of C/EBPα and C/EBPβ, is upregulated in rat ASCs with age. Collectively, these events impair the ability of C/EBPβ-C/EBPδ dimers to upregulate C/EBPα expression and stimulate adipogenesis [25, 26]. Decreased C/EBPα and increased C/EBPβ-LIP levels with age also occur in isolated rat adipocytes and adipose tissue [25]

Very few studies have characterized the SASP of ASCs. High p21 expression in ASCs from aged mice was associated with an upregulation of several pro-inflammatory pathways and increased secretion of several pro-inflammatory SASP components, including IL-6, MCP-1/CCL-2, GROα (CXCL-1), and IL-15 [65]. Similarly, compared to their younger counterparts, ASCs from elderly people with atherosclerosis secreted higher levels of the pro-inflammatory SASP components IL-6, IL-8, MCP-1/CCL-2, and MIF (macrophage migration inhibitory factor) [70]. However, aside from these two studies, information is lacking about age-related changes in the composition of the ASC secretome.

Independent of aging, inflammatory cytokines can also induce a SASP-like secretome in ASCs. TNFα treatment (but not IL-6 treatment) of undifferentiated human scASCs induced the production of a pro-inflammatory secretome containing factors such as TNFα itself, macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP-1α), and IL-1β, along with SASP components such as IL-6, IL-8, MCP-1/CCL-2, and MMPs [77]. MCP-1/CCL-2 [80] and IL-6 [81] in adipose tissue promote macrophage infiltration, thereby fuelling adipose tissue inflammation (Fig. 16.3), and correspondingly, the conditioned medium from LPS-activated monocyte-derived macrophages and from adipose tissue-derived macrophages was shown to upregulate the production of the pro-inflammatory SASP components IL-6, IL-8, and MCP-1/CCL-2 by ASCs and to downregulate the secretion of the anti-inflammatory adipokine adiponectin [79].

Circulating lipopolysaccharide (LPS) levels may also increase with age, possibly due to changes in the intestinal epithelial barrier or the

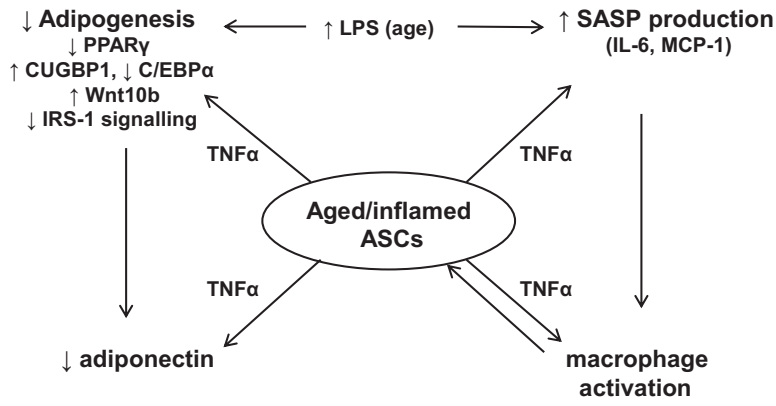


Fig. 16.3 The interlinked nature of ASC aging, senescence, and inflammation, with TNFα as a central mediator. Aged ASCs produce higher levels of TNFα, but TNFα can mimic chronological aging of ASCs on a transcriptional level through the premature upregulation of age-associated C/EBP inhibitors such as CUGBP1 and CHOP in young ASCs, resulting in a blunted adipogenic response [26] (refer to Fig. 16.2). TNFα also inhibits adipogenesis in ASCs by increasing Wnt10b expression, thereby activating anti-adipogenic Wnt signalling [77]. Furthermore, TNFα causes insulin resistance through the alternative phosphorylation and resultant de-activation of insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS1) and through the downregulation of genes associated with insulin sensitivity and adipocyte function such as adiponectin and GLUT4 (reviewed in [78]). Other pro-inflammatory factors can be produced by ASCs themselves or by macrophages (tissue-resident or infiltrating) [79], or may originate from the circulation, such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS) [82]. Regardless of the source, inflammation establishes a self-sustaining feed-forward loop of senescence and inflammation within adipose tissue. Taken together, these findings present a mechanistic connection between age-related increased inflammation and loss of adipocyte differentiation and function in vivo

intestinal microbiota, resulting in low-grade endotoxemia [82]. In cultured mouse scASCs, LPS was shown to decrease adipogenesis and lipogenesis through the downregulation of PPARγ expression. LPS also induced senescence in these cells, characterized by increased p53 phosphorylation, β-gal staining, and ROS production, but telomere length was not affected. Furthermore, the expression of TNFα and several SASP components, including IL-1β, IL-6, MCP-1/CCL-2, and vascular endothelial growth factor-α (VEGFα), was increased by LPS [83]. Collectively, the studies mentioned in this section provide strong evidence for the negative impact of local and systemic inflammatory factors on ASC function in vivo and describe the complex interrelated feedback mechanisms between aging, inflammation, ASC senescence, and adipose tissue dysfunction (Fig. 16.3).

16.2.4 The Role of ASCs in the Age-Related Loss of Lipid Storage Capacity in Adipose Tissue

The loss of total body fat mass with aging [3–5] suggests that the lipid storage capacity of adipose tissue deteriorates with age. Apart from the impaired storage capacity that would inevitably result from defective adipogenesis in vivo, the lipid handling of individual adipocytes may also deteriorate with age. Guo et al. [84] demonstrated that aged ASCs were more susceptible to fatty acid-induced apoptosis than young ASCs. The fatty acid oleate upregulated the expression of PPARγ2 and C/EBPα in young ASCs, but not in old ASCs, indicating that young ASCs can launch an adipogenic response to exogenous lipid overload, resulting in increased lipid storage and reduced lipotoxicity, while this response may be impaired in old ASCs. β-Oxidation in ASCs was also reduced with age, due to mitochondrial dysfunction. These age-related alterations in lipid

handling may establish a cycle of lipotoxicity, with exogenous free fatty acids inducing preadipocyte apoptosis, reduced adipogenesis, and failure to store fatty acids, resulting in increasingly elevated local levels of free fatty acids and aggravated fat tissue dysfunction. Release of these fatty acids into the circulation may also cause ectopic lipid deposition and lipotoxicity in other tissues, such as muscle and pancreas [84].

In addition to the loss of total adipose tissue mass, a specific loss of SAT volume is often observed with age [5, 6] and may involve the accelerated replicative exhaustion of scASCs, relative to vASCs. Cultures of human scASCs were found to contain a higher proportion of rapidly dividing cells than omental ASCs (oASCs) [85], but human scASCs also have shorter telomeres than oASCs [86]. Combined, these two factors may result in scASCs losing their replicative capacity and entering senescence before ASCs in other depots, resulting in loss of adipogenic potential specifically in SAT.

Adipose tissue inflammation may also contribute to the loss of SAT with age. Caso et al. [28] found that the loss of replicative and adipogenic capacity in scASCs from older humans was associated with increased TNFα release from the originating SAT. In addition, the adipogenic potential of isolated scASCs was positively correlated with the SAT/VAT ratio of the donors [28], and taken together, these findings indicate that the age-associated loss of SAT may result from the suppression of adipogenesis in scASCs by increased local concentrations of inflammatory mediators, via the mechanisms discussed above (Figs. 16.2 and 16.3).

The consequence of the age-related loss of SAT can also impact on the ability of the individual to compensate for metabolic insults such as a high-fat diet (HFD). In mice, HFD was initially associated with increased energy expenditure, but aged HFD mice exhibited lower energy expenditure and glucose intolerance. Older mice on HFD developed non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) to a far greater extent than younger HFD-fed mice, indicative of poor adipose tissue storage capacity and lipid spill-over with age. While this study found that there was no age-specific increase in senescence markers in the SAT of lean animals, HFD induced senescence in the SAT of aged mice [87]. These findings support the idea that the SAT is an important site of metabolic compensation and that the loss of this function with age may underpin many age-related metabolic disturbances.

When considering the findings of the studies described in this section, it can therefore be concluded that, consistent with the general features of senescent cells described above, senescent ASCs are dysfunctional in two main ways: (1) they have impaired capacity for adipogenesis and lipid storage, and (2) they secrete SASP factors that negatively impact the adipogenesis and lipid storage of neighboring ASCs and mature adipocytes. Collectively, these two mechanisms drive adipose tissue dysfunction through the interrelated pathways of lipotoxicity, inflammation, and insulin resistance (reviewed in [20]).

16.3 Adipose Tissue as a Source of Longevity Signals

The mechanisms described in Sect. 16.2 underscore the notion that aging has a profound impact on the biology and function of adipose tissue and ASCs. However, it has emerged that the reverse is also true, that adipose tissue can indeed play a major role in how we age, in terms of both healthspan and lifespan, suggesting that adipose tissue may generate systemic signals that can regulate organismal aging. This may take the form of physical signals, i.e., circulating factors that emanate from adipose tissue to impact the function of both adipose and non-adipose tissues, thereby influencing the risk for age-related metabolic disorders and other diseases affecting mortality. Two factors appear to hold the key to the effects of adipose tissue on longevity: (1) the relative distribution of fat mass between SAT and VAT and (2) the modulation of adipose tissue function by calorie restriction (CR). The interlinked nature of these two factors and the role of ASCs in regulating lifespan and healths-

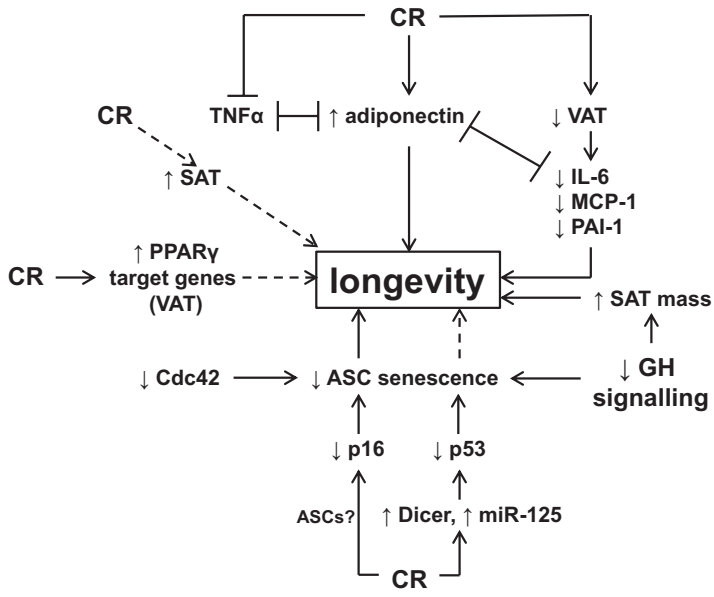


Fig. 16.4 The multitude of mechanisms whereby calorie restriction (CR) and other signals may enhance longevity through the regulation of adipose tissue and ASC function. Mechanisms which have been directly demonstrated are shown with solid arrows, while putative or inferred mechanisms are shown with dashed arrows. CR reduces VAT mass [106, 107], and decreased VAT is associated with reduced circulating levels of IL-6 and MCP-1/CCL2 [91]. Circulating IL-6 levels are positively associated with mortality [93, 94], and therefore a reduction in IL-6 levels may promote longevity. Dietary restriction (DR) in humans decreases circulating PAI-1 levels [108], which may prevent atherothrombosis [92] and promote longevity. DR also increases circulating adiponectin levels [112]. Adiponectin is independently associated with longevity [97], but adiponectin also suppresses TNFα [101] and IL-6 [99] production, while both IL-6 [100] and TNFα [102] suppress adiponectin production. CR also downregulates other components of the TNFα signalling cascade [109, 110]. It is not clear whether the effects of adiponectin on lifespan are mediated solely through the suppression of IL-6 and TNFα, or whether other mechanisms are involved as well. CR was found to increase expression of PPARγ target genes in VAT [111], but a direct connection to extended lifespan was not demonstrated. CR was also found to prevent the age-related downregulation of Dicer and miR-125 and the subsequent upregulation of p53 in ASCs, thereby reducing ASC senescence [116, 117], but a direct connection to lifespan was not demonstrated in these studies. CR delays the age-related upregulation of p16 in some tissues [59], but this has not been demonstrated for ASCs. However, clearance of p16-expressing cells is associated with extended lifespan [123, 124]. Cdc42 activity increases with age and is associated with reduced lifespan and healthspan and increased ASC senescence [30, 66, 119], but it is not clear whether CR can reverse this. CR may also preserve SAT mass independent of effects on VAT [121], but this has not been directly demonstrated. Reduced GH signalling is associated with increased lifespan, preserved SAT mass, and decreased senescent cell burden in adipose tissue [113–115]

pan will be discussed below and are summarized in Fig. 16.4.

16.3.1 Adipose Depot-Specific Contributions to Lifespan Determination

While general obesity is in itself a risk factor for many diseases [88], increased VAT has specifically been linked to increased morbidity and mortality associated with insulin resistance, T2DM, and cardiovascular disease [89], likely due to the heightened pro-inflammatory nature of VAT, compared to SAT (reviewed in [13, 90]). In humans, the ratio of VAT to SAT increases with age (reviewed in [5]), but increased VAT reduces lifespan and increases mortality, independent of total body adiposity [11, 13]. VAT mass is positively associated with the circulating levels of several pro-inflammatory cytokines, including IL-6 and MCP-1/CCL-2 [91], and is also a major

source of PAI-1 [92]. Plasma IL-6 levels have emerged as a predictor of mortality [93, 94], while PAI-1 contributes to the pathogenesis of atherothrombosis [92]. Therefore, in addition to predisposing individuals to insulin resistance and diabetes, VAT also produces circulating factors that directly impacts mortality, although these may form part of converging pathophysiological mechanisms. By extension, removal of VAT or reduction of VAT-derived factors should then reduce mortality. Correspondingly, in rats, surgical removal of VAT enhanced lifespan [12] and also strongly downregulated the expression of TNFα in SAT [95, 96], which would reduce inflammation and SASP production and improve lipid storage capacity in SAT, as discussed above.

16.3.2 Circulating Factors and Longevity

One adipose-derived factor (adipokine) that may be pivotal in enhancing longevity is adiponectin. High circulating levels of adiponectin were found in individuals of extremely advanced age (>95 years old), independent of BMI [97], and was also associated with an increased SAT/VAT ratio [98]. A causal relationship between adiponectin and longevity may reside in the ability of adiponectin to downregulate IL-6 production. In cultured porcine ASCs, adiponectin prevented the upregulation of IL-6 expression by inflammatory mediators such as LPS [99]. Conversely, in cultured human scASCs, IL-6 treatment reduced adiponectin gene expression [100]. Given the positive association of IL-6 levels with mortality [93, 94] and the increase in IL-6 expression in adipose tissue with age [76], it may be hypothesized that the balance between IL-6 and adiponectin production could be a determining factor in lifespan, although this has not been conclusively demonstrated in humans. In addition, Maeda et al. [101] showed that adiponectin suppresses TNFα expression in adipose tissue and reduces TNFα levels in circulation, which would reduce inflammation and inhibit SASP production within adipose tissue (Fig. 16.3). Conversely, TNFα blocks the release of adiponectin from adipose tissue [102]. These "balancing acts" may form part of a mechanism whereby adiponectin could preserve ASC and adipose tissue function into advanced age, or alternatively, whereby a reduction in lifespan could result from the negative impact of chronic inflammation on adiponectin production (Fig. 16.4).

CR is the only documented non-genetic, non-surgical, and non-pharmacological ("life-style") intervention to date that can delay the onset of many age-related disorders and extend lifespan across vertebrate and non-vertebrate species, although the evidence in humans is understandably scant [88, 103]. In the laboratory, CR is achieved by restricting the calorie intake of the animals by 20–40% of that of ad libitum-fed counterparts. This reduction in food intake results in a substantial reprogramming of energy balance, body mass, and body composition, with a typical reduction in fat mass (reviewed in [13]). Nutrient signalling such as the mTOR pathway is also profoundly affected by CR [104, 105]. While it is controversial whether the reduction in fat mass actually contributes to the effects of CR on longevity [13, 103], CR affects the function of adipose tissue and ASCs on a molecular level, as will be discussed below (Fig. 16.4), and these adipose-specific effects have a broader impact on a systemic level. Findings from animal models suggest that CR may preferentially target VAT, which may account for at least some of the lifespan-extending effects of CR, due to the impact of VAT on lifespan as discussed above. In rats, CR over 18 months reduced total fat mass to 33% but VAT mass to less than 20% of that of their ad libitum-fed counterparts [106], and CR in monkeys reduced VAT mass within 12 months [107]. In addition, the surgical removal of VAT in young rats achieved the same extension of lifespan as CR [12]. Dietary restriction (DR, the human equivalent of CR) induced moderate weight loss and reduced circulating PAI-1 levels in elderly obese individuals [108], suggestive of direct effects on VAT function by DR.

The combination of VAT reduction and CR may promote insulin sensitivity and decrease the risk of developing age-related insulin resistance and T2DM (reviewed in [90]), but CR also has

dramatic effects on gene expression in adipose tissue that may directly contribute to preserving adipose tissue function. Long-term CR in mice upregulated the expression of numerous genes involved in metabolism, substrate utilization, and energy production in epididymal fat, while a large number of inflammatory genes were downregulated, in particular genes in the TNFα signalling cascade [109, 110]. In rats, CR was found to have a far greater transcriptional effect in VAT, compared to the heart, with the majority of the transcriptional effects of CR in rat VAT serving to reverse age-associated changes. PPARγ target genes involved in adipogenesis were downregulated in VAT with age, but not with CR, suggesting that CR does not reduce fat mass by downregulating adipogenesis, but rather that it preserves adipogenic potential to reduce the risk of adipocyte hypertrophy and inflammation. CR also downregulated immune response genes and preserved the expression of cell cycle regulatory genes in VAT, which may delay the onset of senescence [111]. Moreover, DR increased the circulating adiponectin levels of both diabetic and non-diabetic subjects [112], suggesting a possible convergence of mechanisms involved in the lifespan-extending effects of CR and adiponectin (Fig. 16.4).

Findings in genetic models of longevity have also demonstrated a role for ASCs in the relationship between adipose tissue function and lifespan. Decreased growth hormone (GH) activity is associated with increased lifespan in rodent models, while overexpression of GH has the opposite effect (reviewed in [113]). This is consistent with observations in humans that a low level of circulating insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), which acts downstream of GH, is associated with longevity, especially in women [114]. Long-lived GH-deficient or GH-resistant mice are not subject to the age-associated loss of SAT mass observed in their wild-type littermates [113, 115], and the adipogenic potential of scASCs is accordingly enhanced in GH receptor (GHR) KO mice [113]. GHR deficiency also results in a decreased senescent cell burden in various adipose tissue depots. These findings indicate a role for GH in modulating ASC function as we age. However, as alterations in GH levels and signalling affect circulating levels of IGF-1, insulin, and glucose [113], the mechanism involved is not clear at this stage.

16.3.3 Molecular Mediators of Longevity: Dicer and Cdc42

Mouse and human adipose tissue and ASCs were found to exhibit an age-related downregulation of miRNA processing machinery, in particular Dicer, a cytoplasmic enzyme involved in the late processing events of miRNAs. This was associated with decreased expression levels of several miRNA species, but a concomitant accumulation of miRNA precursors, consistent with impaired miRNA processing capacity. Cultured Dicer-KO mouse scASCs exhibited increased population doubling time and upregulation of senescence markers such as increased total p53 and phospho-p53, increased p21 expression, and higher numbers of β-gal-positive cells [116]. Loss of Dicer expression downregulated miR-125 expression, which allowed for the upregulation of its target gene, p53 [117], thereby driving senescence in ASCs. Mice with white adipose tissue-specific KO of Dicer had higher levels of phospho-p53 in adipose and other tissues, indicating that adipose Dicer KO had effects beyond adipose tissue that mimicked premature aging, although it is not clear how these effects were communicated at the systemic level. The downregulation of Dicer expression and subsequent deficiencies in miRNA processing was prevented with CR, providing another candidate mechanism whereby the effects of CR on adipose tissue and ASCs could promote longevity [116] (Fig. 16.4). It is noteworthy that CR has also been found to enhance the capacity of hepatocytes to repair oxidative DNA damage [118], and although this has not been shown in ASCs, a similar mechanism may contribute to the CR-mediated delay in senescence in ASCs.

Comparisons between ASCs from young and old rats and humans also identified a role for Cdc42 (cell division control protein 42), a member of the Rho GTPase family, in lifespan as well

as ASC senescence and dysfunction. Increased age was associated with increased levels of Cdc42-GTP, the active form of Cdc42, in both rat and human ASCs [30, 66]. In rat ASCs, this correlated with decreased replicative and adipogenic potential, increased expression of senescence markers, and increased ROS production, all of which was at least partially reversed by pharmacological inhibition of Cdc42-GTP by CASIN [66]. Similar to these findings in rat ASCs, pharmacological inhibition of Cdc42-GTP with ML141 reversed the age-related decrease in proliferation, viability, and plastic adherence, as well the enhanced pro-inflammatory gene expression profile and loss of adipogenic potential in aged human ASCs [30]. In mice, Cdc42 activity was also found to increase with aging in various tissues, and constitutive activation of Cdc42 resulted in reduced lifespan, loss of SAT, and several age-associated impairments [119] (Fig. 16.4). These findings are consistent with the idea that longevity is closely tied to the preservation of SAT and ASC function, and taken together, these studies imply a mechanism whereby Cdc42 activity may affect lifespan through the modulation of ASC function.

16.3.4 Calorie Restriction: Guardian of SAT Function?

The idea that a reduction in fat mass through methods such as CR is beneficial to lifespan has long been controversial [13, 103, 120]. The results of Stout et al. [113] and Wang et al. [119] suggest that preservation of fat mass, especially SAT, is associated with longevity, and given the various roles of SAT in maintaining metabolic homeostasis into old age, as described above, such a mechanism would make intuitive sense. In support of this, Liao et al. [121] observed that among various strains of inbred mice, the reduction of fat mass with CR, compared to ad libitum feeding, was actually negatively correlated with lifespan, although the effects of CR on individual fat depots were not determined. However, given that SAT is the biggest adipose depot in the body, it may be reasonably assumed that when fat mass loss is reflected in body mass loss, the SAT mass is being reduced, possibly in parallel with reductions of other adipose depots. Taken together, the findings described in this section demonstrate that adipose tissue function plays a fundamental role in longevity, by regulating glucose and lipid metabolism and by generating signals that modulate lifespan on a systemic level. In particular, the preservation of optimal adipose tissue and ASC function, in particular in SAT, forms an indispensable part of this mechanism. Given the information in the paragraphs above, perhaps the controversy may then be addressed as follows: the key to longevity does not reside in the actual fat mass, but in the function of individual adipose depots. Ideally, SAT mass should be preserved into old age, for optimal lipid storage and prevention of lipotoxicity, provided that the SAT does not become pro-inflammatory. Interventions that preferentially reduce VAT mass may be desirable, but even in the absence of a loss of VAT mass, a shift in the production of circulating factors toward a less inflammatory phenotype, in particular increased adiponectin production, may achieve the same goal. Crucially, the preservation of adipogenic potential and delayed onset of senescence in ASCs provides adipose tissue-level resilience into old age and protects against adipose inflammation that disrupts systemic metabolic regulation and predisposes to age-related diseases.

16.4 Alleviating the Effects of Senescent ASCs In Vivo

16.4.1 Targeting Senescent ASC: Senolytics

Aging is a major risk factor for a host of chronic diseases, which often cluster within individuals, resulting in multi-morbidity [122]. The "geroscience hypothesis" posits that if the interrelated aging processes of sterile inflammation, progenitor cell dysfunction, and increased burden of senescent cells can be targeted therapeutically, this can delay or prevent age-related diseases or disabilities as a group, rather than attempting to treat individual conditions. Consequently, if

senescent cells within adipose tissue mediate tissue-level and systemic metabolic dysregulation to reduce healthspan and lifespan, then the clearance of such cells should restore metabolic homeostasis, relieve age-related disorders and frailty, and promote longevity (reviewed in [2]), and there is indeed promising evidence to support this idea. Clearance of p16-expressing cells via a drug-induced "suicide" transgene in wild-type and progeroid mice resulted in delayed initiation and progression of age-related pathologies and frailty, preserved fat mass including SAT, restored adipogenesis, reduced inflammation, and extended lifespan [123, 124]. Of specific importance here was the association between preserved SAT mass and increased lifespan, supporting the notion that longevity signals originate in the SAT, as described in Sect. 16.3.

Transgene strategies to reduce senescent cell burden are not currently a feasible treatment option in humans, but efforts in the past 5 years have identified pharmaceutical compounds that may serve the same purpose. Senescent cells remain viable and metabolically active, in particular with regard to the production of SASP factors, but they are also more stress-resistant than non-senescent cells, with greater reliance on anti-apoptotic and pro-survival pathways, and are therefore more difficult to clear from tissues. Senolytic drugs can trigger the selective clearance of senescent cells from in vitro cultures and from tissues in vivo by circumventing the resistance of senescent cells to apoptosis through targeting senescence cell anti-apoptotic pathways (SCAPs) (reviewed in [10, 125]). Dasatinib (D) and quercetin (Q) (both broad-spectrum kinase inhibitors) have been identified as senolytics with specific activity to induce apoptosis in culture-senescent ASCs, but not proliferating non-senescent ASCs [125]. In addition, a single dose of D + Q was sufficient to reduce the number of senescent cells in the adipose tissue of aged mice within 5 days. However, senescent cells from different tissue origins vary in their susceptibility to individual senolytic drugs [125, 126], and therefore it may be advisable to devise tissue-targeted senolytic regimes for improved efficacy. Conversely, as senescent cells employ common SCAP pathways, many senolytics may have broad-spectrum effects and could alleviate a range of dysfunctions, albeit at varying degrees of efficacy.

Clinical trials of senolytics are only now starting to emerge, and therefore the long-term side effects and consequences of these agents are not yet known. As senolytics function to remove senescent cells from tissues, rather than continuously occupying a single molecular target, they can be administered intermittently through short-course treatments [10]. Such treatment regimens may reduce off-target side effects such as delayed wound healing, where senescent cells play a crucial role [127], while the therapeutic effects would be long-lasting, depending on the rate of senescent cell re-accumulation. In addition, as senescent cells do not divide, they also cannot acquire mutations to induce drug resistance [10]. Moreover, as many of the deleterious effects of senescent cells are mediated via the SASP, even partial clearance of senescent cells should have beneficial effects. However, the true endpoints of senolytic treatment in humans, such as increased lifespan and healthspan, occur over decades and are therefore impossible to measure in clinical trials [10]. Short-term surrogate markers therefore have to be utilized instead, but their validity and correlation with longer-term outcomes will only be determined in the future. In a phase I pilot study [128], a 3-day course of D + Q was administered to patients with diabetes and chronic kidney disease, and the effects were assessed 11 days after cessation of treatment. Adipose tissue histology demonstrated a decrease in the number of senescent cells within adipose tissue, and ASC cultures exhibited enhanced growth rate over time, consistent with the prior removal of non-replicating senescent cells from the SVF. In addition, circulating levels of several SASP components, such as interleukins and MMPs, were reduced, supporting the systemic impact of senolytic treatment [128]. This study provided evidence that senolytic treatment does have measurable short-term effects in humans that would be consistent with a long-term improvement of healthspan and lifespan and therefore paves the way for future senolytic trial design.

16.4.2 Targeting the SASP

An alternative strategy for mitigating the negative impact of senescent cells in adipose tissue may be to suppress the production of inflammatory SASP components with conventional drug treatment. In support of such an approach, glucocorticoids such as corticosterone and cortisol have been found to reduce the production and secretion of several pro-inflammatory SASP components by senescent fibroblasts in culture [129], although similar effects have not been demonstrated in ASCs or adipocytes. The anti-diabetes drug metformin, which blocks NF-κB signalling in senescent fibroblasts in vitro [130], was unexpectedly found to extend the lifespan of diabetic patients beyond that of non-diabetic counterparts [131]. Correspondingly, in healthy aging mice, chronic metformin administration had insulin-sensitizing and anti-oxidant effects in the liver and improved healthspan and lifespan, although the contribution of adipose-specific effects of metformin was not determined [132]. Similar to metformin, the mTOR inhibitor rapamycin was also found to inhibit NF-κB signalling and SASP production in senescent fibroblasts [133] and extended the lifespan of aged mice [134]. However, as is the case for metformin, the impact of rapamycin on senescence in ASCs and adipose cells has not been examined.

Ruxolitinib, an inhibitor of the Janus kinases (JAK)1/2 that form part of the JAK/STAT pathway, shows promise as an adipose-specific SASP inhibitor. In culture-senescent human ASCs, different JAK inhibitors, including ruxolitinib, were all found to downregulate the expression of various pro-inflammatory SASP components [69]. In aged mice, ruxolitinib administration decreased systemic and adipose tissue inflammation and reduced frailty, although the effect on lifespan was not reported [69]. In a related study, the same authors also found that ruxolitinib treatment of aged mice had several beneficial metabolic effects, including preservation of SAT mass, enhanced adipogenesis, and lipid storage in fat [135]. These effects were attributed to a reduction in the expression of the ASC SASP factor activin A [135]. Notably, increased serum activin A has been associated with increased cardiometabolic risk factors in humans, providing more evidence of the systemic impact of SASP factors [136]. Importantly, several of the effects of ruxolitinib only occurred in old animals, suggesting a specific targeting of senescent cells, of which the burden in adipose and other tissues increases with old age [69, 135]. In addition, IL-6, of which the expression in adipose tissue and ASCs increases with age [65, 76], activates the JAK/STAT pathway [137], which may also explain why inhibition of this pathway with ruxolitinib has specific effects in aged animals. Taken together, these findings indicate that ruxolitinib may enhance healthspan, if not lifespan, in aged organisms, by targeting adipose tissue and ASC inflammation. However, although ruxolitinib is FDA-approved for treating conditions such as myelofibrosis, it has considerable side effects in humans, including anemia and thrombocytopenia [138], and therefore further assessments need to be performed before this drug can be recommended for alleviating age-related metabolic dysfunction in the clinical setting.

16.5 Implications of Age for the Use of ASCs in Cell-Based Therapy

Stem cell therapy, where stem cells are used to treat or prevent a disease, can be either autologous, where the patient's own stem cells are used, or allogeneic, where cells from a genetically similar donor are used. Both of these strategies have advantages and disadvantages: autologous therapy will circumvent immune rejection, but stem cells from individuals may be compromised due to age or disease. Conversely, allogeneic therapy allows for "off-the-shelf" products and the choice of stem cells with increased therapeutic fitness, but may fail due to immune rejection. MSCs, including ASCs, possess several features that make them ideal for either autologous or allogeneic stem cell therapy. ASCs are easily accessible and highly proliferative in culture, and large numbers of cells can

therefore be generated with ease. In addition, they can migrate and home into sites of tissue injury, and they are immunoprivileged in that they do no elicit an immune response and furthermore generate an immunosuppressive environment through the paracrine actions of secreted cytokines (reviewed in [139]). For these reasons, ASCs are becoming increasingly popular for use in therapeutic interventions in a variety of degenerative or inflammatory diseases (reviewed in [140]). However, given the fundamental changes in ASC biology that occur with organismal aging outlined above, including senescence, loss of replicative potential, and adoption of a pro-inflammatory phenotype, it is vital to assess the impact of individual donor characteristics on the performance of ASCs in a therapeutic setting. Depending on the application, ASCs can be directly transplanted through injection or infusion, but the therapeutic effects of ASCs are mostly derived from their secretome, rather than their repopulation of injured sites or their multipotency for differentiation (reviewed in [141]). Therefore, aside from the potential loss of fitness of aged ASCs and the resultant failure of the ASC-based treatment, it is also possible that aged dysfunctional ASCs may actively introduce harmful effects in the recipient organism through their pro-inflammatory secretome. However, the effects of in vivo aging on human ASC function ex vivo vary quite considerably between individuals [142], suggesting that ASCs from individual donors should ideally be evaluated on own merit to determine suitability in therapeutic applications.

16.5.1 Therapeutic Implications of Donor Age

16.5.1.1 Loss of Function (Passive Dysfunction)

Limited information is available on the effect of donor age on the capacity of ASCs to promote angiogenesis, which is an important feature of injury repair. Duscher et al. demonstrated a loss of vasculogenic potential for aged mouse ASCs using in vitro and in vivo assays [143]. Similarly, in a rat model of myocardial infarction (MI), transplanted ASCs from old rats exhibited impaired capacity for engraftment, angiogenesis, and structural repair, which was attributed to the increased sensitivity of aged ASCs to ROS damage, in particular the dramatically elevated ROS levels in the MI micro-environment [67]. Of note, old ASCs performed better than old bone marrow stem cells (BMSCs) in animals undergoing surgical ventricular reconstruction, due to lower expression of several senescence markers and better angiogenic potential of old ASCs, compared to old BMSCs [144]. Surprisingly, given the interest in ASCs for regenerative medicine, the impact of age on the pro-angiogenic effects of ASCs in the clinical setting has not been studied, and therefore the clinical relevance of these animal studies still remains to be determined.

Wang et al. [65] demonstrated that ASC cultures from aged mice had a significantly higher proportion of cells expressing p21 than their young counterparts, and these cells also exhibited higher expression of pro-inflammatory SASP factors such as IL-6 and IL-8. Correspondingly, direct intraperitoneal transplantation of ASCs from young animals was able to reverse physical frailty in aged mice, whereas transplanted old ASCs could not, again indicating that senescent ASCs may result in failure of cell-based therapies. In contrast, Dufrane et al. [145] found that donor age did not affect the success of ASCs for use in manufacturing a complex osteogenic graft for bone non-union injury, suggesting that the applicability of aged ASCs may depend on the specific therapeutic application.

16.5.1.2 Acquisition of Pathological Features (Active Dysfunction)

Due to their immunomodulatory properties, ASCs are considered for use in the treatment of chronic inflammatory disorders. However, ASCs from aged individuals with atherosclerosis were found to have a predominantly pro-inflammatory secretome, with increased levels of IL-6, IL-8, and MCP-1/CCL-2 [70], rendering these cells useless for therapeutic purposes and creating the likelihood that these cells may actively

contribute to pathology. Accordingly, infusions of young ASCs into aged mice with bleomycin-induced pulmonary fibrosis (a model for progressive idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis that occurs mainly in older humans) reduced fibrosis, inflammation, apoptosis, and oxidative stress in lung tissue, while aged ASCs could not reverse disease progression and actually exhibited increased expression of MMP2, which is directly associated with disease severity [146]. These findings suggest not just a lack of therapeutic potential of old ASCs but also provide in vivo evidence that old ASCs may actively contribute to pathology under certain conditions.

Pre-clinical investigations have also provided evidence that the immunomodulatory actions of injected ASCs may be utilized to treat a diverse range of conditions, including mucosal immunosenescence [147, 148], ovarian aging [149], and diabetic osteoarthritis [150]. However, these treatments all rely on an optimal ASC secretome, and it is likely that such treatment strategies would fail if the administered ASCs are senescent and pro-inflammatory and may even result in aggravated pathology, although this has not been directly demonstrated. The menopausal status of female ASC donors may also influence the immunomodulatory capabilities of isolated ASCs [151]. Collectively, these findings highlight the need for comprehensive evaluation of both the ASC donors and the isolated ASCs, especially when autologous application of ASCs is being considered in aged or metabolically compromised individuals.

16.5.1.3 Transplanted ASCs as a Treatment for Metabolic Syndrome?

Various consequences of the age-related loss of SAT on healthspan and lifespan were discussed in detail in the preceding paragraphs, but SAT function can also affect the ability of the individual to compensate for metabolic insults such as a high-fat diet (HFD). Taketani et al. [87] demonstrated that HFD in aged mice induced glucose intolerance, NAFLD, and senescence in SAT. ASCs from aged HFD mice also displayed reduced expression of stemness markers and diminished capacity for differentiating into white and brown adipocytes. Injection of young ASCs into the SAT of aged HFD mice improved metabolic parameters and resolved NAFLD, although this was not achieved when using ASCs from aged HFD mice. ASC transplant also reduced SAT inflammation, reflected in decreased expression of inflammatory markers such as MCP-1/CCL2, TNFα, and PAI-1. Therefore, ASC transplant restored the capacity of SAT to compensate for HFD-induced metabolic disturbances, which holds tremendous potential for the treatment of obesity, adipose tissue dysfunction, and metabolic disorders that are otherwise not responsive to dietary or pharmacological interventions.

16.5.2 Ex Vivo Rejuvenation of ASCs

The accumulation of senescent ASCs within the adipose tissue may result in compromised fitness of isolated ASCs for use in autologous ASC-based therapies. In addition, harvested ASCs may have to be expanded in culture to achieve sufficient cell numbers for therapeutic applications, but ASC cultures from aged individuals often exhibit prolonged population doubling times in culture [28–30, 62–64]. Unfortunately, the aged population also represents the biggest market for ASC-based therapies, due to the large numbers of chronic conditions in this group, coupled with increased prevalence of vasculopathies and impaired tissue repair, which may present a problem when autologous ASC therapy is being considered [141, 143]. However, potential strategies and products have been identified that may be used in ex vivo cell culture to rejuvenate senescent ASCs isolated from aged individuals before these cells are applied in the therapeutic setting. These products include anti-oxidant and/or anti-inflammatory compounds such as zinc sulfate [152], L-carnitine [153, 154], and resveratrol [155]. Chaker et al. also reduced ASC senescence and restored ASC function through treatment with the Cdc42 inhibitor ML141 [30]. These studies support the principle that the ex vivo reju-

venation of ASCs can be achieved, but were largely performed in ASCs from young or middle-aged subjects (<60 years old), and should ideally be repeated in ASCs from geriatric subjects (>65 years old) to provide more evidence for the clinical potential of these compounds with regard to cell-based therapy in elderly patients. Rejuvenation strategies that have shown promise in rodent ASCs include curcumin [156], glutathione, and melatonin [157]. It is also noteworthy that *Alpinae oxyphyllae fructus* (AOF) extract, used in traditional Chinese herbal medicine, promoted an anti-inflammatory and pro-survival secretome in cultured rat epiASCs [158]. Taken together, these findings open up the possibility that ASCs can be rejuvenated ex vivo, in terms of both replicative potential and secreted factors, to improve the applicability of these cells in the therapeutic setting.

Intriguingly, Son et al. [159] demonstrated that intravenous administration of autologous ASCs in old rats improved several measures of biological aging, including improved serum levels of anti-oxidant enzymes. Although the performance of these cells was not compared to that of young ASCs, these aged ASCs were not treated with any rejuvenation agents before transplantation, suggesting that the 2 weeks (four passages) that these cells spent in ex vivo culture was sufficient to rejuvenate them to the extent that they could subsequently stimulate functional improvement in their original aged environment. In contrast, Wang et al. [65] found that intraperitoneal injection of old ASCs into aged mice resulted in increased frailty, compared to aged recipients of young ASCs. In this study, ASCs were only maintained in culture for one passage before transplantation, which may not have been sufficient to achieve ex vivo rejuvenation, possibly contributing to these contradicting outcomes. Alternatively, the site of administration (intravenous vs. intraperitoneal) may also have affected the outcome of the ASC transplants. These findings may have implications for ASC therapy in aged individuals, but need to be further explored in humans.

16.6 Concluding Remarks

From the findings reviewed here, it can be concluded that the age-related changes in the functional capacity of WAT are underpinned by the age-related changes in ASC biology. Aging ASCs lose their capacity to proliferate and differentiate into adipocytes, become senescent and inflamed, and "infect" surrounding cells with senescence and inflammation. These changes on a cellular level result in metabolic disturbances at an organismal level and reduce lifespan. In contrast, where these changes can be avoided through genetics or reversed with therapy, good health can be insured into advanced age.

However, much remains to be examined and elucidated with regard to the effects of age on ASC function. For instance, given the distinct roles of SAT and VAT in metabolic (dys)function as we age, it is surprising that no studies have directly compared the effects of aging on ASCs from different adipose tissue depots. Oxidative stress damage may become more pronounced in VAT than in SAT with age [6], and given the central role for oxidative stress in driving senescence in other cell types [34, 38–40], this may possibly bring about depot-specific features of senescence in ASCs. Depot-specific effects of aging on telomere length in ASCs have been shown [86], further supporting the idea that aging may proceed differently in scASCs and vASCs. The SASP of aging ASCs has also not really been characterized, other than a few studies measuring individual candidate SASP components, but comprehensive proteomics analyses of the SASP may be more informative. Inter-species comparisons of ASC SASP are also lacking. This is an important issue to address, as fundamental differences in senescence mechanisms between mouse and human cells have been identified [37], and therefore experimental findings in animal models should be viewed with this caveat in mind.

The molecular mechanisms and signalling pathways governing senescence in ASCs have also not been studied in detail. Nutrient excess and the resultant chronic activation of mTOR sig-

nalling promote senescence in other cell types and reduce lifespan (reviewed in [40, 105, 160]), but the role of mTOR signalling in age-related ASC senescence has not been studied, despite the importance of adipose tissue and ASCs as nutrient sensors. The actions of major adipose tissue influencers such as IGF-1, insulin, and glucose all converge on mTOR signalling (reviewed in [113]), but these mechanisms remained to be elucidated in ASCs. In other cell types, the regulation of senescence by mTOR has been shown to occur within the context of a complicated relationship with p53 [36, 105, 161, 162], but knowledge on the exact actions of p53 in ASCs is scant. Although several studies mentioned in this review describe an increase in p53 and p21 expression in aged ASCs, the p53-p21 pathway can be pro- or anti-senescent, depending on the nature and the level of the cellular stress [37, 40], and therefore more work is needed to understand the biological relevance of these molecular events.

Although there is clear evidence for the negative impact of chronological aging on ASCs, it is also important to note the resilience of aging ASCs, compared to other senescent cells, especially with regard to the preservation of cell cycle gene expression and protein translation functionalities [73]. Numerous studies [29, 30, 48, 61, 62, 66–68, 70, 146] have also shown that there are no differences in the expression of mesenchymal cell surface markers, such as CD90, CD73, and CD105, between young and old ASCs from rodent and human origin, indicating that the underlying stemness of ASCs do not decrease with age, even when senescent markers are upregulated. This feature of ASCs may serve to "soften the blows" of aging by avoiding a total loss of ASC function and may also form part of the mechanism that allows ASCs from aged individuals to be rejuvenated ex vivo, as was described in Sect. 16.5.2.

In the future, therapeutic approaches such as senolytics or ASC-based treatments may very well transform the way we age. A long list of age-related disorders for which ASC-based therapies could be developed was mentioned here, while the cosmetic applications of ASC-derived products in skin rejuvenation were not even discussed here. While it may feel intuitively "comfortable" to assume that ASCs from young individuals would perform better in therapeutic applications, there is some evidence to suggest that ASCs from older patients could also achieve successful outcomes, or alternatively, could be supported by ex vivo rejuvenation before application, although this has to be evaluated for each individual. While the field of senolytic drug development is in its infancy [2, 10], such compounds hold real promise to reduce frailty and metabolic dysregulation as we age.

Then, to conclude, is adipose tissue the fountain of youth? In the 1990s, recombinant human growth hormone supplementation was touted as the fountain of youth, essentially based on results from 1 study on 12 men [163], but this was of course later discredited [164]. In contrast, the present review demonstrates clearly, through the combined results of scores of studies, that maintaining healthy functional adipose tissue over time is associated with improved healthspan and lifespan. Preservation of functional non-inflamed adipose tissue, especially SAT, protects against age-related metabolic dysregulation, and healthy adipose tissue is a source of circulating longevity signals with demonstrable impact at distal sites. Optimally functioning ASCs form the foundation of healthy, resilient adipose tissue into advanced age. While much remains to be discovered, there is ample evidence to suggest that the key to a long and healthy life may reside within our ASCs.

Acknowledgments The author is funded by the South African National Research Foundation (NRF) and the South African Sugar Association (SASA).

References

1. Goodell MA, Rando TA (2015) Stem cells and healthy aging. Science 350(6265):1199–1204
2. Kirkland JL, Tchkonia T, Zhu Y, Niedernhofer LJ, Robbins PD (2017) The clinical potential of senolytic drugs. J Am Geriatr Soc 65:2297–2301
3. Kirkland JL, Dobson DE (1997) Preadipocyte function and aging: links between age-related changes in cell dynamics and altered fat tissue function. J Am Geriatr Soc 45:959–967

4. Cartwright MJ, Tchkonia T, Kirkland JL (2007) Aging in adipocytes: potential impact of inherent, depot-specific mechanisms. Exp Gerontol 42:463–471
5. Kuk JL, Saunders TJ, Davidson LE, Ross R (2009) Age-related changes in total and regional fat distribution. Ageing Res Rev 8:339–348
6. Zhang L, Ebenezer PJ, Dasuri K, Fernandez-Kim SO, Francis J, Mariappan N et al (2011) Aging is associated with hypoxia and oxidative stress in adipose tissue: implications for adipose function. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 301:E599–E607
7. Chowdhury B, Sjöström L, Alpsten M, Kostanty J, Kvist H, Löfgren R (1994) A multicompartment body composition technique based on computerized tomography. Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord 18:219–234
8. Després J-P (2006) Is visceral obesity the cause of the metabolic syndrome? Ann Med 38:52–63
9. Fox CS, Massaro JM, Hoffmann U, Pou KM, Maurovich-Horvat P, Liu CY et al (2007) Abdominal visceral and subcutaneous adipose tissue compartments: association with metabolic risk factors in the Framingham Heart Study. Circulation 116:39–48
10. Kirkland JL, Tchkonia T (2017) Cellular senescence: a translational perspective. EBioMedicine 21:21–28
11. Bigaard J, Frederiksen K, Tjønneland A, Thomsen BL, Overvad K, Heitmann BL et al (2005) Waist circumference and body composition in relation to all-cause mortality in middle-aged men and women. Int J Obes 29:778–784
12. Muzumdar R, Allison DB, Huffman DM, Ma X, Atzmon G, Einstein FH et al (2008) Visceral adipose tissue modulates mammalian longevity. Aging Cell 7:438–440
13. Huffman DM, Barzilai N (2009) Role of visceral adipose tissue in aging. Biochim Biophys Acta 1790:1117–1123
14. Daher SR, Johnstone BH, Phinney DG, March KL (2008) Adipose stromal/stem cells: basic and translational advances: the IFATS collection. Stem Cells 26:2664–2665
15. Bourin P, Bunnell BA, Casteilla L, Dominici M, Katz AJ, March KL et al (2013) Stromal cells from the adipose tissue-derived stromal vascular fraction and culture expanded adipose tissue-derived stromal/stem cells: a joint statement of the International Federation for Adipose Therapeutics and Science (IFATS) and the International Society for Cellular Therapy (ISCT). Cytotherapy 15:641–648. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcyt.2013.02.006
16. Sadie-Van Gijsen H (2019) Adipocyte biology: It is time to upgrade to a new model. J Cell Physiol 234:2399–2425
17. Gustafson B, Hammarstedt A, Andersson CX, Smith U (2007) Inflamed adipose tissue: a culprit underlying the metabolic syndrome and atherosclerosis. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 27:2276–2283
18. Otto TC, Lane MD (2005) Adipose development: from stem cell to adipocyte. Crit Rev Biochem Mol Biol 40:229–242
19. Tontonoz P, Spiegelman BM (2008) Fat and beyond: the diverse biology of PPARgamma. Annu Rev Biochem 77:289–312
20. Tchkonia T, Morbeck DE, Von Zglinicki T, Van Deursen J, Lustgarten J, Scrable H et al (2010) Fat tissue, aging, and cellular senescence. Aging Cell 9:667–684
21. Guillermier C, Fazeli PK, Kim S, Lun M, Zuflacht JP, Milian J et al (2017) Imaging mass spectrometry demonstrates age-related decline in human adipose plasticity. JCI Insight 2(5):e90349. https://doi.org/10.1172/jci.insight.90349
22. Gustafson B, Gogg S, Hedjazifar S, Jenndahl L, Hammarstedt A, Smith U (2009) Inflammation and impaired adipogenesis in hypertrophic obesity in man. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 297:E999–E1003
23. Gustafson B, Nerstedt A, Smith U (2019) Reduced subcutaneous adipogenesis in human hypertrophic obesity is linked to senescent precursor cells. Nat Commun 10(1):2757. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-10688-x
24. Sadie-Van Gijsen H, Kotzé-Hörstmann L, Huisamen B (2020) An in vivo/ex vivo study design to investigate effects of chronic conditions and therapeutic compounds on adipose stem cells in animal models. Methods Mol Biol 2138:101–118. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-0716-0471-7_5
25. Karagiannides I, Tchkonia T, Dobson DE, Steppan CM, Cummins P, Chan G et al (2001) Altered expression of C/EBP family members results in decreased adipogenesis with aging. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 280:R1772–R1780
26. Karagiannides I, Thomou T, Tchkonia T, Pirtskhalava T, Kypreos KE, Cartwright A et al (2006) Increased CUG triplet repeat-binding protein-1 predisposes to impaired adipogenesis with aging. J Biol Chem 281:23025–23033
27. Tchkonia T, Pirtskhalava T, Thomou T, Cartwright MJ, Wise B, Karagiannides I et al (2007) Increased TNFalpha and CCAAT/enhancer-binding protein homologous protein with aging predispose preadipocytes to resist adipogenesis. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 293:E1810–E1819
28. Caso G, McNurlan MA, Mileva I, Zemlyak A, Mynarcik DC, Gelato MC (2013) Peripheral fat loss and decline in adipogenesis in older humans. Metabolism 62:337–340
29. Ye X, Liao C, Liu G, Xu Y, Tan J, Song Z (2016) Age-related changes in the regenerative potential of adipose-derived stem cells isolated from the prominent fat pads in human lower eyelids. PLoS One 11(11):e0166590. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0166590
30. Chaker D, Mouawad C, Azar A, Quilliot D, Achkar I, Fajloun Z et al (2018) Inhibition of the RhoGTPase Cdc42 by ML141 enhances hepatocyte differentiation from human adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells via the Wnt5a/PI3K/miR-122 pathway: impact of the age of the donor. Stem Cell Res Ther 9(1):167. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-018-0910-5

31. https://worldpopulationreview.com/countries/life-expectancy-by-country/
32. Herbig U, Jobling WA, Chen BP, Chen DJ, Sedivy JM (2004) Telomere shortening triggers senescence of human cells through a pathway involving ATM, p53, and p21(CIP1), but not p16(INK4a). Mol Cell 14:501–513
33. Jeyapalan JC, Sedivy JM (2008) Cellular senescence and organismal aging. Mech Ageing Dev 129:467–474
34. Passos JF, Nelson G, Wang C, Richter T, Simillion C, Proctor CJ et al (2010) Feedback between p21 and reactive oxygen production is necessary for cell senescence. Mol Syst Biol 6:347. https://doi.org/10.1038/msb.2010.5
35. Salminen A, Kauppinen A, Kaarniranta K (2012) Emerging role of NF-κB signaling in the induction of senescence-associated secretory phenotype (SASP). Cell Signal 24:835–845
36. Rufini A, Tucci P, Celardo I, Melino G (2013) Senescence and aging: the critical roles of p53. Oncogene 32:5129–5143
37. Van Deursen JM (2014) The role of senescent cells in ageing. Nature 509(7501):439–446
38. Ziegler DV, Wiley CD, Velarde MC (2015) Mitochondrial effectors of cellular senescence: beyond the free radical theory of aging. Aging Cell 14(1):1–7
39. Davalli P, Mitic T, Caporali A, Lauriola A, D'Arca D (2016) ROS, cell senescence, and novel molecular mechanisms in aging and age-related diseases. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2016:3565127. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/3565127
40. Chandrasekaran A, Idelchik MDPS, Melendez JA (2017) Redox control of senescence and age-related disease. Redox Biol 11:91–102
41. Brazvan B, Ebrahimi-Kalan A, Velaei K, Mehdipour A, Aliyari Serej Z, Ebrahimi A et al (2018) Telomerase activity and telomere on stem progeny senescence. Biomed Pharmacother 102:9–17
42. Greider CW (1998) Telomerase activity, cell proliferation, and cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95:90–92
43. Harrington L (2004) Does the reservoir for self-renewal stem from the ends? Oncogene 23:7283–7289
44. Allen ND, Baird DM (2009) Telomere length maintenance in stem cell populations. Biochim Biophys Acta 1792:324–328
45. Aida J, Izumiyama-Shimomura N, Nakamura K, Ishikawa N, Poon SS, Kammori M et al (2008) Basal cells have longest telomeres measured by tissue Q-FISH method in lingual epithelium. Exp Gerontol 43:833–839
46. Flores I, Canela A, Vera E, Tejera A, Cotsarelis G, Blasco MA (2008) The longest telomeres: a general signature of adult stem cell compartments. Genes Dev 22:654–667
47. Jeon BG, Kumar BM, Kang EJ, Ock SA, Lee SL, Kwack DO et al (2011) Characterization and comparison of telomere length, telomerase and reverse transcriptase activity and gene expression in human mesenchymal stem cells and cancer cells of various origins. Cell Tissue Res 345:149–161
48. Wu W, Niklason L, Steinbacher DM (2013) The effect of age on human adipose-derived stem cells. Plast Reconstr Surg 131:27–37
49. Von Zglinicki T (2002) Oxidative stress shortens telomeres. Trends Biochem Sci 27:339–344
50. Kurz DJ, Decary S, Hong Y, Trivier E, Akhmedov A, Erusalimsky JD (2004) Chronic oxidative stress compromises telomere integrity and accelerates the onset of senescence in human endothelial cells. J Cell Sci 117:2417–2426
51. Guo Z, Kozlov S, Lavin MF, Person MD, Paull TT (2010) ATM activation by oxidative stress. Science 330(6003):517–521
52. Sokolov MV, Dickey JS, Bonner WM, Sedelnikova OA (2007) gamma-H2AX in bystander cells: not just a radiation-triggered event, a cellular response to stress mediated by intercellular communication. Cell Cycle 6:2210–2212
53. Nelson G, Wordsworth J, Wang C, Jurk D, Lawless C, Martin-Ruiz C et al (2012) A senescent cell bystander effect: senescence-induced senescence. Aging Cell 11:345–349
54. Freund A, Orjalo AV, Desprez PY, Campisi J (2010) Inflammatory networks during cellular senescence: causes and consequences. Trends Mol Med 16:238–246
55. Freund A, Patil CK, Campisi J (2011) p38MAPK is a novel DNA damage response-independent regulator of the senescence-associated secretory phenotype. EMBO J 30:1536–1548
56. Sherr CJ, Roberts JM (1999) CDK inhibitors: positive and negative regulators of G1-phase progression. Genes Dev 13:1501–1512
57. Kim WY, Sharpless NE (2006) The regulation of INK4/ARF in cancer and aging. Cell 127:265–275
58. Fridlyanskaya I, Alekseenko L, Nikolsky N (2015) Senescence as a general cellular response to stress: a mini-review. Exp Gerontol 72:124–128
59. Krishnamurthy J, Torrice C, Ramsey MR, Kovalev GI, Al-Regaiey K, Su L et al (2004) Ink4a/Arf expression is a biomarker of aging. J Clin Invest 114:1299–1307
60. Sedelnikova OA, Pilch DR, Redon C, Bonner WM (2003) Histone H2AX in DNA damage and repair. Cancer Biol Ther 2(3):233–235
61. Liu M, Lei H, Dong P, Fu X, Yang Z, Yang Y et al (2017) Adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells from the elderly exhibit decreased migration and differentiation abilities with senescent properties. Cell Transplant 26:1505–1519
62. Choudhery MS, Badowski M, Muise A, Pierce J, Harris DT (2014) Donor age negatively impacts adipose tissue-derived mesenchymal stem cell expansion and differentiation. J Transl Med 12:8. https://doi.org/10.1186/1479-5876-12-8

63. Kornicka K, Marycz K, Tomaszewski KA, Marędziak M, Śmieszek A (2015) The effect of age on osteogenic and adipogenic differentiation potential of human adipose derived stromal stem cells (hASCs) and the impact of stress factors in the course of the differentiation process. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2015:309169. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/309169
64. Marędziak M, Marycz K, Tomaszewski KA, Kornicka K, Henry BM (2016) The influence of aging on the regenerative potential of human adipose derived mesenchymal stem cells. Stem Cells Int 2016:2152435. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/2152435
65. Wang B, Liu Z, Chen VP, Wang L, Inman CL, Zhou Y et al (2020) Transplanting cells from old but not young donors causes physical dysfunction in older recipients. Aging Cell 19:e13106. https://doi.org/10.1111/acel.13106
66. Umbayev B, Masoud AR, Tsoy A, Alimbetov D, Olzhayev F, Shramko A et al (2018) Elevated levels of the small GTPase Cdc42 induces senescence in male rat mesenchymal stem cells. Biogerontology 19:287–301
67. Li L, Guo Y, Zhai H, Yin Y, Zhang J, Chen H et al (2014) Aging increases the susceptivity of MSCs to reactive oxygen species and impairs their therapeutic potency for myocardial infarction. PLoS One 9:e111850. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0111850
68. Zhang H, Cai B, Geng A, Tang H, Zhang W, Li S et al (2020) Base excision repair but not DNA double-strand break repair is impaired in aged human adipose-derived stem cells. Aging Cell 19:e13062. https://doi.org/10.1111/acel.13062
69. Xu M, Tchkonia T, Ding H, Ogrodnik M, Lubbers ER, Pirtskhalava T et al (2015) JAK inhibition alleviates the cellular senescence-associated secretory phenotype and frailty in old age. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112(46):E6301–E6310
70. Kizilay Mancini Ö, Lora M, Shum-Tim D, Nadeau S, Rodier F, Colmegna I (2017) A proinflammatory secretome mediates the impaired immunopotency of human mesenchymal stromal cells in elderly patients with atherosclerosis. Stem Cells Transl Med 6(4):1132–1140
71. Spalding KL, Arner E, Westermark PO, Bernard S, Buchholz BA, Bergmann O et al (2008) Dynamics of fat cell turnover in humans. Nature 453(7196):783–787
72. Rigamonti A, Brennand K, Lau F, Cowan CA (2011) Rapid cellular turnover in adipose tissue. PLoS One 6:e17637. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0017637
73. Shan X, Roberts C, Kim EJ, Brenner A, Grant G, Percec I (2017) Transcriptional and cell cycle alterations mark aging of primary human adipose-derived stem cells. Stem Cells 35:1392–1401
74. Yeh WC, Cao Z, Classon M, McKnight SL (1995) Cascade regulation of terminal adipocyte differentiation by three members of the C/EBP family of leucine zipper proteins. Genes Dev 9(2):168–181
75. Iakova P, Wang GL, Timchenko L, Michalak M, Pereira-Smith OM, Smith JR et al (2004) Competition of CUGBP1 and calreticulin for the regulation of p21 translation determines cell fate. EMBO J 23:406–417
76. Starr ME, Evers BM, Saito H (2009) Age-associated increase in cytokine production during systemic inflammation: adipose tissue as a major source of IL-6. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 64:723–730
77. Isakson P, Hammarstedt A, Gustafson B, Smith U (2009) Impaired preadipocyte differentiation in human abdominal obesity: role of Wnt, tumor necrosis factor-alpha, and inflammation. Diabetes 58:1550–1557
78. Ruan H, Lodish HF (2003) Insulin resistance in adipose tissue: direct and indirect effects of tumor necrosis factor-alpha. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 14:447–455
79. Lacasa D, Taleb S, Keophiphath M, Miranville A, Clement K (2007) Macrophage-secreted factors impair human adipogenesis: involvement of proinflammatory state in preadipocytes. Endocrinology 148:868–877
80. Kanda H, Tateya S, Tamori Y, Kotani K, Hiasa K, Kitazawa R et al (2006) MCP-1 contributes to macrophage infiltration into adipose tissue, insulin resistance, and hepatic steatosis in obesity. J Clin Invest 116:1494–1505
81. Zhu Y, Tchkonia T, Stout MB, Giorgadze N, Wang L, Li PW et al (2015) Inflammation and the depot-specific secretome of human preadipocytes. Obesity (Silver Spring) 23:989–999
82. Ghosh S, Lertwattanarak R, Garduño Jde J, Galeana JJ, Li J, Zamarripa F et al (2015) Elevated muscle TLR4 expression and metabolic endotoxemia in human aging. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 70(2):232–246
83. Zhao M, Chen X (2015) Effect of lipopolysaccharides on adipogenic potential and premature senescence of adipocyte progenitors. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 309:E334–E344. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpendo.00601.2014
84. Guo W, Pirtskhalava T, Tchkonia T, Xie W, Thomou T, Han J et al (2007) Aging results in paradoxical susceptibility of fat cell progenitors to lipotoxicity. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 292:E1041–E1051
85. Tchkonia T, Tchoukalova YD, Giorgadze N, Pirtskhalava T, Karagiannides I, Forse RA et al (2005) Abundance of two human preadipocyte subtypes with distinct capacities for replication, adipogenesis, and apoptosis varies among fat depots. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 288:E267–E277
86. Tchkonia T, Giorgadze N, Pirtskhalava T, Thomou T, DePonte M, Koo A et al (2006) Fat depot-specific characteristics are retained in strains derived from single human preadipocytes. Diabetes 55:2571–2578
87. Taketani H, Nishikawa T, Nakajima H, Kodo K, Sugimoto S, Aoi W et al (2019) Aging-associated

impairment in metabolic compensation by subcutaneous adipose tissue promotes diet-induced fatty liver disease in mice. Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes 12:1473–1492
88. Barzilai N, Gupta G (1999) Revisiting the role of fat mass in the life extension induced by caloric restriction. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 54:B89–B96
89. Guize L, Thomas F, Pannier B, Bean K, Jego B, Benetos A (2007) All-cause mortality associated with specific combinations of the metabolic syndrome according to recent definitions. Diabetes Care 30:2381–2387
90. Das M, Gabriely I, Barzilai N (2004) Caloric restriction, body fat and ageing in experimental models. Obes Rev 5:13–19
91. Pou KM, Massaro JM, Hoffmann U, Vasan RS, Maurovich-Horvat P, Larson MG et al (2007) Visceral and subcutaneous adipose tissue volumes are cross-sectionally related to markers of inflammation and oxidative stress: the Framingham Heart Study. Circulation 116:1234–1241
92. Alessi MC, Peiretti F, Morange P, Henry M, Nalbone G, Juhan-Vague I (1997) Production of plasminogen activator inhibitor 1 by human adipose tissue: possible link between visceral fat accumulation and vascular disease. Diabetes 46:860–867
93. Walston JD, Matteini AM, Nievergelt C, Lange LA, Fallin DM, Barzilai N et al (2009) Inflammation and stress-related candidate genes, plasma interleukin-6 levels, and longevity in older adults. Exp Gerontol 44:350–355
94. Giovannini S, Onder G, Liperoti R, Russo A, Carter C, Capoluongo E et al (2011) Interleukin-6, C-reactive protein, and tumor necrosis factor-alpha as predictors of mortality in frail, community-living elderly individuals. J Am Geriatr Soc 59:1679–1685
95. Barzilai N, She L, Liu BQ, Vuguin P, Cohen P, Wang J et al (1999) Surgical removal of visceral fat reverses hepatic insulin resistance. Diabetes 48:94–98
96. Gabriely I, Ma XH, Yang XM, Atzmon G, Rajala MW, Berg AH et al (2002) Removal of visceral fat prevents insulin resistance and glucose intolerance of aging: an adipokine-mediated process? Diabetes 51:2951–2958
97. Atzmon G, Pollin TI, Crandall J, Tanner K, Schechter CB, Scherer PE et al (2008) Adiponectin levels and genotype: a potential regulator of life span in humans. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 63:447–453
98. Gavi S, Feiner JJ, Melendez MM, Mynarcik DC, Gelato MC, McNurlan MA (2007) Limb fat to trunk fat ratio in elderly persons is a strong determinant of insulin resistance and adiponectin levels. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 62:997–1001
99. Ajuwon KM, Spurlock ME (2005) Adiponectin inhibits LPS-induced NF-kappaB activation and IL-6 production and increases PPARgamma2 expression in adipocytes. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 288:R1220–R1225
100. Sopasakis VR, Sandqvist M, Gustafson B, Hammarstedt A, Schmelz M, Yang X et al (2004) High local concentrations and effects on differentiation implicate interleukin-6 as a paracrine regulator. Obes Res 12:454–460
101. Maeda N, Shimomura I, Kishida K, Nishizawa H, Matsuda M, Nagaretani H et al (2002) Diet-induced insulin resistance in mice lacking adiponectin/ACRP30. Nat Med 8:731–737
102. Fain JN, Buehrer B, Tichansky DS, Madan AK (2008) Regulation of adiponectin release and demonstration of adiponectin mRNA as well as release by the non-fat cells of human omental adipose tissue. Int J Obes 32:429–435
103. Masoro EJ (2005) Overview of caloric restriction and ageing. Mech Ageing Dev 126:913–922
104. Kapahi P, Chen D, Rogers AN, Katewa SD, Li PW, Thomas EL et al (2010) With TOR, less is more: a key role for the conserved nutrient-sensing TOR pathway in aging. Cell Metab 11:453–465
105. Laplante M, Sabatini DM (2012) mTOR signaling in growth control and disease. Cell 149:274–293
106. Barzilai N, Banerjee S, Hawkins M, Chen W, Rossetti L (1998) Caloric restriction reverses hepatic insulin resistance in aging rats by decreasing visceral fat. J Clin Invest 101:1353–1361
107. Cefalu WT, Wagner JD, Wang ZQ, Bell-Farrow AD, Collins J, Haskell D et al (1997) A study of caloric restriction and cardiovascular aging in cynomolgus monkeys (*Macaca fascicularis*): a potential model for aging research. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 52:B10–B19
108. Calles-Escandon J, Ballor D, Harvey-Berino J, Ades P, Tracy R, Sobel B (1996) Amelioration of the inhibition of fibrinolysis in elderly, obese subjects by moderate energy intake restriction. Am J Clin Nutr 64:7–11
109. Higami Y, Pugh TD, Page GP, Allison DB, Prolla TA, Weindruch R (2004) Adipose tissue energy metabolism: altered gene expression profile of mice subjected to long-term caloric restriction. FASEB J 18:415–417
110. Higami Y, Barger JL, Page GP, Allison DB, Smith SR, Prolla TA et al (2006) Energy restriction lowers the expression of genes linked to inflammation, the cytoskeleton, the extracellular matrix, and angiogenesis in mouse adipose tissue. J Nutr 136:343–352
111. Linford NJ, Beyer RP, Gollahon K, Krajcik RA, Malloy VL, Demas V et al (2007) Transcriptional response to aging and caloric restriction in heart and adipose tissue. Aging Cell 6:673–688
112. Hotta K, Funahashi T, Arita Y, Takahashi M, Matsuda M, Okamoto Y et al (2000) Plasma concentrations of a novel, adipose-specific protein, adiponectin, in type 2 diabetic patients. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 20:1595–1599
113. Stout MB, Tchkonia T, Pirtskhalava T, Palmer AK, List EO, Berryman DE et al (2014) Growth hormone action predicts age-related white adipose tissue dysfunction and senescent cell burden in mice. Aging (Albany NY) 6:575–586
114. Milman S, Atzmon G, Huffman DM, Wan J, Crandall JP, Cohen P et al (2014) Low insulin-like growth factor-1 level predicts survival in humans with exceptional longevity. Aging Cell 13:769–771
115. Berryman DE, List EO, Palmer AJ, Chung MY, Wright-Piekarski J, Lubbers E et al (2010) Two-year

body composition analyses of long-lived GHR null mice. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 65:31–40
116. Mori MA, Raghavan P, Thomou T, Boucher J, Robida-Stubbs S, Macotela Y et al (2012) Role of microRNA processing in adipose tissue in stress defense and longevity. Cell Metab 16:336–347
117. Le MT, Teh C, Shyh-Chang N, Xie H, Zhou B, Korzh V et al (2009) MicroRNA-125b is a novel negative regulator of p53. Genes Dev 23:862–876
118. Guo Z, Heydari A, Richardson A (1998) Nucleotide excision repair of actively transcribed versus non-transcribed DNA in rat hepatocytes: effect of age and dietary restriction. Exp Cell Res 245:228–238
119. Wang L, Yang L, Debidda M, Witte D, Zheng Y (2007) Cdc42 GTPase-activating protein deficiency promotes genomic instability and premature aging-like phenotypes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:1248–1253
120. Masoro EJ (2006) Caloric restriction and aging: controversial issues. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 61:14–19
121. Liao CY, Rikke BA, Johnson TE, Gelfond JA, Diaz V, Nelson JF (2011) Fat maintenance is a predictor of the murine lifespan response to dietary restriction. Aging Cell 10:629–639
122. St Sauver JL, Boyd CM, Grossardt BR, Bobo WV, Finney Rutten LJ, Roger VL et al (2015) Risk of developing multimorbidity across all ages in an historical cohort study: differences by sex and ethnicity. BMJ Open 5(2):e006413. https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjopen-2014-006413
123. Baker DJ, Wijshake T, Tchkonia T, LeBrasseur NK, Childs BG, van de Sluis B et al (2011) Clearance of p16Ink4a-positive senescent cells delays ageing-associated disorders. Nature 479(7372):232–236
124. Baker DJ, Childs BG, Durik M, Wijers ME, Sieben CJ, Zhong J et al (2016) Naturally occurring p16(Ink4a)-positive cells shorten healthy lifespan. Nature 530(7589):184–189
125. Zhu Y, Tchkonia T, Pirtskhalava T, Gower AC, Ding H, Giorgadze N et al (2015) The Achilles' heel of senescent cells: from transcriptome to senolytic drugs. Aging Cell 14:644–658
126. Zhu Y, Doornebal EJ, Pirtskhalava T, Giorgadze N, Wentworth M, Fuhrmann-Stroissnigg H et al (2017) New agents that target senescent cells: the flavone, fisetin, and the BCL-XL inhibitors, A1331852 and A1155463. Aging (Albany, NY) 9:955–963
127. Demaria M, Ohtani N, Youssef SA, Rodier F, Toussaint W, Mitchell JR et al (2014) An essential role for senescent cells in optimal wound healing through secretion of PDGF-AA. Dev Cell 31:722–733
128. Hickson LJ, Langhi Prata LGP, Bobart SA, Evans TK, Giorgadze N, Hashmi SK et al (2019) Senolytics decrease senescent cells in humans: preliminary report from a clinical trial of Dasatinib plus Quercetin in individuals with diabetic kidney disease. EBioMedicine 47:446–456
129. Laberge RM, Zhou L, Sarantos MR, Rodier F, Freund A, de Keizer PL et al (2012) Glucocorticoids suppress selected components of the senescence-associated secretory phenotype. Aging Cell 11:569–578
130. Moiseeva O, Deschênes-Simard X, St-Germain E, Igelmann S, Huot G, Cadar AE et al (2013) Metformin inhibits the senescence-associated secretory phenotype by interfering with IKK/NF-κB activation. Aging Cell 12:489–498
131. Bannister CA, Holden SE, Jenkins-Jones S, Morgan CL, Halcox JP, Schernthaner G et al (2014) Can people with type 2 diabetes live longer than those without? A comparison of mortality in people initiated with metformin or sulphonylurea monotherapy and matched, non-diabetic controls. Diabetes Obes Metab 16:1165–1173
132. Martin-Montalvo A, Mercken EM, Mitchell SJ, Palacios HH, Mote PL, Scheibye-Knudsen M et al (2013) Metformin improves healthspan and lifespan in mice. Nat Commun 4:2192. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms3192
133. Laberge RM, Sun Y, Orjalo AV, Patil CK, Freund A, Zhou L et al (2015) MTOR regulates the pro-tumorigenic senescence-associated secretory phenotype by promoting IL1A translation. Nat Cell Biol 17:1049–1061
134. Harrison DE, Strong R, Sharp ZD, Nelson JF, Astle CM, Flurkey K et al (2009) Rapamycin fed late in life extends lifespan in genetically heterogeneous mice. Nature 460(7253):392–395
135. Xu M, Palmer AK, Ding H, Weivoda MM, Pirtskhalava T, White TA et al (2015) Targeting senescent cells enhances adipogenesis and metabolic function in old age. elife 4:e12997. https://doi.org/10.7554/eLife.12997
136. Peng LN, Chou MY, Liang CK, Lee WJ, Kojima T, Lin MH et al (2018) Association between serum activin A and metabolic syndrome in older adults: potential of activin A as a biomarker of cardiometabolic disease. Exp Gerontol 111:197–202
137. Heinrich PC, Behrmann I, Haan S, Hermanns HM, Müller-Newen G, Schaper F (2003) Principles of interleukin (IL)-6-type cytokine signalling and its regulation. Biochem J 374(Pt 1):1–20
138. Verstovsek S, Mesa RA, Gotlib J, Levy RS, Gupta V, DiPersio JF et al (2012) A double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of ruxolitinib for myelofibrosis. N Engl J Med 366:799–807
139. Pérez LM, de Lucas B, Gálvez BG (2018) Unhealthy stem cells: when health conditions upset stem cell properties. Cell Physiol Biochem 46:1999–2016
140. Naji A, Eitoku M, Favier B, Deschaseaux F, Rouas-Freiss N, Suganuma N (2019) Biological functions of mesenchymal stem cells and clinical implications. Cell Mol Life Sci 76:3323–3348
141. Godic A (2019) The role of stem cells in anti-aging medicine. Clin Dermatol 37:320–325
142. Kawagishi-Hotta M, Hasegawa S, Igarashi T, Yamada T, Takahashi M, Numata S et al (2017) Enhancement of individual differences in proliferation and differentiation potentials of aged human adipose-derived stem cells. Regen Ther 6:29–40
143. Duscher D, Rennert RC, Januszyk M, Anghel E, Maan ZN, Whittam AJ et al (2014) Aging dis-

rupts cell subpopulation dynamics and diminishes the function of mesenchymal stem cells. Sci Rep 4:7144. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep07144
144. Wu H, Li JZ, Xie BD, Tian H, Fang SH, Jiang SL et al (2018) Lower senescence of adipose-derived stem cells than donor-matched bone marrow stem cells for surgical ventricular restoration. Stem Cells Dev 27:612–623
145. Dufrane D (2017) Impact of age on human adipose stem cells for bone tissue engineering. Cell Transplant 26:1496–1504
146. Tashiro J, Elliot SJ, Gerth DJ, Xia X, Pereira-Simon S, Choi R et al (2015) Therapeutic benefits of young, but not old, adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells in a chronic mouse model of bleomycin-induced pulmonary fibrosis. Transl Res 166:554–567
147. Tsuruhara A, Aso K, Tokuhara D, Ohori J, Kawabata M, Kurono Y et al (2017) Rejuvenation of mucosal immunosenescence by adipose tissue-derived mesenchymal stem cells. Int Immunol 29:5–10
148. Aso K, Tsuruhara A, Takagaki K, Oki K, Ota M, Nose Y et al (2016) Adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells restore impaired mucosal immune responses in aged mice. PLoS One 11:e0148185. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0148185
149. Ding C, Zou Q, Wang F, Wu H, Wang W, Li H et al (2018) HGF and BFGF secretion by human adipose-derived stem cells improves ovarian function during natural aging via activation of the SIRT1/FOXO1 signaling pathway. Cell Physiol Biochem 45:1316–1332
150. Dubey NK, Wei HJ, Yu SH, Williams DF, Wang JR, Deng YH et al (2019) Adipose-derived stem cells attenuates diabetic osteoarthritis via inhibition of glycation-mediated inflammatory cascade. Aging Dis 10:483–496
151. Xie Y, Fang B, Liu W, Li G, Huang RL, Zhang L et al (2020) Transcriptome differences in adipose stromal cells derived from pre- and post-menopausal women. Stem Cell Res Ther 11:92. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-020-01613-x
152. Farahzadi R, Fathi E, Mesbah-Namin SA, Zarghami N (2017) Zinc sulfate contributes to promote telomere length extension via increasing telomerase gene expression, telomerase activity and change in the TERT gene promoter CpG island methylation status of human adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells. PLoS One 12(11):e0188052. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0188052
153. Farahzadi R, Mesbah-Namin SA, Zarghami N, Fathi E (2016) L-carnitine effectively induces hTERT gene expression of human adipose tissue-derived mesenchymal stem cells obtained from the aged subjects. Int J Stem Cells 9:107–114
154. Farahzadi R, Fathi E, Mesbah-Namin SA, Zarghami N (2018) Anti-aging protective effect of L-carnitine as clinical agent in regenerative medicine through increasing telomerase activity and change in the hTERT promoter CpG island methylation status of adipose tissue-derived mesenchymal stem cells. Tissue Cell 54:105–113
155. Lei LT, Chen JB, Zhao YL, Yang SP, He L (2016) Resveratrol attenuates senescence of adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells and restores their paracrine effects on promoting insulin secretion of INS-1 cells through Pim-1. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 20:1203–1213
156. Pirmoradi S, Fathi E, Farahzadi R, Pilehvar-Soltanahmadi Y, Zarghami N (2018) Curcumin affects adipose tissue-derived mesenchymal stem cell aging through TERT gene expression. Drug Res (Stuttg) 68:213–221. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0043-119635
157. Liao N, Shi Y, Zhang C, Zheng Y, Wang Y, Zhao B et al (2019) Antioxidants inhibit cell senescence and preserve stemness of adipose tissue-derived stem cells by reducing ROS generation during long-term in vitro expansion. Stem Cell Res Ther 10(1):306. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13287-019-1404-9
158. Chang YM, Asokan Shibu M, Tsai CT, Tsai CC, Lin SL, Chang CC et al (2019) Alpinate Oxyphyllae extracts enhance the longevity and homing of mesenchymal stem cells and augment their protection against senescence in H9c2 cells. J Cell Physiol 234:12042–12050
159. Son HY, Bae HS, Son Y, Kim S, Hong HS, Park JU (2019) Biological aging parameters can be improved after autologous adipose-derived stem cell injection. J Craniofac Surg 30:652–658
160. Xu S, Cai Y, Wei Y (2014) mTOR signaling from cellular senescence to organismal aging. Aging Dis 5:263–273
161. Feng Z, Zhang H, Levine AJ, Jin S (2005) The coordinate regulation of the p53 and mTOR pathways in cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:8204–8209
162. Feng Z, Lin M, Wu R (2011) The regulation of aging and longevity: a new and complex role of p53. Genes Cancer 2:443–452
163. Rudman D, Feller AG, Nagraj HS, Gergans GA, Lalitha PY, Goldberg AF et al (1990) Effects of human growth hormone in men over 60 years old. N Engl J Med 323:1–6. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199007053230101
164. Vance ML (2003) Can growth hormone prevent aging? N Engl J Med 348:779–780

17 Proteomics for Target Identification in Psychiatric and Neurodegenerative Disorders

André S. L. M. Antunes, Valéria de Almeida, Fernanda Crunfli, Victor C. Carregari, and Daniel Martins-de-Souza

Abstract

Psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders such as schizophrenia (SCZ), Parkinson's disease (PD), and Alzheimer's disease (AD) continue to grow around the world with a high impact on health, social, and economic outcomes for the patient and society. Despite efforts, the etiology and pathophysiology of these disorders remain unclear. Omics technologies have contributed to the understanding of the molecular mechanisms that underlie these complex disorders and have suggested novel potential targets for treatment and diagnostics. Here, we have highlighted the unique and common pathways shared between SCZ, PD, and AD and highlight the main proteomic findings over the last 5 years using in vitro models, postmortem brain samples, and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) or blood of patients. These studies have identified possible therapeutic targets and disease biomarkers. Further studies including target validation, the use of large sample sizes, and the integration of omics findings with bioinformatics tools are required to provide a better comprehension of pharmacological targets.

Keywords

Proteomics · Target identification · Schizophrenia · Alzheimer's disease · Parkinson's disease

A. S. L. M. Antunes (✉) · V. de Almeida
F. Crunfli · V. C. Carregari
Laboratory of Neuroproteomics, Department of Biochemistry and Tissue Biology, Institute of Biology, University of Campinas, Campinas, Brazil

D. Martins-de-Souza
Laboratory of Neuroproteomics, Department of Biochemistry and Tissue Biology, Institute of Biology, University of Campinas, Campinas, Brazil

Experimental Medicine Research Cluster (EMRC), University of Campinas, Campinas, SP, Brazil

Instituto Nacional de Biomarcadores em Neuropsiquiatria, Conselho Nacional de Desenvolvimento Científico e Tecnológico, São Paulo, Brazil

D'Or Institute for Research and Education (IDOR), São Paulo, Brazil

17.1 Introduction

Psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders are a current health issue whose burden and prevalence is expected to increase with the ever-growing elderly population in the world [1, 2]. Canonical psychiatric and neurodegenerative diseases, such as schizophrenia (SCZ), Alzheimer's (AD), and

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6_17

Parkinson's (PD) disease, present distinct clinical features, yet they seem to share the underlying feature of altered energy metabolism in the brain [3, 4], along with disruptions in emotional control. In neurodegenerative disorders specifically, progressive neuronal loss and disabilities occur in motor function. Sadly, despite it being over a century since these diseases were first described, their etiology remains largely unknown and disease-attenuating drugs are still much needed. Hope in tackling this unmet need has grown in the past decades with the progress of omics technologies, which allow for a high-throughput—and, at times, a global assessment—of a set of biological molecules. In this way, they provide a deeper and more detailed understanding of human health and disease states at the molecular level.

Genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics refer to the analysis and screening of biological samples at the DNA, RNA, protein, and metabolite levels, respectively. Further to these canonical omics technologies, additional layers of information can be gained from biological samples through pharmacogenomics, epigenomics, phosphoproteomics, glycoproteomics, chemoproteomics, lipidomics, and several other omics approaches. In the context of psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders, these technologies have had a pivotal effect in shifting us away from the old concept of "one gene, one disorder" toward the currently accepted view of a multifactorial origins nature. In addition, they have enabled a better understanding of central nervous system (CNS) disorders and identified numerous molecular targets [5, 6]. In line with the paradigm shift toward the multifactorial nature of CNS disorders, omics technologies have demonstrated the necessity of targeting networks rather than single biological targets [7–9]. In general, CNS diseases are affected by multiple pathways and some pathways are shared among several diseases [10]. This underlies the need of an integrated approach for the identification of targets in the development of novel therapies.

In this review, we focus on the contribution of proteomics to the understanding of psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders. We provide a brief overview of the main proteomics technologies and discuss how these have helped to progress our overall understanding of SCZ, PD, and AD. We will then discuss the role of proteomics in the identification of protein targets, delineating how the identification of single targets and networks impacts the therapeutic landscape for these CNS disorders.

17.2 Overview of Proteomic Technologies

After completion of the human genome project nearly two decades ago, technical advances in DNA and RNA sequencing as well as in mass spectrometry technologies have ushered in a new period of scientific progress defined as the post-genomic era. In this new era, the main omics technologies such as genomics, transcriptomics, and proteomics and their subfields (e.g., epigenomics, pharmacogenomics, phosphoproteomics) have provided scientists with an unprecedented level of resolution in the assessment of biological samples at the genomic, transcriptional, and post-transcriptional levels. Today, omics technologies are at the core of our progress in understanding molecular mechanisms underlying complex diseases such as psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders. These methodologies enable us to generate genome-wide datasets, to link genes to the transcriptome and to phenotypes, and to consider pathophysiological mechanisms. In addition, they have been pivotal in the identification of novel targets for drug development. Furthermore, omics data can be exploited to identify the mechanism of action of drugs and to predict their side effects.

In this section, we will focus on providing a brief overview of the main proteomics technologies, followed by its use in understanding SCZ, AD, and PD.

17.2.1 Proteomic Methods

Over the past two decades, mass spectrometry has been extensively employed in proteomics

approaches and has become increasingly relevant in translational studies [11, 12]. Proteomics based on mass spectrometry can be divided into four different approaches: bottom-up or shotgun, middle-down, top-down, and targeted proteomics. Shotgun mass spectrometry is so far the most commonly used method for the analysis of biological samples and the understanding of complex physiopathological mechanisms, as well as in the identification of potential biomarkers and therapeutic targets [13, 14]. In shotgun proteomics, proteins extracted from a biological sample are cleaved with trypsin at arginine and lysine amino acid residues, generating large numbers of peptides. These peptides are then normally separated by liquid chromatography coupled to a mass spectrometer, thereby creating large numbers of spectra that can be used for quantitation and identification of the parent proteins. Advances in software with the ability to automatically interpret data from middle-down and top-down proteomics and the creation of new data banks offer a favorable scenario for the expansion of proteomics studies using the shotgun approach. This method can also produce information about the protein structure and post-translational modifications, which are of great interest for researchers [15, 16].

In the field of mass spectrometry, an evolution in sensitivity, speed of ion acquisition, better ion separation, and the possibility of combining different fragmentation methods have improved the reliability of the data generated. Moreover, spectra complexity produced by eluted peptides partially separated by liquid chromatography makes protein analysis from biological samples a challenging task, which could benefit from improvements not only in the mass spectrometer analyzers, instrument settings, and software analysis but also in sample preparation methods. Currently, many new methods for sample preparation are being developed aiming to increase the sensitivity and number of proteins that can be identified and to remove impurities from the peptide mixture, which can increase the background noise on the mass spectrometry analysis and suppress ion intensity of low abundant peptides [17].

Shotgun proteomics can be an important tool in the study of multifactorial diseases such as psychiatric disorders and neurodegenerative diseases, which have pathophysiological mechanisms that have not been completely elucidated. For many of these diseases, there is no well-defined biomarker or therapeutic target, and thus this large-scale approach can identify thousands of proteins at once in a qualitative and quantitative fashion. Mass spectrometry proteomics has proven to be more suitable for the elucidation of molecular mechanisms and the identification of targets than other proteomics methods, such as immunoprecipitation, antibody-dependent, or multiplex techniques, since no previous knowledge is needed about the sample or the biological system being analyzed. Therefore, mass spectrometry proteomics removes the need of a previously known molecular target or a protein panel to achieve answers [18–20].

Several studies have applied shotgun proteomics to investigate the dysregulation in multiple metabolic pathways and molecular disturbances in psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders from postmortem brain tissue and body fluids. These investigations have revealed molecular mechanisms relevant in disease and health states by unraveling dysregulated pathways such as altered energy metabolism in the brain [3, 4]. There is still much progress to be done by taking advantage of new methods and technologies in mass spectrometry and introducing these to obtain new insights into complex disorders.

17.2.2 The Use of Proteomics in Target Identification

Target identification consists of identifying the direct biological target (e.g., protein or nucleic acid) of an existing or potential new drug. It is a critical step in the elucidation of biological processes and mechanisms that affect health and disease states as well as in drug development and validation. In the context of drug discovery, targets have been traditionally identified on the basis of experimental evidence that a given gene,

RNA molecule, or protein is involved in a particular disease process, thus having the potential of producing a desired therapeutic effect if targeted by a drug [21]. In the past decades, omics technologies have been widely used in target identification and drug development [22]. Since proteins are generally the ultimate effectors of biological processes, they have been the main focus in target identification. It is believed that only a fraction of the putative targets coded by the genome have been identified to date [23] and proteomics has been pivotal in this process through bottom-up and top-down approaches [13].

Target identification by proteomics begins with the construction of a suitable disease model in an animal or cell line, or the collection of biological samples (e.g., patient biopsies or post-mortem tissue). Next, samples are subjected to proteolytic digestion and mass spectrometry analyses before the acquired data are finally processed using computational tools. More recently, multi-omics approaches have been employed for target identification and drug discovery in complex diseases through the integration of proteomics data with pathways and network annotations commonly used for systems biology analysis [24–26]. Data available in public databases are also a source of information for bioinformatics analyses in the quest for target identification. Data mining, reverse docking, and network biology have been used for the identification of drug targets. Functional analysis is then performed and biomolecules are proposed as potential targets. The final step consists of pharmacological target validation using in vitro and in vivo models.

17.3 Proteomics in Psychiatric and Neurodegenerative Disorders

Psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders represent a heterogeneous group of mental ailments with unclarified etiology and pathophysiological mechanisms. Due to the lack of disease-specific biomarkers, diagnostics are still based mainly on clinical symptoms. The post-genomic era has brought hopes of a better understanding of pathophysiological mechanisms and the identification of biomarkers and therapeutic targets. However, the proteins and associated pathways that have been identified so far are not specific for one psychiatric or neurodegenerative disorder. Thus, the identification of molecular targets in complex diseases has increasingly focused on protein sets or pathway networks and less on single molecules.

Omic technologies have been effective in offering novel insight into the pathophysiology of disease states and in target identification [27]. Until recently, proteomics studies were focused on merely measuring the abundance of differentially regulated proteins in whole cells and tissue samples, but increasing numbers of studies have turned their attention to measuring protein abundance in subcellular compartments as well as to the identification of post-translational modifications and protein-protein interactions. Here, we will explore recent advances in proteomic-based target identification in SCZ, PD, and AD.

17.3.1 Schizophrenia

SCZ is a neuropsychiatric disorder that affects about 1% of the population worldwide. Its pathophysiology is still poorly understood and the dawn of the post-genomic era has raised hopes for a better comprehension of disease mechanisms and novel treatments. In the past decade, proteomics studies, in particular, have increasingly appeared in the literature with novel insights about the pathology obtained directly from post-mortem brain samples of patients [28].

To date, the proteomes of different brain regions have been analyzed confirming the complexity of the disorder. Proteomics studies have identified alterations in energy metabolism of neurons and glial cells [29], oligodendrocyte function [30], neurogenesis and synaptogenesis [30, 31], and calcium homeostasis and the immune system [32]. For instance, findings of the involvement of glial cells in the pathophysiology of the disease [33] were later confirmed by the

analysis of the proteome and phosphoproteome of the corpus callosum [34, 35]. Among the differentially regulated proteins identified are members of the 14–3-3 family. These proteins play a regulatory role in neurodevelopmental processes and in protein-protein interactions in the brain and are, therefore, a potential target for a better understanding of disease processes and new therapeutics. The phosphoproteome analysis of the corpus callosum was the first one reported in an analysis of postmortem brains, and it revealed the involvement of signaling pathways such as those involving ephrin B and ciliary neurotrophic factor. Moreover, a recent study from Martins-de-Souza's group analyzed the cerebellum, the caudate nucleus, and the posterior cingulate cortex of postmortem brains and revealed myelin-associated proteins to be differentially regulated in these three regions [36]. Together, these studies provide compelling biochemical evidence of the participation of glial cells in the pathology of schizophrenia and implicate pathways that can be further dissected to indentify potential targets. Other brain regions such as the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC) [37], the ventral caudate [38], and the hippocampus [39] have also been analyzed at the proteome level, and this revealed several proteins and pathways involved in the pathology of SCZ, including synaptic transmission processes and effects on GABAergic interneurons.

More recently, postmortem proteomics analyses of subcellular compartments have started to emerge and have provided a more precise and detailed snapshot of the metabolic and biochemical processes implicated in SCZ. Based on the widely accepted knowledge of altered dopaminergic and glutamatergic neurotransmission in the disorder, Velásquez et al. [40] analyzed the synaptosome of postmortem brain samples and identified over 50 differentially regulated proteins using two different quantitative shotgun-based methods. Beyond the identification of differentially regulated proteins, the authors performed a network association analysis by investigating the protein-protein interaction of the differentially regulated proteins and identified calmodulin (CaM) as a point of convergence in the network. Another study focusing on a subcellular compartment analyzed the postsynaptic density in the anterior cingulate cortex in postmortem brains of SCZ patients vs. healthy controls and identified 143 differentially regulated proteins [41]. These included several proteins involved in clathrin-mediated endocytosis as well as N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDA-R)-interacting proteins. Moreover, pathway analysis of the differentially regulated proteins implicated processes involved in calcium signaling. Saia-Cereda et al. [42] compared the nuclear proteome of white vs. gray matter regions of the brain and found that heat-shock proteins and proteins belonging to the histone family were differentially regulated in both regions. In contrast, changes in proteins associated with calcium/calmodulin signaling were identified in white matter regions, confirming earlier findings, whereas proteins differentially regulated in the gray matter were closely associated with the spliceosome. This study provided a more integrated view of the processes affected by SCZ in the brain as a whole. Gray and white matter regions are enriched for neurons and glial cells, respectively, and most studies so far have focused largely on the neuronal elements of the brain.

It is undeniable that postmortem brain samples have provided significant information regarding molecules and pathways affected in SCZ. However, confounding factors exist when probing this kind of biological sample, such as postmortem molecule degradation, patient lifestyles, and use of and adherence to antipsychotic medication [43]. Furthermore, brain biopsies from patients are difficult to obtain and several studies suggest that alterations in the CNS might be reflected in the periphery [44]. In fact, analysis of the serum proteome of SCZ patients identified ankyrin repeat domain-containing protein 12 (ANKRD12) as a potential disease biomarker. ANKRD12 is a putative histone deacetylase (HDAC) recruiter, which is in line with the observation of histone-associated proteins reported to be differentially expressed in gray and white matter regions of SCZ patients [42, 45]. In another study researchers analyzed the proteomes of lymphoblastoid cells obtained from patients by fluo-

rescence two-dimensional differential gel electrophoresis (2D-DIGE) and identified 22 differentially regulated proteins associated with the disease. They validated the findings using Western blot analysis for eight of these proteins using an independent second sample set, and multivariate logistic regression analysis was performed to propose a four-marker protein panel for dysfunctional molecular pathways in SCZ [46]. The proposed panel is composed of proteins associated with antiviral response (MX1), nucleotide metabolism (GART), neurodevelopment (TBCB), and protein folding (HSPA4L) processes, all of which have been previously linked with SCZ. Moreover, the panel underscores the multifactorial nature of the disorder and highlights the shift toward the identification and validation of protein sets rather than single molecules as predictive or therapeutic targets.

Serum was also used by Cooper et al. [47] to identify 77 proteins differentially regulated between first-onset drug-naïve patients and controls. They then employed multiple-reaction monitoring (MRM) proteomics to test whether any of these could be detected on blood swatches from newborns and observed increased levels of alpha-2-antiplasmin, complement C4-A, and antithrombin-III in babies who later developed SCZ. This proof-of-principle study demonstrated the feasibility of using targeted proteomics for early target identification with possible implications for the development of preventive measures. MRM proteomics has also been integrated with cognitive and anatomical data to validate biochemical targets. Knöchel et al. [48] demonstrated that altered apolipoprotein C levels are associated with cognitive impairments and changes in hippocampal volume. In addition, a recent study using patient-derived induced pluripotent stem cells from monozygotic twins discordant for SCZ identified sex-specific gene and protein expression signatures which revealed different pathophysiological mechanisms between males and females [49]. These findings shed some light into sex-dependent differences in the manifestation of the disease, such as the time of psychosis manifestation after puberty, and may indicate the necessity for sex-specific treatments.

17.3.2 Parkinson's Disease

PD is characterized by progressive degeneration of the dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra leading to severe motor complications, affecting around 1–2% of the population over 55 years old. It is the most common movement disorder and the second most common neurodegenerative disease of the human brain after AD with a higher incidence expected as people are living longer lives [50]. Nearly 200 years after it was first described, the ultimate cause of the disease still remains unknown. PD is a complex multifactorial disorder with variable contributions of environmental factors and genetic susceptibilities. Genetic predisposition accounts for 10% of the cases but the other 90% are described as idiopathic (also known as sporadic), with age being one of the main risk factors [51]. There is strong evidence that suggests that aberrant α-synuclein deposition in the brain is the driving force in PD pathogenesis and α-synuclein, a hydrophilic protein abundant in presynaptic terminals, is a major component of the Lewy bodies and Lewy neurites, which lead to neuronal loss [52]. In addition, aberrant mitochondrial function and increased oxidative stress have also been implicated in the pathogenesis of PD [53].

Poor access to fresh brain tissue and the caveats of using postmortem samples have promoted the development of in vitro models, which have become increasingly robust in the past decade. Human iPSC-derived neurons are now well-established and have aided researchers in the elucidation of the pathophysiology of PD and in target identification. In fact, in vitro analyses of patient-derived dopaminergic neurons from a group of young-onset PD patients revealed α-synuclein accumulation, a hallmark of PD [54]. These neurons were subjected to transcriptomics and proteomics analyses, which revealed a previously unknown genetic contribution in the development of PD in this group. In addition, proteins associated with the lysosomal machinery were significantly downregulated relative to healthy controls. Treatment with a specific phorbol ester compound was able to normalize the disease signature through an increase in the abundance of

lysosomal-membrane proteins and to promote a proteasome-mediated decrease of α-synuclein accumulation. This study is a clear example of how omics technologies can shed some light on the mechanistic aspects of PD and reveal potential therapeutic candidates. Transcriptome- and proteome-wide analyses have also allowed the identification and validation of mRNAs, which are amenable to small molecule targeting. Using a designed small molecule able to selectively bind to the 5′ untranslated region of *SCNA*, the gene coding for α-synuclein, Zhang et al. [55] were able to block its translation, thus offering a promising approach to tackle α-synucleinopathy and opening an avenue for targeting other proteins that, like α-synuclein, are not druggable at the peptide level. Proteomics studies have further aided the development of α-synucleinopathy targeting as a therapeutic approach by revealing an enrichment of disaggregase members in Lewy bodies of PD [56]. Based on the proteomic identification of potential targets, Hsp110, a disaggregase member shown to accelerate the rate-limiting step in the disassembly of fibril aggregates, was overexpressed in an α-synuclein model of PD and was found to reverse the proteomic signature of α-synuclein mutants and prevent α-synuclein templating and spreading in the brain [57]. In addition to target identification in the α-synucleinopathy component of PD, proteomics has provided mechanistic insight into its pathophysiology. Using redox proteomics, Ludtmann et al. [58] analyzed the post-translational modifications of ATP-synthase of mitochondrial fractions exposed to oligomeric α-synuclein and demonstrated that it was able to trigger an oligomer-dependent redox imbalance in one of the protein subunits. This led to mitochondrial swelling and ultimately to cell death, thus providing a potential mechanistic link between α-synuclein aggregation and the aberrant mitochondrial function in PD.

More recently, target genes and pathways were identified in an endogenous neural stem cell population in the human brain. Transcriptome and proteome profiling of $CD271^+$ cells revealed differential regulation of genes and proteins involved in metabolism, cytoskeletal organization, and transcriptional activity. Moreover, the transcriptomic and proteomic signature of this neural stem cell population suggests they may transit into a primed-quiescent state, thus opening up new possibilities for the development of novel therapeutic strategies for the replacement of lost dopaminergic neurons from this endogenous neural stem cell pool [59].

Neuronal accumulation of α-synuclein aggregates is a well-established hallmark of PD, although access to brain tissue for diagnostic purposes is impracticable. In the search for accessible sources of biological samples for biomarkers and target identification in PD, the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), blood, and even tear fluid have been explored. Posavi et al. [60] analyzed the blood proteome of PD vs. healthy people using discovery and replication cohorts and found bone sialoprotein (BSP), osteomodulin (OMD), aminoacylase-1 (ACY1), and growth hormone receptor (GHR) to be consistently differentially regulated in PD patients. Moreover, lower GHR levels at baseline were associated with faster rates of cognitive decline. This study is one of the first ones to identify diagnostic and prognostic biomarkers for PD from an easily accessible biological sample. Tear fluid has also been exploited as a potential source of biomarker discovery, and studies have found effects on the immune response and lipid metabolism pathways in the disease [61].

Exosomes are products of cells which have gained increased attention for their role in neurodegenerative diseases [62]. In fact, the proteome analysis of blood-derived exosomes revealed a distinct protein profile that was progressively upregulated from mild to severe in PD patients [63]. Among the identified proteins was gelsolin, which has been previously shown to occur in Lewy bodies [64].

In addition, targeted MRM proteomics of CSF samples has been employed to assess proteins that are part of pathways involved in PD such as lysosomal, ubiquitin-proteasomal, and autophagy pathways and identified significantly reduced levels of chromogranin B [65].

17.3.3 Alzheimer's Disease

AD is the most common neurodegenerative disorder in the world, accounting for 50–70% of dementia cases [66]. It is characterized by progressive loss of neurons leading to cognitive impairment and late dementia. AD pathogenesis consists of the development of intracellular neurofibrillary tangles (NFTs) and the deposition of senile plaques [67]. NFTs arise from the collapse of the neuronal cytoskeleton due to Tau hyperphosphorylation [68], while senile plaques are formed by the accumulation of protein fragments (amyloid-β, Aβ) from the abnormal proteolytic processing of the amyloid precursor protein (APP) [69]. Both processes induce neuroinflammation [70], axonal degeneration [71, 72], and disruption of synaptic integrity [73], thus leading to impairment of physiological neural connectivity. Both genetic and environmental factors have been described as AD risk factors, and these can be classified as two different disease forms: late-onset sporadic AD and early-onset familial AD [74]. A small proportion of cases has a clear genetic origin and demonstrates point mutations in the genes that code for APP, presenilin 1 (PS1), presenilin 2 (PS2), and the apolipoprotein E (APOE) ε4 allele [75–77]. The vast majority of patients suffer from the sporadic origin-type AD, which has age as the main risk factor and is associated with a series of biochemical, molecular, and cellular abnormalities in the brain, including increased activation of genes and pathways of cell death signaling, chronic oxidative stress, and impaired insulin response [78, 79].

Similar to SCZ and PD, the underlying causes of AD are not completely understood. However, in contrast to the other diseases, a core panel of biomarkers has been already established for disease diagnosis, consisting of Aβ42, total tau (T-tau), and phospho tau (P-tau) [80]. Despite the establishment of a few key markers for AD diagnostics, the disorder is heterogeneous and presents multiple genotypes and phenotypes; thus the identification of additional targets and biomarker panels is needed for accurate patient stratification [81].

In the last decade, the existence of different Aβ peptides has been reported in the brain and CSF of AD patients [82, 83], while ApoE levels appear to be downregulated in plasma [84]. A recent multiplex proteomics analysis of plasma and CSF from elderly participants identified proteins involved in the regulation of the inflammatory response, apoptosis, endocytosis, leukocyte proliferation, and other processes believed to be downstream of Aβ and tau deposition. Among these were chemokines, interleukins, and other immune markers, thus revealing relatively unexplored candidate biomarkers and reinforcing the potential of targeting pathways beyond Aβ and tau in AD [85]. Involvement of glial cells in AD has been previously suggested by a proteomic study of postmortem brain samples [86]. Moreover, RNA-binding proteins appeared to be differentially regulated between symptomatic and asymptomatic AD patients, opening a new avenue for targeting cognitive decline in AD. A comprehensive label-free quantitative proteomics analysis of over 2000 brains and 400 CSF samples identified astrocyte and microglial metabolism, mitochondrial function, synaptic function, and RNA-associated proteins as being altered in AD. Moreover, altered pathways associated with energy metabolism, more specifically certain lipids, insulin, amino acids, and glucose, emerged as strongly associated with AD and cognitive decline [87, 88].

17.3.4 Shared and Distinct Molecular Pathways Between SCZ, PD, and AD

Knowing the molecular similarities and distinctions among SCZ, PD, and AD may help to define the importance of certain biochemical pathways and molecular targets, which aid in the development of new treatment strategies. Thus, we searched for proteins found to be associated with the three diseases detailed in this review at UniProt (http://uniprot.org) and analyzed these using the pathway analysis software Metascape [26]. The results are displayed in Fig. 17.1.

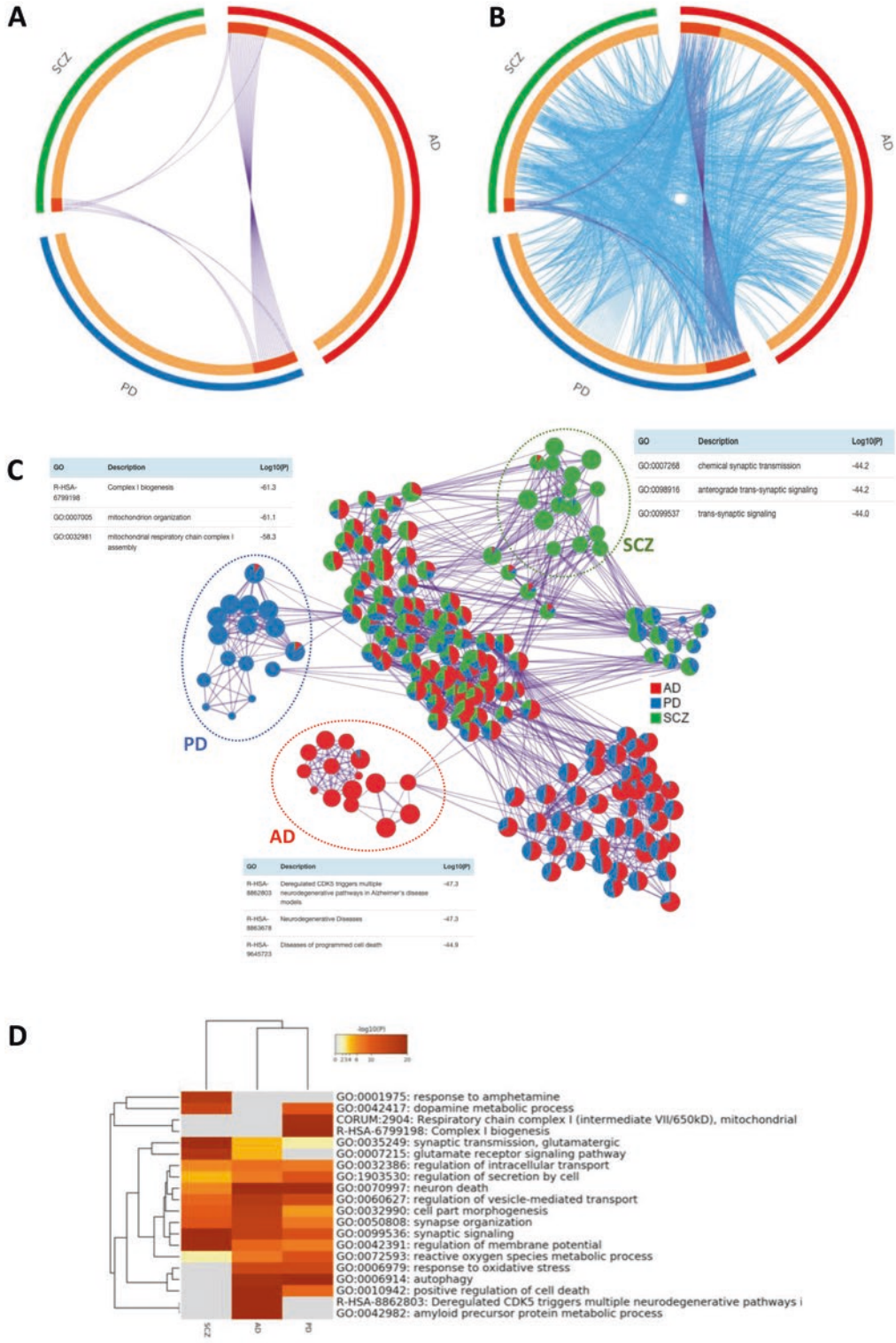


Fig. 17.1 Cord diagram depicting (**a**) overlap of proteins and (**b**) biological processes in SCZ, PD, and AD. (**c**) Visualization of interactome networks formed by differentially regulated proteins in SCZ (green), PD (blue), and AD (red). Tables depict the top three pathways according to the *p*-value. (**d**) Heatmap of the top enriched clusters using annotated curated databases for each disease. Gray represents a lack of significance and the color intensity represents -log10 (*p*)

As might be expected, AD and PD should be more similar in terms of molecular pathways compared to SCZ, considering the neurodegenerative nature of the former illnesses. This is confirmed in Fig. 17.1a, which shows a greater overlap of proteins between AD and PD. It is interesting to note that an enrichment of biological processes is shared among the three diseases, indicating that SCZ is somehow close to PD and AD in ontology terms (Fig. 17.1b). While SCZ is not considered a classical neurodegenerative disease [89, 90], there might be some kind of degeneration, even if only at the white matter level [33, 91, 92]. Alternatively, all three conditions are associated with disruptions in synaptic connectivity, and some of the similarities might reflect this [93].

The shared molecular characteristics among the three disorders are also evident in Fig. 17.1c, where most of the affected pathways are common to the three diseases. Some of these commonly shared pathways can also be observed in Fig. 17.1d. On the other hand, certain molecular pathways are specifically affected in each disease. For example, mitochondrial pathways are more affected in PD, degenerative processes and cell death are more affected in AD, and neurotransmission is more specifically affected in SCZ (Fig. 17.1c, d).

Protein databanks and gene/proteins meta-analysis platforms are crucial in the elucidation of common and unique pathways as well as protein networks from targets identified in proteomics studies. Furthermore, they can be explored for better disease classification and patient stratification by unraveling differences within the pathological spectrum of these heterogeneous diseases.

17.4 Conclusions

Omics technologies and their integration have led to significant progress in our comprehension of the pathophysiological mechanisms that underlie psychiatric and neurodegenerative diseases and greatly facilitate therapeutic target and biomarker identification. While genomics and transcriptomics developed rapidly over the last two decades and made high-throughput screening of gene risk variants and transcript levels commonplace, proteomics assay platforms have not evolved at the same pace [93]. However, given that proteins are the main ultimate effectors of biological processes and their modulation is pivotal in maintaining a healthy state, proteomics is an essential technology for the identification of novel targets and biomarkers. Proteomics data such as subcellular localization, post-translational modifications, and protein-protein interactions have only recently begun to be integrated with other omics data. Significant advances in proteomics have been achieved through improvements in mass spectrometry resolution, accuracy, and speed [94], and future developments in computational tools will allow better integration of different omic datasets and provide more robust identification of targets and biomarkers.

Despite the significant progress in target and biomarker identification in recent years, the limited number of subjects or samples analyzed in individual studies represents a caveat for the statistical power of the findings. Furthermore, despite the pathways and common features shared among different neurological disorders, they are heterogeneous in nature and therapeutic target identification could benefit from improved disease classification and patient stratification, prior to analysis [5].

Robust in vitro disease models and easy-to-access biological samples have proven to be valuable tools in target identification. iPSC-derived neurons and brain organoids have been valuable in providing the omic signatures of neurological disorders. However, the neurodevelopmental component of disorders like schizophrenia could be further explored with these models. Nevertheless, the brain is still the primary site affected in psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders. Thus, issues in postmortem brain analyses such as transcript and protein stability, post-translational modifications, and protein-protein interaction stability, as well as the effect of confounding factors such as medication uptake by patients, should be monitored.

Acknowledgments The authors wish to thank Bradley Smith, MSc, for critical comments and English review support during the process.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Funding AA is supported by the Coordination for the Improvement of Higher Education Personnel (CAPES/BRAZIL, grant number 465412/2014-9 – INBioN). VA, FC, VCC, and DMS are supported by the São Paulo Research Foundation (FAPESP, grant numbers 2017/18242-1, 2019/22398-2, 2019/05155-9, 2018/03673-0, and 2017/25588-1).

References

1. Kori M, Aydın B, Unal S, Arga KY, Kazan D (2016) Metabolic biomarkers and neurodegeneration: a pathway enrichment analysis of Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. OMICS 20:645–661
2. van Os J, Kapur S (2009) Schizophrenia. Lancet 374:635–645
3. Zuccoli GS, Saia-Cereda VM, Nascimento JM, Martins-de-Souza D (2017) The energy metabolism dysfunction in psychiatric disorders postmortem brains: focus on proteomic evidence. Front Neurosci 11:493. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2017.00493
4. Procaccini C, Santopaolo M, Faicchia D, Colamatteo A, Formisano L, de Candia P et al (2016) Role of metabolism in neurodegenerative disorders. Metabolism 65:1376–1390
5. Szatmari B, Balicza P, Nemeth G, Molnar MJ (2019) The Panomics approach in neurodegenerative disorders. Curr Med Chem 26:1712–1720
6. Krause JE, Chenard BL (2008) Opportunities and challenges in the discovery of new central nervous system drugs. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1144:243–250
7. Van der Schyf CJ (2016) Psychotropic drug development strategies that target neuropsychiatric etiologies in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. Drug Dev Res 77:458–468
8. Hutson PH, Clark JA, Cross AJ (2017) CNS target identification and validation: avoiding the valley of death or naive optimism? Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 57:171–187
9. de Lange ECM, van den Brink W, Yamamoto Y, de Witte WEA, Wong YC (2017) Novel CNS drug discovery and development approach: model-based integration to predict neuro-pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. Expert Opin Drug Discov 12:1207–1218
10. Dumas M-E, Davidovic L (2015) Metabolic profiling and phenotyping of central nervous system diseases: metabolites bring insights into brain dysfunctions. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol 10:402–424
11. Walther TC, Mann M (2010) Mass spectrometry-based proteomics in cell biology. J Cell Biol 190:491–500
12. Wang K, Huang C, Nice E (2014) Recent advances in proteomics: towards the human proteome. Biomed Chromatogr 28:848–857
13. Aebersold R, Mann M (2003) Mass spectrometry-based proteomics. Nature 422:198–207
14. Kelleher NL (2004) Top-down proteomics. Anal Chem 76:197A–203A
15. Yu D, Wang Z, Cupp-Sutton KA, Liu X, Wu S (2019) Deep intact proteoform characterization in human cell lysate using high-pH and low-pH reversed-phase liquid chromatography. J Am Soc Mass Spectrom 30:2502–2513
16. Cupp-Sutton KA, Wu S (2020) High-throughput quantitative top-down proteomics. Mol Omics 16:91–99
17. Li X, Wang W, Chen J (2017) Recent progress in mass spectrometry proteomics for biomedical research. Sci China Life Sci 60:1093–1113
18. Han X, Aslanian A, Yates JR 3rd (2008) Mass spectrometry for proteomics. Curr Opin Chem Biol 12:483–490
19. Hood L, Perlmutter RM (2004) The impact of systems approaches on biological problems in drug discovery. Nat Biotechnol 22:1215–1217
20. Köcher T, Superti-Furga G (2007) Mass spectrometry-based functional proteomics: from molecular machines to protein networks. Nat Methods 4:807–815
21. Tanoli Z, Alam Z, Vähä-Koskela M, Ravikumar B, Malyutina A, Jaiswal A et al (2018) Drug target commons 2.0: a community platform for systematic analysis of drug-target interaction profiles. Database 2018:1–13. https://doi.org/10.1093/database/bay083
22. Matthews H, Hanison J, Nirmalan N (2016) "Omics"-Informed drug and biomarker discovery: opportunities, challenges and future perspectives. Proteomes 4(3):28. https://doi.org/10.3390/proteomes4030028
23. Lindsay MA (2003) Target discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 2:831–838
24. Cisek K, Krochmal M, Klein J, Mischak H (2016) The application of multi-omics and systems biology to identify therapeutic targets in chronic kidney disease. Nephrol Dial Transplant 31:2003–2011
25. Jin L, Zuo XY, Su WY, Zhao XL, Yuan MQ, Han LZ et al (2014) Pathway-based analysis tools for complex diseases: a review. Genomics Proteomics Bioinform 12:210–220
26. Zhou Y, Zhou B, Pache L, Chang M, Khodabakhshi AH, Tanaseichuk O et al (2019) Metascape provides a biologist-oriented resource for the analysis of systems-level datasets. Nat Commun 10(1):1523. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-09234-6
27. Kitchen RR, Rozowsky JS, Gerstein MB, Nairn AC (2014) Decoding neuroproteomics: integrating the genome, translatome and functional anatomy. Nat Neurosci 17:1491–1499
28. Iritani S (2013) What happens in the brain of schizophrenia patients? An investigation from the viewpoint of neuropathology. Nagoya J Med Sci 75:11–28

29. Martins-de-Souza D, Gattaz WF, Schmitt A, Maccarrone G, Hunyadi-Gulyás E, Eberlin MN et al (2009) Proteomic analysis of dorsolateral prefrontal cortex indicates the involvement of cytoskeleton, oligodendrocyte, energy metabolism and new potential markers in schizophrenia. J Psychiatr Res 43:978–986
30. Cassoli JS, Guest PC, Malchow B, Schmitt A, Falkai P, Martins-de-Souza D (2015) Disturbed macro-connectivity in schizophrenia linked to oligodendrocyte dysfunction: from structural findings to molecules. NPJ Schizophr 1:15034. https://doi.org/10.1038/npjschz.2015.34
31. English JA, Pennington K, Dunn MJ, Cotter DR (2011) The neuroproteomics of schizophrenia. Biol Psychiatry 69:163–172
32. Martins-de-Souza D, Gattaz WF, Schmitt A, Rewerts C, Maccarrone G, Dias-Neto E et al (2009) Prefrontal cortex shotgun proteome analysis reveals altered calcium homeostasis and immune system imbalance in schizophrenia. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 259:151–163
33. Martins-de-Souza D (2010) Proteome and transcriptome analysis suggests oligodendrocyte dysfunction in schizophrenia. J Psychiatr Res 44:149–156
34. Saia-Cereda VM, Cassoli JS, Schmitt A, Falkai P, Nascimento JM, Martins-de-Souza D (2015) Proteomics of the corpus callosum unravel pivotal players in the dysfunction of cell signaling, structure, and myelination in schizophrenia brains. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 265:601–612
35. Saia-Cereda VM, Cassoli JS, Schmitt A, Falkai P, Martins-de-Souza D (2016) Differential proteome and phosphoproteome may impact cell signaling in the corpus callosum of schizophrenia patients. Schizophr Res 177:70–77
36. Reis-de-Oliveira G, Zuccoli GS, Fioramonte M, Schimitt A, Falkai P, Almeida V et al (2020) Digging deeper in the proteome of different regions from schizophrenia brains. J Proteome 223:103814. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jprot.2020.103814. Online ahead of print
37. Pinacho R, Villalmanzo N, Meana JJ, Ferrer I, Berengueras A, Haro JM et al (2016) Altered CSNK1E, FABP4 and NEFH protein levels in the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 177:88–97
38. Barakauskas VE, Moradian A, Barr AM, Beasley CL, Rosoklija G, Mann JJ et al (2016) Quantitative mass spectrometry reveals changes in SNAP-25 isoforms in schizophrenia. Schizophr Res 177:44–51
39. Schubert KO, Föcking M, Cotter DR (2015) Proteomic pathway analysis of the hippocampus in schizophrenia and bipolar affective disorder implicates 14-3-3 signaling, aryl hydrocarbon receptor signaling, and glucose metabolism: potential roles in GABAergic interneuron pathology. Schizophr Res 167:64–72
40. Velásquez E, Nogueira FCS, Velásquez I, Schmitt A, Falkai P, Domont GB et al (2017) Synaptosomal proteome of the orbitofrontal cortex from schizophrenia patients using quantitative label-free and iTRAQ-based shotgun proteomics. J Proteome Res 16:4481–4494
41. Föcking M, Lopez LM, English JA, Dicker P, Wolff A, Brindley E et al (2015) Proteomic and genomic evidence implicates the postsynaptic density in schizophrenia. Mol Psychiatry 20:424–432
42. Saia-Cereda VM, Santana AG, Schmitt A, Falkai P, Martins-de-Souza D (2017) The nuclear proteome of white and gray matter from schizophrenia postmortem brains. Mol Neuropsychiatry 3:37–52
43. Li JZ, Vawter MP, Walsh DM, Tomita H, Evans SJ, Choudary PV et al (2004) Systematic changes in gene expression in postmortem human brains associated with tissue pH and terminal medical conditions. Hum Mol Genet 13:609–616
44. Rollins B, Martin MV, Morgan L, Vawter MP (2010) Analysis of whole genome biomarker expression in blood and brain. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 153B:919–936
45. Sharma RP, Grayson DR, Gavin DP (2008) Histone deactylase 1 expression is increased in the prefrontal cortex of schizophrenia subjects: analysis of the National Brain Databank microarray collection. Schizophr Res 98:111–117
46. Yoshimi A, Yamada S, Kunimoto S, Aleksic B, Hirakawa A, Ohashi M et al (2019) Proteomic analysis of lymphoblastoid cell lines from schizophrenic patients. Transl Psychiatry 9(1):126. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41398-019-0461-2
47. Cooper JD, Ozcan S, Gardner RM, Rustogi N, Wicks S, van Rees GF et al (2017) Schizophrenia-risk and urban birth are associated with proteomic changes in neonatal dried blood spots. Transl Psychiatry 7(12):1290. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41398-017-0027-0
48. Knöchel C, Kniep J, Cooper JD, Stäblein M, Wenzler S, Sarlon J et al (2017) Altered apolipoprotein C expression in association with cognition impairments and hippocampus volume in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci 267:199–212
49. Tiihonen J, Koskuvi M, Storvik M, Hyötyläinen I, Gao Y, Puttonen KA et al (2019) Sex-specific transcriptional and proteomic signatures in schizophrenia. Nat Commun 10(1):3933. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-11797-3
50. Tysnes O-B, Storstein A (2017) Epidemiology of Parkinson's disease. J Neural Transm 124:901–905
51. de Lau LML, Breteler MMB (2006) Epidemiology of Parkinson's disease. Lancet Neurol 5:525–535
52. Stefanis L (2012) α-Synuclein in Parkinson's disease. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 2(2):a009399. https://doi.org/10.1101/cshperspect.a009399
53. Chen C, Turnbull DM, Reeve AK (2019) Mitochondrial dysfunction in Parkinson's disease-cause or consequence? Biology 8(2):38. https://doi.org/10.3390/biology8020038

54. Laperle AH, Sances S, Yucer N, Dardov VJ, Garcia VJ, Ho R et al (2020) iPSC modeling of young-onset Parkinson's disease reveals a molecular signature of disease and novel therapeutic candidates. Nat Med 26:289–299
55. Zhang P, Park H-J, Zhang J, Junn E, Andrews RJ, Velagapudi SP et al (2020) Translation of the intrinsically disordered protein α-synuclein is inhibited by a small molecule targeting its structured mRNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 117:1457–1467
56. Ping L, Duong DM, Yin L, Gearing M, Lah JJ, Levey AI et al (2018) Global quantitative analysis of the human brain proteome in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease. Sci Data 5:180036. https://doi.org/10.1038/sdata.2018.36
57. Taguchi YV, Gorenberg EL, Nagy M, Thrasher D, Fenton WA, Volpicelli-Daley L et al (2019) Hsp110 mitigates α-synuclein pathology in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 116:24310–24316
58. Ludtmann MHR, Angelova PR, Horrocks MH, Choi ML, Rodrigues M, Baev AY et al (2018) α-synuclein oligomers interact with ATP synthase and open the permeability transition pore in Parkinson's disease. Nat Commun 9:2293. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-018-04422-2
59. Donega V, Burm SM, van Strien ME, van Bodegraven EJ, Paliukhovich I, Geut H et al (2019) Transcriptome and proteome profiling of neural stem cells from the human subventricular zone in Parkinson's disease. Acta Neuropathol Commun 7:84. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40478-019-0736-0
60. Posavi M, Diaz-Ortiz M, Liu B, Swanson CR, Skrinak RT, Hernandez-Con P et al (2019) Characterization of Parkinson's disease using blood-based biomarkers: A multicohort proteomic analysis. PLoS Med 16:e1002931. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1002931
61. Boerger M, Funke S, Leha A, Roser A-E, Wuestemann A-K, Maass F et al (2019) Proteomic analysis of tear fluid reveals disease-specific patterns in patients with Parkinson's disease—a pilot study. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 63:3–9
62. Ciregia F, Urbani A, Palmisano G (2017) Extracellular vesicles in brain tumors and neurodegenerative diseases. Front Mol Neurosci 10:276. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnmol.2017.00276
63. Jiang R, Rong C, Ke R, Meng S, Yan X, Ke H et al (2019) Differential proteomic analysis of serum exosomes reveals alterations in progression of Parkinson disease. Medicine 98:e17478. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000017478
64. Welander H, Bontha SV, Näsström T, Karlsson M, Nikolajeff F, Danzer K et al (2011) Gelsolin co-occurs with Lewy bodies in vivo and accelerates α-synuclein aggregation in vitro. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 412(1):32–38
65. Zhu S, Wuolikainen A, Wu J, Öhman A, Wingsle G, Moritz T et al (2019) Targeted multiple reaction monitoring analysis of CSF identifies UCHL1 and GPNMB as candidate biomarkers for ALS. J Mol Neurosci 69:643–657
66. Hales CM, Dammer EB, Deng Q, Duong DM, Gearing M, Troncoso JC et al (2016) Changes in the detergent-insoluble brain proteome linked to amyloid and tau in Alzheimer's disease progression. Proteomics 16:3042–3053
67. Johnson ECB, Dammer EB, Duong DM, Yin L, Thambisetty M, Troncoso JC et al (2018) Deep proteomic network analysis of Alzheimer's disease brain reveals alterations in RNA binding proteins and RNA splicing associated with disease. Mol Neurodegener 13:52. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13024-018-0282-4
68. Baldacci F, Toschi N, Lista S, Zetterberg H, Blennow K, Kilimann I et al (2017) Two-level diagnostic classification using cerebrospinal fluid YKL-40 in Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 13:993–1003
69. Olsson B, Lautner R, Andreasson U, Öhrfelt A, Portelius E, Bjerke M et al (2016) CSF and blood biomarkers for the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Neurol 15:673–684
70. Baldacci F, Lista S, Cavedo E, Bonuccelli U, Hampel H (2017) Diagnostic function of the neuroinflammatory biomarker YKL-40 in Alzheimer's disease and other neurodegenerative diseases. Expert Rev Proteomics 14:285–299
71. Zetterberg H, Skillbäck T, Mattsson N, Trojanowski JQ, Portelius E, Shaw LM et al (2016) Association of cerebrospinal fluid neurofilament light concentration with Alzheimer disease progression. JAMA Neurol 73:60–67
72. Lista S, Toschi N, Baldacci F, Zetterberg H, Blennow K, Kilimann I et al (2017) Diagnostic accuracy of CSF neurofilament light chain protein in the biomarker-guided classification system for Alzheimer's disease. Neurochem Int 108:355–360
73. Lista S, Hampel H (2017) Synaptic degeneration and neurogranin in the pathophysiology of Alzheimer's disease. Expert Rev Neurother 17:47–57
74. Blennow K, de Leon MJ, Zetterberg H (2006) Alzheimer's disease. Lancet 368:387–403
75. Sherrington R, Rogaev EI, Liang Y, Rogaeva EA, Levesque G, Ikeda M et al (1995) Cloning of a gene bearing missense mutations in early-onset familial Alzheimer's disease. Nature 375:754–760
76. Levy-Lahad E, Wasco W, Poorkaj P, Romano DM, Oshima J, Pettingell WH et al (1995) Candidate gene for the chromosome 1 familial Alzheimer's disease locus. Science 269:973–977
77. Poirier J, Bertrand P, Poirier J, Kogan S, Gauthier S, Poirier J et al (1993) Apolipoprotein E polymorphism and Alzheimer's disease. Lancet 342:697–699
78. de la Monte SM, Tong M (2014) Brain metabolic dysfunction at the core of Alzheimer's disease. Biochem Pharmacol 88:548–559
79. de la Monte SM (2019) The full spectrum of Alzheimer's disease is rooted in metabolic derange-

ments that drive type 3 diabetes. Adv Exp Med Biol 1128:45–83
80. Blennow K, Zetterberg H (2018) Biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease: current status and prospects for the future. J Intern Med 284:643–663
81. Ferreira D, Wahlund L-O, Westman E (2018) The heterogeneity within Alzheimer's disease. Aging 10:3058–3060
82. Portelius E, Mattsson N, Andreasson U, Blennow K, Zetterberg H (2011) Novel aβ isoforms in Alzheimer's disease—their role in diagnosis and treatment. Curr Pharm Des 17:2594–2602
83. Pannee J, Portelius E, Oppermann M, Atkins A, Hornshaw M, Zegers I et al (2013) A selected reaction monitoring (SRM)-based method for absolute quantification of Aβ38, Aβ40, and Aβ42 in cerebrospinal fluid of Alzheimer's disease patients and healthy controls. J Alzheimers Dis 33:1021–1032
84. Han SH, Kim JS, Lee Y, Choi H, Kim JW, Na DL et al (2014) Both targeted mass spectrometry and flow sorting analysis methods detected the decreased serum apolipoprotein E level in Alzheimer's disease patients. Mol Cell Proteomics 13:407–419
85. Whelan CD, Mattsson N, Nagle MW, Vijayaraghavan S, Hyde C, Janelidze S et al (2019) Multiplex proteomics identifies novel CSF and plasma biomarkers of early Alzheimer's disease. Acta Neuropathol Commun 7:169. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40478-019-0795-2
86. Seyfried NT, Dammer EB, Swarup V, Nandakumar D, Duong DM, Yin L et al (2017) A multi-network approach identifies protein-specific co-expression in asymptomatic and symptomatic Alzheimer's disease. Cell Syst 4:60–72.e4
87. Trushina E, Dutta T, Persson X-MT, Mielke MM, Petersen RC (2013) Identification of altered metabolic pathways in plasma and CSF in mild cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease using metabolomics. PLoS One 8:e63644. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0063644
88. Johnson ECB, Dammer EB, Duong DM, Ping L, Zhou M, Yin L et al (2020) Large-scale proteomic analysis of Alzheimer's disease brain and cerebrospinal fluid reveals early changes in energy metabolism associated with microglia and astrocyte activation. Nat Med 26:769–780
89. Rund BR (2009) Is schizophrenia a neurodegenerative disorder? Nord J Psychiatry 63:196–201
90. Rao J, Chiappelli J, Kochunov P, Regenold WT, Rapoport SI, Hong LE (2015) Is schizophrenia a neurodegenerative disease? Evidence from age-related decline of brain-derived neurotrophic factor in the brains of schizophrenia patients and matched nonpsychiatric controls. Neurodegener Dis 15:3844
91. Lieberman JA (1999) Is schizophrenia a neurodegenerative disorder? A clinical and neurobiological perspective. Biol Psychiatry 46:729–739
92. Novellino F, Saccà V, Donato A, Zaffino P, Spadea MF, Vismara M et al (2020) Innate immunity: a common denominator between neurodegenerative and neuropsychiatric diseases. Int J Mol Sci 21. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms21031115
93. Arora A, Somasundaram K (2019) Targeted proteomics comes to the benchside and the bedside: is it ready for us? BioEssays 41:e1800042. https://doi.org/10.1002/bies.201800042
94. Háda V, Bagdi A, Bihari Z, Timári SB, Fizil Á, Szántay C Jr (2018) Recent advancements, challenges, and practical considerations in the mass spectrometry-based analytics of protein biotherapeutics: a viewpoint from the biosimilar industry. J Pharm Biomed Anal 161:214–238

Index

P. C. Guest (ed.), *Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1286, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-55035-6